Soil Biology 36

Benjamin A. Horwitz
Prasun K. Mukherjee
Mala Mukherjee
Christian P. Kubicek *Editors*

Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi

Soil Biology

Volume 36

Series Editor
Ajit Varma, Amity Institute of Microbial Technology,
Amity University Uttar Pradesh, Noida, UP, India

For further volumes:
http://www.springer.com/series/5138

Benjamin A. Horwitz • Prasun K. Mukherjee •
Mala Mukherjee • Christian P. Kubicek
Editors

Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi

Editors
Benjamin A. Horwitz
Department of Biology
Technion – Israel Institute of Technology
Haifa
Israel

Prasun K. Mukherjee
Mala Mukherjee
Central Institute for Cotton Research
Nagpur
India

Christian P. Kubicek
Institute of Chemical Engineering
Vienna University of Technology
Vienna
Austria

ISSN 1613-3382
ISBN 978-3-642-39338-9 ISBN 978-3-642-39339-6 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6
Springer Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013947369

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013
This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed. Exempted from this legal reservation are brief excerpts in connection with reviews or scholarly analysis or material supplied specifically for the purpose of being entered and executed on a computer system, for exclusive use by the purchaser of the work. Duplication of this publication or parts thereof is permitted only under the provisions of the Copyright Law of the Publisher's location, in its current version, and permission for use must always be obtained from Springer. Permissions for use may be obtained through RightsLink at the Copyright Clearance Center. Violations are liable to prosecution under the respective Copyright Law.
The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.
While the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication, neither the authors nor the editors nor the publisher can accept any legal responsibility for any errors or omissions that may be made. The publisher makes no warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein.

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer is part of Springer Science+Business Media (www.springer.com)

Foreword

Fungi, the "fifth kingdom" of living beings, comprise a wide variety of eukaryotic heterotrophs including mushrooms, rusts, truffles, morels, molds, yeasts, and many more families, genera, and taxa that are less well known. Their total number has been estimated to be in the range of 1.5 million species. Fungi have traditionally been considered to be microorganisms, because of the tiny hyphal filaments that are formed in laboratory cultivations. However, these hyphae can form extensive networks in their natural habitats, whose biomass is not smaller than that of large animals or plants.

Fungi have also developed numerous lifestyles: saprotrophs break down dead organic material and thus importantly contribute to nutrient cycling within the ecosystem. Yet many other fungi are biotrophs and form symbiotic associations with plants (mycorrhizae), algae (lichens), arthropods, and even prokaryotes. In fact, more than 80 % of the vascular land plants are obligatorily dependent on mycorrhizal symbioses with fungi. More recently, facultative and obligate endophytes of various plant tissues have also been discovered, and there is evidence that they can protect the plants against biotic and abiotic stress.

In order to be successful in their habitats, fungi have developed various successful strategies such as the ability to export hydrolytic enzymes to break down biopolymers or to produce chemicals that can antagonize competing organisms. Some of these properties have been exploited by humans for the production of goods for a long time: production of ethanol by the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* is the oldest example of the use of fungi for mankind and is experiencing a revival in this decade because of the interest in production of biofuels from renewable resources. Other 60-and-more-year-old examples are penicillin production by *Penicillium chrysogenum* and citric acid production by *Aspergillus niger*. These processes led to a more systematic exploitation of fungi and consequently the development of a number of biotechnological processes for the production of enzymes (such as cellulases, amylases, lipases, and glucose oxidase); platform

chemicals such as citric acid, itaconic acid, and gluconic acid; and numerous secondary metabolites that proved successful in medicine (e.g., penicillin, cephalosporin, cyclosporine, lovastatin). Due to the high secretory capacity that was detected in the enzyme producers, fungi have also been used as workhorses for the production of mammalian and plant proteins, which are only of limited availability from their native producer (e.g., chymosin). Finally, because fungi share a significant part of their gene repertoire with higher organisms, but can easily be studied and manipulated in the lab, some of them (e.g., *S. cerevisiae*, *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, *Aspergillus nidulans*, *Neurospora crassa*) have extensively been used as model systems for basic biological processes such as the cell cycle, reproduction, or the circadian rhythm.

On the other side, many fungi also have negative impacts on mankind: the majority of contemporary plant diseases are caused by fungi and can achieve epidemic dimensions like the Dutch elm disease caused by *Ophiostoma ulmi* or chestnut blight by *Cryphonectria parasitica*. They also lead to large losses of nutritionally required crop plants by either affecting plant biomass formation (like the rice pathogen *Magnaporthe grisea*) or simply due to the secretion of mycotoxins (such as aflatoxin formation by *Aspergillus flavus*) and thus spoiling the harvest. Many other fungi can act as parasites of animals including humans, such as *Cryptococcus neoformans* that causes fungal meningitis. More recently, several fungi have proven to be opportunistic facultative pathogens, which do not target animals or humans regularly but can establish themselves in the body of immunocompromised individuals. In addition, many fungi have developed mechanisms to settle in the most extreme habitats and can occupy, e.g., building walls, thereby giving rise to "indoor contamination," or simply cause biodeterioration of materials, particularly manufactured wood.

In view of all these diverse activities, it is not surprising that fungi have also been intensively investigated towards detecting the mechanisms that form the basis of the various positive or negative effects. The final aim is to find tools that can be used either to increase their beneficial action or to combat their negative impact. This was, however, significantly impeded in those fungi where appropriate genetic systems to map mutations and cross mutants were unavailable. Today, the development of techniques to sequence, assemble, and annotate whole genomes and to functionally analyze their contents by systems biological approaches (transcriptomics, proteomics, metabolomics, and other "omic" technologies) has eliminated this bottleneck. The first major fungal genomics milestone was the publication of the whole genome sequence of the yeast *S. cerevisiae* 17 years ago. Today, more than 100 fungi had their genomes sequenced, and although this number is dominated by fungi of medical importance, genomic insights are already available for many other fungi. Today, we have arrived in several cases at first systematic insights into how fungi use their genetic repertoire for their specific behavior.

This book reviews the current state in our genomic understanding of those fungi which are primarily soil inhabitants and also those which interact with plants, whereby both positive and negative interactions will be covered. The comparison of their genomes reveals the various strategies, by which fungi use a basically similar repertoire of genes for differing purposes, and offers fascinating possibilities for future research.

Vienna, Austria Christian P. Kubicek

Preface

Fungi have a major role in natural ecosystems and in agriculture. This is particularly relevant for fungal species whose main niche is either soil, rhizosphere, plant roots, or above-ground plant tissues. The sequences of fungal genomes provide a new window to observe and understand how fungi recycle organic material in the soil, engage in positive and negative interactions with plant roots, and attack plants as pathogens. An unprecedented amount of sequence information has accumulated over the past decade, and researchers are now looking for ways to extract biological information. We assembled this volume in the hope that comparison across species will help bring focus to what is similar or different in the genomes of soil saprophytes, symbionts, and plant pathogens. There are now so many sequences that any attempt to catalog what is known for all fungi would require not one but tens of volumes and would quickly become out of date. Rather, we chose examples of species where particular principles can be illustrated. The reasons are diverse: from importance in ecology, agriculture, or medicine to model species that may have been convenient for applying a certain technique. If the approaches from one species eventually lead to fruitful work in another, we will be able to look back on a successful contribution to the science of fungi in its new genomic framework.

We are grateful to the authors of the chapters of this volume for all their thoughts and efforts. In particular, each chapter develops a unique approach that often reflects not only the fungal species studied but also the viewpoint, research priorities, and expertise of the research community studying each species. The fungal genome sequencing projects are the source of this book, which two decades ago would have been difficult to even imagine. Many of the contributors have been central participants in the genome projects or guiding future ones, and we hope to share the satisfaction of seeing a growing contribution of the genomics of soil, rhizosphere, and plant-interacting fungi to ecology, biotechnology, and sustainable agriculture. We would like to express our sincere thanks to the series editor Prof. Dr. Ajit Varma for supporting this project from the start and for his help in

bringing this volume to completion. It has been a pleasure to edit the volume, primarily due to the stimulating cooperation of the contributors. We wish to thank Hanna Hensler-Fritton and Jutta Lindenborn, Springer Heidelberg, for their generous assistance and patience in finalizing the book.

Haifa, Israel — Benjamin A. Horwitz
Nagpur, India — Prasun K. Mukherjee
Nagpur, India — Mala Mukherjee
Vienna, Austria — Christian P. Kubicek
April 30, 2013

Contents

1 **Genomic Contributions to the Study of Soil and Plant-Interacting Fungi** . . . 1
Benjamin A. Horwitz, Prasun K. Mukherjee, Mala Mukherjee, and Christian P. Kubicek

2 **Fungal Genomics for Energy and Environment** . . . 11
Igor V. Grigoriev

3 **Advancement of Functional Genomics of a Model Species of *Neurospora* and Its Use for Ecological Genomics of Soil Fungi** . . . 29
Kwangwon Lee and John Dighton

4 **Major Plant Pathogens of the Magnaporthaceae Family** . . . 45
Adriana Illana, Julio Rodriguez-Romero, and Ane Sesma

5 ***Aspergillus*: Genomics of a Cosmopolitan Fungus** . . . 89
Isabelle Benoit, Iran Malavazi, Gustavo Henrique Goldman, Scott E. Baker, and Ronald P. de Vries

6 ***Trichoderma*: Genomic Aspects of Mycoparasitism and Biomass Degradation** . . . 127
Christian P. Kubicek and Irina S. Druzhinina

7 ***Fusarium oxysporum*: A "Moving" View of Pathogenicity** . . . 157
Apratim Chakrabarti

8 **Genomics and Spectroscopy Provide Novel Insights into the Mechanisms of Litter Decomposition and Nitrogen Assimilation by Ectomycorrhizal Fungi** . . . 191
Anders Tunlid, Francois Rineau, Mark Smits, Firoz Shah, Cesar Nicolas, Tomas Johansson, Per Persson, and Francis Martin

9 ***Cochliobolus heterostrophus*: A Dothideomycete Pathogen of Maize** . . . 213
Benjamin A. Horwitz, Bradford J. Condon, and B. Gillian Turgeon

10 *Penicillium chrysogenum*: Genomics of an Antibiotics Producer 229
Marco A. van den Berg

11 *Rhizopus oryzae*: Genetic Secrets of an Emerging Human Pathogen 255
Brian L. Wickes

12 *Podospora anserina*: From Laboratory to Biotechnology 283
Philippe Silar

13 Recent Advances on the Genomics of Litter- and Soil-Inhabiting Agaricomycetes 311
Phil Kersten and Dan Cullen

14 Archaeorhizomycetes: Patterns of Distribution and Abundance in Soil 333
Anna Rosling, Ina Timling, and D. Lee Taylor

15 Methods in Fungal Genetics 351
Kevin McCluskey and Aric Wiest

Index 381

Chapter 1
Genomic Contributions to the Study of Soil and Plant-Interacting Fungi

Benjamin A. Horwitz, Prasun K. Mukherjee, Mala Mukherjee, and Christian P. Kubicek

1.1 Introductory Remarks

The first filamentous fungal genome published was of *Neurospora crassa* (Galagan et al. 2003), one of the classical genetic model systems (Davis and Perkins 2002; Perkins 1992). It is obvious, though, that not everything can be learned from the genome of a single species. Fungi are very versatile and degrade almost any substrate. The niche occupied by a given fungal species can be anywhere from very wide to very narrow. It was logical, therefore, to ask whether the genomes of plant pathogens would differ from saprophytes, and how. The sequence of rice blast as "the" model plant pathogen (Dean et al. 2005) indeed began to provide insight into what makes a pathogen different, with expanded families encoding signal transduction machinery, secondary metabolism, and possible virulence-related proteins. Later, though, the choice of species to sequence followed a more complicated path, guided by medical or agricultural importance, or by the activity of the research groups working on a particular group of fungi. Although different questions have been pursued in different species, there are unifying themes. Some of these themes are set by basic biology, for example, protein kinase genes related to the cell cycle, or the fundamental structure of the fungal cell wall. Others are related to interaction with other organisms: small secreted proteins that act as

B.A. Horwitz (✉)
Department of Biology, Technion-Israel Institute of Technology, Haifa 32000, Israel
e-mail: horwitz@tx.technion.ac.il

P.K. Mukherjee • M. Mukherjee
Central Institute for Cotton Research, Shankar Nagar PO, PB 2, Nagpur 440010, India
e-mail: prasunmukherjee1@gmail.com; malamukherjee1@gmail.com

C.P. Kubicek
Area Gene Technology and Applied Biochemistry, Institute of Chemical Engineering, Vienna University of Technology, Getreidemarkt 9, 1060 Vienna, Austria
e-mail: ckubicek@mail.zserv.tuwien.ac.at

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_1,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

virulence effectors for pathogens, effectors required to establish symbiosis, and enzyme repertoires that are tuned to a particular host or substrate.

1.2 Genetic Models

Neurospora crassa, as already mentioned, and *Aspergillus nidulans* are the most advanced model systems and are used to ask basic questions. *Neurospora* (years before its genome had been sequenced) was used to identify the clock gene *Frequency* (McClung et al. 1989) and the "white collar" blue light photoreceptor (Ballario et al. 1996). *Aspergillus* was established as a model of choice for developmental studies (Adams et al. 1988). Signal transduction schemes advanced for both *Neurospora* (Borkovich et al. 2004) and *Aspergillus* (Adams et al. 1998) are a standard for work on other species (see the discussion and schemes in Chaps. 5 and 7). As elsewhere in this volume, it is important to keep in mind work done in species that are not represented here. As an example, work on the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway in fungi began with the finding that a MAPKK of *Ustilago maydis* is needed for conjugation tube formation, filament formation, filamentous growth, tumor induction on the maize host, and teliospore germination (Banuett and Herskowitz 1994). Rice blast is a premier model for the study of fungal signal transduction (Xu and Hamer 1996; Zhao et al. 2007). Model systems, though, can be looked at in a different light. The tools available for *Neurospora* (Chap. 3), for example, add a dimension to comparative work, where a well-understood process can be compared in many accessions. A quantitative trait loci (QTL) analysis of the circadian clock (Kim et al. 2007) identified 13 previously known clock loci but also 30 new ones. *Magnaporthe* is studied for the biochemistry (and physics) of appressorium development, but recent years have seen a novel above- and belowground view, addressing the question of what makes a pathogen attack either leaves or roots (Chap. 4).

1.3 Soil Fungi

Fungi have central roles in recycling organic material in the soil. The natural niche of the cultivated mushroom *Agaricus bisporus* is forest soil rich in humic substances, which consist of nonwoody, partially degraded plant material. The *A. bisporus* genome encodes a large set of carbohydrate-degrading enzymes enabling the fungus to break down polysaccharides from plant cell walls (Morin et al. 2012). In this respect, *A. bisporus* is similar to the sequenced wood-degrading Basidiomycetes (Chap. 13), but has relatively few lignin or manganese peroxidase genes (Morin et al. 2012). Soil inhabitants interact with the roots of living plants, and these interactions can be either beneficial, damaging, or somewhere in between. *Fusarium oxysporum* is the agent of vascular wilt, with a wide host range, but

exhibiting host specificity at the subspecies level. The analysis of the genomes of these fungi (Ma et al. 2010) revealed the presence of lineage-specific chromosomes wherein most of the pathogenicity-related genes are concentrated. Interestingly, horizontal transfer of these chromosomes rendered the nonpathogenic strains pathogenic (Chap. 7). Two species of *Verticillium*, related wilt pathogens, have also been sequenced, and their genomes encode an expanded capacity to make pectin-degrading enzymes (Klosterman et al. 2011). There is good reason to expect the genomes to help us understand why some species are pathogens and others beneficial to plants. Ancient symbioses (Remy et al. 1994) evolved together with land plants. Mycorrhizal fungi interact with roots in two very different ways, both of which result in exchange of minerals and nutrients between the partners. Plants and symbionts have evolved signaling mechanisms to establish their interactions (Oldroyd 2013; Oldroyd et al. 2009). The extensive hyphal network of the fungal mycorrhizal partner effectively increases the surface area of the root, transferring mineral nutrients (among which phosphate is a prominent factor) from the soil, and the plant provides carbon sources for the fungus. Furthermore, it was recently concluded from carbon isotope modeling that in boreal forests, in deeper soil layers, a large proportion of soil carbon compounds are derived from roots and associated mycorrhizal fungi, which thus have a central role in the sequestrating of carbon (Clemmensen et al. 2013). Endomycorrhizal fungi (AMF) penetrate root cells forming a distinctive intracellular network, the arbuscle (Bonfante and Requena 2011). The fungal members of this intimate symbiotic pair belong to the Glomeromycota; no species in this lineage has been sequenced yet, but an immense effort is under way. Moreover, transcriptomic (Gomez et al. 2009; Tisserant et al. 2012) studies and molecular genetic investigations (Kloppholz et al. 2011) of the mechanism of this important symbiosis are running ahead along with the genome project. Another type, the ericoid mycorrhizal fungi, belongs to several Ascomycete classes. There is a draft sequence for *Oidiodendron maius*, a member of the Leotiomycetes which can colonize the roots of some ericoid plants intracellularly (Joint Genome Institute). Ectomycorrhizae (EM) form an intercellular network in the cortex of the root (Plett and Martin 2011). EM fungi often belong to the Basidiomycetes, and the first sequenced EM species was *Laccaria bicolor* (Martin et al. 2008). *Paxillus involutus* is another well-studied EM Basidiomycete species, which has been sequenced to 36.2× coverage (Joint Genome Institute). Studies on *Paxillus involutus* are unraveling the molecular basis for how ectomycorrhizae act as both decomposers and mutualists. In particular, novel spectroscopic strategies combined with transcriptomics have now provided insight into the mechanism for how *P. involutus* obtains nitrogen by decomposing complex substrates in the soil (Chap. 8). There are also Ascomycete EM fungi, belonging to the classes Dothideomycetes (Chap. 9) and Pezizomycetes. The genome sequence of the truffle *Tuber melanosporum* represents the latter class; comparison with *Laccaria bicolor* shows that the set of genes enabling symbiosis has evolved differently (Martin et al. 2010; Veneault-Fourrey and Martin 2011). In contrast to *L. bicolor*, *T. melanosporum* does not have strikingly expanded gene families of small secreted proteins and might have some potential for breakdown of host cell

walls. *Trichoderma* spp. (Chap. 6) are mycotrophs that parasitize and destroy other fungi, commonly aboveground Basidiomycetes. They can also interact with plant roots and colonize the outer cortex layers in a way similar to EM, although it is debated whether root-interacting *Trichoderma* spp. can be considered as true symbionts. Similar to EM, *Trichoderma* spp. do not reach the vascular system, do not break down plant tissue, and do not cause disease. Nevertheless, the *Trichoderma* genomes encode enzymes for plant cell wall degradation which are needed to establish themselves in pre-decayed wood (Chap. 6). *Piriformospora indica* is a Basidiomycete root symbiont which interacts first as a biotroph, followed by a second phase characterized by local plant cell death which does not result in disease. The genome and transcriptome have some characteristics of biotrophs, for example, expression of genes encoding small secreted proteins, early in the interaction with roots (Zuccaro et al. 2011). Other species certainly can invade roots and cause disease, for example, the destructive soilborne pathogen(s) *Fusarium oxysporum* (Chap. 7). Comparison of these genomes should guide understanding of where symbiosis ends and disease starts. Finally, one must remember that myriad species have not been sequenced or even studied. Chapter 14 introduces the Archaeorhizomycetes, a novel group of soil fungi which is not yet represented among the sequenced genomes.

1.4 Pathogens and the Soil

Some soilborne fungi are serious pathogens of roots or of the entire plant, and several species have been sequenced. An isolate from the widespread Basidiomycete pathogen *Rhizoctonia solani* (isolated from a lettuce plant) was sequenced. The genome was characterized in detail (Wibberg et al. 2012), and impending functional analysis may shed light on the difference between pathogens and symbionts. Two widespread, destructive necrotrophic plant pathogens *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* and *Botrytis cinerea* persist in the soil, with the help of resistant sclerotia that develop from mycelia. This contrasts with some other members of the Leotiomycete class which are biotrophs on leaves. The sequences of *Sclerotinia sclerotiorum* and *Botrytis cinerea* provided an opportunity for comparative genomics (Amselem et al. 2011). The two species are close, and indeed, there was a high level of sequence identity and synteny. There are also some revealing differences and biological insight. *S. sclerotiorum* does not make conidia and relies on sclerotia alone for survival and eventual dispersal, while *B. cinerea* disperses by numerous small conidia, in addition to being able to survive as sclerotia in the soil. The genomes, though, did not provide an explanation for why *S. sclerotiorum* does not conidiate, since the relevant genes are present. Even though there were unique secondary metabolite clusters, there were no obvious unique virulence determinants, and regulation appears more important than the presence of sets of genes (Amselem et al. 2011).

The three pathogens just mentioned are bona fide soil residents, but the soil is a reservoir for some foliar plant pathogens whose spores are distributed above ground, for example, Southern corn leaf blight (Chap. 9). Thus, one can look above ground without going too far from the main emphasis of this volume, a case in point being rice blast and its relatives (Chap. 4). One of the plant pathogens whose molecular biology and genomics is most advanced is *Ustilago maydis* (Kamper et al. 2006). *U. maydis* was compared with the closely related *Sporisorium reilianum*. Among the salient findings from this study was that the effector repertoire has diverged much more than the average over the genome (Schirawski et al. 2010). If looking above ground, pathogens of humans are of vital importance. Three Zygomycete fungi, whose natural niche is dung and soil, have been sequenced: *Phycomyces*, *Mucor*, and *Rhizopus*. *Mucor* is one of many causes of opportunistic filamentous fungal mycosis (Perusquia-Ortiz et al. 2012). *Rhizopus* is an emerging pathogen (Chap. 11). The dermatophyte fungi are not normally life-threatening but cause immense suffering. The dermatophytes are completely adapted to life on the skin, rather than being opportunistic pathogens. Soil saprophytic, geophilic species are closely related to those causing disease on human or animal hosts, and when five dermatophyte species including the geophyte *Microsporum gypseum* were sequenced and compared, the genomes were highly collinear. There were also genes unique to each species, but signaling and regulation of gene expression may play the major role in determining host and niche (Martinez et al. 2012).

1.5 Contribution of Genomics: Progress and Outlook

Genomic sequences provide an unprecedented view into the diversity of fungi that reside in the soil or spend part of their life cycle there and, of course, into their relatives that have no association with soil. A recurring motif in the published genome papers and in the chapters of this volume is that, sometimes, analysis of the genomes directly answers a biological question. Biochemical analyses, though, are often needed to go from genome to enzyme activity and function. When a group of fungi was long known for a particular function, there is abundant biochemical literature, but less so for species where new biochemical potential was found to be encoded in the genomes. An example is lignin degradation by rot fungi of the Agaricomycetes (Chap. 13), while the potential exists in Ascomycetes (Chap. 12), where new biochemical questions can now be asked. *Aspergillus* spp. are the classical models in which to study secondary metabolites, while the newly discovered biosynthetic clusters in other species, some of them discussed here, are leading chemists into new territory (Brakhage 2013; Lim et al. 2012). In other analyses, huge efforts led to an understanding of genome structure, phylogeny, and evolution, but cannot yet give a full answer as to why one species is a pathogen while a related one is a saprophyte, or mutualist. There are many hints in the chapters that follow to suggest that regulatory networks may provide the answers. From the technological

point of view, the genomes are the first step, prerequisite to any attempt at understanding these regulatory networks.

References

Adams TH, Boylan MT, Timberlake WE (1988) brlA is necessary and sufficient to direct conidiophore development in Aspergillus nidulans. Cell 54:353–362

Adams TH, Wieser JK, Yu JH (1998) Asexual sporulation in Aspergillus nidulans. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:35–54

Amselem J, Cuomo CA, van Kan JA, Viaud M, Benito EP, Couloux A, Coutinho PM, de Vries RP, Dyer PS, Fillinger S, Fournier E, Gout L, Hahn M, Kohn L, Lapalu N, Plummer KM, Pradier JM, Quevillon E, Sharon A, Simon A, Ten Have A, Tudzynski B, Tudzynski P, Wincker P, Andrew M, Anthouard V, Beever RE, Beffa R, Benoit I, Bouzid O, Brault B, Chen Z, Choquer M, Collemare J, Cotton P, Danchin EG, Da Silva C, Gautier A, Giraud C, Giraud T, Gonzalez C, Grossetete S, Guldener U, Henrissat B, Howlett BJ, Kodira C, Kretschmer M, Lappartient A, Leroch M, Levis C, Mauceli E, Neuveglise C, Oeser B, Pearson M, Poulain J, Poussereau N, Quesneville H, Rascle C, Schumacher J, Segurens B, Sexton A, Silva E, Sirven C, Soanes DM, Talbot NJ, Templeton M, Yandava C, Yarden O, Zeng Q, Rollins JA, Lebrun MH, Dickman M (2011) Genomic analysis of the necrotrophic fungal pathogens Sclerotinia sclerotiorum and Botrytis cinerea. PLoS Genet 7:e1002230

Ballario P, Vittorioso P, Magrelli A, Talora C, Cabibbo A, Macino G (1996) White collar-1, a central regulator of blue light responses in Neurospora, is a zinc finger protein. EMBO J 15:1650–1657

Banuett F, Herskowitz I (1994) Identification of Fuz7, a Ustilago maydis MEk/MAPKK homolog required for a-locus-dependent and -independent steps in the fungal life cycle. Genes Dev 8:1367–1378

Bonfante P, Requena N (2011) Dating in the dark: how roots respond to fungal signals to establish arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:451–457

Borkovich KA, Alex LA, Yarden O, Freitag M, Turner GE, Read ND, Seiler S, Bell-Pedersen D, Paietta J, Plesofsky N, Plamann M, Goodrich-Tanrikulu M, Schulte U, Mannhaupt G, Nargang FE, Radford A, Selitrennikoff C, Galagan JE, Dunlap JC, Loros JJ, Catcheside D, Inoue H, Aramayo R, Polymenis M, Selker EU, Sachs MS, Marzluf GA, Paulsen I, Davis R, Ebbole DJ, Zelter A, Kalkman ER, O'Rourke R, Bowring F, Yeadon J, Ishii C, Suzuki K, Sakai W, Pratt R (2004) Lessons from the genome sequence of Neurospora crassa: tracing the path from genomic blueprint to multicellular organism. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 68:1–108

Brakhage AA (2013) Regulation of fungal secondary metabolism. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:21–32

Clemmensen KE, Bahr A, Ovaskainen O, Dahlberg A, Ekblad A, Wallander H, Stenlid J, Finlay RD, Wardle DA, Lindahl BD (2013) Roots and associated fungi drive long-term carbon sequestration in boreal forest. Science 339:1615–1618

Davis RH, Perkins DD (2002) Timeline: Neurospora: a model of model microbes. Nat Rev Genet 3:397–403

Dean RA, Talbot NJ, Ebbole DJ, Farman ML, Mitchell TK, Orbach MJ, Thon M, Kulkarni R, Xu JR, Pan H, Read ND, Lee YH, Carbone I, Brown D, Oh YY, Donofrio N, Jeong JS, Soanes DM, Djonovic S, Kolomiets E, Rehmeyer C, Li W, Harding M, Kim S, Lebrun MH, Bohnert H, Coughlan S, Butler J, Calvo S, Ma LJ, Nicol R, Purcell S, Nusbaum C, Galagan JE, Birren BW (2005) The genome sequence of the rice blast fungus Magnaporthe grisea. Nature 434:980–986

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Borkovich KA, Selker EU, Read ND, Jaffe D, FitzHugh W, Ma LJ, Smirnov S, Purcell S, Rehman B, Elkins T, Engels R, Wang S, Nielsen CB, Butler J, Endrizzi M, Qui D, Ianakiev P, Bell-Pedersen D, Nelson MA, Werner-Washburne M, Selitrennikoff CP, Kinsey JA, Braun EL, Zelter A, Schulte U, Kothe GO, Jedd G, Mewes W,

Staben C, Marcotte E, Greenberg D, Roy A, Foley K, Naylor J, Stange-Thomann N, Barrett R, Gnerre S, Kamal M, Kamvysselis M, Mauceli E, Bielke C, Rudd S, Frishman D, Krystofova S, Rasmussen C, Metzenberg RL, Perkins DD, Kroken S, Cogoni C, Macino G, Catcheside D, Li W, Pratt RJ, Osmani SA, DeSouza CP, Glass L, Orbach MJ, Berglund JA, Voelker R, Yarden O, Plamann M, Seiler S, Dunlap J, Radford A, Aramayo R, Natvig DO, Alex LA, Mannhaupt G, Ebbole DJ, Freitag M, Paulsen I, Sachs MS, Lander ES, Nusbaum C, Birren B (2003) The genome sequence of the filamentous fungus Neurospora crassa. Nature 422:859–868

Gomez SK, Javot H, Deewatthanawong P, Torres-Jerez I, Tang Y, Blancaflor EB, Udvardi MK, Harrison MJ (2009) Medicago truncatula and Glomus intraradices gene expression in cortical cells harboring arbuscules in the arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. BMC Plant Biol 9:10

Kamper J, Kahmann R, Bolker M, Ma LJ, Brefort T, Saville BJ, Banuett F, Kronstad JW, Gold SE, Muller O, Perlin MH, Wosten HA, de Vries R, Ruiz-Herrera J, Reynaga-Pena CG, Snetselaar K, McCann M, Perez-Martin J, Feldbrugge M, Basse CW, Steinberg G, Ibeas JI, Holloman W, Guzman P, Farman M, Stajich JE, Sentandreu R, Gonzalez-Prieto JM, Kennell JC, Molina L, Schirawski J, Mendoza-Mendoza A, Greilinger D, Munch K, Rossel N, Scherer M, Vranes M, Ladendorf O, Vincon V, Fuchs U, Sandrock B, Meng S, Ho EC, Cahill MJ, Boyce KJ, Klose J, Klosterman SJ, Deelstra HJ, Ortiz-Castellanos L, Li W, Sanchez-Alonso P, Schreier PH, Hauser-Hahn I, Vaupel M, Koopmann E, Friedrich G, Voss H, Schluter T, Margolis J, Platt D, Swimmer C, Gnirke A, Chen F, Vysotskaia V, Mannhaupt G, Guldener U, Munsterkotter M, Haase D, Oesterheld M, Mewes HW, Mauceli EW, DeCaprio D, Wade CM, Butler J, Young S, Jaffe DB, Calvo S, Nusbaum C, Galagan J, Birren BW (2006) Insights from the genome of the biotrophic fungal plant pathogen Ustilago maydis. Nature 444:97–101

Kim TS, Logsdon BA, Park S, Mezey JG, Lee K (2007) Quantitative trait loci for the circadian clock in Neurospora crassa. Genetics 177:2335–2347

Kloppholz S, Kuhn H, Requena N (2011) A secreted fungal effector of Glomus intraradices promotes symbiotic biotrophy. Curr Biol 21:1204–1209

Klosterman SJ, Subbarao KV, Kang S, Veronese P, Gold SE, Thomma BP, Chen Z, Henrissat B, Lee YH, Park J, Garcia-Pedrajas MD, Barbara DJ, Anchieta A, de Jonge R, Santhanam P, Maruthachalam K, Atallah Z, Amyotte SG, Paz Z, Inderbitzin P, Hayes RJ, Heiman DI, Young S, Zeng Q, Engels R, Galagan J, Cuomo CA, Dobinson KF, Ma LJ (2011) Comparative genomics yields insights into niche adaptation of plant vascular wilt pathogens. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002137

Lim FY, Sanchez JF, Wang CC, Keller NP (2012) Toward awakening cryptic secondary metabolite gene clusters in filamentous fungi. Methods Enzymol 517:303–324

Ma LJ, van der Does HC, Borkovich KA, Coleman JJ, Daboussi MJ, Di Pietro A, Dufresne M, Freitag M, Grabherr M, Henrissat B, Houterman PM, Kang S, Shim WB, Woloshuk C, Xie X, Xu JR, Antoniw J, Baker SE, Bluhm BH, Breakspear A, Brown DW, Butchko RA, Chapman S, Coulson R, Coutinho PM, Danchin EG, Diener A, Gale LR, Gardiner DM, Goff S, Hammond-Kosack KE, Hilburn K, Hua-Van A, Jonkers W, Kazan K, Kodira CD, Koehrsen M, Kumar L, Lee YH, Li L, Manners JM, Miranda-Saavedra D, Mukherjee M, Park G, Park J, Park SY, Proctor RH, Regev A, Ruiz-Roldan MC, Sain D, Sakthikumar S, Sykes S, Schwartz DC, Turgeon BG, Wapinski I, Yoder O, Young S, Zeng Q, Zhou S, Galagan J, Cuomo CA, Kistler HC, Rep M (2010) Comparative genomics reveals mobile pathogenicity chromosomes in Fusarium. Nature 464:367–373

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahren D, Brun A, Danchin EG, Duchaussoy F, Gibon J, Kohler A, Lindquist E, Pereda V, Salamov A, Shapiro HJ, Wuyts J, Blaudez D, Buee M, Brokstein P, Canback B, Cohen D, Courty PE, Coutinho PM, Delaruelle C, Detter JC, Deveau A, DiFazio S, Duplessis S, Fraissinet-Tachet L, Lucic E, Frey-Klett P, Fourrey C, Feussner I, Gay G, Grimwood J, Hoegger PJ, Jain P, Kilaru S, Labbe J, Lin YC, Legue V, Le Tacon F, Marmeisse R, Melayah D, Montanini B, Muratet M, Nehls U, Niculita-Hirzel H, Oudot-Le Secq MP, Peter M, Quesneville H, Rajashekar B, Reich M, Rouhier N, Schmutz J, Yin T,

Chalot M, Henrissat B, Kues U, Lucas S, Van de Peer Y, Podila GK, Polle A, Pukkila PJ, Richardson PM, Rouze P, Sanders IR, Stajich JE, Tunlid A, Tuskan G, Grigoriev IV (2008) The genome of Laccaria bicolor provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martin F, Kohler A, Murat C, Balestrini R, Coutinho PM, Jaillon O, Montanini B, Morin E, Noel B, Percudani R, Porcel B, Rubini A, Amicucci A, Amselem J, Anthouard V, Arcioni S, Artiguenave F, Aury JM, Ballario P, Bolchi A, Brenna A, Brun A, Buee M, Cantarel B, Chevalier G, Couloux A, Da Silva C, Denoeud F, Duplessis S, Ghignone S, Hilselberger B, Iotti M, Marcais B, Mello A, Miranda M, Pacioni G, Quesneville H, Riccioni C, Ruotolo R, Splivallo R, Stocchi V, Tisserant E, Viscomi AR, Zambonelli A, Zampieri E, Henrissat B, Lebrun MH, Paolocci F, Bonfante P, Ottonello S, Wincker P (2010) Perigord black truffle genome uncovers evolutionary origins and mechanisms of symbiosis. Nature 464:1033–1038

Martinez DA, Oliver BG, Graser Y, Goldberg JM, Li W, Martinez-Rossi NM, Monod M, Shelest E, Barton RC, Birch E, Brakhage AA, Chen Z, Gurr SJ, Heiman D, Heitman J, Kosti I, Rossi A, Saif S, Samalova M, Saunders CW, Shea T, Summerbell RC, Xu J, Young S, Zeng Q, Birren BW, Cuomo CA, White TC (2012) Comparative genome analysis of Trichophyton rubrum and related dermatophytes reveals candidate genes involved in infection. MBio 3:e00259-12

McClung CR, Fox BA, Dunlap JC (1989) The Neurospora clock gene frequency shares a sequence element with the Drosophila clock gene period. Nature 339:558–562

Morin E, Kohler A, Baker AR, Foulongne-Oriol M, Lombard V, Nagy LG, Ohm RA, Patyshakuliyeva A, Brun A, Aerts AL, Bailey AM, Billette C, Coutinho PM, Deakin G, Doddapaneni H, Floudas D, Grimwood J, Hilden K, Kues U, Labutti KM, Lapidus A, Lindquist EA, Lucas SM, Murat C, Riley RW, Salamov AA, Schmutz J, Subramanian V, Wosten HA, Xu J, Eastwood DC, Foster GD, Sonnenberg AS, Cullen D, de Vries RP, Lundell T, Hibbett DS, Henrissat B, Burton KS, Kerrigan RW, Challen MP, Grigoriev IV, Martin F (2012) Genome sequence of the button mushroom Agaricus bisporus reveals mechanisms governing adaptation to a humic-rich ecological niche. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:17501–17506

Oldroyd GE (2013) Speak, friend, and enter: signalling systems that promote beneficial symbiotic associations in plants. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:252–263

Oldroyd GE, Harrison MJ, Paszkowski U (2009) Reprogramming plant cells for endosymbiosis. Science 324:753–754

Perkins DD (1992) Neurospora: the organism behind the molecular revolution. Genetics 130:687–701

Perusquia-Ortiz AM, Vazquez-Gonzalez D, Bonifaz A (2012) Opportunistic filamentous mycoses: aspergillosis, mucormycosis, phaeohyphomycosis and hyalohyphomycosis. J Dtsch Dermatol Ges 10:611–621, quiz 621-612

Plett JM, Martin F (2011) Blurred boundaries: lifestyle lessons from ectomycorrhizal fungal genomes. Trends Genet 27:14–22

Remy W, Taylor TN, Hass H, Kerp H (1994) Four hundred-million-year-old vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 91:11841–11843

Schirawski J, Mannhaupt G, Munch K, Brefort T, Schipper K, Doehlemann G, Di Stasio M, Rossel N, Mendoza-Mendoza A, Pester D, Muller O, Winterberg B, Meyer E, Ghareeb H, Wollenberg T, Munsterkotter M, Wong P, Walter M, Stukenbrock E, Guldener U, Kahmann R (2010) Pathogenicity determinants in smut fungi revealed by genome comparison. Science 330:1546–1548

Tisserant E, Kohler A, Dozolme-Seddas P, Balestrini R, Benabdellah K, Colard A, Croll D, Da Silva C, Gomez SK, Koul R, Ferrol N, Fiorilli V, Formey D, Franken P, Helber N, Hijri M, Lanfranco L, Lindquist E, Liu Y, Malbreil M, Morin E, Poulain J, Shapiro H, van Tuinen D, Waschke A, Azcon-Aguilar C, Becard G, Bonfante P, Harrison MJ, Kuster H, Lammers P, Paszkowski U, Requena N, Rensing SA, Roux C, Sanders IR, Shachar-Hill Y, Tuskan G, Young JP, Gianinazzi-Pearson V, Martin F (2012) The transcriptome of the arbuscular

mycorrhizal fungus Glomus intraradices (DAOM 197198) reveals functional tradeoffs in an obligate symbiont. New Phytol 193:755–769

Veneault-Fourrey C, Martin F (2011) Mutualistic interactions on a knife-edge between saprotrophy and pathogenesis. Curr Opin Plant Biol 14:444–450

Wibberg D, Jelonek L, Rupp O, Hennig M, Eikmeyer F, Goesmann A, Hartmann A, Borriss R, Grosch R, Puhler A, Schluter A (2012) Establishment and interpretation of the genome sequence of the phytopathogenic fungus Rhizoctonia solani AG1-IB isolate 7/3/14. J Biotechnol. doi:10.1016/j.jbiotec.2012.12.010

Xu JR, Hamer JE (1996) MAP kinase and cAMP signaling regulate infection structure formation and pathogenic growth in the rice blast fungus Magnaporthe grisea. Genes Dev 10:2696–2706

Zhao X, Mehrabi R, Xu JR (2007) Mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways and fungal pathogenesis. Eukaryot Cell 6:1701–1714

Zuccaro A, Lahrmann U, Guldener U, Langen G, Pfiffi S, Biedenkopf D, Wong P, Samans B, Grimm C, Basiewicz M, Murat C, Martin F, Kogel KH (2011) Endophytic life strategies decoded by genome and transcriptome analyses of the mutualistic root symbiont Piriformospora indica. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002290

Chapter 2
Fungal Genomics for Energy and Environment

Igor V. Grigoriev

2.1 Introduction

The finite resource of fossil fuels and the adverse ecological impacts of their exploration and use pose significant challenges for mankind. Development of alternative energy sources goes hand in hand with restoring ecological balance. This requires knowledge of how natural biological systems work. One such system includes fungi that interact with plants as symbionts, pathogens, or decomposers. These interactions, first, determine growth of biomass and, second, provide clues toward efficient conversion of plant-produced lignocellulose into energy, offering real alternatives to fossil fuels. Understanding these processes at the molecular level is therefore a critical challenge.

The tools of molecular biology and genomics can help us meet this challenge. Over the past decades, genomics, and genome sequencing in particular, have emerged as powerful tools for biological research. In the last few years, due to the introduction of the next-generation sequencing (NGS) technologies, these tools went through dramatic transformations. The first genome projects like sequencing the genome of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* were colossal multi-institutional, multinational sequencing efforts (Goffeau et al. 1996), which reached their culmination with the Human Genome Project (Lander et al. 2001). Though deemed an extremely large quantity of data several years ago, the 3×10^9 base pairs of the human genome represent only a fraction of the data produced from just a single lane of an Illumina sequencer these days. Genomics technologies are thus poised to help us study not just individual organisms but entire ecological systems.

With technology breakthroughs, the scope of the projects has evolved accordingly. Genomics projects have reached an unprecedented scale like the 1000 human genomes (2010) or ENCODE (2004) and enable scientists to ask new types of

I.V. Grigoriev (✉)
US Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute, 2800 Mitchell Drive, Walnut Creek, CA 94598, USA
e-mail: ivgrigoriev@lbl.gov

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_2,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

questions. How can genomics help to obtain a sustainable growth of biomass? What is the role of microbial association with plants? Do genome features determine if a fungus is a friend (symbiont) or a foe (pathogen)? How do microbes efficiently convert biomass into energy? What biological mechanisms govern ecological balance? Here, in the context of fungal genomics for energy and the environment, we discuss tools, applications, and the most recent developments available to explore the biology of soil fungi at the molecular level.

2.2 The Tools of Genome Sequencing

The first sequencing experiments were very laborious. Not long ago, a scientist would have to make a significant effort to sequence a single gene. At the end of the twentieth century, Sanger sequencing (Sanger et al. 1977) became the dominant way to sequence genomes, including the human genome. At the beginning of the twenty-first century, suddenly several new NGS platforms were introduced (Metzker 2010). First, 454 (now Roche) offered a new technique called pyrosequencing as a way to read DNA fragments in a high-throughput fashion and for just a fraction of the cost of Sanger sequencing. Shortly after, Solexa (later acquired by Illumina) developed a new way to produce very large numbers of very short (initially 25 bp) reads at a much less cost. More recently, Pacific Biosciences presented a single molecule sequencing approach to produce long reads but with a relatively high error rate (up to 15 %). These are just a few among the larger collection of sequencing platforms that are available today. Each of them dramatically improved characteristics of the produced sequence reads—length, error rate, throughput, and GC bias—during just the last few years. Innovation continues as new players like Oxford Nanopore promise groundbreaking solutions in the near future (Pennisi 2012).

Many sequence analysis tasks have been solved in the era of Sanger sequencing. Genome assemblers like Arachne (Batzoglou et al. 2002) are capable of putting together Sanger reads into assemblies for both small bacteria-size and large plant-size genomes. However, some sequencing and analysis problems remain quite challenging. Sequencing shows some platform-dependent bias. Repetitive sequences make it difficult to place reads uniquely into an assembly. Polymorphism and polyploidy interfere with clean separation of haplotypes.

A few dozen fungal genomes were sequenced using the Sanger platform and have draft assemblies available in public databases like GenBank (http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/genbank). Using multiple iterations of targeted Sanger sequencing, many gaps in several draft genomes were closed in a process called genome finishing. This resulted in at least a dozen small yeast-size finished genomes (Dujon et al. 2004) starting with *S. cerevisiae* and only a couple of finished genomes of filamentous fungi (Berka et al. 2011; Goodwin et al. 2011). Many others including the model fungus *Neurospora crassa* went through multiple rounds of

genome improvements but continue to keep "secret messages" in some as-yet unresolved parts of their genomes (Galagan et al. 2003).

Genes encoded in the sequenced and assembled genomes can be predicted and functionally annotated using different computational approaches (Grigoriev et al. 2006; Haas et al. 2011). The complex intron-exon structure of a eukaryotic genome makes annotation a challenge in comparison to the simpler problem of calling ORFs in compact, gene-dense prokaryotic genomes (in which genes typically lack introns). Eukaryotic gene prediction usually combines several methods including transcriptome-based (deriving genes from ESTs mapped to a genome assembly), homology-based (based on proteins from other genomes mapped to a translation of the assembly), and ab initio gene predictors. For the latter, which sometimes is the last resort (since preference is usually given to genes predicted from experimental data or similarity to known proteins), gene structure features are derived from a collection of known genes and then are searched for in the entire genome to predict new genes using these features. Gene structures or models predicted using these methods also require annotation methods to predict possible gene functions. For a given protein encoded in a genome, function can be inferred from known proteins or protein domains if their protein sequences are sufficiently similar as determined by various alignment programs like BLAST or HMMER (Altschul et al. 1990; Bateman et al. 1999). The problem is that despite the quickly growing number of sequenced genes, the number of biochemically characterized proteins grows very slowly. In addition, computational methods for gene prediction and annotation as well as reference databases themselves are error prone. Therefore, both structural and functional annotations are often followed by manual inspection in which trained analysts look at genomes, predicted genes and available lines of evidence in genome browsers. The largest scale efforts in manual curation have been achieved for the human genome, although several model fungi including *S. cerevisiae*, *S. pombe*, *and N. crassa* also have curators devoted to iterative improvement of these datasets (Howe et al. 2008).

The new sequencing technologies have brought new types of data, for example, very short reads in large numbers from Illumina or longer and error-prone reads from 454 and Pacific Biosciences sequencers. Variation in read sizes and numbers demands completely different analytical approaches. Various implementations of de Bruijn graph have been used in new assemblers such as Newbler, Velvet, and AllPathsLG that were tuned for different platforms (Earl et al. 2011). Hybrid sequencing and assembly has become the norm, with assemblies often being constructed from Illumina, 454, and Sanger reads all pooled together, often with different assembly algorithms used for the different kinds of reads. However, even though NGS was much cheaper than Sanger sequencing, the resulting genomes are generally of lower quality. To compensate for this, the questions posed and the applications of these platforms were adjusted accordingly. For example, NGS has given rise to massive re-sequencing and transcriptomics applications. Annotation methods have changed as well using RNA-seq data as a primary source of data.

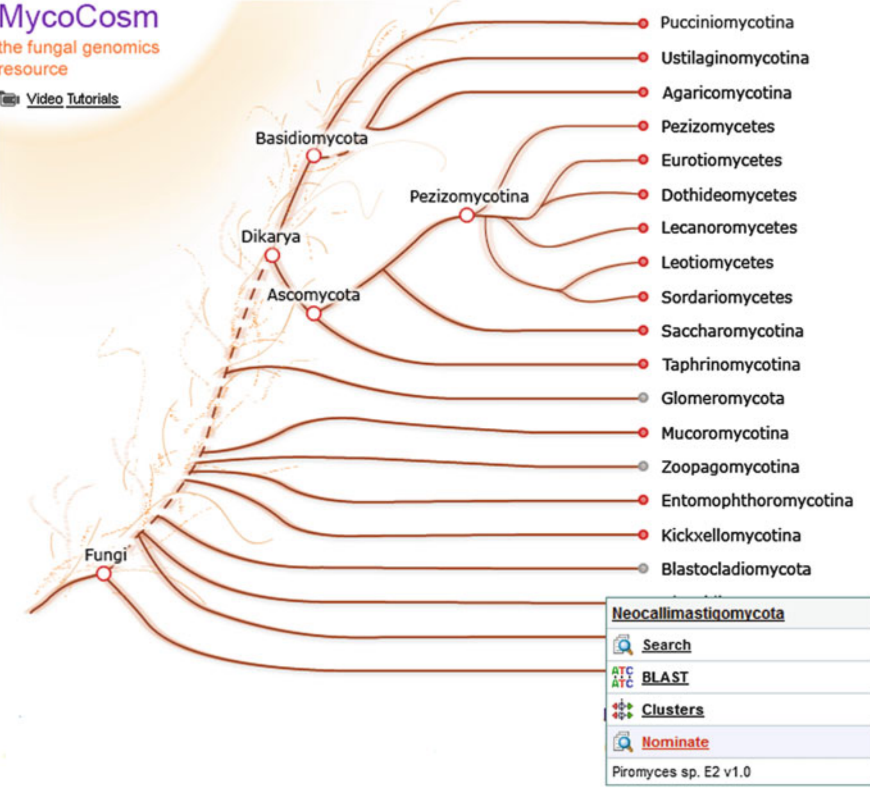


Fig. 2.1 JGI fungal genome portal MycoCosm (http://jgi.doe.gov/fungi) with 200+ fungal genomes and tools for their comparative analysis and nomination of new fungal species for sequencing

Data integration and visualization problems formulated during the human genome era from the need to put genome sequences, gene predictions, ESTs, and protein homologs on one screen became even more complex when confronting massive amounts of sequence data and large numbers of sequenced genomes. While GenBank offers a large collection of sequenced genomes and many bioinformatics tools are open access, the lack of their integration makes them difficult and time-consuming to use. One solution has been developed specifically for fungal genomes by the US Department of Energy (DOE) Joint Genome Institute (JGI): the web-based fungal genome portal MycoCosm, which offers 200+ fungal genomes and tools for their comparative analysis and manual curation (Grigoriev et al. 2012; Fig. 2.1).

2.3 Plant–Microbe Interactions and Evolution of Fungal Lifestyles

The Human Genome Project started a revolution in health care. Similarly, plant genomics became a game changer in plant breeding. The poplar genome (Tuskan et al. 2006), for example, led to research investigating the role of various transcription factors on plant growth. However, the genome only reflects the organism's potential to develop, while the actual growth and development depends on interaction with the environment including microbial interactions. Fungal symbionts and pathogens are important players in these interactions. The majority of plant species are dependent on mycorrhizal associations. Pathogens can destroy a significant share of agricultural and bioenergy crops like the Southern corn leaf blight, which in the 1970s destroyed the entire corn crop in several US states. Decomposers recycle dead materials to provide nutrients for the new generations of primary producers and microbes associated with them. These lifestyles—symbiosis, pathogenicity, and saprotrophism—are encoded in genomes. Thus, genome analysis and comparison of different genomics features are essential for understanding fungal lifestyles, their evolution, and interactions to possibly lead to better management practices.

Genomes of several organisms involved in interactions with each other in natural ecosystems have been sequenced. One such system includes a poplar tree and associated ectomycorrhizal symbiont *Laccaria bicolor* and pathogenic rust *Melampsora laricis-populina*. Interestingly, genomes of these symbiotic and pathogenic fungi share several things in common: large genomes inflated with repeats and expanded gene families, the most interesting of which is a large number of small secreted proteins (Martin et al. 2008; Duplessis et al. 2011). Despite being very abundant, small secreted proteins are frequently lineage specific. They may share some functional domains between symbionts and pathogens but hardly show any sequence similarity even between closely related poplar rust and wheat rust. Interestingly, in all these fungi, genes encoding the small secreted proteins are among the most expressed in planta, during infection of the plant host.

Another important part of both plant symbiont and pathogen gene sets is CAZymes, the carbohydrate-active enzymes (Cantarel et al. 2009) involved in lignocellulose degradation, fungal cell wall reconstruction, and other important processes. In contrast to pathogens, whose expanded CAZy families aim to modify and destroy the host plant, the genome of symbiotic *L. bicolor* contains a relatively limited arsenal of CAZymes and a lack of those involved in plant cell wall degradation, which results in a protection mechanism to minimize the impact on the plant host. The symbionts thus evade the plant's defense responses (Martin et al. 2008). Interestingly, this reduction is similar to the reduced CAZy profiles of one group of saprobic, wood-decaying fungi called brown rot fungi. In contrast to the white rot fungi (the second and dominant type of wood decay), brown rot fungi have evolved to employ a less "expensive" mechanism for lignocellulose degradation (Eastwood 2011; Martinez et al. 2004, 2009). Instead of enzymatic attack typical for white rot fungi, brown rot relatives are thought to use Fenton chemistry

to generate highly reactive hydroxyl radicals to break cellulose chains. They also do not degrade lignin and thus lack the corresponding genes in their genomes.

For some wood decayers, it is not always obvious if white or brown rot is their natural mode of decay (R. Blanchette, pers. comm.) and their genomes may provide some hints. On the other hand, the genome of *Agaricus bisporus* apparently encodes enzymes involved in lignin degradation, though the fungus has not been observed to do so in nature (Morin et al. 2012). Fungi efficiently combine different lifestyles. *L. bicolor* as a saprobe extracts nutrients from decaying organic matter to provide them to the host plant, with which it also forms mycorrhizal association. The white rot fungus *Heterobasidion irregulare*, also a pathogen of conifers and other trees, encodes both of these lifestyles into its genome and balances between these lifestyles even when growing on the same host (Olson et al. 2012). Thus, interactions between plants and fungi are complex, and lifestyles of members of these interactors—symbionts, parasites, and saprobes—are hard to define with clear boundaries. A better understanding of the genomics basis of different lifestyles will require more complex analyses and large-scale comparative genomics studies.

2.4 Large-Scale Comparative Genomics

Discoveries based on the analysis of individual genomes become stronger in the context of comparative analysis. Instead of sequencing genomes one after another, analysis of groups of phylogenetically divergent fungi that share common traits or lifestyles may enable mapping of these traits to a specific set of genes and genomics features. JGI is one of the institutes partnering with numerous scientific groups around the world to explore the diversity of fungi, which are important for solving energy and environmental problems. Starting with the first sequenced basidiomycete, the white rot fungus *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* in 2004, by 2012 JGI has contributed to over a half of all fungal genome projects worldwide. After delivering several "first of its kind" fungal genomes—wood decayers, ectomycorrhizae, and thermophiles—JGI launched a project called the Genomic Encyclopedia of Fungi (Grigoriev et al. 2011) devoted to several areas of plant health and biotechnological applications for energy and the environment, the DOE mission areas. By 2012, the first two chapters of the encyclopedia, the large-scale comparative genomics studies, were published (Floudas et al. 2012; Ohm et al. 2012), while sequencing for several others was nearly complete.

Understanding the mechanisms of lignocellulose degradation by wood-decay fungi is important to finding new ways for processing biomass into biofuels. The first sequenced white and brown rot fungi, as mentioned earlier, revealed completely different mechanisms of wood decay encoded in their genomes and justified more extensive sequencing of this group of fungi. About 30 species of wood-decay fungi were selected for sequencing at JGI, and recently 12 of them were analyzed and reported in the context of 31 other sequenced fungal genomes (Floudas et al. 2012). This work has catalogued the largest collection of genes

encoding CAZymes while focusing on the analysis of the class II peroxidases involved in lignin decay. The ancestor of both white and brown rot fungi (as well as mycorrhizal *L. bicolor*) was capable of processing lignin, which was produced by plants and converted into coal in prehistoric times. Molecular clock analysis suggested that the white rot ancestor evolved approximately at the end of Carboniferous, i.e., potentially in time to contribute to the significant decline of coal accumulation observed at that time. In other words, what could have contributed to the decline in fossil fuel accumulation ~300 Mya can help us today to make progress in developing biofuels.

In order to convert biomass into biofuels, the former needs to be produced in a sustainable fashion. Pathogenic fungi are notorious for destroying a significant fraction of agricultural crops and can destroy bioenergy crops to the same or greater extent. In order to protect plants, we should better understand the molecular basis of different strategies of pathogenicity. The Dothideomycetes are an example of a diverse class of fungi that contains a large number of plant pathogens. Several independent research groups at various genome centers have been sequencing fungal genomes from this class and converged in 2008 at JGI to consolidate the genomics data for comparative analysis and propose a much larger set of sequencing targets. As a result of this effort, 14 newly sequenced Dothideomycete genomes were compared with each other and fungi sequenced earlier to explore different modes of pathogenicity and patterns of their evolution (Ohm et al. 2012). This revealed common features of genome organization across the entire class: an inversion-based mechanism for mesosynteny or gene reshuffling within the boundaries of chromosomes; a variable number of dispensable chromosomes with unclear role in pathogenesis; and blocks of genes conserved in most of these species and expressed during plant infection in some of them. Gene family expansions and contractions were traced along the evolution of major groups of Dothideomycetes, Capnodiales, and Pleosporales and revealed larger sets of genes involved in secondary metabolism and plant cell wall degradation in necrotrophs vs. biotrophs with stealth pathogenesis like *Mycosphaerella graminicola* (Goodwin et al. 2011). This global genome comparison was followed by several functional studies focused on specific gene families (Condon et al. 2013), plant-pathogen systems (Manning et al. 2013), and functional platforms (Cho et al. 2012). One of them suggested that differences in gene regulation may be the key in determining host specificity even in very closely related species such as *Dothistroma* and *Cladosporium fulvum* (de Wit et al. 2012) and that functional genomics would be the next critical step in understanding fungal biology.

Besides the Agaricomycetes and Dothideomycetes, large-scale comparative analysis of other groups of fungi has been progressing quickly: these include 30+ mycorrhizal fungi (Chap. 8), 20+ yeasts of biotechnology and taxonomic importance, and 10+ species of *Aspergillus* and *Penicillium* for various biotech applications (Chap. 5). Finally, the desire to ask bigger questions through larger scale sequencing transformed one of the chapters, fungal diversity, into a project of unprecedented scale: the 1000 fungal genome project.

2.5 The 1000 Fungal Genome Project

Advances in genome sequencing have allowed scientists to launch very large-scale genomics projects like 1000 human genomes (2010), 1001 *Arabidopsis* genomes (Weigel and Mott 2009), and GEBA (Wu et al. 2009). *The 1000 fungal genome projec*t is one of the latest JGI large-scale genomics initiatives aimed at highly divergent fungal species to obtain a comprehensive list of reference genomes, to better assess fungal diversity, to explore evolutionary processes driving this diversity, and to provide a comprehensive vocabulary for studying complex metagenomes.

The Kingdom Fungi is estimated to contain over a million species. These organisms developed a tremendous natural arsenal of enzymes, chemicals, deconstruction, and synthesis mechanisms over millions of years of evolutionary history, which are poorly understood. Despite the growing number of fungal genome sequencing projects, the phylogenetic diversity of fungi covered by these projects is still very limited. Ascomycetes of medical importance remain dominant among the sequenced fungal genomes. In contrast, lower fungi are hardly represented among the currently available reference genomes.

The goal of the 1000 fungal genome project is to sequence genomes for on average two species for each of the about 500 known fungal families within 5 years. The project started in close collaborations with several culture collections and research groups providing DNA and RNA samples. JGI accepts nominations for new species for sequencing and DNA/RNA samples from the scientific community worldwide at http://jgi.doe.gov/fungi (Fig. 2.1). These will serve as references in ecological genomics.

2.6 Ecological Genomics

Having a large collection of reference genomes may set a stage for eukaryotic metagenomics. Metagenomes of bacterial and archaeal communities have been successfully analyzed previously (Tringe and Rubin 2005; Kalyuzhnaya et al. 2008). Even when metagenomes are poorly assembled but dominated by prokaryotes, the assembled pieces provide sufficient information to predict genes. Unlike gene-dense bacterial genomes, eukaryotic genomes, with their complex gene structure and genome organization, present a significant bottleneck for metagenomics. Assembled DNA pieces lack sufficient information to train ab initio gene predictors. Homology-based methods may work but require a representative collection of reference genomes. While this collection is being built over time, approaches to assess complexity of fungal communities, for example, in soil, are being explored (Buée et al. 2009).

A standard method to identify fungal species is by their Internal Transcribed Sequences (ITS). Targeted ITS sequencing can be applied to fungal communities

composed of multiple species to assess their composition. Here transition to the NGS imposes some challenges. In the days of Sanger sequencing, long sequence reads would cover the entire region which is ~1 kb long. The first NGS products were too short to cover the entire ITS, although several studies used 454 pyrosequencing to obtain ITS fragments, ITS1 or ITS2 regions (Buée et al. 2009). The latest generation of Illumina machines, the benchtop MiSeq, offers sequencing in the format of 2 × 250 bp reads, which with sufficiently short inserts may overlap and produce contigs long enough to cover one of these regions. The cycle time of these machines (1 day instead of 18 for HiSeq) allows sequencing a multitude of samples.

Another strategy to overcome the complexity of fungal gene structure is metatranscriptomics, which gives a functional portrait of the community as a biological system and captures its dynamics. The challenge is the poly (A) enrichment in complex communities like soil where fungi make up just a few percent of the entire microbial transcriptome. Furthermore, total eukaryotic RNA consists of only a few percent of mRNA.

2.7 Functional Genomics

The increased throughput in genome sequencing has created a situation where the number of sequenced genes and genomes grows dramatically each year but does not necessarily help us to better understand their functions. A thorough biochemical characterization is required to determine gene functions, but its throughput is not on par with sequencing.

Analysis of gene and protein expression under different conditions may suggest roles of these genes in an organism's growth, while genes' co-regulation can be inferred from patterns of their co-expression. Large-scale transcriptomics has been broadly successful for a number of fungi and quickly progressed from in-depth characterization of genes in single species to multispecies comparative functional genomics, as with fission yeasts (Wilhelm et al. 2008; Rhind et al. 2011). Proteomics of different flavors offer approaches complementary to gene expression analysis and allows the characterization of proteins, protein complexes, and post-translational modifications. Among fungi, this was applied to the greatest extent to *S. cerevisiae* (e.g., Ho et al. 2002; Ptacek et al. 2005; Krogan et al. 2006). The combination of transcriptome and proteome analyses is becoming more and more often a part of genomics studies of many fungi (e.g., Berka et al. 2011; Martinez et al. 2009).

The roles of genes can be also determined by turning genes on and off using various techniques at reasonably high throughput. Transcriptomics and proteomics studies of gene deletion mutants, especially transcription factors, can point to their roles in an organism's regulatory cascades. Several studies along these lines have been done for fungi. For example, novel virulence factors have been identified in the plant pathogen *Alternaria brassicicola* (Cho et al. 2009, 2012), factors

influencing cellulose production have been studied in the industrial workhorse *Trichoderma reesei* (Schuster et al. 2012), the role of transcription factors has been explored for mushroom development in the basidiomycete *Schizophyllum commune* (Ohm et al. 2010, 2011), and a much broader approach is taken in the model ascomycete *Neurospora crassa* (Colot et al. 2006). For the models *N. crassa* and *S. cerevisiae*, extensive collections of deletion mutants along with microarrays and other functional genomics resources have been developed (Winzeler et al. 1999; Giaever et al. 2002; Dunlap et al. 2007), which created a solid basis for future experiments.

A different context for gene function studies comes from the analysis of interactions of fungi with other organisms. Analysis of the transcriptome at different stages of plant infection (O'Connell et al. 2012) or of interactions with a fungal prey (Atanasova et al. 2013) has been revealing for the dynamics of such interactions. However, looking at both partners at once can give more complete and, therefore, more accurate picture. Indeed, transcriptomes of the fungus *L. bicolor* and poplar tree upon their interaction provided clues for a metabolic model of nutrient exchange between them (Larsen et al. 2011). For pathogens, Skibbe et al. (2010) have shown that infection of maize by corn smut (*Ustilago maydis*) depends on organ-specific gene expression by both host and pathogen. Proteomics of such interactions was also studied in several different systems (reviewed by El Hadrami et al. 2012). Much larger-scale transcriptomics studies of several host-pathogen and mycorrhizal systems are also currently in progress at JGI. Finally, along the lines of the human ENCODE, which recently generated a very large amount of functional data (Skipper et al. 2012), *N. crassa* is a target of fungal ENCODE at JGI to further understand this model organism and project this knowledge to other fungi (Chap. 14).

2.8 Conclusion

Fungal diversity is enormous and so far poorly explored. Soil is the most abundant ecosystem on Earth, enriched in microbial life including a large number of fungal species. Very few microbial species inhabiting soil have been characterized. Genomics and transcriptomics offer new ways to identify these poorly characterized species and understand their function and interactions with environment, hosts, and other fungi. Metagenomics approaches can help to better understand the complexity of microbial communities in soil, how they are formed, and how they change in response to various environmental factors. Communities of pathogens and symbionts are components of the rhizosphere and determine the success of plant growth. Genomics analysis of these interactions will help us to better understand natural biological systems and can lead to applications for environmental protection and bioenergy production.

Acknowledgments The work conducted by the US Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute is supported by the Office of Science of the US Department of Energy under Contract No. DE-AC02-05CH11231.

References

1000 Genomes Project Consortium (2010) A map of human genome variation from population-scale sequencing. Nature 467:1061–1073

Altschul SF, Gish W, Miller W, Myers EW, Lipman DJ (1990) Basic local alignment search tool. J Mol Biol 215(3):403–410

Atanasova L, Le Crom S, Gruber S, Coulpier F, Seidl-Seiboth V, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2013) Comparative transcriptomics reveals versatile strategies of *Trichoderma mycoparasitism*. BMC Genomics 14:121

Bateman A, Birney E, Durbin R, Eddy SR, Finn RD, Sonnhammer EL (1999) Pfam 3.1: 1313 multiple alignments and profile HMMs match the majority of proteins. Nucleic Acids Res 27 (1):260–262

Batzoglou S, Jaffe DB, Stanley K, Butler J, Gnerre S, Mauceli E, Berger B, Mesirov JP, Lander ES (2002) ARACHNE: a whole-genome shotgun assembler. Genome Res 12(1):177–189

Berka RM, Grigoriev IV, Otillar R, Salamov A, Grimwood J, Reid I, Ishmael N, John T, Darmond C, Moisan MC, Henrissat B, Coutinho PM, Lombard V, Natvig DO, Lindquist E, Schmutz J, Lucas S, Harris P, Powlowski J, Bellemare A, Taylor D, Butler G, de Vries RP, Allijn IE, van den Brink J, Ushinsky S, Storms R, Powell AJ, Paulsen IT, Elbourne LD, Baker SE, Magnuson J, Laboissiere S, Clutterbuck AJ, Martinez D, Wogulis M, de Leon AL, Rey MW, Tsang A (2011) Comparative genomic analysis of the thermophilic biomass-degrading fungi *Myceliophthora thermophila* and *Thielavia terrestris*. Nat Biotechnol 29(10):922–927

Buée M, Reich M, Murat C, Morin E, Nilsson RH, Uroz S, Martin F (2009) 454 Pyrosequencing analyses of forest soils reveal an unexpectedly high fungal diversity. New Phytol 184 (2):449–456

Cantarel BL, Coutinho PM, Rancurel C, Bernard T, Lombard V, Henrissat B (2009) The Carbohydrate-Active EnZymes database (CAZy): an expert resource for glycogenomics. Nucleic Acids Res 37:D233–D238

Cho Y, Kim KH, La Rota M, Scott D, Santopietro G, Callihan M, Mitchell TK, Lawrence CB (2009) Identification of novel virulence factors associated with signal transduction pathways in *Alternaria brassicicola*. Mol Microbiol 72(6):1316–1333

Cho Y, Srivastava A, Ohm RA, Lawrence CB, Wang KH, Grigoriev IV, Marahatta SP (2012) Transcription factor Amr1 induces melanin biosynthesis and suppresses virulence in *Alternaria brassicicola*. PLoS Pathog 8(10):e1002974

Colot HV, Park G, Turner GE, Ringelberg C, Crew CM, Litvinkova L, Weiss RL, Borkovich KA, Dunlap JC (2006) A high-throughput gene knockout procedure for *Neurospora* reveals functions for multiple transcription factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(27):10352–10357

Condon BJ, Leng Y, Wu D, Bushley KE, Ohm RA, Otillar R, Martin J, Schackwitz W, Grimwood J, MohdZainudin N, Xue C, Wang R, Manning VA, Dhillon B, Tu ZJ, Steffenson BJ, Salamov A, Sun H, Lowry S, LaButti K, Han J, Copeland A, Lindquist E, Barry K, Schmutz J, Baker SE, Ciuffetti LM, Grigoriev IV, Zhong S, Turgeon BG (2013) Comparative genome structure, secondary metabolite, and effector coding capacity across *Cochliobolus* pathogens. PLoS Genet 9(1):e1003233

de Wit PJ, van der Burgt A, Okmen B, Stergiopoulos I, Abd-Elsalam KA, Aerts AL, Bahkali AH, Beenen HG, Chettri P, Cox MP, Datema E, de Vries RP, Dhillon B, Ganley AR, Griffiths SA, Guo Y, Hamelin RC, Henrissat B, Kabir MS, Jashni MK, Kema G, Klaubauf S, Lapidus A, Levasseur A, Lindquist E, Mehrabi R, Ohm RA, Owen TJ, Salamov A, Schwelm A, Schijlen E,

Sun H, van den Burg HA, van Ham RC, Zhang S, Goodwin SB, Grigoriev IV, Collemare J, Bradshaw RE (2012) The genomes of the fungal plant pathogens C*ladosporium fulvum* and *Dothistroma septosporum* reveal adaptation to different hosts and lifestyles but also signatures of common ancestry. PLoS Genet 8(11):e1003088

Dujon B, Sherman D, Fischer G, Durrens P, Casaregola S, Lafontaine I, De Montigny J, Marck C, Neuvéglise C, Talla E, Goffard N, Frangeul L, Aigle M, Anthouard V, Babour A, Barbe V, Barnay S, Blanchin S, Beckerich JM, Beyne E, Bleykasten C, Boisramé A, Boyer J, Cattolico L, Confanioleri F, De Daruvar A, Despons L, Fabre E, Fairhead C, Ferry-Dumazet H, Groppi A, Hantraye F, Hennequin C, Jauniaux N, Joyet P, Kachouri R, Kerrest A, Koszul R, Lemaire M, Lesur I, Ma L, Muller H, Nicaud JM, Nikolski M, Oztas S, Ozier-Kalogeropoulos O, Pellenz S, Potier S, Richard GF, Straub ML, Suleau A, Swennen D, Tekaia F, Wésolowski-Louvel M, Westhof E, Wirth B, Zeniou-Meyer M, Zivanovic I, Bolotin-Fukuhara M, Thierry A, Bouchier C, Caudron B, Scarpelli C, Gaillardin C, Weissenbach J, Wincker P, Souciet JL (2004) Genome evolution in yeasts. Nature 430(6995):35–44

Dunlap JC, Borkovich KA, Henn MR, Turner GE, Sachs MS, Glass NL, McCluskey K, Plamann M, Galagan JE, Birren BW, Weiss RL, Townsend JP, Loros JJ, Nelson MA, Lambreghts R, Colot HV, Park G, Collopy P, Ringelberg C, Crew C, Litvinkova L, DeCaprio D, Hood HM, Curilla S, Shi M, Crawford M, Koerhsen M, Montgomery P, Larson L, Pearson M, Kasuga T, Tian C, Baştürkmen M, Altamirano L, Xu J (2007) Enabling a community to dissect an organism: overview of the *Neurospora* functional genomics project. Adv Genet 57:49–96

Duplessis S, Cuomo CA, Lin YC, Aerts A, Tisserant E, Veneault-Fourrey C, Joly DL, Hacquard S, Amselem J, Cantarel BL, Chiu R, Coutinho PM, Feau N, Field M, Frey P, Gelhaye E, Goldberg J, Grabherr MG, Kodira CD, Kohler A, Kües U, Lindquist EA, Lucas SM, Mago R, Mauceli E, Morin E, Murat C, Pangilinan JL, Park R, Pearson M, Quesneville H, Rouhier N, Sakthikumar S, Salamov AA, Schmutz J, Selles B, Shapiro H, Tanguay P, Tuskan GA, Henrissat B, Van de Peer Y, Rouzé P, Ellis JG, Dodds PN, Schein JE, Zhong S, Hamelin RC, Grigoriev IV, Szabo LJ, Martin F (2011) Obligate biotrophy features unraveled by the genomic analysis of rust fungi. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108(22):9166–9171

Earl D, Bradnam K, St John J, Darling A, Lin D, Fass J, Yu HO, Buffalo V, Zerbino DR, Diekhans M, Nguyen N, Ariyaratne PN, Sung WK, Ning Z, Haimel M, Simpson JT, Fonseca NA, Birol İ, Docking TR, Ho IY, Rokhsar DS, Chikhi R, Lavenier D, Chapuis G, Naquin D, Maillet N, Schatz MC, Kelley DR, Phillippy AM, Koren S, Yang SP, Wu W, Chou WC, Srivastava A, Shaw TI, Ruby JG, Skewes-Cox P, Betegon M, Dimon MT, Solovyev V, Seledtsov I, Kosarev P, Vorobyev D, Ramirez-Gonzalez R, Leggett R, MacLean D, Xia F, Luo R, Li Z, Xie Y, Liu B, Gnerre S, MacCallum I, Przybylski D, Ribeiro FJ, Yin S, Sharpe T, Hall G, Kersey PJ, Durbin R, Jackman SD, Chapman JA, Huang X, DeRisi JL, Caccamo M, Li Y, Jaffe DB, Green RE, Haussler D, Korf I, Paten B (2011) Assemblathon 1: a competitive assessment of de novo short read assembly methods. Genome Res 21(12):2224–2241

Eastwood DC, Floudas D, Binder M, Majcherczyk A, Schneider P, Aerts A, Asiegbu FO, Baker SE, Barry K, Bendiksby M, Blumentritt M, Coutinho PM, Cullen D, de Vries RP, Gathman A, Goodell B, Henrissat B, Ihrmark K, Kauserud H, Kohler A, LaButti K, Lapidus A, Lavin JL, Lee YH, Lindquist E, Lilly W, Lucas S, Morin E, Murat C, Oguiza JA, Park J, Pisabarro AG, Riley R, Rosling A, Salamov A, Schmidt O, Schmutz J, Skrede I, Stenlid J, Wiebenga A, Xie X, Kües U, Hibbett DS, Hoffmeister D, Högberg N, Martin F, Grigoriev IV, Watkinson SC (2011) The plant cell wall-decomposing machinery underlies the functional diversity of forest fungi. Science 333(6043):762–765

El Hadrami A, El-Bebany AF, Yao Z, Adam LR, El Hadrami I, Daayf F (2012) Plants versus fungi and oomycetes: pathogenesis, defense and counter-defense in the proteomics era. Int J Mol Sci 13(6):7237–7259

ENCODE Project Consortium (2004) The ENCODE (ENCyclopedia Of DNA Elements) project. Science 306:636–640

Floudas D, Binder M, Riley R, Barry K, Blanchette RA, Henrissat B, Martínez AT, Ortillar R, Spatafora JW, Yadav JS, Aerts A, Benoit I, Boyd A, Carlson A, Copeland A, Coutinho PM, de Vries RP, Ferreira P, Findley K, Foster B, Gaskell J, Glotzer D, Górecki P, Heitman J, Hesse C, Hori C, Igarashi K, Jurgens JA, Kallen N, Kersten P, Khajamohiddin A, Kohler A, Kues U, Kumar TKA, Kuo A, LaButti K, Larrondo LF, Lindquist E, Ling A, Lucas S, Lundell T, Martin R, McLaughlin DJ, Morgenstern I, Morin E, Murat C, Nolan M, Ohm RA, Patyshakuliyeva A, Rokas A, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Sabat G, Salamov A, Samejima M, Schmutz J, Slot JC, John FS, Stenlid J, Sun H, Sun S, Tsang A, Wiebenga A, Young D, Pisabarro A, Eastwood DC, Martin F, Cullen D, Grigoriev IV, Hibbett DS (2012) The Paleozoic origin of enzymatic lignin decomposition reconstructed from 31 fungal genomes. Science 336(6089):1715–1719

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Borkovich KA, Selker EU, Read ND, Jaffe D, FitzHugh W, Ma LJ, Smirnov S, Purcell S, Rehman B, Elkins T, Engels R, Wang S, Nielsen CB, Butler J, Endrizzi M, Qui D, Ianakiev P, Bell-Pedersen D, Nelson MA, Werner-Washburne M, Selitrennikoff CP, Kinsey JA, Braun EL, Zelter A, Schulte U, Kothe GO, Jedd G, Mewes W, Staben C, Marcotte E, Greenberg D, Roy A, Foley K, Naylor J, Stange-Thomann N, Barrett R, Gnerre S, Kamal M, Kamvysselis M, Mauceli E, Bielke C, Rudd S, Frishman D, Krystofova S, Rasmussen C, Metzenberg RL, Perkins DD, Kroken S, Cogoni C, Macino G, Catcheside D, Li W, Pratt RJ, Osmani SA, DeSouza CP, Glass L, Orbach MJ, Berglund JA, Voelker R, Yarden O, Plamann M, Seiler S, Dunlap J, Radford A, Aramayo R, Natvig DO, Alex LA, Mannhaupt G, Ebbole DJ, Freitag M, Paulsen I, Sachs MS, Lander ES, Nusbaum C, Birren B (2003) The genome sequence of the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Nature 422 (6934):859–868

Giaever G, Chu AM, Ni L, Connelly C, Riles L, Véronneau S, Dow S, Lucau-Danila A, Anderson K, André B, Arkin AP, Astromoff A, El-Bakkoury M, Bangham R, Benito R, Brachat S, Campanaro S, Curtiss M, Davis K, Deutschbauer A, Entian KD, Flaherty P, Foury F, Garfinkel DJ, Gerstein M, Gotte D, Güldener U, Hegemann JH, Hempel S, Herman Z, Jaramillo DF, Kelly DE, Kelly SL, Kötter P, LaBonte D, Lamb DC, Lan N, Liang H, Liao H, Liu L, Luo C, Lussier M, Mao R, Menard P, Ooi SL, Revuelta JL, Roberts CJ, Rose M, Ross-Macdonald P, Scherens B, Schimmack G, Shafer B, Shoemaker DD, Sookhai-Mahadeo S, Storms RK, Strathern JN, Valle G, Voet M, Volckaert G, Wang CY, Ward TR, Wilhelmy J, Winzeler EA, Yang Y, Yen G, Youngman E, Yu K, Bussey H, Boeke JD, Snyder M, Philippsen P, Davis RW, Johnston M (2002) Functional profiling of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genome. Nature 418(6896):387–391

Goodwin SB, M'barek SB, Dhillon B, Wittenberg AH, Crane CF, Hane JK, Foster AJ, Van der Lee TA, Grimwood J, Aerts A, Antoniw J, Bailey A, Bluhm B, Bowler J, Bristow J, van der Burgt A, Canto-Canché B, Churchill AC, Conde-Ferràez L, Cools HJ, Coutinho PM, Csukai M, Dehal P, De Wit P, Donzelli B, van de Geest HC, van Ham RC, Hammond-Kosack KE, Henrissat B, Kilian A, Kobayashi AK, Koopmann E, Kourmpetis Y, Kuzniar A, Lindquist E, Lombard V, Maliepaard C, Martins N, Mehrabi R, Nap JP, Ponomarenko A, Rudd JJ, Salamov A, Schmutz J, Schouten HJ, Shapiro H, Stergiopoulos I, Torriani SF, Tu H, de Vries RP, Waalwijk C, Ware SB, Wiebenga A, Zwiers LH, Oliver RP, Grigoriev IV, Kema GH (2011) Finished genome of the fungal wheat pathogen Mycosphaerella graminicola reveals dispensome structure, chromosome plasticity, and stealth pathogenesis. PLoS Genet 7(6): e1002070

Goffeau A, Barrell BG, Bussey H, Davis RW, Dujon B, Feldmann H, Galibert F, Hoheisel JD, Jacq C, Johnston M, Louis EJ, Mewes HW, Murakami Y, Philippsen P, Tettelin H, Oliver SG (1996) Life with 6000 genes. Science 274(5287):546, 563–567

Grigoriev IV, Martines DA, Salamov AA (2006) Fungal genomic annotation. In: Aurora DK, Berka RM, Singh GB (eds) Applied mycology and biotechnology, vol 6, Bioinformatics. Elsevier, Philadelphia, PA, pp 123–142

Grigoriev IV, Cullen D, Goodwin SB, Hibbett D, Jeffries TW, Kubicek CP, Kuske C, Magnuson JK, Martin F, Spatafora JW, Tsang A, Baker SE (2011) Fueling the future with fungal genomics. Mycology 2(3):192–209

Grigoriev IV, Nordberg H, Shabalov I, Aerts A, Cantor M, Goodstein D, Kuo A, Minovitsky S, Nikitin R, Ohm RA, Otillar R, Poliakov A, Ratnere I, Riley R, Smirnova T, Rokhsar D, Dubchak I (2012) The genome portal of the Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute. Nucleic Acids Res 40(1):D26–D32

Haas BJ, Zeng Q, Pearson MD, Cuomo CA, Wortman JR (2011) Approaches to fungal genome annotation. Mycology 2(3):118–141

Ho Y, Gruhler A, Heilbut A, Bader GD, Moore L, Adams SL, Millar A, Taylor P, Bennett K, Boutilier K, Yang L, Wolting C, Donaldson I, Schandorff S, Shewnarane J, Vo M, Taggart J, Goudreault M, Muskat B, Alfarano C, Dewar D, Lin Z, Michalickova K, Willems AR, Sassi H, Nielsen PA, Rasmussen KJ, Andersen JR, Johansen LE, Hansen LH, Jespersen H, Podtelejnikov A, Nielsen E, Crawford J, Poulsen V, Sørensen BD, Matthiesen J, Hendrickson RC, Gleeson F, Pawson T, Moran MF, Durocher D, Mann M, Hogue CW, Figeys D, Tyers M (2002) Systematic identification of protein complexes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* by mass spectrometry. Nature 415(6868):180–183

Howe D, Costanzo M, Fey P, Gojobori T, Hannick L, Hide W, Hill DP, Kania R, Schaeffer M, St Pierre S, Twigger S, White O, Rhee SY (2008) Big data: the future of biocuration. Nature 455 (7209):47–50

Kalyuzhnaya MG, Lapidus A, Ivanova N, Copeland AC, McHardy AC, Szeto E, Salamov A, Grigoriev IV, Suciu D, Levine SR, Markowitz VM, Rigoutsos I, Tringe SG, Bruce DC, Richardson PM, Lidstrom ME, Chistoserdova L (2008) High-resolution metagenomics targets specific functional types in complex microbial communities. Nat Biotechnol 26(9):1029–1034

Krogan NJ, Cagney G, Yu H, Zhong G, Guo X, Ignatchenko A, Li J, Pu S, Datta N, Tikuisis AP, Punna T, Peregrín-Alvarez JM, Shales M, Zhang X, Davey M, Robinson MD, Paccanaro A, Bray JE, Sheung A, Beattie B, Richards DP, Canadien V, Lalev A, Mena F, Wong P, Starostine A, Canete MM, Vlasblom J, Wu S, Orsi C, Collins SR, Chandran S, Haw R, Rilstone JJ, Gandi K, Thompson NJ, Musso G, St Onge P, Ghanny S, Lam MH, Butland G, Altaf-Ul AM, Kanaya S, Shilatifard A, O'Shea E, Weissman JS, Ingles CJ, Hughes TR, Parkinson J, Gerstein M, Wodak SJ, Emili A, Greenblatt JF (2006) Global landscape of protein complexes in the yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Nature 440(7084):637–643

Lander ES, Linton LM, Birren B, Nusbaum C, Zody MC, Baldwin J, Devon K, Dewar K, Doyle M, FitzHugh W, Funke R, Gage D, Harris K, Heaford A, Howland J, Kann L, Lehoczky J, LeVine R, McEwan P, McKernan K, Meldrim J, Mesirov JP, Miranda C, Morris W, Naylor J, Raymond C, Rosetti M, Santos R, Sheridan A, Sougnez C, Stange-Thomann N, Stojanovic N, Subramanian A, Wyman D, Rogers J, Sulston J, Ainscough R, Beck S, Bentley D, Burton J, Clee C, Carter N, Coulson A, Deadman R, Deloukas P, Dunham A, Dunham I, Durbin R, French L, Grafham D, Gregory S, Hubbard T, Humphray S, Hunt A, Jones M, Lloyd C, McMurray A, Matthews L, Mercer S, Milne S, Mullikin JC, Mungall A, Plumb R, Ross M, Shownkeen R, Sims S, Waterston RH, Wilson RK, Hillier LW, McPherson JD, Marra MA, Mardis ER, Fulton LA, Chinwalla AT, Pepin KH, Gish WR, Chissoe SL, Wendl MC, Delehaunty KD, Miner TL, Delehaunty A, Kramer JB, Cook LL, Fulton RS, Johnson DL, Minx PJ, Clifton SW, Hawkins T, Branscomb E, Predki P, Richardson P, Wenning S, Slezak T, Doggett N, Cheng JF, Olsen A, Lucas S, Elkin C, Uberbacher E, Frazier M, Gibbs RA, Muzny DM, Scherer SE, Bouck JB, Sodergren EJ, Worley KC, Rives CM, Gorrell JH, Metzker ML, Naylor SL, Kucherlapati RS, Nelson DL, Weinstock GM, Sakaki Y, Fujiyama A, Hattori M, Yada T, Toyoda A, Itoh T, Kawagoe C, Watanabe H, Totoki Y, Taylor T, Weissenbach J, Heilig R, Saurin W, Artiguenave F, Brottier P, Bruls T, Pelletier E, Robert C, Wincker P, Smith DR, Doucette-Stamm L, Rubenfield M, Weinstock K, Lee HM, Dubois J, Rosenthal A, Platzer M, Nyakatura G, Taudien S, Rump A, Yang H, Yu J, Wang J, Huang G, Gu J, Hood L, Rowen L, Madan A, Qin S, Davis RW, Federspiel NA, Abola AP, Proctor MJ, Myers RM, Schmutz J, Dickson M, Grimwood J, Cox DR, Olson MV, Kaul R, Raymond C, Shimizu N, Kawasaki K,

Minoshima S, Evans GA, Athanasiou M, Schultz R, Roe BA, Chen F, Pan H, Ramser J, Lehrach H, Reinhardt R, McCombie WR, de la Bastide M, Dedhia N, Blöcker H, Hornischer K, Nordsiek G, Agarwala R, Aravind L, Bailey JA, Bateman A, Batzoglou S, Birney E, Bork P, Brown DG, Burge CB, Cerutti L, Chen HC, Church D, Clamp M, Copley RR, Doerks T, Eddy SR, Eichler EE, Furey TS, Galagan J, Gilbert JG, Harmon C, Hayashizaki Y, Haussler D, Hermjakob H, Hokamp K, Jang W, Johnson LS, Jones TA, Kasif S, Kaspryzk A, Kennedy S, Kent WJ, Kitts P, Koonin EV, Korf I, Kulp D, Lancet D, Lowe TM, McLysaght A, Mikkelsen T, Moran JV, Mulder N, Pollara VJ, Ponting CP, Schuler G, Schultz J, Slater G, Smit AF, Stupka E, Szustakowski J, Thierry-Mieg D, Thierry-Mieg J, Wagner L, Wallis J, Wheeler R, Williams A, Wolf YI, Wolfe KH, Yang SP, Yeh RF, Collins F, Guyer MS, Peterson J, Felsenfeld A, Wetterstrand KA, Patrinos A, Morgan MJ, de Jong P, Catanese JJ, Osoegawa K, Shizuya H, Choi S, Chen YJ, International Human Genome Sequencing Consortium (2001) Initial sequencing and analysis of the human genome. Nature 409(6822):860–921

Larsen PE, Sreedasyam A, Trivedi G, Podila GK, Cseke LJ, Collart FR (2011) Using next generation transcriptome sequencing to predict an ectomycorrhizal metabolome. BMC Syst Biol 5:70

Manning VA, Pandelova I, Dhillon B, Wilhelm LJ, Goodwin SB, Berlin AM, Figueroa M, Freitag M, Hane JK, Henrissat B, Holman WH, Kodira CD, Martin J, Oliver RP, Robbertse B, Schackwitz W, Schwartz DC, Spatafora JW, Turgeon BG, Yandava C, Young S, Zhou S, Zeng Q, Grigoriev IV, Ma LJ, Ciuffetti LM (2013) Comparative genomics of a plant-pathogenic fungus, *Pyrenophora tritici-repentis*, reveals transduplication and the impact of repeat elements on pathogenicity and population divergence. G3 3(1):41–63

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahrén D, Brun A, Danchin EG, Duchaussoy F, Gibon J, Kohler A, Lindquist E, Pereda V, Salamov A, Shapiro HJ, Wuyts J, Blaudez D, Buée M, Brokstein P, Canbäck B, Cohen D, Courty PE, Coutinho PM, Delaruelle C, Detter JC, Deveau A, DiFazio S, Duplessis S, Fraissinet-Tachet L, Lucic E, Frey-Klett P, Fourrey C, Feussner I, Gay G, Grimwood J, Hoegger PJ, Jain P, Kilaru S, Labbé J, Lin YC, Legué V, Le Tacon F, Marmeisse R, Melayah D, Montanini B, Muratet M, Nehls U, Niculita-Hirzel H, Oudot-Le Secq MP, Peter M, Quesneville H, Rajashekar B, Reich M, Rouhier N, Schmutz J, Yin T, Chalot M, Henrissat B, Kües U, Lucas S, Van de Peer Y, Podila GK, Polle A, Pukkila PJ, Richardson PM, Rouzé P, Sanders IR, Stajich JE, Tunlid A, Tuskan G, Grigoriev IV (2008) The genome of *Laccaria bicolor* provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martinez D, Larrondo LF, Putnam N, Gelpke MD, Huang K, Chapman J, Helfenbein KG, Ramaiya P, Detter JC, Larimer F, Coutinho PM, Henrissat B, Berka R, Cullen D, Rokhsar D (2004) Genome sequence of the lignocellulose degrading fungus *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* strain RP78. Nat Biotechnol 22(6):695–700

Martinez D, Challacombe J, Morgenstern I, Hibbett D, Schmoll M, Kubicek CP, Ferreira P, Ruiz-Duenas FJ, Martinez AT, Kersten P, Hammel KE, Vanden Wymelenberg A, Gaskell J, Lindquist E, Sabat G, Bondurant SS, Larrondo LF, Canessa P, Vicuna R, Yadav J, Doddapaneni H, Subramanian V, Pisabarro AG, Lavín JL, Oguiza JA, Master E, Henrissat B, Coutinho PM, Harris P, Magnuson JK, Baker SE, Bruno K, Kenealy W, Hoegger PJ, Kües U, Ramaiya P, Lucas S, Salamov A, Shapiro H, Tu H, Chee CL, Misra M, Xie G, Teter S, Yaver D, James T, Mokrejs M, Pospisek M, Grigoriev IV, Brettin T, Rokhsar D, Berka R, Cullen D (2009) Genome, transcriptome, and secretome analysis of wood decay fungus *Postia placenta* supports unique mechanisms of lignocellulose conversion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:1954–1959

Metzker ML (2010) Sequencing technologies – the next generation. Nat Rev Genet 11(1):31–46

Morin E, Kohler A, Baker AR, Foulongne-Oriol M, Lombard V, Nagy LG, Ohm RA, Patyshakuliyeva A, Brun A, Aerts AL, Bailey AM, Billette C, Coutinho PM, Deakin G, Doddapaneni H, Floudas D, Grimwood J, Hildén K, Kües U, Labutti KM, Lapidus A, Lindquist EA, Lucas SM, Murat C, Riley RW, Salamov AA, Schmutz J, Subramanian V, Wösten HA, Xu J, Eastwood DC, Foster GD, Sonnenberg AS, Cullen D, de Vries RP, Lundell T, Hibbett DS, Henrissat B, Burton KS, Kerrigan RW, Challen MP, Grigoriev IV, Martin F (2012) Genome

sequence of the button mushroom Agaricus bisporus reveals mechanisms governing adaptation to a humic-rich ecological niche. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109(43):17501–17506

O'Connell RJ, Thon MR, Hacquard S, Amyotte SG, Kleemann J, Torres MF, Damm U, Buiate EA, Epstein L, Alkan N, Altmüller J, Alvarado-Balderrama L, Bauser CA, Becker C, Birren BW, Chen Z, Choi J, Crouch JA, Duvick JP, Farman MA, Gan P, Heiman D, Henrissat B, Howard RJ, Kabbage M, Koch C, Kracher B, Kubo Y, Law AD, Lebrun MH, Lee YH, Miyara I, Moore N, Neumann U, Nordström K, Panaccione DG, Panstruga R, Place M, Proctor RH, Prusky D, Rech G, Reinhardt R, Rollins JA, Rounsley S, Schardl CL, Schwartz DC, Shenoy N, Shirasu K, Sikhakolli UR, Stüber K, Sukno SA, Sweigard JA, Takano Y, Takahara H, Trail F, van der Does HC, Voll LM, Will I, Young S, Zeng Q, Zhang J, Zhou S, Dickman MB, Schulze-Lefert P, Ver Loren van Themaat E, Ma LJ, Vaillancourt LJ (2012) Lifestyle transitions in plant pathogenic Colletotrichum fungi deciphered by genome and transcriptome analyses. Nat Genet 44(9):1060–1065

Ohm RA, Jong JF, Lugones LG, Aerts A, Kothe E, Stajich JE, de Vries RP, Record E, Levasseur A, Baker SE, Bartholomew KA, Coutinho PM, Erdmann S, Fowler TJ, Gathman AC, Lombard V, Henrissat B, Knabe N, Kües U, Lilly WW, Lindquist E, Lucas S, Magnuson JK, Piumi F, Raudaskoski M, Salamov A, Schmutz J, Schwarze FWMR, van Kuyk PA, Horton JS, Grigoriev IV, Wösten HAB (2010) Formation of mushrooms and lignocellulose degradation encoded in the genome sequence of Schizophyllum commune. Nat Biotechnol 28(9):957–963

Ohm RA, de Jong JF, de Bekker C, Wösten HA, Lugones LG (2011) Transcription factor genes of Schizophyllum commune involved in regulation of mushroom formation. Mol Microbiol 81 (6):1433–1445

Ohm RA, Feau N, Henrissat B, Schoch CL, Horwitz BA, Barry KW, Condon BJ, Copeland AC, Dhillon B, Glaser F, Hesse CN, Kosti I, Labutti K, Lindquist EA, Lucas S, Salamov AA, Bradshaw RE, Ciuffetti L, Hamelin RC, Kema GH, Lawrence C, Scott JA, Spatafora JW, Turgeon BG, de Wit PJ, Zhong S, Goodwin SB, Grigoriev IV (2012) Diverse lifestyles and strategies of plant pathogenesis encoded in the genomes of eighteen dothideomycetes fungi. PLoS Pathog 8(12):e1003037

Olson A, Aerts A, Asiegbu F, Belbahri L, Bouzid O, Broberg A, Canbäck B, Coutinho PM, Cullen D, Dalman K, Deflorio G, van Diepen LT, Dunand C, Duplessis S, Durling M, Gonthier P, Grimwood J, Fossdal CG, Hansson D, Henrissat B, Hietala A, Himmelstrand K, Hoffmeister D, Högberg N, James TY, Karlsson M, Kohler A, Kües U, Lee YH, Lin YC, Lind M, Lindquist E, Lombard V, Lucas S, Lundén K, Morin E, Murat C, Park J, Raffaello T, Rouzé P, Salamov A, Schmutz J, Solheim H, Ståhlberg J, Vélëz H, de Vries RP, Wiebenga A, Woodward S, Yakovlev I, Garbelotto M, Martin F, Grigoriev IV, Stenlid J (2012) Insight into trade-off between wood decay and parasitism from the genome of a fungal forest pathogen. New Phytol 194(4):1001–1013

Pennisi E (2012) At long last, nanopore sequencing seems poised to leave the lab, promising a new and better way to decode DNA. Science 336:534–537

Ptacek J, Devgan G, Michaud G, Zhu H, Zhu X, Fasolo J, Guo H, Jona G, Breitkreutz A, Sopko R, McCartney RR, Schmidt MC, Rachidi N, Lee SJ, Mah AS, Meng L, Stark MJ, Stern DF, De Virgilio C, Tyers M, Andrews B, Gerstein M, Schweitzer B, Predki PF, Snyder M (2005) Global analysis of protein phosphorylation in yeast. Nature 438(7068):679–684

Rhind N, Chen Z, Yassour M, Thompson DA, Haas BJ, Habib N, Wapinski I, Roy S, Lin MF, Heiman DI, Young SK, Furuya K, Guo Y, Pidoux A, Chen HM, Robbertse B, Goldberg JM, Aoki K, Bayne EH, Berlin AM, Desjardins CA, Dobbs E, Dukaj L, Fan L, FitzGerald MG, French C, Gujja S, Hansen K, Keifenheim D, Levin JZ, Mosher RA, Müller CA, Pfiffner J, Priest M, Russ C, Smialowska A, Swoboda P, Sykes SM, Vaughn M, Vengrova S, Yoder R, Zeng Q, Allshire R, Baulcombe D, Birren BW, Brown W, Ekwall K, Kellis M, Leatherwood J, Levin H, Margalit H, Martienssen R, Nieduszynski CA, Spatafora JW, Friedman N, Dalgaard JZ, Baumann P, Niki H, Regev A, Nusbaum C (2011) Comparative functional genomics of the fission yeasts. Science 332(6032):930–936

Sanger F, Nicklen S, Coulson AR (1977) DNA sequencing with chain-terminating inhibitors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 74(12):5463–5467

Schuster A, Bruno KS, Collett JR, Baker SE, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP, Schmoll M (2012) A versatile toolkit for high throughput functional genomics with *Trichoderma reesei*. Biotechnol Biofuels 5(1):1

Skibbe DS, Doehlemann G, Fernandes J, Walbot V (2010) Maize tumors caused by *Ustilago maydis* require organ-specific genes in host and pathogen. Science 328(5974):89–92

Skipper M, Dhand R, Campbell P (2012) Presenting ENCODE. Nature 489(7414):45

Tringe SG, Rubin EM (2005) Metagenomics: DNA sequencing of environmental samples. Nat Rev Genet 6(11):805–814

Tuskan GA, Difazio S, Jansson S, Bohlmann J, Grigoriev I, Hellsten U, Putnam N, Ralph S, Rombauts S, Salamov A, Schein J, Sterck L, Aerts A, Bhalerao RR, Bhalerao RP, Blaudez D, Boerjan W, Brun A, Brunner A, Busov V, Campbell M, Carlson J, Chalot M, Chapman J, Chen GL, Cooper D, Coutinho PM, Couturier J, Covert S, Cronk Q, Cunningham R, Davis J, Degroeve S, Déjardin A, Depamphilis C, Detter J, Dirks B, Dubchak I, Duplessis S, Ehlting J, Ellis B, Gendler K, Goodstein D, Gribskov M, Grimwood J, Groover A, Gunter L, Hamberger B, Heinze B, Helariutta Y, Henrissat B, Holligan D, Holt R, Huang W, Islam-Faridi N, Jones S, Jones-Rhoades M, Jorgensen R, Joshi C, Kangasjärvi J, Karlsson J, Kelleher C, Kirkpatrick R, Kirst M, Kohler A, Kalluri U, Larimer F, Leebens-Mack J, Leplé JC, Locascio P, Lou Y, Lucas S, Martin F, Montanini B, Napoli C, Nelson DR, Nelson C, Nieminen K, Nilsson O, Pereda V, Peter G, Philippe R, Pilate G, Poliakov A, Razumovskaya J, Richardson P, Rinaldi C, Ritland K, Rouzé P, Ryaboy D, Schmutz J, Schrader J, Segerman B, Shin H, Siddiqui A, Sterky F, Terry A, Tsai CJ, Uberbacher E, Unneberg P, Vahala J, Wall K, Wessler S, Yang G, Yin T, Douglas C, Marra M, Sandberg G, Van de Peer Y, Rokhsar D (2006) The genome of black cottonwood, Populus trichocarpa (Torr. & Gray). Science 313 (5793):1596–1604

Weigel D, Mott R (2009) The 1001 genomes project for *Arabidopsis thaliana*. Genome Biol 10 (5):107

Wilhelm BT, Marguerat S, Watt S, Schubert F, Wood V, Goodhead I, Penkett CJ, Rogers J, Bähler J (2008) Dynamic repertoire of a eukaryotic transcriptome surveyed at single-nucleotide resolution. Nature 453(7199):1239–1243

Winzeler EA, Shoemaker DD, Astromoff A, Liang H, Anderson K, Andre B, Bangham R, Benito R, Boeke JD, Bussey H, Chu AM, Connelly C, Davis K, Dietrich F, Dow SW, El Bakkoury M, Foury F, Friend SH, Gentalen E, Giaever G, Hegemann JH, Jones T, Laub M, Liao H, Liebundguth N, Lockhart DJ, Lucau-Danila A, Lussier M, M’Rabet N, Menard P, Mittmann M, Pai C, Rebischung C, Revuelta JL, Riles L, Roberts CJ, Ross-MacDonald P, Scherens B, Snyder M, Sookhai-Mahadeo S, Storms RK, Véronneau S, Voet M, Volckaert G, Ward TR, Wysocki R, Yen GS, Yu K, Zimmermann K, Philippsen P, Johnston M, Davis RW (1999) Functional characterization of the *S. cerevisiae* genome by gene deletion and parallel analysis. Science 285(5429):901–906

Wu D, Hugenholtz P, Mavromatis K, Pukall R, Dalin E, Ivanova NN, Kunin V, Goodwin L, Wu M, Tindall BJ, Hooper SD, Pati A, Lykidis A, Spring S, Anderson IJ, D’haeseleer P, Zemla A, Singer M, Lapidus A, Nolan M, Copeland A, Han C, Chen F, Cheng JF, Lucas S, Kerfeld C, Lang E, Gronow S, Chain P, Bruce D, Rubin EM, Kyrpides NC, Klenk HP, Eisen JA (2009) A phylogeny-driven genomic encyclopaedia of bacteria and archaea. Nature 462 (7276):1056–1060

Chapter 3
Advancement of Functional Genomics of a Model Species of *Neurospora* and Its Use for Ecological Genomics of Soil Fungi

Kwangwon Lee and John Dighton

3.1 Resources for the Functional Genomics

High-quality genome sequence and annotation of the genome is a key element for successful functional genomics study. Since the release of the *N. crassa* genome sequence in 2003 (Galagan et al. 2003), there were several updates in sequence assembly and annotations. As of June 2010, the finished genome has 9,733 protein-coding genes, 176 noncoding RNA genes annotated in the nuclear genome, and 28 protein-coding genes in the mitochondrial genome (http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/neuospora). As of November 2011, a whole-genome knockout project generated 11,721 knockout strains (http://www.dartmouth.edu/~neurosporagenome/knockouts_completed.html) (Dunlap et al. 2007). All the knockout strains are available at the Fungal Genetics Stock Center (http://www.fgsc.net/ncrassa.html). As part of the Neurospora Genome Project, a group of undergraduate students have cataloged ten different developmental phenotypes of the knockout strains (http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/neurospora/Phenotypes.html) (Turner 2011).

These genetic resources in the *Neurospora* community are useful for generating a hypothesis for testing potential biological functions of an uncharacterized gene in a less characterized fungal species. The knockout library also allows for screening genes that are involved in a particular biological function of interest (Fu et al. 2011; Hammond et al. 2011; Nargang et al. 2012; Watters et al. 2011). Instead of screening the whole knockout library, one might choose to work on the smaller set of knockouts of transcription factors (Sun et al. 2011b) and kinases

K. Lee (✉)
Center for Computational and Integrative Biology, Department of Biology, Rutgers University, Camden, NJ 08102 1411, USA
e-mail: kwang1@camden.rutgers.edu

J. Dighton
Rutgers Pinelands Field Station, 501 Four Mile Road, PO Box 206, New Lisbon, NJ 08057, USA

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*,
Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_3,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

(Park et al. 2011) to identify key regulators for phenotypes of interest. Once the list of key regulators is identified in *N. crassa*, one might study the homologues of those regulatory genes in other fungal species that are more relevant for soil ecology.

The mutant with a complete knockout of a gene does not always reveal all biological functions of the gene. Diverse allelic phenotypes of a gene provide more rich information of the roles of the gene. For example, one of the key circadian clock genes, *frequency*, has different clock phenotypes depending on where in the protein-coding region a mutation occurred; frq^7 shows a 29 h long period, frq^1 16 h short period, and frq^{KO} no rhythm (Heintzen and Liu 2007). Cloning and characterizing the molecular nature of the mutation have become easier as a result of technical advances in sequencing. In recent years, there have been a series of improvements in identifying genome-wide single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) markers utilizing microarray chips and next-generation sequencing (NGS) for the *N. crassa* genome (Baird et al. 2008; Dettman et al. 2010; Lewis et al. 2007; Rowe et al. 2011). Restriction-site-associated DNA (RAD) markers rely on SNP at the restriction enzyme recognition sites in the genome. Since developing RAD markers does not require high-quality backbone sequencing data, and as the cost for NGS sequencing is becoming reasonable, RAD markers have the potential to be used for mapping and cloning fungal genes in non-model soil fungi.

There are useful tools developed for characterizing the expression of a gene and the gene product in *Neurospora*. Although luciferase reporters have been successfully used in other organisms for studying real-time gene expression, this system has been less successful in fungal species. Dunlap's group developed an efficient luciferase reporter system by synthesizing the firefly luciferase based on optimal fungal codon usage (Gooch et al. 2008). Combining with a clever knock-in approach, one can also study protein expression at the endogenous genome location in real time (Larrondo et al. 2012). For biochemical studies, one has to express the protein of interest. There are a series of versatile vectors available for expressing proteins with commercial epitope tags (Honda and Selker 2009) with tight regulation of their expression (Hurley et al. 2012).

3.2 Sensing Light

3.2.1 Introduction

Microorganisms can detect a variety of signals from the environment, including light, temperature, gravity, and large or small molecule signals, often coming from the neighboring species in the environment (Corrochano 2007; Elias-Arnanz et al. 2011; Rockwell and Lagarias 2010; Rodriguez-Romero et al. 2010; Sharrock 2008). Responses to these signals may be to relocate to a favorable location, for orientation, to alter gene expression and development, or to deploy small molecules to cope with environmental conditions or survival in their host (Bahn et al. 2007;

De Sordi and Muhlschlegel 2009; Rockwell and Lagarias 2010; Roux et al. 2009). Light is probably the most central of all environmental signals. Thus, microorganisms have evolved sophisticated light-sensing mechanisms (Rodriguez-Romero et al. 2010; Sharrock 2008). For example, light affects many developmental transitions in fungi; it sets the phase of circadian rhythms and modulates the rate and direction of growth. The blue end of the visible spectrum including the near ultraviolet is most active, although longer wavelengths are also important in some species and responses, and filamentous fungal genomes encode a variety of known, or potential, photoreceptors (Bahn et al. 2007; Corrochano 2007; Purschwitz et al. 2008). Much of what we know about molecular photophysiology in microorganisms has been learned by studying a few selected model organisms, for example, in the fungal kingdom, *Neurospora*, *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, and *Phycomyces* (Avalos and Estrada 2010; Bayram et al. 2010; Chen et al. 2010; Corrochano and Garre 2010; Rockwell and Lagarias 2010; Roux et al. 2009). Also the interaction between light, microbial communities and litter decomposition in natural ecosystems appears to be synergistic, although the mechanisms of interaction are not completely understood (Gallo et al. 2009).

3.2.2 Neurospora

Neurospora is the best-studied microorganism in molecular mechanisms of light perception, signal transduction, and light-regulated development. In *Neurospora*, all known light-induced phenotypes are regulated by blue light, and all blue-light-induced phenotypes are absent in either *white collar-1* (*wc-1*) or *white collar-2* (*wc-2*) mutants (Ballario and Macino 1997). Attempts to find loci other than *wc-1* and *wc-2* have failed (Degli-Innocenti and Russo 1984; Linden et al. 1997), suggesting that WHITE COLLAR-1 (WC-1) and WHITE COLLAR-2 (WC-2) are the major nonredundant key components for blue-light transduction in *Neurospora*. The *wc-1* and *wc-2* genes have been cloned (Ballario et al. 1996; Linden and Macino 1997), and their products have been shown to interact with each other (Ballario et al. 1998; Cheng et al. 2001; Denault et al. 2001). These findings and more recent molecular studies showed that WC-1 and WC-2 are transcription factors mediating light-induced gene expression (Corrochano 2007). Both WC-1 and WC-2 are regulated posttranslationally through phosphorylation (Lee et al. 2000; Schwerdtfeger and Linden 2000, 2001; Talora et al. 1999). While light-induced phosphorylation of WC-1 is transient (Heintzen et al. 2001), phosphorylation of WC-2 is stable under constant light. WC-1, working with WC-2 and the cofactor FAD, has been confirmed to be a blue-light photoreceptor (Froehlich et al. 2002; He et al. 2002).

3.2.3 Soil Fungi

The importance of light conditions for microbial development has been well documented. However, there is a lack of understanding of the roles of ambient light at the community level, more specifically in the context of interspecies and inter-kingdom interactions. Light could be an important factor determining community assemblages on surfaces exposed to light, for example, leaf surfaces. The enhanced frequency of melanin-containing fungi in high-light environments has led to investigations into the properties of melanin in fungal cell walls. For example, melanized cell walls are thought to protect cell contents from UV light (Gauslaa and Solhaug 2001) and may be a protectant against ionizing radiation (Durrell and Shields 1960; Gauslaa and Solhaug 2001; Zhdanova et al. 1994). Melanin has been shown to be an agent for entrapment of ionizing radiation for transfer of energy from radioactive sources for fungal growth (Dadachova et al. 2007; Dadachova and Casadevall 2008; Dighton et al. 2008; Tugay et al. 2006). Additionally, there is a tentative suggestion that light regimes can also influence soil fungal growth (Karpenko et al. 2006). Such responses of fungi to both light and ionizing radiation warrant further research, especially an understanding of the molecular basis of their function. As in the case of extensive light regulation studies in *Neurospora* (as discussed earlier), blue-light regulation is the most prominent light regulation in fungi. Thus, one might ask: “Do soil fungi have blue-light receptors, e.g., WC-1 orthologous genes, and could their presence influence the depth distribution of fungi in the soil profile?”

Understanding the response of the microbial community to a specific wavelength of light will provide a valuable insight into its adaptation to the ambient local environment. For example, plant leaves absorb photosynthetically active radiation (PAR, 400–700 nm) and transmit far-red/near-infrared radiation (700–1,000 nm) (Kume et al. 2011). Thus, the microbial community under a forest canopy is constantly exposed to higher flux densities of far-red light. It is tempting to speculate that the microbial community in the open field and that in the forest canopy are adapted to these unique light conditions. The differential response of fungal taxa to light of contrasting wavelength may be important for regulating community assembly and function of litter-dwelling fungi.

3.3 Lignocellulose Metabolism

3.3.1 Introduction

Biofuels derived from lignocellulosic biomass are a promising means of fulfilling the crucial need for liquid transportation fuel not derived from fossil fuels or food crops (DOE Office of Biological and Environmental Research). Lignocellulosic biomass, which is composed of cellulose, hemicellulose, and lignin, forms woody,

fibrous plant materials such as stems and leaves and is the most abundant renewable biomass on earth (Eriksson et al. 1991; Sanchez 2009). Unfortunately, utilizing lignocellulosic biomass as a biofuel feedstock is a challenging proposition owing to the difficulty of degrading lignocellulose in comparison to simple sugars, and current processes for producing cellulosic biofuel are not cost-competitive with fuels derived from either fossil fuels or food crops. While current industrial processes for degrading lignocellulose are too inefficient to be commercially viable, some living organisms are proficient at the task. In particular, a number of microorganisms have been identified that are capable of breaking down complex plant biomass and can potentially be used in industrial fermentation (Wilson 2008). For example, diverse fungal organisms in two phyla, Ascomycota and Basidiomycota, are capable of degrading lignocellulose (Eriksson et al. 1991; Lundell et al. 2010). Understanding the enzymes and metabolic pathways that provide this capability, particularly at a systems level, has been identified as a fundamental technical barrier that needs to be addressed to realize the goal of cost-competitive cellulosic biofuel. Additionally, some of the potentially useful fungal strains for biofuel production are slow growing, so there may be interest in transposing specific enzyme-coding genes from these fungal species into strains that grow more readily in a biofermentor environment.

3.3.2 Neurospora

Neurospora has been described as a "burning-adapted" fungus since the majority of the natural isolates were collected from the fresh-burn sites (Jacobson et al. 2006). After wild fire, abundant orange spores of *Neurospora* species appear on fire-scorched weeds or wood. This was attributed to a unique mechanism for breaking the dormancy of the ascospores by heat and by chemicals released from burning natural objects (Pandit and Maheshwari 1996). Although *Neurospora* is not a major fungal species in nature for lignocellulosic biomass degradation, it will be a useful model organism to understand genetic and molecular mechanisms of lignocellulosic biomass degradation. The first systematic study on the topic in *Neurospora* was performed by the Glass' research group (Tian et al. 2009). Using the whole-genome microarray, they identified 769 genes that are preferentially expressed when *Neurospora* was grown in ground stem tissue of *Miscanthus*, a potential crop for biofuel production. The same authors characterized cellulase activities of mutants (from the whole-genome knockout library) that lack the expression of 16 proteins that are identified by both transcriptome and secretome analyses and found that some have higher levels of cellulase activity and some have significantly lower levels of cellulase activity in comparison to that of the wild type (Tian et al. 2009). For the last 2 years, a series of studies were reported in an attempt to elucidate a comprehensive view on regulation and mechanisms of lignocellulose degradation in *N. crassa* (Beeson et al. 2012; Bohlin et al. 2013; Coradetti et al. 2012; Dogaris et al. 2012; Fan et al. 2012; Li et al. 2012; Phillips et al. 2011; Schmoll et al. 2012;

Sun and Glass 2011; Sun et al. 2011a, 2012; Znameroski et al. 2012). With the help of the functional genomics tools, *N. crassa* could become a model fungal organism for understanding the lignocellulose degradation (Coradetti et al. 2012; Dogaris et al. 2013; Znameroski et al. 2012).

3.3.3 Soil Fungi

There is significant interest in the study of the decomposition of plant litter in soil, especially as this may be the source of many fungi of potential use in lignocellulose fermentation. Many of these studies document the decomposition rates of the liter itself and the changes in its chemistry. Others concentrate on descriptions of the organisms involved in the decomposition process and link back to the chemistry of litter by describing successions of dominant organisms based on their enzyme expression (measured in a pure culture) to resources available. Lastly, the enzymes produced by the microbial community have been studied by characterizing gross measure of enzymes in soil (Sinsabaugh 2005).

The link between changes in the fungal community during the decomposition of leaf litter has been described in terms of resource succession. Gross changes in leaf litter chemistry dictate the changes in rates of decomposition as more labile material is utilized by the initial fungal community, leaving more recalcitrant materials to be utilized by later communities with appropriate enzyme capacity (Swift et al. 1979). The communities of fungi, and presumably bacteria also, change during the decomposition of specific resources in soil. Frankland identified changes in fungal communities over time on decomposing fern petioles (Frankland 1966). Similar studies revealed changes in fungal communities over time on decaying pine needles and identified interactions between these fungi and other soil biota (Ponge 1990, 1991). Reviews of the literature on resource succession can be found in Frankland (1992, 1998). *Neurospora* occupies a specific niche in the decomposition process, occupying substrates that have recently been burned. However, our understanding of the ecology of this genus is far from complete (Lee and Dighton 2010).

Although the changes in fungal communities on decomposing leaves have been described over time as a result of resource succession, most of the hypothesized link to changes in leaf litter chemistry has been derived from gross changes in leaf chemistry (analysis of whole or multiple leaves) (Frankland 1966; Ponge 1990, 1991). More recently, we have used FTIR-ATR to investigate changes in carbohydrate chemistry of leaf material at a scale more relevant to that of the fungal mycelium (Dighton et al. 2001) and with leaf litter burning as a surrogate to decomposition (Lammers et al. 2009). Using a combination of IR and atomic force microscopy, we are now able to map the influence of individual fungal hyphae on resource surface physicochemical properties (Oberle-Kilic et al. 2013).

The ability to evaluate the functional contribution of each member of a community is important as in natural ecosystems both bacteria and fungi and possible synergistic or competitive interactions between them affect the decomposition of

plant-derived materials. However, the research on plant litter decomposition usually focuses on single species of either bacteria or fungi as the major decomposers, rather than the intra- or inter-kingdom interactions.

Each fungal species has a suite of enzymes that it can produce. These have usually been described by the expression of enzymes in culture when provided with single sources of substrate in culture conditions (e.g., clearing cellulose agar). The enzyme expression of mixtures of microbial communities has rarely been examined. Specifically we are looking for potential synergistic activities and optimization of fungal community structure to maximize rates of decomposition. In other systems, optimization of fungal communities has been shown. One example showed that it was the absolute number of ectomycorrhizal fungal species on a root system that optimized nutrient uptake by the host tree, rather than the specific fungal species comprising that assemblage (Baxter and Dighton 2001, 2005). Similarly, competition between saprotrophic phylloplane fungi and a weak plant pathogen was optimized by a mix of 4–6 species and declined with increasing numbers of saprotrophic species (Nix-Stohr et al. 2008; Stohr and Dighton 2004). Thus, it is likely that at any one time the saprotrophic microbial community on decomposing leaf material is optimized in terms of number of species and their functional capabilities. The absolute composition of the species mix may be independent of the starting community inoculated into the system.

What can we learn from the genomics studies of model fungal species, such as *Neurospora*, that will allow greater understanding of fungi in natural ecosystems? Linking molecular methods of identification and transcriptomics, Stursova et al. (2012) identified changes in fungal and bacterial communities over time in relation to their ability to decompose cellulose. Taking the leaf litter (pine needles) and upper soil from Czech forests into microcosms, they showed that the litter was dominated by fungi and soil by bacteria (Stursova et al. 2012). To each soil component (litter or soil), they added ^{13}C-labeled *Zea mays* litter to represent a cellulose resource and followed changes in fungal and bacterial communities over the next 15 days. By pyrosequencing, they identified 12,111 bacteria, 7,075 fungi, and 6,782 carbohydrolase (endocellulase) gene encoding fungi (*cbhI*). Morphologically, they identified 1,164 bacterial OUTs, 493 fungi, and 297 fungi in the *cbhI* cluster. There was a very close fit between the temporal changes in fungal community with the increased use of cellulose towards an ascomycete-dominated community. Community change was much less defined in the bacterial community. Their data suggests that the ascomycete fungi are more important for cellulose utilization than basidiomycetes. The three phases of oak litter decomposition identified by Šnajdr et al. (2011) are also fungal dominated and show changes in the suites of enzymes produced by the associated fungal communities at each stage (Šnajdr et al. 2011). During the first 4 months that represent 16% mass loss, β-glucosidase, β-xylosidase, and cellobiohydrolase enzymes dominate. Over the next 8 months, endocellulase and endoxylanase enzymes dominate and account for the 32 % mass loss. The final stage of decomposition up to 2 years, resulting in a 62 % mass loss, is largely due to ligninolytic activity.

So, what codes for these enzymes and how different are contrasting groups of fungi in their coding for these enzyme expressions? This appears to be an emerging field of interest and is especially important if we are considering taking efficient enzyme processes from one organism and inserting into other organisms with desired traits to digest lignocellulose residues to manufacture biofuels. Using an endophytic strain of the ascomycete *Chaetomium globosum*, Longoni et al. (2012) identified eight genes with potential to decompose cellulose. These were in the glucohydrolase (GH) families 5, 6, 7, 16, and 24, in common with many other ascomycetes (Longoni et al. 2012). They also found two GH 61 enzymes suggesting the possession of oxidoreductive systems in this fungal species. Similarly, Ryu et al. (2011) identified 34 likely glycoside hydrolases from the brown rot basidiomycete *Postia placenta*. However, only four of these had sequences with suspected cellulose activity (two in GH family 5, one in 10, and one in 12). In a comparison of two closely related white rot basidiomycete fungi (*Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*), Fernandez-Fuego et al. found 13 genes encoding for manganese peroxidase in *C. subvermispora*, but only 5 in *P. chrysosporium*. Additionally, *C. subvermispora* had 7 genes encoding for laccases, but *P. chrysosporium* had none (Fernandez-Fueyo et al. 2012). This explains the greater oxidoreductive capacity of *C. subvermispora* and almost exclusive lignin decomposition capacity of this species, whereas *P. chrysosporium* decomposes both lignin and cellulose. A greater understanding of the genes coding for and expression of enzyme suites in more fungal species would be of utility both to provide greater understanding of the ecological role of these fungi and to provide a resource of enzyme systems that might be exploited for commercial processes either using the fungi in which the genes occur or to transpose into other organisms that have better traits for growth in industrial processes.

Not only is it of interest to understand what enzymes fungi are capable of producing, it is also of interest to find under what conditions these enzymes are induced to be produced. The developing field of transcriptomics is likely to provide tools to allow us to determine precise conditions under which a specific fungus produces certain enzymes. However, despite literature describing details of methodology (van Elsas and Boersma 2011; Yadav et al. 2010), the use of transcriptomics in fungal ecology appears not to have been explored to a great degree. Much of the work so far has concentrated on fungal species of economic importance. For example, Nevalainen et al. (2005) investigated heterologous proteins produced by fungi for industrial use. Their aim was to improve the understanding of the process to allow gene manipulation to promote higher yield of desired end products for industrial processes (Nevalainen et al. 2005). Similarly, Andersen and Nielsen (2009) worked on the genus *Aspergillus*, where a genome of a number of species has been sequenced (Andersen and Nielsen 2009). The transcriptomics of these species has largely concentrated on the industrial uses of coded proteins or on the production of aflatoxins. A comprehensive investigation of the potential use of *Aspergillus* in polysaccharide degradation (cellulose, hemicelluloses, xylan, etc.) was conducted by Coutinho et al. (2009). They identified Carbohydrate-Active-enZyme (CAZy) family of genes coding for

polysaccharide breakdown, identifying some species where genes code for a single enzyme and other for multiple enzymes. They list 45 enzyme codes for seven substrates and 40 CAZy families with only three enzyme codes utilizing multiple substrates. Currently, the http://www.CAZy.org database lists 26 fungal species including plant pathogens, yeasts, and fungi of industrial use, but virtually no soil fungi.

Apart from transcriptomics applied to the field of mycorrhizae, few studies have looked at saprotrophic fungi in their natural environment. Eastwood et al. (2011) evaluated the evolutionary position of brown rot fungi, which utilize cellulose and hemicelluloses being derived from white rot fungi where cellulose and lignin are decomposed. Their results suggest the evolution of the ectomycorrhizal habit arose by a further reduction of polysaccharide enzyme diversity as an adaptation to an intercellular habit. Brown rot and ectomycorrhizal fungi have fewest CAZy hydrolytic enzymes, e.g., both lacking class II peroxidases.

In another study on soils of sugar maple-dominated hardwood forest across eastern North America (Kellner et al. 2010), RNA was extracted from soil samples to identify fungal genes coding for lignocellulolytic and chitinolytic enzymes. The extracted RNA was reverse transcribed, and amplified cDNAs of interest were detected at the transcript level of expression of 234 genes encoding 26 enzymes. A limitation of this study is that they looked at transcript level gene expression and not the posttranscriptional level, which means that their study does not really represent expression of the gene only the potential for expression. Thus, there is a need to look at posttranscriptional level to gain an idea of what genes are being expressed by proteomics approaches. Urich et al. (2008) applied total community RNA extraction from soil combined with reverse transcription to cDNA without PCR, followed by direct pyrosequencing. This process yielded large numbers of cDNA and rRNA tags that were deconvoluted using MEGAN software, resulting in data on diversity of organisms (taxonomic community profile based on SSU and LSU rRNA). The functional diversity of this soil community was based on broad categories of function rather than discrete enzymes (e.g., photosynthesis, phosphate metabolism, membrane transport, nitrogen metabolism). This paper seemed to have potential but did not really provide information at the individual enzyme level. These broad categories of function may be too coarse to provide useful information on the function of fungal communities in soil processes.

Other studies have looked at specific groups of fungi that have some ecological benefit. Haferburg and Kothe (2010) investigated metallomics, where they identified metal-induced changes in transcriptome, proteome, and metabolome in their search for metal resistance and metal-binding mechanisms in fungi and bacteria. They report examples of enhanced phytoremediation using helper bacteria and mycorrhizae. Lorito et al. (2010) review the large literature based on the role of *Trichoderma* as a biocontrol agent in plant pathogenesis. They review knowledge from genes to environment including transcriptome studies using ESTs (expressed sequence tags). They list a variety of potentially important enzyme functions that could be expressed by a variety of *Trichoderma* species and isolates. Their data shows a complex suite of functions, especially related to possible biocontrol of

other fungal diseases and secondary metabolites. However, most of the data are derived from pure cultures grown in a variety of conditions and thus do not represent growth in the natural environment.

In addition to the genome coding for degradative enzymes for fungal nutrient acquisition and our use of these enzymes for lignocelluloses fermentation, fungi are well known to produce a wide array of secondary metabolites. Of these, the involvement of volatile organic compounds (VOCs) in fungal–fungal and fungal–bacterial competitive interactions is an important and relatively unexplored area of fungal community dynamics. Rossouw et al. (2008) used microarrays to identify VOC production potential as secondary metabolites by wine yeasts. This was derived from fermentation studies and would be very interesting to follow with fungal–fungal interactions in the natural environment to help understand signaling processes between organisms that regulate the expression of secondary metabolite genes involved in competitive interactions.

Additional to the role of fungi in decomposition of lignocelluloses for biofuel production, the suite of enzymes that many of these Basidiomycotina possess enables them to decompose organopollutants (Šašek 2005). Potential use of these fungi for mycoremediation of areas contaminated by chlorophenols, polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons, industrial dyes, dioxins, TNT, etc., has been proposed (Šašek 2005). The ability to insert appropriate genes to express desired enzyme suites in faster growing fungal species would be a benefit to these remediation efforts. Again, a greater understanding of the genetic regulation of enzyme expression to degrade organopollutants would allow us to better select efficient strains and optimize environmental conditions to promote degradation.

3.4 Concluding Remark

It is an exciting period of time in fungal biology. With the advancement of post-genomics tools, we may be able to test age-old ecological questions and address pressing environmental and renewable energy problems. It is our hope that more open and rigorous communications among different fields of fungal studies would enhance our understanding of both basic and applied fungal biology. The functional genomics tools developed and successfully utilized in the model organism in *Neurospora* would serve well in studying and utilizing less characterized soil fungi in diverse areas of research. The whole-genome knockout libraries of fungal species representing different functional groups (e.g., root and foliar plant pathogens, saprotrophs of contrasting taxonomic groups involved in plant litter decomposition, wood-rotting fungi) would lead to a significant progress in our understanding of soil fungal ecology.

References

Andersen MR, Nielsen J (2009) Current status of systems biology in Aspergilli. Fungal Genet Biol 46(Suppl 1):S180–S190

Avalos J, Estrada AF (2010) Regulation by light in *Fusarium*. Fungal Genet Biol 47:930–938

Bahn YS, Xue C, Idnurm A, Rutherford JC, Heitman J, Cardenas ME (2007) Sensing the environment: lessons from fungi. Nat Rev Microbiol 5:57–69

Baird NA, Etter PD, Atwood TS, Currey MC, Shiver AL, Lewis ZA, Selker EU, Cresko WA, Johnson EA (2008) Rapid SNP discovery and genetic mapping using sequenced RAD markers. PLoS One 3:e3376

Ballario P, Macino G (1997) White collar proteins: PASsing the light signal in *Neurospora crassa*. Trends Microbiol 5:458–462

Ballario P, Vittorioso P, Magrelli A, Talora C, Cabibbo A, Macino G (1996) White collar-1, a central regulator of blue light responses in *Neurospora*, is a zinc finger protein. EMBO J 15: 1650–1657

Ballario P, Talora C, Galli D, Linden H, Macino G (1998) Roles in dimerization and blue light photoresponse of the PAS and LOV domains of *Neurospora crassa* white collar proteins. Mol Microbiol 29:719–729

Baxter JW, Dighton J (2001) Ectomycorrhizal diversity alters growth and nutrient acquisition of gray birch (*Betula populifolia* Marshall) seedlings in host-symbiont culture conditions. New Phytol 152:139–149

Baxter JW, Dighton J (2005) Phosphorus source alters host plant response to ectomycorrhizal diversity. Mycorrhiza 15:513–523

Bayram O, Braus GH, Fischer R, Rodriguez-Romero J (2010) Spotlight on *Aspergillus nidulans* photosensory systems. Fungal Genet Biol 47:900–908

Beeson WT, Phillips CM, Cate JH, Marletta MA (2012) Oxidative cleavage of cellulose by fungal copper-dependent polysaccharide monooxygenases. J Am Chem Soc 134:890–892

Bohlin C, Praestgaard E, Baumann MJ, Borch K, Praestgaard J, Monrad RN, Westh P (2013) A comparative study of hydrolysis and transglycosylation activities of fungal beta-glucosidases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:159–169

Chen CH, Dunlap JC, Loros JJ (2010) *Neurospora* illuminates fungal photoreception. Fungal Genet Biol 47:922–929

Cheng P, Yang Y, Heintzen C, Liu Y (2001) Coiled-coil domain-mediated FRQ-FRQ interaction is essential for its circadian clock function in *Neurospora*. EMBO J 20:101–108

Coradetti ST, Craig JP, Xiong Y, Shock T, Tian C, Glass NL (2012) Conserved and essential transcription factors for cellulase gene expression in ascomycete fungi. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:7397–7402

Corrochano LM (2007) Fungal photoreceptors: sensory molecules for fungal development and behaviour. Photochem Photobiol Sci 6:725–736

Corrochano LM, Garre V (2010) Photobiology in the Zygomycota: multiple photoreceptor genes for complex responses to light. Fungal Genet Biol 47:893–899

Coutinho PM, Andersen MR, Kolenova K, van Kuyk PA, Benoit I, Gruben BS, Trejo-Aguilar B, Visser H, van Solingen P, Pakula T, Seiboth B, Battaglia E, Aguilar-Osorio G, de Jong JF, Ohm RA, Aguilar M, Henrissat B, Nielsen J, Stalbrand H, de Vries RP (2009) Post-genomic insights into the plant polysaccharide degradation potential of *Aspergillus nidulans* and comparison to *Aspergillus niger* and *Aspergillus oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 46(Suppl 1): S161–S169

Dadachova E, Casadevall A (2008) Ionizing radiation: how fungi cope, adapt, and exploit with the help of melanin. Curr Opin Microbiol 11:525–531

Dadachova E, Bryan RA, Huang X, Moadel T, Schweitzer AD, Aisen P, Nosanchuk JD, Casadevall A (2007) Ionizing radiation changes the electronic properties of melanin and enhances the growth of melanized fungi. PLoS One 2:e457

De Sordi L, Muhlschlegel FA (2009) Quorum sensing and fungal-bacterial interactions in Candida albicans: a communicative network regulating microbial coexistence and virulence. FEMS Yeast Res 9:990–999

Degli-Innocenti F, Russo VE (1984) Isolation of new *white collar* mutants of *Neurospora crassa* and studies on their behavior in the blue light-induced formation of protoperithecia. J Bacteriol 159:757–761

Denault DL, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2001) WC-2 mediates WC-1-FRQ interaction within the PAS protein-linked circadian feedback loop of *Neurospora*. EMBO J 20:109–117

Dettman JR, Anderson JB, Kohn LM (2010) Genome-wide investigation of reproductive isolation in experimental lineages and natural species of *Neurospora*: identifying candidate regions by microarray-based genotyping and mapping. Evolution 64:694–709

Dighton J, Mascarenhas M, Arbuckle-Keil GA (2001) Changing resources: assessment of leaf litter carbohydrate resource change at a microbial scale of resolution. Soil Biol Biochem 33:1429–1432

Dighton J, Tugay T, Zhdanova N (2008) Fungi and ionizing radiation from radionuclides. FEMS Microbiol Lett 281:109–120

DOE Office of Biological and Environmental Research. DOE office of biological and environmental research: biofuels strategic plan. http://science.energy.gov/~/media/ber/pdf/biofuels_strategic_plan.pdf

Dogaris I, Gkounta O, Mamma D, Kekos D (2012) Bioconversion of dilute-acid pretreated sorghum bagasse to ethanol by *Neurospora crassa*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 95:541–550

Dogaris I, Mamma D, Kekos D (2013) Biotechnological production of ethanol from renewable resources by *Neurospora crassa*: an alternative to conventional yeast fermentations? Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:1457–1473

Dunlap JC, Borkovich KA, Henn MR, Turner GE, Sachs MS, Glass NL, McCluskey K, Plamann M, Galagan JE, Birren BW, Weiss RL, Townsend JP, Loros JJ, Nelson MA, Lambreghts R, Colot HV, Park G, Collopy P, Ringelberg C, Crew C, Litvinkova L, De Caprio D, Hood HM, Curilla S, Shi M, Crawford M, Koerhsen M, Montgomery P, Larson L, Pearson M, Kasuga T, Tian C, Basturkmen M, Altamirano L, Xu J (2007) Enabling a community to dissect an organism: overview of the *Neurospora* functional genomics project. Adv Genet 57:49–96

Durrell LW, Shields LA (1960) Fungi isolated in culture from soils of the Nevada test site. Mycologia 52:636–641

Eastwood DC, Floudas D, Binder M, Majcherczyk A, Schneider P, Aerts A, Asiegbu FO, Baker SE, Barry K, Bendiksby M, Blumentritt M, Coutinho PM, Cullen D, de Vries RP, Gathman A, Goodell B, Henrissat B, Ihrmark K, Kauserud H, Kohler A, LaButti K, Lapidus A, Lavin JL, Lee YH, Lindquist E, Lilly W, Lucas S, Morin E, Murat C, Oguiza JA, Park J, Pisabarro AG, Riley R, Rosling A, Salamov A, Schmidt O, Schmutz J, Skrede I, Stenlid J, Wiebenga A, Xie X, Kues U, Hibbett DS, Hoffmeister D, Hogberg N, Martin F, Grigoriev IV, Watkinson SC (2011) The plant cell wall-decomposing machinery underlies the functional diversity of forest fungi. Science 333:762–765

Elias-Arnanz M, Padmanabhan S, Murillo FJ (2011) Light-dependent gene regulation in nonphototrophic bacteria. Curr Opin Microbiol 14:128–135

Eriksson K-EL, Blanchette RA, Ander P (1991) Microbial and enzymatic degradation of wood and wood components. Springer, Berlin

Fan Z, Wu W, Hildebrand A, Kasuga T, Zhang R, Xiong X (2012) A novel biochemical route for fuels and chemicals production from cellulosic biomass. PLoS One 7:e31693

Fernandez-Fueyo E, Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Ferreira P, Floudas D, Hibbett DS, Canessa P, Larrondo LF, James TY, Seelenfreund D, Lobos S, Polanco R, Tello M, Honda Y, Watanabe T, Watanabe T, Ryu JS, Kubicek CP, Schmoll M, Gaskell J, Hammel KE, St John FJ, Vanden Wymelenberg A, Sabat G, Splinter BonDurant S, Syed K, Yadav JS, Doddapaneni H, Subramanian V, Lavin JL, Oguiza JA, Perez G, Pisabarro AG, Ramirez L, Santoyo F, Master E, Coutinho PM, Henrissat B, Lombard V, Magnuson JK, Kuees U, Hori C, Igarashi K, Samejima M, Held BW, Barry KW,

LaButti KM, Lapidus A, Lindquist EA, Lucas SM, Riley R, Salamov AA, Hoffmeister D, Schwenk D, Hadar Y, Yarden O, de Vries RP, Wiebenga A, Stenlid J, Eastwood D, Grigoriev IV, Berka RM, Blanchette RA, Kersten P, Martinez AT, Vicuna R, Cullen D (2012) Comparative genomics of *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* and *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* provide insight into selective ligninolysis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:5458–5463

Frankland JC (1966) Succession of fungi on decaying petioles of *Pteridium aquilinum*. J Ecol 54:41–63

Frankland JC (1992) Mechanisms in fungal succession. In: Caroll G, Wicklow DT (eds) The fungal community: its organization and role in the ecosystem. Marcel Dekker, New York

Frankland JC (1998) Fungal succession – unravelling the unpredictable. Mycol Res 102:1–15

Froehlich AC, Liu Y, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2002) White Collar-1, a circadian blue light photoreceptor, binding to the *frequency* promoter. Science 297:815–819

Fu C, Iyer P, Herkal A, Abdullah J, Stout A, Free SJ (2011) Identification and characterization of genes required for cell-to-cell fusion in *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 10:1100–1109

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Borkovich KA, Selker EU, Read ND, Jaffe D, FitzHugh W, Ma LJ, Smirnov S, Purcell S, Rehman B, Elkins T, Engels R, Wang S, Nielsen CB, Butler J, Endrizzi M, Qui D, Ianakiev P, Bell-Pedersen D, Nelson MA, Werner-Washburne M, Selitrennikoff CP, Kinsey JA, Braun EL, Zelter A, Schulte U, Kothe GO, Jedd G, Mewes W, Staben C, Marcotte E, Greenberg D, Roy A, Foley K, Naylor J, Stange-Thomann N, Barrett R, Gnerre S, Kamal M, Kamvysselis M, Mauceli E, Bielke C, Rudd S, Frishman D, Krystofova S, Rasmussen C, Metzenberg RL, Perkins DD, Kroken S, Cogoni C, Macino G, Catcheside D, Li W, Pratt RJ, Osmani SA, DeSouza CP, Glass L, Orbach MJ, Berglund JA, Voelker R, Yarden O, Plamann M, Seiler S, Dunlap J, Radford A, Aramayo R, Natvig DO, Alex LA, Mannhaupt G, Ebbole DJ, Freitag M, Paulsen I, Sachs MS, Lander ES, Nusbaum C, Birren B (2003) The genome sequence of the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Nature 422: 859–868

Gallo ME, Porras-Alfaro A, Odenbach KJ, Sinsabaugh RL (2009) Photoacceleration of plant litter decomposition in an arid environment. Soil Biol Biochem 41:1433–1441

Gauslaa Y, Solhaug KA (2001) Fungal melanins as a sun screen for symbiotic green algae in the lichen *Lobaria pulmonaria*. Oecologia 126:462–471

Gooch VD, Mehra A, Larrondo LF, Fox J, Touroutoutoudis M, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2008) Fully codon-optimized luciferase uncovers novel temperature characteristics of the *Neurospora* clock. Eukaryot Cell 7:28–37

Haferburg G, Kothe E (2010) Metallomics: lessons for metalliferous soil remediation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:1271–1280

Hammond TM, Xiao H, Boone EC, Perdue TD, Pukkila PJ, Shiu PK (2011) SAD-3, a putative helicase required for meiotic silencing by unpaired DNA, interacts with other components of the silencing machinery. G3 (Bethesda) 1:369–376

He Q, Cheng P, Yang Y, Wang L, Gardner KH, Liu Y (2002) White collar-1, a DNA binding transcription factor and a light sensor. Science 297:840–843

Heintzen C, Liu Y (2007) The *Neurospora crassa* circadian clock. Adv Genet 58:25–66

Heintzen C, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2001) The PAS protein VIVID defines a clock-associated feedback loop that represses light input, modulates gating, and regulates clock resetting. Cell 104:453–464

Honda S, Selker EU (2009) Tools for fungal proteomics: multifunctional neurospora vectors for gene replacement, protein expression and protein purification. Genetics 182:11–23

Hurley JM, Chen CH, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2012) Light-inducible system for tunable protein expression in *Neurospora crassa*. G3 (Bethesda) 2:1207–1212

Jacobson DJ, Dettman JR, Adams RI, Boesl C, Sultana S, Roenneberg T, Merrow M, Duarte M, Marques I, Ushakova A, Carneiro P, Videira A, Navarro-Sampedro L, Olmedo M, Corrochano LM, Taylor JW (2006) New findings of Neurospora in Europe and comparisons of diversity in temperate climates on continental scales. Mycologia 98:550–559

Karpenko YV, Redchitz TI, Zheltonozhsky VA, Dighton J, Zhdanova NN (2006) Comparative responses of microscopic fungi to ionizing radiation and light. Folia Microbiol 51:45–49

Kellner H, Zak DR, Vandenbol M (2010) Fungi unearthed: transcripts encoding lignocellulolytic and chitinolytic enzymes in forest soil. PLoS One 5:e10971

Kume A, Nasahara KN, Nagai S, Muraoka H (2011) The ratio of transmitted near-infrared radiation to photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) increases in proportion to the adsorbed PAR in the canopy. J Plant Res 124:99–106

Lammers K, Dighton J, Arbuckle-Keil GA (2009) FT-IR study of the changes in carbohydrate chemistry of three New Jersey pine barrens leaf litters during simulated control burning. Soil Biol Biochem 41:340–347

Larrondo LF, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2012) High-resolution spatiotemporal analysis of gene expression in real time: in vivo analysis of circadian rhythms in *Neurospora crassa* using a FREQUENCY-luciferase translational reporter. Fungal Genet Biol 49:681–683

Lee K, Dighton J (2010) Neurospora, a potential fungal organism for experimental and evolutionary ecology. Fungal Biol Rev 24:85–89

Lee K, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2000) Interconnected feedback loops in the *Neurospora* circadian system. Science 289:107–110

Lewis ZA, Shiver AL, Stiffler N, Miller MR, Johnson EA, Selker EU (2007) High-density detection of restriction-site-associated DNA markers for rapid mapping of mutated loci in *Neurospora*. Genetics 177:1163–1171

Li X, Beeson WT IV, Phillips CM, Marletta MA, Cate JH (2012) Structural basis for substrate targeting and catalysis by fungal polysaccharide monooxygenases. Structure 20:1051–1061

Linden H, Macino G (1997) White collar 2, a partner in blue-light signal transduction, controlling expression of light-regulated genes in *Neurospora crassa*. EMBO J 16:98–109

Linden H, Rodriguez-Franco M, Macino G (1997) Mutants of *Neurospora crassa* defective in regulation of blue light perception. Mol Gen Genet 254:111–118

Longoni P, Rodolfi M, Pantaleoni L, Doria E, Concia L, Picco AM, Cella R (2012) Functional analysis of the degradation of cellulosic substrates by a *Chaetomium globosum* endophytic isolate. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:3693–3705

Lorito M, Woo SL, Harman GE, Monte E (2010) Translational research on *Tricholoma*: from ‘omics to the field. Annu Rev Phytopathol 48:395–417

Lundell TK, Makela MR, Hilden K (2010) Lignin-modifying enzymes in filamentous basidiomycetes–ecological, functional and phylogenetic review. J Basic Microbiol 50:5–20

Nargang FE, Adames K, Rub C, Cheung S, Easton N, Nargang CE, Chae MS (2012) Identification of genes required for alternative oxidase production in the *Neurospora crassa* gene knockout library. G3 (Bethesda) 2:1345–1356

Nevalainen KM, Te'o VS, Bergquist PL (2005) Heterologous protein expression in filamentous fungi. Trends Biotechnol 23:468–474

Nix-Stohr S, Moshe R, Dighton J (2008) Effects of propagule density and survival strategies on establishment and growth: further investigations in the phylloplane fungal model system. Microb Ecol 55:38–44

Oberle-Kilic J, Dighton J, Arbuckle-Keil G (2013) Atomic force microscopy and micro-ATR-FT-IR imaging reveals fungal enzyme activity at the hyphal scale of resolution. Mycology 4:1–10. doi:10.1080/21501203.2012.759631

Pandit A, Maheshwari R (1996) Life-history of *Neurospora intermedia* in a sugar cane field. J Biosci 21:57–79

Park G, Servin JA, Turner GE, Altamirano L, Colot HV, Collopy P, Litvinkova L, Li L, Jones CA, Diala FG, Dunlap JC, Borkovich KA (2011) Global analysis of serine-threonine protein kinase genes in *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 10:1553–1564

Phillips CM, Beeson WT, Cate JH, Marletta MA (2011) Cellobiose dehydrogenase and a copper-dependent polysaccharide monooxygenase potentiate cellulose degradation by *Neurospora crassa*. ACS Chem Biol 6:1399–1406

Ponge JF (1990) Ecological study of a forest humus by observing a small volume. 1. Penetration of Pine litter by mycorrhizal fungi. Eur J For Pathol 20:290–303

Ponge JF (1991) Succession of fungi and fauna during decomposition of needles in a small area of scots pine litter. Plant Soil 138:99–113

Purschwitz J, Muller S, Kastner C, Schoser M, Haas H, Espeso EA, Atoui A, Calvo AM, Fischer R (2008) Functional and physical interaction of blue- and red-light sensors in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Curr Biol 18:255–259

Rockwell NC, Lagarias JC (2010) A brief history of phytochromes. Chemphyschem 11: 1172–1180

Rodriguez-Romero J, Hedtke M, Kastner C, Muller S, Fischer R (2010) Fungi, hidden in soil or up in the air: light makes a difference. Annu Rev Microbiol 64:585–610

Rossouw D, Naes T, Bauer FF (2008) Linking gene regulation and the exo-metabolome: a comparative transcriptomics approach to identify genes that impact on the production of volatile aroma compounds in yeast. BMC Genomics 9:530

Roux A, Payne SM, Gilmore MS (2009) Microbial telesensing: probing the environment for friends, foes, and food. Cell Host Microbe 6:115–124

Rowe HC, Renaut S, Guggisberg A (2011) RAD in the realm of next-generation sequencing technologies. Mol Ecol 20:3499–3502

Ryu JS, Shary S, Houtman CJ, Panisko EA, Korripally P, St. John FJ, Crooks C, Siika-aho M, Magnuson JK, Hammel KE (2011) Proteomic and functional analysis of the cellulase system expressed by *Postia placenta* during brown rot of solid wood. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:7933–7941

Sanchez C (2009) Lignocellulosic residues: biodegradation and bioconversion by fungi. Biotechnol Adv 27:185–194

Šašek V (2005) Potential of ligninolytic Basidiomycetes to degrade organopollutants. In: Deshmukh SK, Rai MK (eds) Biodiversity of fungi: their role in human life. Science, Enfield, NH, pp 155–184

Schmoll M, Tian C, Sun J, Tisch D, Glass NL (2012) Unravelling the molecular basis for light modulated cellulase gene expression – the role of photoreceptors in *Neurospora crassa*. BMC Genomics 13:127

Schwerdtfeger C, Linden H (2000) Localization and light-dependent phosphorylation of white collar 1 and 2, the two central components of blue light signaling in *Neurospora crassa*. Eur J Biochem 267:414–422

Schwerdtfeger C, Linden H (2001) Blue light adaptation and desensitization of light signal transduction in *Neurospora crassa*. Mol Microbiol 39:1080–1087

Sharrock RA (2008) The phytochrome red/far-red photoreceptor superfamily. Genome Biol 9:230

Sinsabaugh RL (2005) Fungal enzymes at the community scale. In: Dighton J, White JF Jr, Oudemans P (eds) The fungal community: its organization and role in the ecosystem. CRC, Boca Raton, pp 349–360

Šnajdr J, Cajthaml T, Valášková V, Merhautová V, Petránková M, Spetz P, Leppänen K, Baldrian P (2011) Transformation of Quercus petraea litter: successive changes in litter chemistry are reflected in differential enzyme activity and changes in the microbial community composition. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 75:291–303

Stohr SN, Dighton J (2004) Effects of species diversity on establishment and coexistence: a phylloplane fungal community model system. Microb Ecol 48:431–438

Stursova M, Zifcakova L, Leigh MB, Burgess R, Baldrian P (2012) Cellulose utilization in forest litter and soil: identification of bacterial and fungal decomposers. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 80:735–746

Sun J, Glass NL (2011) Identification of the CRE-1 cellulolytic regulon in *Neurospora crassa*. PLoS One 6:e25654

Sun J, Phillips CM, Anderson CT, Beeson WT, Marletta MA, Glass NL (2011a) Expression and characterization of the *Neurospora crassa* endoglucanase GH5-1. Protein Expr Purif 75: 147–154

Sun X, Zhang H, Zhang Z, Wang Y, Li S (2011b) Involvement of a helix-loop-helix transcription factor CHC-1 in CO(2)-mediated conidiation suppression in *Neurospora crassa*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:1077–1086

Sun J, Tian C, Diamond S, Glass NL (2012) Deciphering transcriptional regulatory mechanisms associated with hemicellulose degradation in *Neurospora crassa*. Eukaryot Cell 11:482–493

Swift MJ, Heal OW, Anderson JM (1979) Decomposition in terrestrial ecosystems. University of California Press, Berkeley

Talora C, Franchi L, Linden H, Ballario P, Macino G (1999) Role of a white collar-1-white collar-2 complex in blue-light signal transduction. EMBO J 18:4961–4968

Tian C, Beeson WT, Iavarone AT, Sun J, Marletta MA, Cate JH, Glass NL (2009) Systems analysis of plant cell wall degradation by the model filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:22157–22162

Tugay T, Zhdanova NN, Zheltonozhsky V, Sadovnikov L, Dighton J (2006) The influence of ionizing radiation on spore germination and emergent hyphal growth response reactions of microfungi. Mycologia 98:521–527

Turner GE (2011) Phenotypic analysis of *Neurospora crassa* gene deletion strains. Methods Mol Biol 722:191–198

Urich T, Lanzen A, Qi J, Huson DH, Schleper C, Schuster SC (2008) Simultaneous assessment of soil microbial community structure and function through analysis of the meta-transcriptome. PLoS One 3:e2527

van Elsas JD, Boersma FGH (2011) A review of molecular methods to study the microbiota of soil and the mycosphere. Eur J Soil Biol 47:77–87

Watters MK, Boersma M, Johnson M, Reyes C, Westrick E, Lindamood E (2011) A screen for *Neurospora* knockout mutants displaying growth rate dependent branch density. Fungal Biol 115:296–301

Wilson DB (2008) Three microbial strategies for plant cell wall degradation. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1125:289–297

Yadav SK, Singla-Preek SL, Pareek A (2010) Transcriptome analysis. In: Varma A, Oelmüller R (eds) Soil biology. Springer, Berlin, pp 111–131

Zhdanova NN, Vasilevskaya AI, Artyshkova LV, Sadovnikov YS, Lashko TN, Gavrilyuk VI, Dighton J (1994) Changes in micromycete communities in soil in response to pollution by long-lived radionuclides emitted in the chernobyl accident. Mycol Res 98:789–795

Znameroski EA, Coradetti ST, Roche CM, Tsai JC, Iavarone AT, Cate JH, Glass NL (2012) Induction of lignocellulose-degrading enzymes in *Neurospora crassa* by cellodextrins. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:6012–6017

Chapter 4
Major Plant Pathogens of the Magnaporthaceae Family

Adriana Illana, Julio Rodriguez-Romero, and Ane Sesma

4.1 Taxonomy of the Magnaporthaceae Family

The Magnaporthaceae family (P.F. Cannon) has a complex taxonomic history. *Gaeumannomyces* and *Magnaporthe* species were grouped in the Magnaporthaceae based on the common morphology of their teleomorphs and similarities in host range (Cannon 1994). The Magnaporthaceae family is included within the class Sordariomycetes (Cannon and Kirk 2007). Traditionally, the genus *Gaeumannomyces* belonged to the order Diaporthales. Since the Magnaporthaceae family expanded to comprise fungal species that are not limited to Diaporthales fungi (Berbee 2001; Castlebury et al. 2002), enough evidence has been found to classify these fungal species at a new order level, and currently the order Magnaporthales has been proposed (Thongkantha et al. 2009). The Magnaporthaceae is a small family that comprises 17 genera and nearly a 100 species (Kirk et al. 2008; Thongkantha et al. 2009). The genera *Buergenerula*, *Ceratosphaerella*, *Clasterosphaeria*, *Clasterosporium*, *Gaeumannomyces*, *Gibellina*, *Harpophora*, *Herbampulla*, *Magnaporthe*, *Muraeriata*, *Mycoleptodiscus*, *Nakataea*, *Omnidemptus*, *Ophioceras*, *Pseudohalonectria*, *Pyricularia* and *Yukonia* belong to this family (Thongkantha et al. 2009). It is interesting to highlight that marine fungal species are included within this family such as *Buergenerula spartinae*, *Gaeumannomyces medullaris* (anamorph *Trichocladium medullare*) and *Pseudohalonectria halophila* (Jones et al. 2009).

Some *Phialophora* species have been reported as anamorphs of several *Gaeumannomyces* species including the take-all fungus *Gaeumannomyces. graminis*. The *Gaeumannomyces* species together with their *Phialophora* anamorphs and other root colonisers of non-pathogenic *Phialophora* species form the *Gaeumannomyces–Phialophora* complex (Bateman et al. 1992; Bryan et al. 1995;

A. Illana • J. Rodriguez-Romero • A. Sesma (✉)
Centre for Plant Biotechnology and Genomics (CBGP), Universidad Politécnica de Madrid, Campus de Montegancedo, 28223 Pozuelo de Alarcón, Madrid, Spain
e-mail: a.illana@upm.es; julio.rodriguez.romero@upm.es; ane.sesma@upm.es

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_4,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

Table 4.1 Fungal species within the genus *Gaeumannomyces*[a]

Species	Other names	Host plant	First report location	References
G. amomi		Wild ginger (*Amomum siamense* L.)	Thailand	Bussaban et al. (2001)
G. caricis	*G. eucryptus*	Marsh grass and other sedges of Cyperaceae		Walker (1980)
G. cylindrosporus	*Phialophora radicicola* var. *graminicola* ≡ *Harpophora graminicola*	Cereals and grasses		Hornby et al. (1977)
G. graminis		Cereals and grasses	Sweden	Arx and Olivier (1952) and Walker (1972)
G. incrustans		Turfgrasses	USA	Landschoot and Jackson (1989b)
G. licualae		Palm tree (*Licuala* spp.)	Australia	Frohlich and Hyde (1999)
G. medullaris	*Trichocladium medullare*	Rush (*Juncus roemerianus* L.)	USA (North Carolina)	Kohlmeyer and Volkmann-kohlmeyer (1995)
G. mirabilis	*Diaboliumbilicus mirabilis*	Palm bamboo (*Sasa veitchii* L.)	Japan	Vasilyeva (1998); (index fungorum 2: 269)
G. wongoonoo		Buffalo grass (syn. St Augustine grass, *Stenotaphrum secundatum* L.)	Australia	Wong (2002)

[a]Additional information: Freeman and Ward (2004), and Thongkantha et al. (2009)

Henson 1992; Ulrich et al. 2000). Within the genus *Gaeumannomyces*, taxonomists have identified up to nine different fungal species (Table 4.1).

Phylogenetic analyses using partial sequences of the 18S and 28S ribosomal genes of fungal isolates from different Magnaporthaceae genera suggested a monophyletic origin of this family (Thongkantha et al. 2009). However, more recent studies based on a six-gene phylogeny strongly support that both genera *Magnaporthe* and *Gaeumannomyces* are polyphyletic (Zhang et al. 2011c), meaning that they share a number of morphological signatures, but their origin probably is not from a common ancestor (convergent evolution). Therefore, the classification and evolution of *Magnaporthe*/*Gaeumannomyces* species needs further analyses by additional multigene phylogenies and whole genome comparison approaches (see Sect. 4.5).

The first original report describing the fungus *Pyricularia grisea* as the causal agent of grey leaf spot on the grass *Digitaria sanguinalis* appeared in 1880 (Saccardo 1880). A few years later, in 1892, Cavara published a report naming *Pyricularia oryzae* as the causal agent of rice blast disease (Cavara 1892). Subsequently, the name *P. oryzae* was applied for rice-infecting isolates; the isolates from other cereals and grasses kept the name *P. grisea*. However, *P. oryzae* was considered as a synonym of *P. grisea* based on morphological commonalities and interfertility between *P. oryzae* strains from rice and *P. grisea* strains from different grass hosts. Then, it was corrected to name rice-infecting isolates as *P. grisea* (Rossman et al. 1990). Concomitantly, the teleomorph of *P. grisea* was identified as *Magnaporthe grisea* (T.T. Hebert) M.E. Barr (Hebert 1971), and taxonomically it was more correct to name the sexual stage of the fungus (see further information on this subject below). As a result, scientists working on blast disease have been using four different names to refer to rice-infecting blast isolates (*P. grisea*, *P. oryzae*, *M. grisea* and *M. oryzae*).

To gain clarification on the taxonomy of *Magnaporthe* species, rice and all the other grass isolates are currently included within the *M. grisea* species complex (Couch and Kohn 2002). Globally, *M. grisea* species complex can infect a wide range of plant hosts, although one strain infects only one or few host species. Frequently one strain is susceptible only to a specific cultivar of the host (Borromeo et al. 1993; Valent and Chumley 1991). Phylogenetic analysis has inferred the presence of two monophyletic intersterile groups within the *M. grisea* species complex based on three unrelated gene sequences (actin, β-tubulin and calmodulin) and mating compatibility tests (Couch and Kohn 2002). The lineage *M. grisea* has been kept for fungal isolates associated with the host grass *Digitaria* spp. The second lineage contains rice and related fungal isolates and has been renamed as a new species, *M. oryzae*, although no morphological differences exist between isolates of these two groups.

The teleomorph is the sexual form (reproductive stage) of a fungus, while the anamorph is its asexual form. It has been a common practice to name differently the anamorph and teleomorph of a particular fungus. Based on the Article 59 of the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature, a particular fungal species with both reproductive stages, the teleomorph name takes prevalence over the

anamorph name (Hawksworth 2011). However, molecular phylogenetic approaches and whole genome sequences have revolutionised taxonomy, and this dual nomenclature rule based on morphological features is going to disappear. The rule "one fungus, one name" was approved at the Melbourne International Botanical Congress in 2011 and will be applied from January 2013 onwards (Hawksworth 2011). This has originated an important debate about the maintenance of the genus *Magnaporthe* or *Pyricularia* for the rice blast fungus among community members (http://www.magnaporthe.blogspot.com.es/).

4.2 The Take-All Fungus *Gaeumannomyces graminis*

Take-all is an extremely damaging disease of cereals and grasses caused by *G. graminis*, a homothallic soilborne fungus that colonises preferentially belowground plant tissues (Asher and Shipton 1981; Freeman and Ward 2004; Hornby 1998). Isolates of *G. graminis* are classified into four varieties based on morphological traits (ascospore size or hyphopodial structure) and pathogenicity features (host range and aggressiveness):

1. Isolates of *G. graminis* var. ***tritici*** infect mainly wheat (*Triticum aestivum* L.) but also invade barley (*Hordeum vulgare* L.) and rye (*Secale cereale* L.; Walker 1972). *G. graminis* var. *tritici* isolates can be further classified as R or N isolates based on their ability [R] or inability [N] to infect rye (Bryan et al. 1995).
2. Isolates of *G. graminis* var. ***avenae*** [*Gaeumannomyces cariceti*] infect oats (*Avena* spp.) although they can also infect rice and wheat (Dennis 1960).
3. Isolates of *G. graminis* var. ***graminis*** are less aggressive and are normally found on maize (*Zea mays* L.), rice and other grasses such as Bermuda grass (*Cynodon dactylon* L.; Arx and Olivier 1952).
4. Isolates of *G. graminis* var. ***maydis*** are found in maize and can infect *Sorghum* species (Yao et al. 1992).

It is noteworthy to mention that *G. graminis* var. *tritici* and *avenae* strains are more closely related to each other than to *G. graminis* var. *graminis* isolates (Bryan et al. 1995). Little is known about the molecular mechanisms underlying the interaction of *G. graminis* with cereal roots due to the difficulty of generating stable transformants in this fungal species, although genetic crosses and gene disruption approaches have been successfully achieved in the past with *Gaeumannomyces* strains (Bowyer et al. 1995; Frederick et al. 1999). In addition, it is a real challenge to identify and introgress take-all resistance genes in polyploid hosts such as wheat and oat.

The take-all caused by *G. graminis* var. *tritici* on wheat is one of the major agronomical problems in this crop. The most characteristic symptom is the blackening of the root due to extended necrotic lesions preceded by a complete disruption of the root architecture in severely affected crops (Fig. 4.1a). It is possible to observe black mycelia at the stem base on diseased plants. As a consequence of

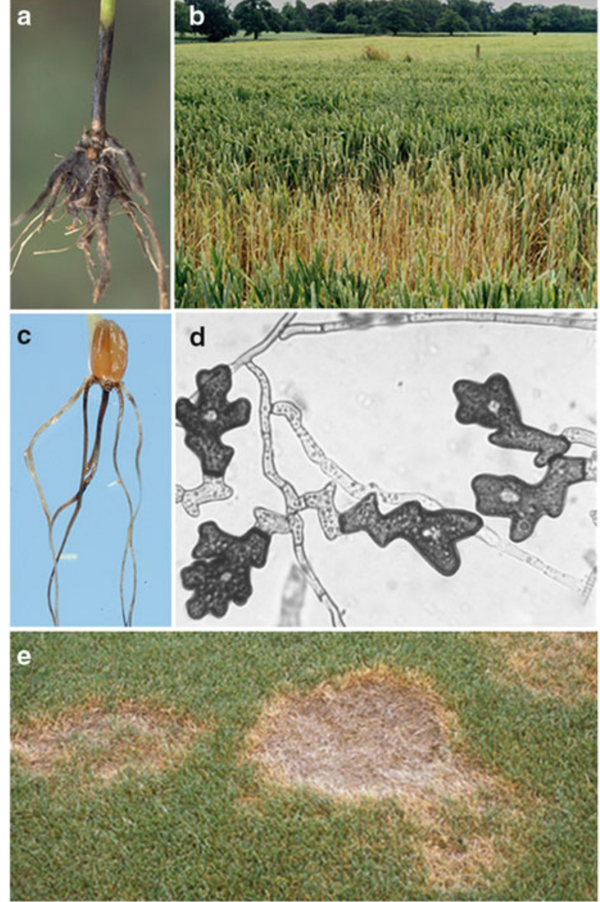


Fig. 4.1 *G. graminis var. tritici* disease symptoms. (**a**) Take-all symptoms on roots of an adult wheat plant, courtesy of Kansas State University. (**b**) Visible *white* heads and stunted plants on a wheat field infected with take-all, courtesy of Richard Gutteridge (Rothamsted Research, UK). (**c**) Necrotic lesions of a 14 days-old wheat seedling infected with *G. graminis*. (**d**) Lobed hyphopodia developed by *G. graminis* strains, with permission of Fungal Genetics and Biology. (**e**) Typical circular patches of *yellow-brown* colour of summer patch disease (*M. poae*) on turfgrass, courtesy of Dr. Lane Tredway, North Carolina State University

the collapse of the root, diseased plants tiller poorly and do not fill their heads, which become white ("whiteheads"). In the field, these symptoms are observed as round white patches (Fig. 4.1b). Disease symptoms can be present at early stages on seedlings (Fig. 4.1c). Penetration of roots by *G. graminis* is mediated by simple or lobed hyphopodia (Fig. 4.1d). Lobed hyphopodia can be melanised, but the role of the melanin in hyphopodia-mediated penetration is ambiguous in *Gaeumannomyces* species. Melanins are dark pigmented secondary metabolites produced by fungi and other organisms and play an important role in protecting these organisms against environmental stresses (Henson et al. 1999). In some phytopathogenic fungi, such as *M. oryzae*, melanin is required to keep the osmotic pressure that exerts the force for appressorium-mediated leaf penetration (De Jong et al. 1997; Howard and Valent 1996). *M. oryzae* melanin-deficient mutants are non-pathogenic. However, the involvement of melanin in pathogenicity among *Gaeumannomyces* species varies (Henson et al. 1999). Melanin-deficient mutants of *G. graminis* var. *graminis* are as virulent as the wild-type strain on rice roots.

By contrast, melanin is important for pathogenesis on *G. graminis* var. *tritici* isolates although the corresponding *Phialophora* anamorphs which are heavily melanised are non-pathogenic (Henson et al. 1999). This diverse role of melanin in root penetration and colonisation might indicate a prevalence of the mechanisms by which *G. graminis* varieties penetrate roots, i.e. turgor generation versus cell wall-degrading enzymes. Several laccases, possibly involved in the melanin biosynthesis pathway, have been biochemically characterised in *G. graminis* var. *tritici*. However, their participation in fungal virulence remains unclear due to their functional redundancy (Litvintseva and Henson 2002).

Plant cell wall represents the first barrier that any invader has to overcome to colonise the plant host. Fungal plant pathogens have developed combined strategies to cross plant cell walls. One of them is the secretion of cell wall-degrading enzymes during host invasion. Cellulose is the major polysaccharide polymer of plant cell walls (Fry 2004). It is composed of linear β(1 → 4)-linked D-glucose monomers. *G. graminis* var. *tritici* secretes endoglucanases and β-glucosidases during in vitro and *in planta* growth (Dori et al. 1995). In *G. graminis*, these enzymes have been grouped based on their acidic (4.0–5.6) and basic (≥9.3) isoelectric point. They are supposed to play an important role in cell wall degradation during *G. graminis* var. *tritici* growth on root tissues, but genetic approaches are required to confirm this hypothesis (Dori et al. 1995).

Preformed antimicrobial compounds produced by plants play an important role in plant immunity acting as first barriers to prevent pathogen attack (Field et al. 2006). The saponin avenacin is a triterpene metabolite present in the epidermal layer of oat root tips. Avenacins are a mixture of four glycosylated compounds (avenacins A1, A2, B1 and B2), and avenacin A1 is the most abundant isoform in oats (Crombie et al. 1984). Wheat roots cannot synthesise these triterpenes. While strains of *G. graminis* var. *avenae* infect oats due to their ability to synthesise avenacinase and also infect wheat, *G. graminis* var. *tritici* isolates only infect wheat roots (but not oat roots) and lack the avenacinase enzyme (Crombie et al. 1986). The fungal avenacinase detoxifies avenacin A1 into other less harmful compounds that do not affect *G. graminis* var. *avenae* growth. Taking in account that isolates of *G. graminis* var. *tritici* can infect a diploid oat species (*Avena longiglumis* L.) that lacks avenacin (Osbourn et al. 1994), a correlation exists between the presence of avenacins and the resistance of oats to non-host *G. graminis* fungal species. This was further confirmed by generating avenacinase-deficient mutants of *G. graminis* var. *avenae*, which no longer infected oat roots (Bowyer et al. 1995). Therefore, a single gene confers to *G. graminis* var. *avenae* the ability to detoxify avenacin and to control its host range.

4.3 *Magnaporthe poae*: A Root-Infecting Fungus of Turfgrasses

Magnaporthe poae affects roots and crowns of turfgrasses of the genera *Poa*, *Festuca* and *Agrostis* that are widely used in golf and other sport courses, parks and residential gardens (Landschoot and Jackson 1989a). Consequently, it is a commercially significant root-infecting fungal pathogen. The disease caused by *M. poae* is called summer patch due to the emergence of symptoms during the hot season in circular patches, which can increase up to 1 m in diameter (Fig. 4.1e). Temperature and high relative humidity favour fungal root penetration. Once inside the host, the fungus can progress through the vascular tissue to the aerial parts of the plant leading to subsequent foliar necrosis. Two new *Magnaporthe* species affecting warm-season turfgrasses have been recently described in Australia whose symptoms look similar to those produced by *M. poae* (Wong et al. 2012). These are *Magnaporthe garrettii* [P. T. W. Wong and M. L. Dickinson sp. nov.] found on couch (*Cynodon dactylon*) and *Magnaporthe griffinii* [P. T. W. Wong and A. M. Stirling sp. nov.] associated with a disease complex ("summer decline") of hybrid couch (*C. dactylon* × *C. transvaalensis*). These *Magnaporthe* species can be accurately identified in infected roots by PCR, providing a reliable method for early detection and disease management of summer patch (Zhao et al. 2012).

There is very limited information about mechanisms regulating *M. poae* infection process or plant resistance genes against summer patch disease (Tredway 2006). Serine protease activity has been observed during *M. poae* root colonisation (Sreedhar et al. 1999), suggesting an important role for this enzyme during fungal infection. Interestingly, the genome sequences of the *M. poae* strain ATCC 64411 and the Ggt isolate R3-111a-1 have been released since May 2010. The comparative analysis of the currently available genomes of Magnaporthaceae strains is still pending publication (Magnaporthe comparative Sequencing Project, Broad Institute of Harvard and MIT; http://www.broadinstitute.org/). A link may exist between their genetic intractability and their ability to colonise roots, where they have to subsist with other living organisms in the rhizosphere. Undoubtedly, the analysis of their genomes will provide many insights that will help to understand the molecular basis of ecological niche adaptation and pathogenicity in these fungal species.

4.4 Rice Blast Disease: An Important Constraint to Rice Production

Rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) is one of the most important cereal crops and staple diet of more than three billion people. Fungal blast is considered a major threat to rice crops and costs farmers a loss of nearly $5 billion a year (Skamnioti and Gurr 2009). Not surprisingly, it accounts for the world's largest fungicide market. The Japanese market alone for blast fungicides is estimated at US$400 million per year

(Skamnioti and Gurr 2009). Rice blast is caused by the fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae* (Couch and Kohn 2002), and this fungal species can also cause diseases in other staple food crops including finger millet, maize and wheat, representing a serious risk for food security globally and a significant challenge in developing countries (FAO 2009). The damage produced by blast in rice crops oscillates between 10 and 30 % every year. Under disease-conducive conditions, the fungus can destroy the entire crop (Thinlay et al. 2000). Rice blast is present in all rice-growing areas worldwide, including Western Australia where rice-growing areas were free of this disease until last year (You et al. 2012).

Rice blast is a polycyclic disease since *M. oryzae* can undergo multiple infection cycles during a rice-growing season. However, disease progression highly relies on favourable weather conditions, increasing the difficulty to effectively control blast. High humidity or long periods of rain followed by relatively warm temperatures favour spore germination and fungal penetration (Ou 1985). Wind-dispersed or water-splashed conidia are the main source of inoculum in the field (Ou 1985). However, *M. oryzae* can overwinter on alternative weed hosts and infested plant debris for almost 3 years, playing possibly an important role in the epidemiology of the disease (Harmon and Latin 2005). This fungus can form resting structures on roots and plant debris such as microsclerotia and vesicles, which can germinate even after 4 years of dormancy (Gangopadhyay and Row 1986; Sesma and Osbourn 2004) (Fig. 4.2a, b). *M. oryzae* can penetrate rice roots and spread through the vascular system to the aerial parts of the plant to produce blast disease symptoms (Fig. 4.2c, d), although the relevance of the underground infection process under field conditions is not proven yet (Besi et al. 2009; Sesma and Osbourn 2004). Domestic travellers and the transport of infected material (souvenirs made with seeds, weeds or rice straw) probably also contribute to the dissemination of the disease (You et al. 2012). PCR-based methods have been developed for detection of the fungus, offering a quick method to control the dissemination of infected material (Harmon et al. 2003).

In the field, rice blast disease symptoms are visible at any growth stage and at any part of the aerial plant tissue: leaf, collar, nodes, panicle neck and panicles (Fig. 4.2e–g). The shape, colour and size of the lesions largely depend on the rice cultivar, the age of the lesion and environmental conditions (Ou 1985). On leaves, blast lesions are eyespot shaped with white to grey colour and surrounded by a dark red-brown margin. Lesion size varies but commonly ranges between 1–1.5 cm long and 0.3–0.5 cm wide. The collar rot appears on the junction between the leaf blade and leaf sheath affecting the entire leaf. The neck rot is the most damaging symptom in the field. Typically a necrotic or rotten neck is visible at the base of the panicle often affecting the entire panicle, which becomes white and partially filled or completely unfilled. The blast symptoms in the panicle or nodes are brown or black. On roots, blast lesions show brown necrotic areas, and root architecture is maintained suggesting less aggressive damage compared to take-all symptoms caused by *G. graminis*.

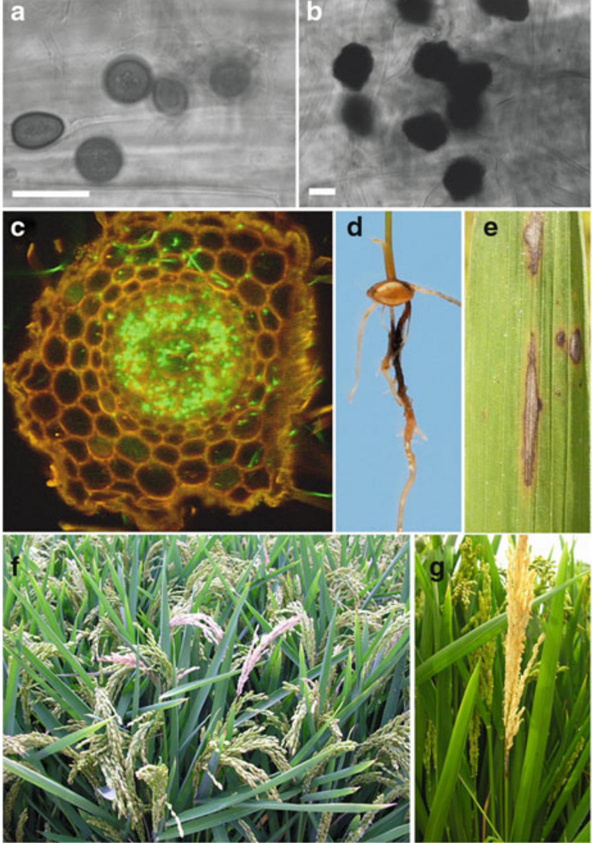


Fig. 4.2 Rice blast disease symptoms. (**a**) Fungal vesicles and (**b**) microsclerotia produced on root surfaces. (**c**) Cross section of a barley root infected with a GFP-tagged *M. oryzae* strain showing heavy colonisation of the vascular system. (**d**) Necrotic blast lesions of a 15-day-old rice seedling infected with *M. oryzae*. (**e**) Leaf blast symptoms. (**f**) Panicle blast in the field. (**g**) Neck blast symptoms. Images **f** and **g** courtesy of M. Pau Bretó (IVIA, Spain)

4.5 From Genome Sequences into Underlying Mechanisms Regulating Fungal Pathogenicity

Due to the genomic resources available for both the rice host and the fungus, the genetic tractability of *M. oryzae* and the economic relevance of blast disease, the rice–*M. oryzae* interaction has become a leading pathosystem for studying fungal pathogenicity and plant immunity in crops (Dean et al. 2012). The laboratory strain 70–15 was the first *M. oryzae* rice-infecting strain whose genome sequence was made available to the research community (Dean et al. 2005). It also represented the first genome publication of a fungal plant pathogen. The genome of *M. oryzae* is approximately 41 Mb in size (eight annotation, *Magnaporthe comparative* Sequencing Project, Broad Institute of Harvard and MIT; http://www.broadinstitute.org). Gene prediction programmes estimate the presence of 12,827 protein-coding genes, which are distributed in seven chromosomes. Optical mapping has allowed an accurate DNA alignment of the seven chromosomes.

The genome sequence of *M. oryzae* has revealed several pathogenicity-associated features. Predicted secreted proteins, which likely act as potential effectors modulating plant physiology and reducing basal host immune response, are more abundant in *M. oryzae* (~1,600) compared to *Neurospora crassa* (~800) or *Aspergillus nidulans* (~900). In addition, these non-pathogenic saprophytic fungi contain up to 10 genes encoding chitin-binding proteins, while *M. oryzae* genome has undergone an expansion on this protein family (~40 genes), indicating the complexity of chitin metabolism in *M. oryzae*. The rice blast fungus also presents an increase in seven transmembrane integral proteins, normally involved in activation of signalling pathways that help the fungus to adapt to specific external stimuli. A subgroup of these type of receptors contain CFEMs (conserved fungal-specific extracellular motif), which include an extracellular cysteine-rich EGF-like domain present exclusively in fungi (Kulkarni et al. 2005). One of the CFEM protein members, PTH11, has been shown to be involved in appressorium development and fungal virulence in *M. oryzae* (DeZwaan et al. 1999).

Different large-scale gene functional studies have been carried out since the release of *M. oryzae* genome sequence, including large-scale insertional mutagenesis (Betts et al. 2007; Jeon et al. 2007) and gene silencing (Nguyen et al. 2008). Transcriptomic approaches have also revealed global gene expression profiles during nitrogen starvation (Donofrio et al. 2006), appressorium development (Oh et al. 2008; Soanes et al. 2012) and plant infection (Mosquera et al. 2009). From the host perspective, at least 85 resistance gene loci (Pi genes), nine major QTLs defined by molecular markers and additional 350 QTLs have been identified on different rice germplasms to date (Ballini et al. 2008; Chen and Ronald 2011; Liu et al. 2010a). Furthermore, 17 resistance genes and two QTLs have been cloned since the release of the rice genome in 2002 (Table 4.2; Goff et al. 2002; Yu et al. 2002).

In 2010, and as mentioned in Sect. 4.3, two additional genomes of the Magnaporthaceae family have been made available to the scientific community (*Magnaporthe comparative* Sequencing Project, Broad Institute of Harvard and MIT; http://www.broadinstitute.org). These include the sequence drafts assemblies of the *G. graminis* var. *tritici* strain R3-111a-1 and the *M. poae* strain ATCC 64411. Although *G. graminis* var. *tritici* R3-111a-1 and *M. poae* ATCC 64411 genomes have not been assembled as well as *M. oryzae* genome, little syntenic regions exist among these three strains as shown by dot plot analysis (http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/magnaporthe_comparative/Dotplot.html), in accordance with the polyphyletic origin of *Magnaporthe* and *Gaeumannomyces* genera found by multigene phylogeny (Zhang et al. 2011c).

More recently, the genomes of *M. oryzae* rice-infecting field isolates Y34 and P131 have been sequenced and compared against the genome reference of the laboratory strain 70–15. This genomic comparison has pointed out some relevant features of the field isolates (Xue et al. 2012). Y34 and P131 strains contain several 100 unique genes and have undergone unique DNA duplication events and expansions of pathogenicity-associated gene families. Thousands of transposon-like elements are present on the field isolates, although their genomic locations are

Table 4.2 Cloned rice blast resistance genes and associated *M. oryzae* effectors[a]

R gene	Protein domains	Cognate effector	References
Pib	NBS-LRR	–	Wang et al. (1999)
Pita	NBS-LRR	AvrPita	Bryan et al. (2000)
Pi9	NBS-LRR	–	Qu et al. (2006)
Pi2	NBS-LRR	–	Zhou et al. (2006)
Piz-t	NBS-LRR	AvrPiz-t	Zhou et al. (2006)
Pi-d2	Receptor kinase	–	Chen et al. (2006)
Pi36	NBS-LRR	–	Liu et al. (2007)
Pi37	NBS-LRR	–	Lin et al. (2007)
Pit	NBS-LRR	–	Hayashi and Yoshida (2009)
Pi5	NBS-LRR	–	Lee et al. (2009)
Pid3	NBS-LRR	–	Shang et al. (2009)
Pik-h	NBS-LRR	–	Sharma et al. (2010)
Pik-m	NBS-LRR	AvrPik/km/kp	Ashikawa et al. (2008)
Pik	Two NBS-LRR	AvrPik/km/kp	Zhai et al. (2011)
Pik-p	Two NBS-LRR	AvrPik/km/kp	Yuan et al. (2011)
Pi1	Two NBS-LRR	AvrPik/km/kp	Hua et al. (2012)
Pia	Two NBS-LRR	AvrPia	Okuyama et al. (2011)
QTLs			
Pi21	Proline rich	–	Fukuoka et al. (2009)
Pb1	NBS-LRR	–	Hayashi et al. (2010)

[a]Additional information: Ballini et al. (2008), Chen and Ronald (2011), Liu et al. (2010a) and Skamnioti and Gurr (2009)

poorly conserved among them. This suggests that transposition events might play an important role in genome variation in the rice blast fungus, which can explain the rapid adaptation of *M. oryzae* isolates to new resistant rice varieties (Kang et al. 2001; Zeigler 1998).

4.6 Evolutionary Implications of *M. oryzae* Reproduction

M. oryzae is a haploid and heterothallic ascomycetous fungus. Blast isolates with opposite mating types MAT-1.1 and MAT-1.2 (compatible strains) can conjugate and enter into an heterokaryotic stage where mycelia contain unfused nuclei (Valent et al. 1991). Subsequently, this heterokaryotic mycelium enters into a sexual cycle by fusing both nuclei. Within 3 weeks, sexual fruiting bodies or perithecia are formed. The perithecium is filled with asci, each of which contains eight ascospores (sexual spores). The dissection of ascospores is used for classical genetic studies to determine the genetic basis of phenotypic traits looking at the segregation of genetic markers (Talbot 2003; Valent and Chumley 1991; Valent et al. 1991). Blast strains isolated from finger millet (*Eleusine coracana*) or weeping lovegrass (*Eragrostis curvula*) are normally hermaphrodites and have been used to conduct early genetic studies (Valent et al. 1991). By contrast, rice

blast isolates from the same geographic location reproduce mainly asexually since the same mating type is found normally among local populations and are female sterile (Couch et al. 2005; Zeigler 1998). A few examples of fertile rice isolates have been recovered from the field such as the strain Guy11 (Leung et al. 1988; Valent et al. 1991). Transposable elements or mutations in the mating alleles are directly involved in this lack of fertility (Zeigler 1998). Heterokaryosis and parasexual cycle have been reported for rice blast field isolates (Noguchi et al. 2006). The presence in *M. oryzae* of repeat-induced point mutation (RIP)-like processes, which only occur in the sexual phase of a fungal life cycle, suggests that sexual reproduction in the rice blast fungus exists or existed in nature (Ikeda et al. 2002). Under laboratory conditions, it is relatively easy to produce sexual crosses between *M. oryzae* isolates from different grasses. This ability has been used to identify several important gene loci and to generate fertile rice-infecting laboratory strains such as 70–15.

The relevance of sexual reproduction in the field, with the advantage of increasing pathogen fitness, has been addressed in the blast fungus (Saleh et al. 2012). A direct evidence of contemporary sexual reproduction is the identification of sexual structures (perithecia) in nature. However, their visualisation is challenging since *M. oryzae* perithecia have small size and may be constrained to limited areas or time periods. Molecular tools have been developed to identify recombination events in field population samples such as linkage disequilibrium (LD) associations and diversity of molecular markers (genotyping; Arnaud-Haond et al. 2007). In populations where recombination occurs, high genotypic diversities exist, and the non-random association of alleles at two or more loci (i.e. linkage disequilibrium) is low or not significant.

As mentioned before, a similar mating type is normally found in field populations of the rice blast fungus. Strikingly, ancestral populations of *M. oryzae* from south and east of Asia, the geographical location where this fungus emerged, show clear signatures of sexual reproduction (Couch et al. 2005; Kumar et al. 1999; Saleh et al. 2012; Zeigler 1998). Molecular evidences such as genotypic richness and linkage disequilibrium data support these findings (Saleh et al. 2012). Female-fertile *M. oryzae* strains still can be recovered from these locations and can complete the sexual cycle in vitro. This is the only region in the world so far where evidences for sexual reproduction of *M. oryzae* have been found, confirming the loss of sexual reproduction outside its original location of emergence. In terms of evolution, this geographical area may represent an initial point where *M. oryzae* isolates have evolved by adaptive selection against new rice cultivars and different hosts (Saleh et al. 2012).

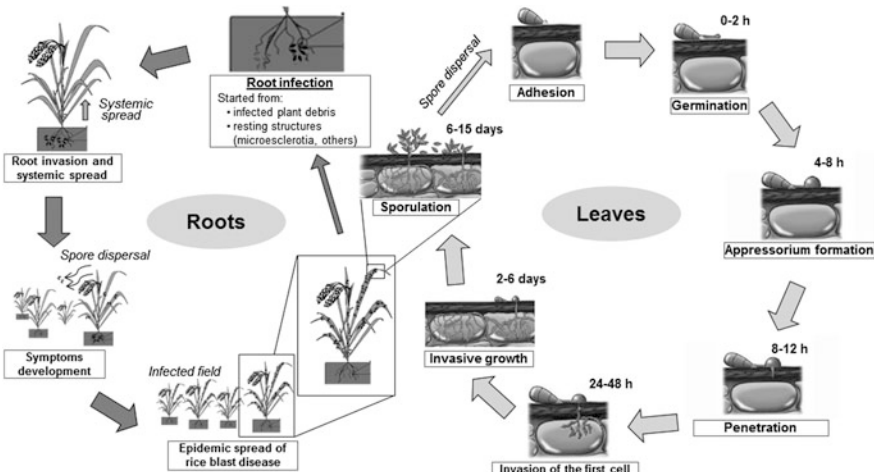


Fig. 4.3 Rice blast disease infection cycle. *Right panel*: *M. oryzae* leaf cycle modified from Ribot et al 2008. *M. oryzae* leaf infection cycle starts when a conidium lands on a leaf and attaches to the surface. Shortly after, the conidium produces a small germ tube, which differentiates into a melanised appressorium. A penetration peg formed at the base of the appressorium crosses the plant cell wall initiating fungal invasion. Invasive growth is different compared to fungal growth on surfaces. The invasive hypha moves beyond the first infected cell during a few days. Finally, conidiophores emerge and the fungus initiates sporulation between 6 and 15 days, releasing thousands of conidia to the environment. *Left panel*: *M. oryzae* root infection cycle potentially begins from infected plant debris or dormant structures present in the soil. These resting structures can germinate and penetrate into the plant roots. Fungal hypha colonises the vascular system of the root spreading systemically. The fungus moves to the upper parts of the plant producing typical blast lesions from which conidia are formed. These spores are dispersed to other plants by wind or water, propagating the disease

4.7 The *M. oryzae* Leaf Infection Process

Under high relative humidity conditions, a succession of developmental events initiates the *M. oryzae* aerial infection (Fig. 4.3; Tucker and Talbot 2001), which begins when a wind-dispersed or water-splashed conidium lands on the leaf surface. Immediately after landing, a preformed adhesive material is secreted from the conidial tip to attach itself to the highly hydrophobic surface. One hour later a short germ tube develops from the apical cell of the conidium. Within a few hours, the apex of the germ tube swells, and a specialised dome-shaped penetration structure known as appressorium is formed. The appressorium is heavily melanised and a tremendous turgor pressure is generated within this structure (De Jong et al. 1997; Howard et al. 1991). A penetration peg emerges at the base of the appressorium and crosses the plant epidermal cell by combining physical force and secretion of cell wall-degrading enzymes (Skamnioti and Gurr 2007). Subsequently, *M. oryzae* initiates a new morphogenetic programme to colonise the plant epidermal cells. Five to six days after the initial penetration of the fungus,

conidiophores emerged on the leaf surface to initiate the last step of the infection with the reproduction of the fungus.

The rice blast research community has built a large amount of information on each of the steps of the blast disease cycle. Here, a description and latest findings of the *M. oryzae* leaf infection biology follows.

4.7.1 An Extracellular Matrix Mediates Fungal Adhesion and Differentiation

Spores of *M. oryzae* get attached immediately to the highly hydrophobic leaf cuticle by secreting a preformed mucilaginous extracellular matrix (ECM). This adhesive material is passively released from the conidial apex upon hydration, meaning that there are no metabolic costs involved in this process (Hamer et al. 1988; Tucker and Talbot 2001). This attachment is required for conidial anchoring and recognition of the surface, steps that precede the subsequent infection-related development. *M. oryzae* mutants with altered ECM show reduced virulence (Ahn et al. 2004). Initial studies identified components of *M. oryzae* adhesive material such as glycoproteins and lipids which help to retain moisture, essential for appressorium-mediated penetration (Hamer et al. 1988; Howard 1997). α-Mannosyl and α-glucosyl residues are highly abundant in the ECM based on lectin labelling and protease digestions (Hamer et al. 1988; Xiao et al. 1994). Additional components of *M. oryzae* ECM have been identified by immunological techniques using antibodies against animal cell adhesion factors (collagen VI, vitronectin, fibronectin, laminin) and integrin α3 (Bae et al. 2007; Inoue et al. 2007). Particularly, collagen (as a major component), vitronectin (as cementing compound), laminin, fibronectin and integrins are present in *M. oryzae* adhesive material (Bae et al. 2007; Inoue et al. 2007). Evidences suggest that ECM components are synthesised at two different stages of the infection cycle (Inoue et al. 2007). Collagen, vitronectin and integrins seem to be formed earlier than fibronectin and laminin components.

Integrins are transmembrane glycoproteins located at the plasma membrane and act as cell surface receptors modulating the cellular response to environmental stimuli (Kim et al. 2011a; Shattil et al. 2010). Fibronectin and collagen are extracellular ligands of integrin receptors (Kim et al. 2011a; Shattil et al. 2010). Externally applied peptides containing Arg-Gly-Asp amino acids and antibodies against fibronectin reduce conidial adhesion and appressorium development indicating that these processes are modulated by integrin-like proteins in *M. oryzae*. These defects are restored by manipulating the cAMP response pathway with exogenously applied chemicals (cAMP, cutin monomers and IBMX, a cAMP phosphodiesterase inhibitor; Bae et al. 2007). These results suggest that integrin-like proteins and their cognate extracellular ligands (fibronectin, collagen) activate the cAMP-dependent pathway and possibly

other signalling pathways. This activation regulates the subsequent infection-related morphogenesis (Bae et al. 2007; Tucker and Talbot 2001). Integrins are also detected in conidial cell walls (Inoue et al. 2007), suggesting that these transmembrane receptors may play a role in the recognition of substrates by *M. oryzae* spores at earlier stages, immediately after landing.

4.7.2 Recognition of the Surface Precedes Appressorium Differentiation

Upon hydration, the first germ tube emerges, usually from the apical compartment of the conidium. If the fungus perceives that the surface is not adequate, the germ tube will arrest, blocking any further differentiation. Alternatively, it can develop a second germ tube from the opposite end of the conidium. Two germ tubes are often seen in germinating conidia on artificial substrates (Tucker et al. 2010). It is very unusual to see spores germinating from the middle compartment. The germ tube appears near the adhesion site of the spore in the apical cell and grows in direct contact with the surface of the plant for a short distance. Then, it swells and starts to change direction. This process known as "hooking" takes place before the appressorium development, and it is believed to be an important recognition step (Fig. 4.4a; Bourett and Howard 1990). During germ tube elongation, other processes such as secretion of plant cell wall-degrading enzymes, mobilisation of the metabolic reserves (trehalose) and synthesis of fungal cell wall occur (Tucker and Talbot 2001).

Concomitantly with the germination process, *M. oryzae* secretes additional compounds that contribute to the adhesion of the germ tube and perception of plant physical signals. Among them, hydrophobins have been shown to play a significant role at the early stages of fungal infection (Kim et al. 2005; Linder et al. 2005; Talbot et al. 1996). These specialised proteins are secreted at the interface between the hyphae and a hydrophobic surface and are involved in fungal development and environmental sensing (Linder et al. 2005). In *M. oryzae*, two hydrophobins play a role during infection, Mpg1 and Mhp1. Mpg1 has been widely characterised in the rice blast fungus (Beckerman and Ebbole 1996; Kershaw et al. 1998; Lau and Hamer 1996; Soanes et al. 2002; Talbot et al. 1993; Talbot et al. 1996). Mpg1 is a class I hydrophobin highly expressed during conidiogenesis, appressorium development and carbon and nitrogen starvation. The Δ*mpg1* mutants show defects in conidiation and appressoria development, and consequently are less virulent. Mhp1 is a class II hydrophobin and mutants lacking this hydrophobin show pleiotropic effects. Similarly to Mpg1, the hydrophobin Mhp1 is required for fungal morphogenesis, including appressorium development and invasive growth (Kim et al. 2005).

Cutinases and other methyl esterases are relevant enzymes secreted by fungal plant pathogens during early stages of infection (Kolattukudy 1985). Sixteen methyl esterase-encoding genes are present in *M. oryzae* genome

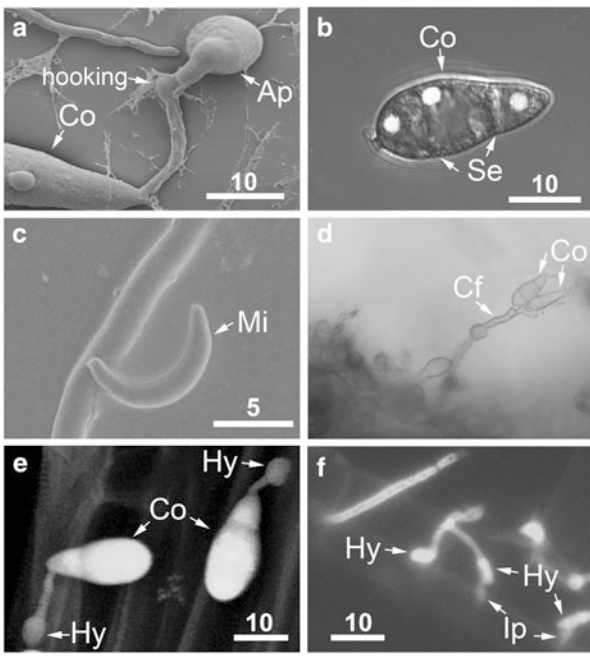


Fig. 4.4 *M. oryzae* development on artificial and root surfaces. (**a**) Scanning electron micrograph of a germinating conidium (Co) forming an appressorium (Ap) on hydrophobic coverslips. (**b**) A two-septate conidium expressing a GFP-tagged nuclear protein; septa (Se) are indicated. (**c**) Sickle-shaped microconidia (Mi). (**d**) Conidiophore (Cf)-producing conidia in the stem of a rice seedling. (**e**) Conidia on roots developing hyphopodia (Hy). (**f**) Differentiated hyphopodia from fungal hyphae producing infection pegs (Ip) to penetrate rice roots. Scale bar numbers indicate micrometres

(Dean et al. 2005), and some of them can be components of *M. oryzae* adhesive material. It is difficult to define their roles in *M. oryzae* infection biology since they may have redundant functions. Two cutinases have been characterised in the rice blast fungus. The *CUT1* gene is dispensable for *M. oryzae* plant infection (Sweigard et al. 1992). Among all the *M. oryzae* methyl esterases, *CUT2* was selected for further analysis because it is highly induced at 12 h after inoculation on barley leaves (Skamnioti and Gurr 2007). In *M. oryzae*, Cut2 acts as a surface sensor activating the cAMP/PKA and DAG/PKC signalling cascades which regulate appressorium-mediated penetration. The *Δcut2* mutants show that Cut2 is required for appressorium differentiation and full disease symptoms production, but have no defects in adhesion, indicating a specific role for a cutinase in signalling and fungal development (Skamnioti and Gurr 2007).

4.7.3 Orchestrated Cellular Processes Govern Early Stages of Plant Infection

Two important stages take place during the process of appressorium differentiation in *M. oryzae*. During the recognition phase, the apex of the germ tube begins to hook, and vesicles located in the apical area move towards the surface of the plant (Bourett and Howard 1990; Tucker and Talbot 2001). Then, the tip of the germ tube

swells and the appressorium is formed (Fig. 4.4a). This differentiation process is highly orchestrated and is activated in response to starvation stress and physical cues such as hardness and hydrophobicity (Dean 1997; Talbot et al. 1997; Tucker and Talbot 2001). Several interconnected cellular processes regulate these early stages of infection: cell cycle progression followed by cytokinesis and appressorium differentiation (Saunders et al. 2010a, b), programmed cell death (Veneault-Fourrey et al. 2006) and mobilisation of metabolic resources to generate high concentrations of glycerol for turgor-mediated penetration (Howard et al. 1991; Thines et al. 2000).

During germ tube elongation, the nucleus of the germinating cell moves towards the middle of the germ tube. Subsequently, the nucleus undergoes mitosis and one of the daughter nuclei moves towards appressoria, whereas the second nucleus returns to the conidium (Veneault-Fourrey et al. 2006). Concomitantly, storage products are transported towards the appressorium during this first nuclear division, and a septum is formed separating the appressorium from the germ tube (Saunders et al. 2010a). Then, appressorial melanisation begins. Melanin is deposited in the space between cell wall and plasma membrane to maintain appressorium integrity. High levels of glycerol derived from the degradation of stored lipids and glycogen within the appressorium build the osmotic force required for penetration of the cuticle (Thines et al. 2000). Finally, the conidium and germ tube collapse using an autophagic mechanism which is vital for pathogenicity (Talbot and Kershaw 2009; Veneault-Fourrey et al. 2006).

Appressorium morphogenesis, autophagic cell death and mobilisation of carbohydrate and lipid reserves to the appressorium are processes regulated by the mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) Pmk1 pathway (Thines et al. 2000; Veneault-Fourrey et al. 2006; Xu and Hamer 1996). In eukaryotes, MAPKs are involved in the activation of cellular processes in response to environmental cues that help to adapt the cell to the exterior (Zhao et al. 2007). In *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, five MAPK pathways exist and have been characterised in detail (Zhao et al. 2007). In *M. oryzae*, the MAPK Pmk1 (pathogenicity MAP kinase1) has been identified as the homologue of *S. cerevisiae FUS3*/*KSS1* MAPK cascades, which regulate mating and filamentous growth (Xu and Hamer 1996). The *Δpmk1* mutants are unable to produce appressorium and are non-pathogenic. However, they can recognise hydrophobic surfaces and react to exogenously applied cAMP. In *M. oryzae*, Pmk1 is also required for invasive hyphae growth (Xu and Hamer 1996). Homologues of *PMK1* are required for pathogenicity in all fungal plant pathogens (biotrophs or necrotrophs) of monocot and dicot plants studied to date, indicating that this MAPK pathway is widely conserved (Zhao et al. 2007). This pathway is under extensive analysis, and genes acting upstream and downstream of Pmk1 have been identified. These include the MAPK kinases Mst7 and Mst11 (Zhao et al. 2005); the PAK kinase Chm1 (Li et al. 2004); the Rho-GTPase MgRac1 (Chen et al. 2008); the scaffold protein Mst50 that interacts with Ras1, Ras2, Ccd42 and the Gβ subunit Mgb1 (Park et al. 2006); the membrane receptors MoMsb2 and MoSho1 (Liu et al. 2011); several transcription factors including Mst12 (Park et al. 2002), Mig1 (Mehrabi et al. 2008), MoSLF1 (Li et al. 2011) and MoMcm1

(Zhou et al. 2011); and two novel Pmk1-interacting proteins Pic1 and Pic5 (Zhang et al. 2011b).

Two other MAPK signalling pathways have been described in *M. oryzae*. The Mps1-dependent MAPK pathway is implicated in appressoria penetration and cell wall integrity (Xu et al. 1998), whereas the MAPK Osm1 is involved in the cellular response to osmotic stresses and is not required for plant infection (Dixon et al. 1999).

4.7.4 Signalling and Cytoskeletal Dynamics Regulate Fungal Plant Penetration

At the base of the appressorium, a pore ring is formed and the fungus initiates the turgor-driven penetration into plant tissues by developing a specialised hypha or penetration peg (Talbot 2003). The penetration peg enables the fungus to cross the plant cell wall and extend to the epidermal lumen of the plant. This structure is enriched in actin filaments and lacks organelles in its cytoplasm (Bourett and Howard 1992). Particularly two important signalling pathways regulate this step, the Mps1 MAPK cascade (Xu et al. 1998) and the cAMP response pathway (Xu et al. 1997).

The cAMP-dependent cascade acts cooperatively with the PMK1 pathway during *M. oryzae* plant penetration (Xu and Hamer 1996). The cAMP cascade is required for surface recognition and penetration peg emergence but not appressorium differentiation (Xu et al. 1997). The generation of glycerol and high turgor pressure within the appressorium requires a rapid degradation of lipid and glycogen reserves which is under the control of the cAMP-activated protein kinase A (PKA) pathway (Thines et al. 2000). Several key components of this signalling pathway have been studied such as the adenylate cyclase Mac1 (Choi and Dean 1997), the catalytic subunit of cAMP-dependent PKA CpkA (Xu et al. 1997), the phosphodiesterases PdeL and PdeH (Zhang et al. 2011a) and the Mac1-interating protein Cap1 (Zhou et al. 2012), which regulates the crosstalk between PMK1- and cAMP-dependent pathways through its interaction with Ras2.

Additional genetic determinants have been found to play a role in *M. oryzae* penetration including the tetraspanin *PLS1* (Clergeot et al. 2001; Lambou et al. 2008), the Pmk1-regulated genes *GAS1* and *GAS2* encoding unknown proteins conserved in filamentous fungi (Xue et al. 2002), the aminophospholipid translocase *PDE1* (Balhadere and Talbot 2001) and the isocitrate lyase gene *ICL1* of the glyoxylate cycle (Wang et al. 2003).

An actin network organised at the base of the appressorium forces the emergence of a penetration peg (Bourett and Howard 1992). In *M. oryzae*, this process is regulated by septins (Dagdas et al. 2012). Septins are highly conserved GTPases present in fungi and animals that participate in cytoskeletal-dependent cellular processes such as cytokinesis, polarity and secretion (Gladfelter 2006; Mostowy and Cossart 2012).

Septins also act as diffusion barriers. *M. oryzae* genome contain five septin genes, four of which are core septins present in budding yeast. *M. oryzae* septins form a dynamic septin ring that contributes to the formation of a toroidal filamentous actin network surrounding the appressorial pore, where the penetration peg differentiates (Dagdas et al. 2012).

4.7.5 *Insights into* M. oryzae *Invasive Growth*

Within the host cell, the fungus develops several types of biotrophic invasive hyphae (IH; Kankanala et al. 2007), which contain distinct morphological features compared to the filamentous hyphae produced on the leaf surface or in vitro. Soon after the *M. oryzae* penetration peg has crossed the epidermal cell wall, it differentiates into a short and thin filamentous hypha known as primary IH. This primary IH precedes the formation of a thicker intracellular pseudohypha called bulbous IH. The bulbous IH grows within the cytoplasm and moves beyond the first invaded cell by crossing with constricted infection pegs at regions of the plasma membrane where plasmodesmata aggregate, also known as pit fields (Bell and Oparka 2011). Thereafter, the bulbous IH differentiates into filamentous IH in the new invaded cell and subsequent fungal invasion continues into neighbouring cells (Kankanala et al. 2007). Importantly, bulbous and filamentous IH are not in direct contact with the plant cell cytoplasm since a plant-derived plasma membrane called extra-invasive hyphal membrane (EIHM) surrounds them. There is no well-established matrix between IH and EIHM, and IH grows in close contact with the EIHM (Kankanala et al. 2007). Secreted fungal proteins and other compounds are retained inside this space such as Slp1 and Bas4 effectors or can be translocated into the plant cytoplasm as it is the case for Pwl2 (described later). An additional morphological feature of *M. oryzae* invasive growth is the formation of biotrophic interfacial complexes (BICs) where effector proteins accumulate (Khang et al. 2010). When *M. oryzae* penetrates the first cell, a BIC is formed at the tip of the first bulbous IH, and is left behind, remaining as a discrete structure while the bulbous IH continues growing. New BICs are observed at the tip of each IH growing inside the plant cell. Five to six days after the initial fungal infection, conidiophores start to emerge in the leaf surface, and spores are produced massively during 2 weeks.

The elucidation of the molecular mechanisms involved in *M. oryzae* invasive growth has been largely overlooked because many of the mutants characterised in this organism are penetration defective. There is an extensive coupling between penetration and invasive growth processes since cell wall degradation and mechanical pressure are also involved during fungal growth inside the host cells (Heath et al. 1992; Xu et al. 1997). As an example, *Δmst12* fails to penetrate onion epidermal cells and to infect wounded leaves although it differentiates melanised appressoria, indicating that Mst12 is required for both penetration peg formation and invasive growth differentiation (Park et al. 2002). Very few genes have been

found to play specifically a critical role during *M. oryzae* plant invasion. *MIG1* is involved in the late stages of *M. oryzae* infection since the *Δmig1* mutants form normal appressoria, penetrate host cells and develop primary IH but fail to infect wounded leaves. Mig1 is one of the two MADS-box transcription factors present in *M. oryzae* and a downstream target of the MAPK Mps1 (Mehrabi et al. 2008). The *MIR1* gene specifically expressed in *M. oryzae* IH encodes a protein of unknown function, which is present only in the *M. grisea* species complex. Despite the fact that *MIR1* expression is exclusively found in IH, *Δmir1* mutants have no defects in appressorial penetration and are fully pathogenic (Li et al. 2007).

4.7.6 Fungal Metabolism and Plant Infection

M. oryzae has to adapt to the changing nutritional environment during host invasion, and consequently metabolism plays an essential role during *M. oryzae* invasive growth. *M. oryzae* is considered a hemibiotrophic fungus based on its nutritional mode during host invasion. However, genes regulating the switch in life style and acquisition of nutrients during plant infection are largely unknown (Fernandez and Wilson 2012; Kankanala et al. 2007). The duration of the biotrophic versus the necrotrophic phase in *M. oryzae* is also unknown. During early stages of rice colonisation, *M. oryzae* grows and fulfils its nutritional needs from the plant tissue without killing the host cells due to its ability to manipulate rice physiology as many other biotrophs do (Mendgen and Hahn 2002; Mengiste 2012). During this biotrophic stage, limited amounts of cell wall-degrading enzymes are produced and toxin production is absent according to a biotrophic life style. By contrast, extensive degradation of plant cell walls is observed at later time points of infection and in heavily invaded tissues, both stages associated with the necrotrophic phase of the fungus (Kankanala et al. 2007; Rodrigues et al. 2003). Typically, necrotrophs produce phytotoxic compounds and cell wall-degrading enzymes to kill the cells and cause leakage of nutrients (Mengiste 2012). Plant cell walls nearby *M. oryzae* hyphae show strong enzymatic digestion, correlating with *M. oryzae* necrotrophic phase (Kankanala et al. 2007).

Possibly one of the cues that trigger the switch from biotrophic to necrotrophic hyphae in *M. oryzae* is the lack of carbon sources within the host cell. It is known that nutrient starvation also can act as an environmental cue for infection-related differentiation (Talbot et al. 1997). *M. oryzae* has to limit the acquisition of nutrients during its biotrophic phase to maintain host cell integrity. Consequently, the use of nutrients must be highly regulated during *M. oryzae* biotrophic growth in order to respond appropriately to nutrient availability. Several interconnected pathways regulate *M. oryzae* growth in response to nutrients during plant invasion. These include the target of rapamycin (TOR) signalling cascade, carbon catabolite repression (CCR), nitrogen metabolite repression (NMR) and the integration of carbon and nitrogen metabolism by trehalose-6-phosphate synthase 1 (Tps1).

The TOR signalling cascade is an intracellular regulatory network used by eukaryotic cells to regulate growth according to nutrient availability. The 14-3-3 proteins are involved in key cellular processes and integrate environmental cues through the regulation of signalling pathways, including TOR. The TOR signalling pathway is regulated by the RNA-binding protein Rbp35 (Franceschetti et al. 2011). Rbp35 is a component of the polyadenylation machinery, and it is required for alternative 3' end processing of pre-mRNAs. One of the RBP35 targets is the 14-3-3 pre-mRNA, and this could explain the defects that Δ*rbp35* shows on TOR signalling and plant infection.

NMR is a highly regulated process in which preferred nitrogen sources, such as ammonia, glutamine and glutamate, are used preferentially. Ammonia is the preferred nitrogen source for *M. oryzae*. The NMR in *M. oryzae* occurs through the transcriptional activator Nut1, the *M. oryzae* AreA/Nit2 orthologue (Froeliger and Carpenter 1996). The expression of a large number of genes encoding enzymes that are involved in the utilisation of various secondary nitrogen sources—nitrate, purines or amino acids—is subject to nitrogen metabolic repression and is positively regulated by Nut1. The Δ*nut1* mutant can grow on ammonia, which does not require an active Nut1, but Δ*nut1* is unable to grow on certain alternative nitrogen sources such as nitrate. *M. oryzae* mutants in genes involved in nitrate assimilation and whose expression is regulated by Nut1 such as *NIA1* and *NIR1* are fully pathogenic on rice leaves (Lau and Hamer 1996; Wilson et al. 2010). This suggests that NMR is not involved in *M. oryzae* leaf colonisation and consequently the fungus can assimilate preferred sources of nitrogen (ammonia, glutamine or glutamate) from aerial host tissues. However, genes involved in response to nitrogen availability are important for infection. Two *M. oryzae* nitrogen-regulatory genes of unknown identity, *NPR1* and *NPR2*, are required for growth on a wide range of secondary nitrogen sources, including nitrate, and do not develop lesions on barley (Lau and Hamer 1996). Therefore, nitrate is not required for *M. oryzae* leaf infection, but secondary nitrogen sources assimilated via *NPR1* or *NPR2* are necessary for development of full disease symptoms. Additionally, several studies have shown that nitrogen-limiting conditions result in the expression of genes required for fungal pathogenicity such as the genes encoding the hydrophobin *MPG1* and the vacuolar subtilisin-like protease *SPM1* (Donofrio et al. 2006; Saitoh et al. 2009; Soanes et al. 2002). We require further studies to understand the molecular mechanisms underlying NMR and their involvement in nitrogen assimilation during *M. oryzae* plant infection.

CCR is a genetic mechanism that ensures the preferential use of glucose over other, less-preferred carbon sources, and it is also present in *M. oryzae* (Fernandez et al. 2012). *M. oryzae* has the ability to use a wide range of mono- and disaccharides as sole carbon source but has a strong preference for glucose (Fernandez and Wilson 2012; Tanzer et al. 2003; Wilson et al. 2007). In *A. nidulans*, CCR is mediated at DNA level by the global transcriptional repressor CreA. A putative orthologue of CreA (MGG_ 11201) is present in *M. oryzae*, and its role in fungal pathogenicity has yet to be elucidated.

An interesting interconnection of NMR and CCR is mediated by the sugar sensor trehalose-6-phosphate synthase (Tps1) and trehalose-6-phosphate (Fernandez et al. 2012). Tps1 is one of the three mediators of CCR identified in *M. oryzae*. The other two mediators are the Nmr1/2/3 inhibitor proteins and Mdt1, a multidrug and toxin extrusion (MATE)–family pump. Tps1 is a metabolic enzyme that synthesises trehalose-6-phosphate (T6P, a trehalose intermediate) from UDP-glucose and glucose-6-phosphate (G6P). Tps1 has two roles, as a biosynthetic enzyme and as signalling component of G6P. The sensing of G6P by Tps1 results in activation of the activity of the enzyme glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PDH), which converts NADP to NADPH using G6P in the pentose phosphate pathway. Therefore, Tps1 controls intracellular levels of NADPH (depending on the concentration of G6P) and subsequent activation of NADPH-dependent signalling cascades that interconnect carbon and nitrogen metabolism. When NADPH levels increase in a Tps1-dependent manner, three NADP-dependent inhibitor proteins (Nmr1 to Nmr3) are inactivated. As a result of inactivation of Nmr proteins, at least three GATA transcription factors become active, one of which is the white collar-2 homologue involved in light sensing (Pas1). The other GATA factor is essential for appressorium formation (Asd4), and the third GATA factor is Nut1 (Wilson et al. 2010). The modulation of GATA factor activity in the NADPH-dependent signalling pathway results in Tps1-dependent expression of at least three known virulence factors: the melanin enzyme Alb1, the seven transmembrane receptor Pth11 and the hydrophobin Mpg1 (Wilson et al. 2007). Accordingly, Δ*tps1* mutants are non-pathogenic. Tps1 regulation of Nut1 results in similar but not identical growth phenotype of Δ*tps1* and Δ*nut1* strains on a wide range of nitrogen sources. An additional regulator of the CCR signal transduction pathway in *M. oryzae* has been identified during a forward suppressor screening in Δ*nut1* background (Fernandez et al. 2012). Mdt1 is a member of the MATE protein family required for sporulation and plant infection but not appressorium differentiation. Mdt1 regulates carbon metabolism via extrusion of citrate during infection and growth contributing to *M. oryzae in planta* nutrient adaptation.

In summary, NADPH signalling, CCR, NMR and TOR are mechanisms by which *M. oryzae* can sense and adapt its metabolic status to nutrient availability during *in planta* growth. Future research will determine the interplay among these regulatory pathways that play a pivotal role in the establishment of plant disease.

4.7.7 Secretion Systems: Effectors, Toxins and ABC Transporters

Plant recognition of conserved microbial features (pathogen- or microbial-associated molecular patterns, PAMPs or MAMPs) such as chitin or flagellin (Howard et al. 1991) is mediated by pattern recognition receptors (PRRs; Zipfel 2008). During the coevolution of plants and associated pathogens, plants have developed two levels of

immune responses (Jones and Dangl 2006), the PAMP-triggered immunity (PTI) and effector-triggered immunity (ETI). In general, PAMPs are conserved among species of pathogens and play an essential role in pathogenicity. Therefore, PTI represents the first level of immune response in a host. The second type of plant innate immunity, the ETI, is activated upon recognition of highly diverse molecules secreted by the pathogens known as effectors. Fungal effectors play an essential role during invasion (Hogenhout et al. 2009; Stergiopoulos and de Wit 2009). Successful pathogens have managed to produce effectors that overcome PTI. Conversely, some plant resistance genes have evolved to recognise such type of effectors blocking their effect (ETI). Then, plant pathogens no longer can infect their host and become non-pathogenic or avirulent (Jones and Dangl 2006).

M. oryzae contains ~1,600 predicted secreted proteins that may play a role during rice infection (Dean et al. 2005; Soanes et al. 2008). It is not easy to assign a role in pathogenicity to an effector protein by gene disruption due to the large amount of secreted proteins, possibly with functional redundancy, present in *M. oryzae* (Saitoh et al. 2012). Two effector proteins with virulence functions have been characterised in *M. oryzae*, MC69 (Saitoh et al. 2012) and Slp1 (Mentlak et al. 2012). MC69 is a single secreted protein that is indispensable for virulence in fungi pathogenic on both monocots and dicots. When MC69 is absent, *M. oryzae* pathogenicity is severely reduced after penetration into the host cells. However, there are no clear evidences supporting how MC69 contributes to pathogenicity or virulence. The Secreted LysM Protein1 (Slp1) has two LysM domains involved in carbohydrate recognition and is secreted into apoplastic space during initial invasive growth in *M. oryzae*. This protein is only expressed during the biotrophic phase of *M. oryzae* (Mentlak et al. 2012). Slp1 can be glycosylated and can form oligomers (Mentlak et al. 2012). The Δ*slp1* mutants show reduced disease symptoms due to their defects in invasive growth (Mentlak et al. 2012). The Slp1 effector competes with the plant chitin receptor CEBiP to attenuate the rice immune response, the PTI, activated by the presence of *M. oryzae* chitin oligosaccharides.

To date, the majority of the effectors identified in *M. oryzae* act as avirulence (AVR) proteins triggering effector-mediated cell death (or ETI) and blocking subsequent pathogen invasion. However, their mode of action is still largely unknown at the molecular level. De novo sequencing of the Japanese rice isolate Ina168 genome and its comparison with the reference genome 70–15 has allowed the identification of a genomic region present only in Ina168 that contained three *AVR* genes (*AVR-Pia*, *AVR-Pii* and *AVR- Pik/km/kp*) (Table 4.2; Yoshida et al. 2009). An additional effector gene identified by map-based cloning is *AVRPiz*-t (Li et al. 2009). Knockout mutants in all these genes fail to show virulence phenotypes except in their specific cultivars containing the matching resistance genes. AvrPiz-t is able to suppress BAX-mediated programmed cell death in tobacco leaves in transient expression experiments, providing evidence that this effector may have a role in suppression of plant immunity. An interesting case of a protein with AVR effector function is *M. oryzae* Ace1. Ace1 is a polyketide synthase–nonribosomal peptide synthetase (PKS-NRPS) located within a gene cluster involved in the biosynthesis of secondary metabolite(s). The

metabolite synthesised by the *ACE1* gene product represents the only secondary metabolite found in *M. oryzae* so far with an avirulence role (Collemare et al. 2008; Fudal et al. 2007). *M. oryzae* isolates containing the *ACE1* gene are unable to infect rice cultivars containing the resistance gene Pi33 (Berruyer et al. 2003). The *ACE1* gene is exclusively expressed *in planta*, making it difficult to identify the Ace1-dependent natural product. *ACE1* expression is tightly coupled to the onset of appressorium-mediated penetration of the host cuticle.

Effectors are also involved in determining *M. oryzae* host species specificity. The *M. oryzae* AVR effector Pwl2 (pathogenicity towards weeping lovegrass 2) prevents *M. oryzae* isolates from infecting weeping lovegrass (Sweigard et al. 1995). The *PWL* gene family consists of four genes *PWL1*, *PWL2*, *PWL3* and *PWL4*. Pwl1 is a functional AVR effector and has 78 % nucleotide identity with Pwl2. Pwl2 accumulates in the BICs, and this property correlates with its translocation across the plasma membrane into the rice cytoplasm. There are no evidences of avirulence roles for Pwl3 (63 % nucleotide identity) and Pwl4 (65 % nucleotide identity; Kang et al. 1995). Additional *AVR* genes identified in *M. oryzae* field isolates are *AVR1-CO39*, which is broadly present in *M. oryzae* populations adapted to other host species, and *AVR-Pita1* (Valent et al. 1991). *AVR-Pita1* is a subtelomeric effector gene which has been extensively studied to understand *AVR* gene evolution among field isolates in order to generate valuable information for the deployment of resistance genes in field crops (Chuma et al. 2011; Jia et al. 2000).

Four additional biotrophy-associated secreted (Bas1 to Bas4) protein effectors are expressed during biotrophic invasion but not in vitro (Khang et al. 2010). Bas1 is translocated into the rice cell cytoplasm and shows preferential accumulation in BICs, like Pwl2. *M. oryzae* translocated effectors moved ahead of the fungus and can be seen in the absence of invasive hyphae within the cells, suggesting that these effectors prepare host cells prior to fungal invasion (Khang et al. 2010). It is not clear how *M. oryzae* delivers effector proteins during its biotrophic phase into the host cells. The *MgAPT2*-dependent polarised exocytotic processes might contribute to the secretion of effectors during *M. oryzae* plant colonisation (Gilbert et al. 2006). Bas2 and Bas3 are found in BICs, but they also localise in cell walls of invasive hyphae. Bas4 is a potential matrix protein that preferentially accumulates between the EIHM and the *M. oryzae* cell wall. The knockout mutants in the *BAS* genes show no particular phenotype, indicating the functional redundancy of the fungal secretome. Some of these Bas proteins might be involved in altering plant components required for biotrophic invasion, but no clear evidences have been reported (Khang et al. 2010).

In addition to effector proteins, *M. oryzae* also secretes phytotoxins although this is a largely unexplored area. Pyriculol, tenuazonic acid and pyrichalasin H have been isolated from culture filtrates of *M. grisea* isolates (Tsurushima et al. 2005). Pyriculol induces necrosis and it is widely distributed among *Magnaporthe* species. Tenuazonic acid is also present in *Alternaria* species. Pyrichalasin H is a cytochalasin that prevents polymerisation of actin filaments and is able to inhibit rice seed development although it is not required for leaf disease symptoms. Pyrichalasin H

is exclusively produced by blast isolates that infect *Digitaria* plants, and possibly it represents a host specific toxin (Tsurushima et al. 2005). Lately, the Mag-toxin has been purified from *M. oryzae* isolates infecting *Avena* species. Mag-toxin is a derivative of linoleic acid and only causes chlorosis in the presence of light. This toxin is able to induce mitochondria-associated ROS production and cell death (Tsurushima et al. 2010).

Plants secrete toxic compounds to defend themselves from pathogens. The ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters play an essential role in fungal survival allowing to efflux plant antimicrobial substances to the cell exterior (Coleman and Mylonakis 2009). *M. oryzae* has about 50 ABC transporters (Coleman and Mylonakis 2009). Four ABC transporters have been characterised in *M. oryzae*. Abc1, Abc3 and Abc4 are required for pathogenicity but are dispensable for appressorium differentiation (Gupta and Chattoo 2008; Sun et al. 2006; Urban et al. 1999). Mutants in these genes differentiate normal appressoria and are either unable to penetrate or die shortly after penetrating the host cell. The best characterised ABC transporter is Abc3, which localises in the plasma membrane of appressoria (Sun et al. 2006), and pumps out a plant-derived steroidal glycoside (Patkar et al. 2012).

4.7.8 Conidiation and Light Regulation

The sporulation process is an essential step for fungal reproduction and dispersal and influences largely the disease progression in the field. *M. oryzae* can produce two types of spores. Some *M. oryzae/grisea* isolates produce single-celled microconidia (Chuma et al. 2009; Kato et al. 1994) (Fig. 4.4b). Microconidia have thin cell walls and lack nucleoli. They have been identified in other fungi—*N. crassa*, *Botrytis cinerea* or *Podospora anserina*—where they play a role as spermatia during sexual reproduction (Fukumori et al. 2004). Mature microconidia show lower metabolic activity compared to germ tubes, indicating that they may be quiescent or dormant. The *M. oryzae* MADS-box transcription factor MoMcm1 regulates microconidia production and is also involved in male fertility, supporting the role of microconidia as spermatia during the sexual cycle of *M. oryzae* (Zhou et al. 2011).

Macroconidia (also named conidia or asexual spores) represent the main dispersal forms of the blast fungus. *M. oryzae* conidia are pyriform (pear shaped) and bisepted (occasionally 1 or 3 septa can be seen). These two septa generate three distinct cellular compartments in the conidium, each of them enclosing a nucleus (Fig. 4.4c). Conidia size ranges between 19–27 μm long and 8–10 μm wide. Normally, conidia present a basal appendage at the point of attachment to the conidiophore. Conidiophores are specialised hyphae up to 130 × 3–4 μm in size, and conidia are formed in their apex (Fig. 4.4d). A mature *M. oryzae* conidiophore rarely branches and can form between three and five conidia sympodially arranged.

Conidiophores emerge to the plant cell surface and release conidia into the environment.

Molecular mechanisms governing conidiation have been characterised in exquisite detail for the model organisms *A. nidulans* and *N. crassa* (Etxebeste et al. 2010; Park and Yu 2012). Conidiation-defective genes and genetic loci have also been identified in the rice blast fungus such as the *CON* mutants (Shi et al. 1998), *ACR1* (Lau and Hamer 1998), *COS1* (Zhou et al. 2009), *SMO* (Hamer et al. 1989), *CDC15* (Goh et al. 2011) and *COM1* (Yang et al. 2010). A genome-wide expression profile using spores from the rice isolate KJ201 has identified several hundred genes to be up- or downregulated during *M. oryzae* conidiation, approximately 4.5 % of its total gene content (Kim and Lee 2012). A further comparative transcriptome analysis between the wild-type strain and the Δ*mohox2* mutant under sporulation conditions has identified a subset of conidiation-related genes regulated by the homeobox transcription factor MoHox2/Htf1 (Kim et al. 2009; Liu et al. 2010b). Δ*Mohox2* mutants fail to produce conidia indicating that this transcriptional regulator plays an essential role in *M. oryzae* conidiation process. Not surprisingly, expression of *M. oryzae* genes *MoCON6*, *ACR1*, *MoBRLA* and *MoFLBC* is significantly upregulated during conidiation in the wild type but not in Δ*mohox2*. These genes are also highly expressed during sporulation in other fungal species (Adams et al. 1988; Etxebeste et al. 2010; Kwon et al. 2010; Springer and Yanofsky 1992). By contrast, the expression of *M. oryzae MoFLBA* and *MoVOSA* (the *A. nidulans flbA and vosA* orthologues, respectively) is significantly downregulated or unaltered in the wild type while is highly upregulated during conidiation in *A. nidulans*. The *M. oryzae* Δ*vosA* mutant has no defects in conidiation although the *A. nidulans* VosA is a key regulator of the sporulation process. This may suggest that gene pathways regulating conidiation differ between fungal species because they derive from new mechanisms of gene regulation, rather than biochemical function. Further investigation is necessary to define the genetic pathway and molecular mechanisms controlling conidiation in *M. oryzae*.

The light is an environmental factor that influences several biological processes in *M. oryzae* such as conidiation. It is necessary to grow *M. oryzae* under light/dark conditions to get good sporulation rates (Lee et al. 2006). Asexual development and light regulation are interconnected processes in *A. nidulans* and *N. crassa* (Olmedo et al. 2010a, b; Ruger-Herreros et al. 2011). The light during asexual development affects mainly aerial hyphae and conidiophore differentiation. Conidiation in *M. oryzae* is suppressed by blue light during light/dark cycling and the release of conidia is controlled by both blue and red light (Lee et al. 2006). Therefore, *M. oryzae* senses the light-to-dark transition, and this environmental cue triggers asexual differentiation and spore release. It is clear that environmental light also influences *M. oryzae* interaction with rice. It seems that a dark phase applied immediately after pathogen–host contact plays a critical role for disease development (Kim et al. 2011b). Significant light-dependent disease suppression is observed in rice plants infected with *M. oryzae* when plants are exposed to light (instead of darkness) directly after inoculation (Kim et al. 2011b). In nature, it is difficult to establish the contribution of a particular environmental factor to disease

progression since environmental factors are interdependent and can affect the host physiology (plant), the pathogen physiology (fungus) and/or the interaction between both organisms. A partial "blind" strain of *M. oryzae* required for darkness sensing (a knockout strain in *MgWC*-1, the blue light photoreceptor gene) has allowed to dissect the effect of light in the fungus during disease development. MgWc-1 is required for light-dependent disease suppression during the dark phase (disease-conducive light condition) after pathogen–host contact. In other words, a full disease progression requires a light/dark cycle after pathogen–host contact and light-to-dark transition sensed by photoreceptors. However, appressorium differentiation and penetration is not regulated by light, and therefore, light does not affect early stages of *M. oryzae* plant infection. Plants are subject to an overall greater pathogen challenge during the night. Possibly the fungus recognises darkness to mobilise fungal effectors (and also possibly metabolic reserves) during invasive growth, as has been suggested for *Cryptococcus neoformans*, as a mechanism to avoid the light-regulated increased defence responses in plants (Griebel and Zeier 2008; Idnurm and Heitman 2005). Light-to-dark transitions must be taken in account to understand the crosstalk between plant and associated fungal pathogens, considering that both organisms have an active circadian clock.

4.8 The Dark Phase of Blast: *M. oryzae* Root Infection Biology

Similar to its close relatives, *M. oryzae* infects roots (under laboratory conditions) and undertakes a set of developmental programmes typical of root-infecting pathogens (Sesma and Osbourn 2004; Tucker et al. 2010). Several key differences have been found between the mode of penetration of leaves and roots. In contrast to the melanised appressoria observed on leaves, *M. oryzae* produces hyphal swellings to penetrate roots, resembling the simple hyphopodium seen in root-infecting fungi of the *G. graminis–Phialophora* complex (Fig. 4.4e). *M. oryzae* hyphopodia are not melanised and *M. oryzae* melanin-deficient mutants are able to produce hyphopodia and infect roots (Sesma and Osbourn 2004). The PKA regulates the high turgor pressure within appressoria generated by the degradation of lipid and glycogen reserves (Thines et al. 2000). The *M. oryzae Δcpka* mutant produces hyphopodia and penetrates roots, indicating that root colonisation is not dependent on *CPKA* (Sesma and Osbourn 2004). Consequently, *M. oryzae* penetrates the epidermal root cells through a melanin-independent mechanism and the mechanical entry of the hard leaf surface by osmotic force is not operational during hyphopodia-mediated root penetration. From the host perspective, defence-related gene transcripts of rice showed a different temporal induction pattern during *M. oryzae* infection of leaves or roots (Marcel et al. 2010), which correlate with the different invasion mechanisms that the rice blast fungus undertakes for colonisation of leaves and roots.

Pre-invasive hyphae (pre-IH) are another type of fungal development observed on root surfaces that also mediates direct penetration of epidermal root cells (Tucker et al. 2010). *M. oryzae* pre-IH is developed from hyphopodia or germ tubes and penetrates roots directly. The pre-IH can be followed by differential labelling with concanavalin A and wheat germ agglutinin, which indicates that cell wall changes accompanied to this morphogenetic programme. Artificial surfaces such as hydrophilic polystyrene (PHIL-PS) can induce hyphopodia-like structures and pre-IH. The mutant *Δpmk1* is non-pathogenic on roots (Dufresne and Osbourn 2001), and this mutant is unable to develop pre-IH on roots and PHIL-PS. Consequently, this fungal differentiation is regulated by the MAPK Pmk1 cascade. Other structures typical of root-infecting fungi seen during *M. oryzae* root colonisation include microsclerotia and resting structures such as vesicles and swollen cells (Gangopadhyay and Row 1986; Lee et al. 2000; Sesma and Osbourn 2004).

Several lines of evidence have led to the hypothesis that the hyphopodium is an intermediate step before appressorium penetration. It is possible that the primitive hyphopodia evolved by acquisition of melanin and generation of high turgor pressure into a more sophisticated penetration structure, the appressorium (Tucker et al. 2010). The screening of *M. oryzae* insertional library of 2,885T-DNA transformants looking for altered pre-IH differentiation mutants on PHIL-PS has identified 20 transformants that show reduced virulence or are non-pathogenic on leaves and/or roots (Tucker et al. 2010). Further analysis of these mutants has revealed that appressorium, hyphopodium and pre-IH formation are highly coupled developmental processes, and very few mutants show an organ-specific involvement for infection (Tucker et al. 2010). This indicates that a significant set of common genes are necessary for fungal infection on both plant organs. Out of the 20 mutants, M1373 shows a root-specific infection-deficient phenotype (Table 4.3). This mutant lacks the *M. oryzae* orthologue of exportin-5/Msn5p (EXP5). The defects of the *Δexp5* mutant on disease symptoms production are more evident on roots than on leaves. *M. oryzae* EXP5 presents a steady-state nuclear localisation under all the conditions tested. *Δexp5* mutants show a reduction in conidia production (ca. 40 times lower) and altered preinvasive growth on PHIL-PS. The perimeters of the leaf lesions produced by *Δexp5* are smaller, which suggests deficiencies in invasive growth. Pathogenesis-related proteins and/or RNAs transported by this nucleocytoplasmic receptor play a crucial role during *M. oryzae* infection-associated development.

Exp5 may be involved in the nucleocytoplasmic transport of proteins implicated in nitrogen assimilation. Differences have been found in the role played by nitrogen-related genes during *M. oryzae* leaf and root colonisation. The assimilation of nitrogen by *M. oryzae* from underground plant tissues is regulated by the global nitrogen regulator Nut1 (Froeliger and Carpenter 1996). The *Δnut1* mutant is non-pathogenic on roots but infects leaves as well as the wild-type strain (Dufresne and Osbourn 2001). Consequently, *M. oryzae* absorbs nitrogen from less preferred sources in root tissues, and therefore, the NMR plays a crucial role during root infection. The mutants *Δnpr1* and *Δnpr2* are non-pathogenic on leaves and show opposite phenotypes on roots (Table 4.3), representing an additional evidence of the different roles that nitrogen-related genes play during *M. oryzae* colonisation of leaves and roots.

Table 4.3 Organ-specific and general pathogenicity genes regulate *M. oryzae* plant colonisation

M. oryzae strains	Targeted gene function	APP[a]	Leaf symptom[b]	HY[c]	Root symptom	References
Wild type		Yes	+++	Yes	+++	
Root specific						
Δmgfow1	Mitochondrial respiration	Yes	+++	+	+/++	Sesma and Osbourn (2004)
Δexp5	Karyopherin	Yes	++	ND	–	Tucker et al. (2010)
Δnut1	Nitrogen global regulator	Yes	+++	+	–	Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Froeliger and Carpenter (1996)
General						
Δmagb	Gα subunit	Yes	–	ND	–	Fang and Dean (2000)
Δabc1	ABC transporter	Yes	–	ND	–	Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Urban et al. (1999)
Δmgapt2	P-type ATPase	No	–	ND	–	Gilbert et al. (2006)
Δnpr2	Nitrogen metabolism	Yes	–	ND	–	Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Lau and Hamer (1996)
Δapf1	App differentiation	No	–	ND	–	Silué et al. (1998) (Sesma, unpublished)
Δpmk1	MAP kinase (MAPK)	No	–	No	–	Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Xu and Hamer (1996)
Δmps1	MAP kinase (MAPK)	No	–	No	–	Xu et al. (1998)) (Sesma, unpublished)
Leaf specific						
alb1, *buf1*	Melanin synthesis	No	–	Yes	+++	Chumley and Valent (1990), Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Sesma and Osbourn (2004)
ΔcpkA	cAMP signalling	No	–	Yes	++	Sesma and Osbourn (2004) and Xu et al. (1997)
Δigd1	Invasive growth	Yes	+	Yes	+	Balhadere et al. (1999) and Dufresne and Osbourn (2001)

(continued)

Table 4.3 (continued)

M. oryzae strains	Targeted gene function	APP[a]	Leaf symptom[b]	HY[c]	Root symptom	References
Δmet1	Methionine biosynthesis	Yes	+	Yes	+	Balhadere et al. (1999) and Dufresne and Osbourn (2001)
Δgde1	Glycerophosphodiesterase	Yes	++	Yes	+++	Balhadere et al. (1999) and Dufresne and Osbourn (2001)
Δmpg1	Hydrophobin	rd	+	Yes	+++	Talbot et al. (1993) (Sesma, unpublished)
Δnpr1	Nitrogen metabolism	Yes	–	ND	+++	Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) and Lau and Hamer (1996)
Δpth11	Seven transmembrane receptor	rd	+	Yes	+++	DeZwaan et al. (1999) (Sesma, unpublished)

[a]APP, appressoria
[b]scoring system: –, no symptoms; +, strong reduction; ++, weak reduction; +++, wild-type symptoms
[c]*HY* hyphopodia, *N*D not determined, *rd* reduced

4.8.1 Rice Blast Underground Infection and Arbuscular Mycorrhizal Symbiosis

There are similarities between *M. oryzae* and the ancient mycorrhizal associations. A global transcriptome profile carried out with the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Glomus intraradices* and two different root-infecting fungal pathogens (*M. oryzae* and *Fusarium moniliforme*) during root infection has demonstrated the presence of common rice genes equally expressed in all three associations. This indicates a common response of rice to fungal invasion (Guimil et al. 2005). A larger set of different genes are shared between the symbiont *G. intraradices* and *M. oryzae* than between the *G. intraradices* and the necrotroph *F. moniliforme*, as expected for the biotrophic nature of *M. oryzae*. From the fungal perspective, there are also common protein domains shared by both *M. oryzae* and the symbiont *G. intraradices* implicated in root colonisation, suggesting a conservation and expansion of protein families with root colonisation-related functions (Heupel et al. 2010). This is the case for the ERA-like GTPase Erl1 of *M. oryzae* and the Gin1 protein from the symbiont *G. intraradices*. The root disease symptoms defects of *M. oryzae Δerl1* mutant are restored by reintroduction of the *G. intraradices GIN1* gene in *Δerl1*. Interestingly, the expression of the *G. intraradices* symbiotic-related gene *SP7* into

M. oryzae can decrease its necrotic behaviour on rice roots, indicating the general ability of *G. intraradices* Sp7 protein to contribute to the development of the biotrophic status of *G. intraradices* and *M. oryzae* (Kloppholz et al. 2011).

Mitochondrial respiratory activity of symbiotic fungi is stimulated by root exudates (Tamasloukht et al. 2003). Similarly, evidences suggest that mitochondrial respiration is also important for root colonisation of fungal pathogens. The *MgFOW1* gene plays an important role during *M. oryzae* invasion of root cortical cells, but it is dispensable for leaf infection (Sesma and Osbourn 2004). Fow1 was initially identified in the fungal pathogen *Fusarium oxysporum* as a protein required for colonisation of vascular tissues (Inoue et al. 2002). Fow1 is a mitochondrial carrier protein that shares close sequence similarity with the yeast protein YHM2p required for tricarboxylic acid transport. *M. oryzae Δmgfow1* mutants, like *Δfow1* mutants in *Fusarium oxysporum*, are unimpaired in their ability to utilise glycerol as a carbon source in contrast to yeast *Δyhm2* "petite" mutants, and deletion of *MgFOW1* gene has no effect in fungal growth on a range of rich and minimal media and conidiation, indicating that MgFow1 is dispensable for saprophytic growth. YHM2p associates with mtDNA in vivo and is implicated in replication and segregation of yeast mitochondrial genomes. Maintenance of mtDNA during cell division is essential for progeny to be respiratory competent. In addition, mitochondrial status is sensed by eukaryotic cells through retrograde signalling, a pathway of communication from mitochondria to the nucleus under normal and pathophysiological conditions that regulate changes in nuclear gene expression (Galluzzi et al. 2012). These changes lead to a reconfiguration of metabolism to adapt cells to defects in mitochondria. The function of Fow1-like proteins in phytopathogenic fungi is not known. MgFow1 has the potential to act as a bifunctional protein (mitochondrial carrier and mtDNA-binding protein). Elucidation of Mgfow1 function will represent an important step towards understanding invasion mechanisms of roots and vascular tissues in *M. oryzae*. The relationship between senescence and mitochondrial respiratory activity is found in ascomycetes (*P. anserina*, *N. crassa*), and further investigation in this area may help to clarify the function of the MgFow1 protein during *M. oryzae* underground infection.

4.9 Concluding Remarks

In the past years, exquisite molecular and cellular approaches have been developed to understand critical processes underlying *M. oryzae* pathogenicity. However, *M. oryzae* shows a rapid evolution of host specificity by diverse mutational events, and achieving durable blast resistance represents a challenge. Climate change is likely to alter the geographical range of fungal pathogens, and cereal infection may become more widespread and unpredictable. A clear example of this is the emerging blast disease on wheat in South America (Cruz et al. 2012). As a result of climate change, Europe may become a viable environment for *M. oryzae* on wheat, our staple cereal crop. Preventing methods and improving protection of

staple cereal crops will become vital during the following years. Undoubtedly, a better understanding of *M. oryzae* plant colonisation will have positive implications for the food security and economic stability of rice- and wheat-dependent populations worldwide. It will also have important implications for the development of new strategies for plant breeding and durable disease control. Fungal root infection processes are poorly understood within the Magnaporthaceae family due to the genetic intractability of root-infecting strains of *G. graminis* (take-all fungus) and *M. poae* species. Certainly, the dissection of *M. oryzae* root infection process will contribute to understand root infection mechanisms undertaken by fungal species of the Magnaporthaceae family.

4.10 Fungal Databases

- *Magnaporthe grisea* genome database (Broad Institute): http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/magnaporthe_grisea/MultiHome.html
- *Magnaporthe* comparative database (Broad Institute): http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/magnaporthe_comparative/MultiHome.html
- Ensembl fungi: http://www.fungi.ensembl.org/Magnaporthe_oryzae/Info/Index
- FungiDB, an integrated functional genomics database for fungi: http://www.fungidb.org/fungidb/
- *M. oryzae* EST database (NIAS): http://www.mg.dna.affrc.go.jp/
- COGEME EST Database: http://www.ri.imb.nrc.ca/cogeme/index.html
- *M. grisea* MPSS database (Massively Parallel Signature Sequencing): http://www.mpss.udel.edu/mg/
- Orygenes DB: an interactive tool for rice reverse genetics http://www.orygenesdb.cirad.fr/
- Oryzabase: Integrated Rice Science Database http://www.shigen.nig.ac.jp/rice/oryzabase/top/top.jsp
- MGOS, *Magnaporthe grisea—Oryza sativa* interaction database: http://www.mgosdb.org/
- PHI base (Pathogen–Host Interaction database) offers molecular and biological information on genes involved in host–pathogen interactions. http://www.phi-base.org/
- Fungal Secretome Database: http://www.fsd.riceblast.snu.ac.kr/index.php?a=view
- Comparative fungal genomics platform: http://www.cfgp.riceblast.snu.ac.kr/main.php
- *M. oryzae* T-DNA analysis platform: http://www.atmt.snu.ac.kr/ and http://www.tdna.snu.ac.kr/
- Fungal transcription factor database: http://www.ftfd.snu.ac.kr/index.php?a=view
- Fungal Nomenclature databases: http://www.indexfungorum.org/ and http://www.mycobank.org/

References

Adams TH, Boylan MT, Timberlake WE (1988) BrlA is necessary and sufficient to direct conidiophore development in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Cell 54:353–362

Ahn N, Kim S, Choi W, Im KH, Lee YH (2004) Extracellular matrix protein gene, EMP1, is required for appressorium formation and pathogenicity of the rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Cells 17:166–173

Arnaud-Haond S, Duarte CM, Alberto F, Serrao EA (2007) Standardizing methods to address clonality in population studies. Mol Ecol 16:5115–5139

Arx JA, Olivier DL (1952) The taxonomy of Ophiobolus graminis Sacc. Trans Br Mycol Soc 35: 29–33

Asher MC, Shipton PJ (1981) Biology and control of take-all. Academic, London

Ashikawa I, Hayashi N, Yamane H, Kanamori H, Wu JZ, Matsumoto T, Ono K, Yano M (2008) Two adjacent nucleotide-binding site-leucine-rich repeat class genes are required to confer pikm-specific rice blast resistance. Genetics 180:2267–2276

Bae CY, Kim S, Choi WB, Lee YH (2007) Involvement of extracellular matrix and integrin-like proteins on conidial adhesion and appressorium differentiation in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. J Microbiol Biotechnol 17:1198–1203

Balhadere PV, Talbot NJ (2001) *PDE1* encodes a P-Type ATPase involved in appressorium-mediated plant infection by the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 13:1987–2004

Balhadere PV, Foster AJ, Talbot NJ (1999) Identification of pathogenicity mutants of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea* by insertional mutagenesis. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12: 129–142

Ballini E, Morel J-B, Droc G, Price A, Courtois B, Nottéghem J-L, Tharreau D (2008) A genome-wide meta-analysis of rice blast resistance genes and quantitative trait loci provides new insights into partial and complete resistance. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:859–868

Bateman GL, Ward E, Antoniw JF (1992) Identification of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. tritici and *G. graminis* var. avenae using a DNA probe and nonmolecular methods. Mycol Res 96: 737–742

Beckerman JL, Ebbole DJ (1996) MPG1, a gene encoding a fungal hydrophobin of *Magnaporthe grisea*, is involved in surface recognition. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 9:450–456

Bell K, Oparka K (2011) Imaging plasmodesmata. Protoplasma 248:9–25

Berbee ML (2001) The phylogeny of plant and animal pathogens in the Ascomycota. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 59:165–188

Berruyer R, Adreit H, Milazzo J, Gaillard S, Berger A, Dioh W, Lebrun MH, Tharreau D (2003) Identification and fine mapping of Pi33, the rice resistance gene corresponding to the *Magnaporthe grisea* avirulence gene *ACE1*. Theor Appl Genet 107:1139–1147

Besi M, Tucker SL, Sesma A (2009) *Magnaporthe* and its relatives. Encyclopedia of life sciences. Wiley, Chichester

Betts MF, Tucker SL, Galadima N et al (2007) Development of a high throughput transformation system for insertional mutagenesis in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:1035–1049

Borromeo ES, Nelson RJ, Bonman JM, Leung H (1993) Genetic differentiation among isolates of *Pyricularia* infecting rice and weed hosts. Phytopathology 83:393

Bourett TM, Howard RJ (1990) In vitro development of penetration structures in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Can J Bot 68:329–342

Bourett TM, Howard RJ (1992) Actin in penetration pegs of the fungal rice blast pathogen, *Magnaporthe grisea*. Protoplasma 168:20–26

Bowyer P, Clarke BR, Lunness P, Daniels MJ, Osbourn AE (1995) Host-range of a plant-pathogenic fungus determined by a saponin detoxifying enzyme. Science 267:371–374

Bryan GT, Daniels MJ, Osbourn AE (1995) Comparison of fungi within the *Gaeumannomyces-Phialophora* complex by analysis of ribosomal DNA sequences. Appl Environ Microbiol 61: 681

Bryan GT, Wu K-S, Farrall L et al (2000) A single amino acid difference distinguishes resistant and susceptible alleles of the rice blast resistance gene *Pi-ta*. Plant Cell 12:2033–2046

Bussaban B, Lumyong S, Lumyong P, Hyde KD, McKenzie EHC (2001) Two new species of endophytes (ascomycetes) from Zingiberaceae sporulating in culture. Nova Hedwigia 73: 487–493

Cannon PF (1994) The newly recognized family *Magnaporthaceae* and its interrelationships. Syst Ascomycetum 13:25–42

Cannon PF, Kirk PM (2007) Fungal families of the world. CABI, Wallingford

Castlebury LA, Rossman AY, Jaklitsch WJ, Vasilyeva LN (2002) A preliminary overview of the Diaporthales based on large subunit nuclear ribosomal DNA sequences. Mycologia 94: 1017–1031

Cavara F (1892) Pyricularia oryzae. Fungi Longobardiae exsiccati 2, 49

Chen X, Ronald PC (2011) Innate immunity in rice. Trends Plant Sci 16:451–459

Chen X, Shang J, Chen D et al (2006) A B-lectin receptor kinase gene conferring rice blast resistance. Plant J 46:794–804

Chen J, Zheng W, Zheng S, Zhang D, Sang W, Chen X, Li G, Lu G, Wang Z (2008) Rac1 is required for pathogenicity and Chm1-dependent conidiogenesis in rice fungal pathogen *Magnaporthe grisea*. PLoS Pathog 4:e1000202

Choi W, Dean RA (1997) The adenylate cyclase gene MAC1 of *Magnaporthe grisea* controls appressorium formation and other aspects of growth and development. Plant Cell 9:1973–1983

Chuma I, Shinogi T, Hosogi N, Ikeda K, Nakayashiki H, Park P, Tosa Y (2009) Cytological characteristics of microconidia of *Magnaporthe oryzae*. J Gen Plant Pathol 75:353–358

Chuma I, Isobe C, Hotta Y et al (2011) Multiple translocation of the AVR-Pita effector gene among chromosomes of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae* and related species. PLoS Pathog 7(7): e1002147

Chumley FG, Valent B (1990) Genetic analysis of melanin deficient, nonpathogenic mutants of *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 3:135–143

Clergeot PH, Gourgues M, Cots J, Laurans F, Latorse MP, Pepin R, Tharreau D, Notteghem JL, Lebrun MH (2001) *PLS1*, a gene encoding a tetraspanin-like protein, is required for penetration of rice leaf by the fungal pathogen *Magnaporthe grisea*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 98:6963–6968

Coleman JJ, Mylonakis E (2009) Efflux in fungi: la piece de resistance. PLoS Pathog 5

Collemare J, Pianfetti M, Houlle AE et al (2008) *Magnaporthe grisea* avirulence gene *ACE1* belongs to an infection-specific gene cluster involved in secondary metabolism. New Phytol 179:196–208

Couch BC, Kohn LM (2002) A multilocus gene genealogy concordant with host preference indicates segregation of a new species, *Magnaporthe oryzae*, from *M. grisea*. Mycologia 94: 683–693

Couch BC, Fudal I, Lebrun MH, Tharreau D, Valent B, van Kim P, Notteghem JL, Kohn LM (2005) Origins of host-specific populations of the blast pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae* in crop domestication with subsequent expansion of pandemic clones on rice and weeds of rice. Genetics 170:613–630

Crombie L, Crombie WML, Whiting DA (1984) Isolation of avenacins A-1, A-2, B-1, B-2 from oat roots: structures of their "aglycones", the avenestergenins. J Chem Soc Chem Comm 4: 244–246

Crombie WML, Crombie L, Green JB, Lucas JA (1986) Pathogenicity of "take-all" fungus to oats: its relationship to the concentration and detoxification of the four avenacins. Phytochemistry 9:2075–2083

Cruz CD, Bockus WW, Stack JP, Tang XY, Valent B, Pedley KF, Peterson GL (2012) Preliminary assessment of resistance among U.S. Wheat cultivars to the triticum pathotype of *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Plant Dis 96:1501–1505

Dagdas YF, Yoshino K, Dagdas G, Ryder LS, Bielska E, Steinberg G, Talbot NJ (2012) Septin-mediated plant cell invasion by the rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Science 336: 1590–1595

De Jong JC, McCormack BJ, Smirnoff N, Talbot NJ (1997) Glycerol generates turgor in rice blast. Nature 389:244–245

Dean RA (1997) Signal pathways and appressorium morphogenesis. Annu Rev Phytopathol 35: 211–234

Dean RA, Talbot NJ, Ebbole DJ et al (2005) The genome sequence of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Nature 434:980–986

Dean R, Van Kan JAL, Pretorius ZA et al (2012) The top 10 fungal pathogens in molecular plant pathology. Mol Plant Pathol 13:414–430

Dennis RWG (1960) British cup fungi and their allies: an introduction to the Ascomycetes. Ray Society, London

DeZwaan TM, Carroll AM, Valent B, Sweigard JA (1999) *Magnaporthe grisea* Pth11p is a novel plasma membrane protein that mediates appressorium differentiation in response to inductive substrate cues. Plant Cell 11:2013–2030

Dixon KP, Xu JR, Smirnoff N, Talbot NJ (1999) Independent signaling pathways regulate cellular turgor during hyperosmotic stress and appressorium-mediated plant infection by *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 11:2045–2058

Donofrio NM, Oh Y, Lundy R, Pan H, Brown DE, Jeong JS, Coughlan S, Mitchell TK, Dean RA (2006) Global gene expression during nitrogen starvation in the rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe grisea*. Fungal Genet Biol 43:605–617

Dori S, Solel Z, Barash I (1995) Cell wall-degrading enzymes produced by *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. tritici in vitro and in vivo. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 46:189–198

Dufresne M, Osbourn AE (2001) Definition of tissue-specific and general requirements for plant infection in a phytopathogenic fungus. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:300–307

Etxebeste O, Garzia A, Espeso EA, Ugalde U (2010) Aspergillus nidulans asexual development: making the most of cellular modules. Trends Microbiol 18:569–576

Fang EGC, Dean RA (2000) Site-directed mutagenesis of the magB gene affects growth and development in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 13:1214–1227

FAO (Food and Agriculture Organization) of the United Nations (2009) The state of food insecurity in the world economic crises – impacts and lessons learned. http://www.fao.org/docrep/012/i0876e/i0876e00.htm

Fernandez J, Wilson RA (2012) Why no feeding frenzy? mechanisms of nutrient acquisition and utilization during infection by the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:1286–1293

Fernandez J, Wright JD, Hartline D, Quispe CF, Madayiputhiya N, Wilson RA (2012) Principles of carbon catabolite repression in the rice blast fungus: Tps, 1, Nmr1–3, and a MATE-family pump regulate glucose metabolism during infection. PLoS Genet 8:e1002673

Field B, Jordan F, Osbourn A (2006) First encounters – deployment of defence-related natural products by plants. New Phytol 172:193–207

Franceschetti M, Bueno E, Wilson RA, Tucker SL, Gómez-Mena C, Calder G, Sesma A (2011) Fungal virulence and development is regulated by alternative pre-mRNA 3′ end processing in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS Pathog 7:e1002441

Frederick BA, Caesar-Tonthat TC, Wheeler MH, Sheehan KB, Edens WA, Henson JM (1999) Isolation and characterisation of *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. graminis melanin mutants. Mycol Res 103:99–110

Freeman J, Ward E (2004) *Gaeumannomyces graminis*, the take-all fungus and its relatives. Mol Plant Pathol 5:235–252

Froeliger EH, Carpenter BE (1996) *NUT1*, a major nitrogen regulatory gene in *Magnaporthe grisea*, is dispensable for pathogenicity. Mol Gen Genet 251:647–656

Frohlich J, Hyde KD (1999) Biodiversity of palm fungi in the tropics: are global fungal diversity estimates realistic? Biodivers Conserv 8:977–1004

Fry SC (2004) Primary cell wall metabolism: tracking the careers of wall polymers in living plant cells. New Phytol 161:641–675

Fudal I, Collemare J, Bohnert HU, Melayah D, Lebrun MH (2007) Expression of *Magnaporthe grisea* avirulence gene *ACE1* is connected to the initiation of appressorium-mediated penetration. Eukaryot Cell 6:546–554

Fukumori Y, Nakajima M, Akutsu K (2004) Microconidia act the role as spermatia in the sexual reproduction of *Botrytis cinerea*. J Gen Plant Pathol 70:256–260

Fukuoka S, Saka N, Koga H et al (2009) Loss of function of a proline-containing protein confers durable disease resistance in rice. Science 325:998–1001

Galluzzi L, Kepp O, Kroemer G (2012) Mitochondria: master regulators of danger signalling. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 13:780–788

Gangopadhyay S, Row KVK (1986) Perennation of *Pyricularia oryzae* briosi *et* cav. in sclerotial state. Int J Trop Plant Dis 4:187–192

Gilbert MJ, Thornton CR, Wakley GE, Talbot NJ (2006) A P-type ATPase required for rice blast disease and induction of host resistance. Nature 440:535–539

Gladfelter AS (2006) Control of filamentous fungal cell shape by septins and formins. Nat Rev Microbiol 4:223–229

Goff SA, Ricke D, Lan TH et al (2002) A draft sequence of the rice genome (*Oryza sativa* L. ssp. japonica). Science 296:92–100

Goh J, Kim KS, Park J, Jeon J, Park SY, Lee YH (2011) The cell cycle gene MoCDC15 regulates hyphal growth, asexual development and plant infection in the rice blast pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:784–792

Griebel T, Zeier J (2008) Light regulation and daytime dependency of inducible plant defenses in arabidopsis: phytochrome signaling controls systemic acquired resistance rather than local defense. Plant Physiol 147:790–801

Guimil S, Chang HS, Zhu T et al (2005) Comparative transcriptomics of rice reveals an ancient pattern of response to microbial colonization. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 102:8066–8070

Gupta A, Chattoo BB (2008) Functional analysis of a novel ABC transporter ABC4 from *Magnaporthe grisea*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 278:22–28

Hamer JE, Howard RJ, Chumley F, Valent B (1988) A mechanism for surface attachment in spores of a plant pathogenic fungus. Science 239:288–290

Hamer JE, Valent B, Chumley FG (1989) Mutations at the SMO genetic locus affect the shape of diverse cell types in the rice blast fungus. Genetics 122:351–361

Harmon PF, Latin R (2005) Winter survival of the perennial ryegrass pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae* in north central Indiana. Plant Dis 89:412–418

Harmon PF, Dunkle LD, Latin R (2003) A rapid PCR-based method for the detection of *Magnaporthe oryzae* from infected perennial ryegrass. Plant Dis 87:1072–1076

Hawksworth DL (2011) A new dawn for the naming of fungi: impacts of decisions made in Melbourne in July 2011 on the future publication and regulation of fungal names. MycoKeys 1:7–20

Hayashi K, Yoshida H (2009) Refunctionalization of the ancient rice blast disease resistance gene Pit by the recruitment of a retrotransposon as a promoter. Plant J 57:413–425

Hayashi N, Inoue H, Kato T et al (2010) Durable panicle blast-resistance gene Pb1 encodes an atypical CC-NBS-LRR protein and was generated by acquiring a promoter through local genome duplication. Plant J 64:498–510

Heath MC, Valent B, Howard RJ, Chumley FG (1992) Ultrastructural interactions of one strain of *Magnaporthe grisea* with goosegrass and weeping lovegrass. Can J Bot 70:779–787

Hebert TT (1971) Perfect stage of *Pyricularia grisea*. Phytopathology 61:83–87

Henson JM (1992) DNA hybridization and polymerase chain-reaction (Pcr) tests for identification of *Gaeumannomyces*, *Phialophora* and *Magnaporthe* isolates. Mycol Res 96:629–636

Henson JM, Butler MJ, Day AW (1999) The dark side of the mycelium: melanins of phytopathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 37:447–471

Heupel S, Roser B, Kuhn H, Lebrun MH, Villalba F, Requena N (2010) Erl1, a novel era-like GTPase from *Magnaporthe oryzae*, is required for full root virulence and is conserved in the mutualistic symbiont glomus intraradices. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 23:67–81

Hogenhout SA, Van der Hoorn RA, Terauchi R, Kamoun S (2009) Emerging concepts in effector biology of plant-associated organisms. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:115–122

Hornby D (1998) Take-all disease of cereals: a regional perspective. CAB International, Wallingford

Hornby D, Slope DB, Gutteridge RJ, Sivanesan A (1977) Gaeumannomyces-cylindrosporus, a new ascomycete from cereal roots. Trans Br Mycol Soc 69:21–25

Howard RJ (1997) Breaching the outer barrier – cuticle and cell wall penetration. In: Carroll PTGC (ed) The Mycota V plant relationships, Part A. Springer, Berlin, pp 43–60

Howard RJ, Valent B (1996) Breaking and entering: host penetration by the fungal rice blast pathogen *Magnaporthe grisea*. Annu Rev Microbiol 50:491–512

Howard R, Ferrari M, Roach D, Money N (1991) Penetration of hard substrates by a fungus employing enormous turgor pressures. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 88:11281–11284

Hua LX, Wu JZ, Chen CX et al (2012) The isolation of Pi1, an allele at the Pik locus which confers broad spectrum resistance to rice blast. Theor Appl Genet 125:1047–1055

Idnurm A, Heitman J (2005) Light controls growth and development via a conserved pathway in the fungal kingdom. PLoS Biol 3:615–626

Ikeda KI, Nakayashiki H, Kataoka T, Tamba H, Hashimoto Y, Tosa Y, Mayama S (2002) Repeat-induced point mutation (RIP) in *Magnaporthe grisea*: implications for its sexual cycle in the natural field context. Mol Microbiol 45:1355–1364

Inoue I, Namiki F, Tsuge T (2002) Plant colonization by the vascular wilt fungus *Fusarium oxysporum* requires FOW1, a gene encoding a mitochondrial protein. Plant Cell 14:1869–1883

Inoue K, Suzuki T, Ikeda K, Jiang S, Hosogi N, Hyong G-S, Hida S, Yamada T, Park P (2007) Extracellular matrix of *Magnaporthe oryzae* may have a role in host adhesion during fungal penetration and is digested by matrix metalloproteinases. J Gen Plant Pathol 73:388–398

Jeon J, Park SY, Chi MH, Choi J, Park J, Rho HS, Kim S, Goh J, Yoo S (2007) Genome-wide functional analysis of pathogenicity genes in the rice blast fungus. Nat Genet 39:561–565

Jia Y, McAdams SA, Bryan GT, Hershey HP, Valent B (2000) Direct interaction of resistance gene and avirulence gene products confers rice blast resistance. EMBO J 19:4004–4014

Jones JDG, Dangl JL (2006) The plant immune system. Nature 444:323–329

Jones EBG, Sakayaroj J, Suetrong S, Somrithipol S, Pang KL (2009) Classification of marine Ascomycota, anamorphic taxa and Basidiomycota. Fungal Divers 35:1–187

Kang S, Sweigard JA, Valent B (1995) The PWL host specificity gene family in the blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 8:939–948

Kang S, Lebrun MH, Farrall L, Valent B (2001) Gain of virulence caused by insertion of a Pot3 transposon in a *Magnaporthe grisea* avirulence gene. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:671–674

Kankanala P, Czymmek K, Valent B (2007) Roles for rice membrane dynamics and plasmodesmata during biotrophic invasion by the blast fungus. Plant Cell 19:706–724

Kato H, Mayama S, Sekine R, Kanazawa E, Izutani Y, Urashima A, Kunoh H (1994) Microconidium formation in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Ann Phytopathol Soc Jpn 60:175–185

Kershaw MJ, Wakley G, Talbot NJ (1998) Complementation of the Mpg1 mutant phenotype in *Magnaporthe grisea* reveals functional relationships between fungal hydrophobins. EMBO J 17:3838–3849

Khang CH, Berruyer R, Giraldo MC, Kankanala P, Park SY, Czymmek K, Kang S, Valent B (2010) Translocation of *Magnaporthe oryzae* effectors into rice cells and their subsequent cell-to-cell movement. Plant Cell 22:1388–1403

Kim KS, Lee YH (2012) Gene expression profiling during conidiation in the rice blast pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS One 7

Kim S, Ahn IP, Rho HS, Lee YH (2005) MHP1, a *Magnaporthe grisea* hydrophobin gene, is required for fungal development and plant colonization. Mol Microbiol 57:1224–1237

Kim S, Park SY, Kim KS et al (2009) Homeobox transcription factors are required for conidiation and appressorium development in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS Genet 5(12): e1000757

Kim C, Ye F, Ginsberg MH (2011a) Regulation of integrin activation. Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol 27: 321–345

Kim S, Singh P, Park J, Park S, Friedman A, Zheng T, Lee YH, Lee K (2011b) Genetic and molecular characterization of a blue light photoreceptor MGWC-1 in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:400–407

Kirk PM, Cannon PF, Minter DW, Stalpers JA (2008) Ainsworth and bisby's dictionary of the fungi, 9th edn. CABI, Wallingford

Kloppholz S, Kuhn H, Requena N (2011) A secreted fungal effector of *Glomus intraradices* promotes symbiotic biotrophy. Curr Biol 21:1204–1209

Kohlmeyer J, Volkmannkohlmeyer B (1995) Fungi on Juncus roemerianus.1. Trichocladium medullare sp. nov. Mycotaxon 53:349–353

Kolattukudy PE (1985) Enzymatic penetration of the plant cuticle by fungal pathogens. Annu Rev Phytopathol 23:223–250

Kulkarni RD, Thon MR, Pan H, Dean RA (2005) Novel G-protein-coupled receptor-like proteins in the plant pathogenic fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Genome Biol 6:R24

Kumar J, Nelson RJ, Zeigler RS (1999) Population structure and dynamics of *Magnaporthe grisea* in the Indian Himalayas. Genetics 152:971–984

Kwon NJ, Garzia A, Espeso EA, Ugalde U, Yu JH (2010) FlbC is a putative nuclear C2H2 transcription factor regulating development in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 77: 1203–1219

Lambou K, Malagnac F, Barbisan C, Tharreau D, Lebrun M-H, Silar P (2008) The crucial role of the Pls1 tetraspanin during ascospore germination in *Podospora anserina* provides an example of the convergent evolution of morphogenetic processes in fungal plant pathogens and saprobes. Eukaryot Cell 7:1809–1818

Landschoot PJ, Jackson N (1989a) *Magnaporthe poae* sp. nov., a hyphopodiate fungus with a *Phialophora* anamorph from grass roots in the United States. Mycol Res 93:59–62

Landschoot PJ, Jackson N (1989b) *Gaeumannomyces incrustans* sp. nov., a root-infecting hyphopodiate fungus from grass roots in the United States. Mycol Res 93:55–58

Lau G, Hamer JE (1996) Regulatory genes controlling MPG1 expression and pathogenicity in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 8:771–781

Lau GW, Hamer JE (1998) Acropetal: a genetic locus required for conidiophore architecture and pathogenicity in the rice blast fungus. Fungal Genet Biol 24:228–239

Lee FN, Jackson MA, Walker NR (2000) Characteristics of *Pyricularia grisea* "microsclerotia" produced in shaked culture. In: Norman RJ, Beyrouty CA (eds) BR wells rice research studies 1999. University of Arkansas, Fayetteville, AR, pp 475–479

Lee K, Singh P, Chung WC, Ash J, Kim TS, Hang L, Park S (2006) Light regulation of asexual development in the rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 43:694–706

Lee SK, Song MY, Seo YS et al (2009) Rice Pi5-mediated resistance to *Magnaporthe oryzae* requires the presence of two coiled-coil-nucleotide-binding-leucine-rich repeat genes. Genetics 181:1627–1638

Leung H, Borromeo E, Bernardo M, Notteghem JL (1988) Genetic analysis of virulence in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Phytopathology 78:1227–1233

Li L, Xue CY, Bruno K, Nishimura M, Xu JR (2004) Two PAK kinase genes, CHM1 and MST20, have distinct functions in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:547–556

Li L, Ding SL, Sharon A, Orbach M, Xu JR (2007) Mir1 is highly upregulated and localized to nuclei during infectious hyphal growth in the rice blast fungus. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 20:448–458

Li W, Wang BH, Wu J et al (2009) The *Magnaporthe oryzae* avirulence gene AvrPiz-t encodes a predicted secreted protein that triggers the immunity in rice mediated by the blast resistance gene Piz-t. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:411–420

Li GT, Zhou XY, Kong LG, Wang YL, Zhang H, Zhu H, Mitchell TK, Dean RA, Xu JR (2011) MoSfl1 is important for virulence and heat tolerance in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS One 6: e19951

Lin F, Chen S, Que ZQ, Wang L, Liu XQ, Pan QH (2007) The blast resistance gene Pi37 encodes a nucleotide binding site-leucine-rich repeat protein and is a member of a resistance gene cluster on rice chromosome 1. Genetics 177:1871–1880

Linder MB, Szilvay GR, Nakari-Setala T, Penttila ME (2005) Hydrophobins: the protein-amphiphiles of filamentous fungi. FEMS Microbiol Rev 29:877–896

Litvintseva AP, Henson JM (2002) Cloning, characterization, and transcription of three laccase genes from *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. tritici, the take-all fungus. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:1305–1311

Liu XQ, Lin F, Wang L, Pan QH (2007) The in silico map-based cloning of Pi36, a rice coiled-coil-nucleotide-binding site-leucine-rich repeat gene that confers race-specific resistance to the blast fungus. Genetics 176:2541–2549

Liu JL, Wang XJ, Mitchell T, Hu YJ, Liu XL, Dai LY, Wang GL (2010a) Recent progress and understanding of the molecular mechanisms of the rice-*Magnaporthe oryzae* interaction. Mol Plant Pathol 11:419–427

Liu WD, Xie SY, Zhao XH, Chen X, Zheng WH, Lu GD, Xu JR, Wang ZH (2010b) A homeobox gene is essential for conidiogenesis of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 23:366–375

Liu WD, Zhou XY, Li GT, Li L, Kong LG, Wang CF, Zhang HF, Xu JR (2011) Multiple plant surface signals are sensed by different mechanisms in the rice blast fungus for appressorium formation. PLoS Pathog 7

Marcel S, Sawers R, Oakeley E, Angliker H, Paszkowski U (2010) Tissue-adapted invasion strategies of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Plant Cell 22:3177–3187

Mehrabi R, Ding S, Xu JR (2008) MADS-box transcription factor Mig1 is required for infectious growth in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Eukaryot Cell 7:791–799

Mendgen K, Hahn M (2002) Plant infection and the establishment of fungal biotrophy. Trends Plant Sci 7:352–356

Mengiste T (2012) Plant immunity to necrotrophs. Annu Rev Phytopathol 50(50):267–294

Mentlak TA, Kombrink A, Shinya T et al (2012) Effector-mediated suppression of chitin-triggered immunity by *Magnaporthe oryzae* is necessary for rice blast disease. Plant Cell 24:322–335

Mosquera G, Giraldo MC, Khang CH, Coughlan S, Valent B (2009) Interaction transcriptome analysis identifies *Magnaporthe oryzae* BAS1-4 as biotrophy-associated secreted proteins in rice blast disease. Plant Cell 21:1273–1290

Mostowy S, Cossart P (2012) Septins: the fourth component of the cytoskeleton. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 13:183–194

Nguyen QB, Kadotani N, Kasahara S, Tosa Y, Mayama S, Nakayashiki H (2008) Systematic functional analysis of calcium-signalling proteins in the genome of the rice-blast fungus, *Magnaporthe oryzae*, using a high-throughput RNA-silencing system. Mol Microbiol 68: 1348–1365

Noguchi MT, Yasuda N, Fujita Y (2006) Evidence of genetic exchange by parasexual recombination and genetic analysis of pathogenicity and mating type of parasexual recombinants in rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Phytopathology 96:746–750

Oh Y, Donofrio N, Pan HQ, Coughlan S, Brown DE, Meng SW, Mitchell T, Dean RA (2008) Transcriptome analysis reveals new insight into appressorium formation and function in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Genome Biol 9(5):R85

Okuyama Y, Kanzaki H, Abe A et al (2011) A multifaceted genomics approach allows the isolation of the rice Pia-blast resistance gene consisting of two adjacent NBS-LRR protein genes. Plant J 66:467–479

Olmedo M, Ruger-Herreros C, Corrochano LM (2010a) Regulation by blue light of the fluffy gene encoding a major regulator of conidiation in *Neurospora crassa*. Genetics 184:651–658

Olmedo M, Ruger-Herreros C, Luque EM, Corrochano LM (2010b) A complex photoreceptor system mediates the regulation by light of the conidiation genes con-10 and con-6 in *Neurospora crassa*. Fungal Genet Biol 47:352–363

Osbourn AE, Clarke BR, Lunness P, Scott PR (1994) An oat species lacking avenacin is susceptible to infection by *Gaeumannomyces graminis* var. tritici. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 45:457

Ou SH (1985) Rice diseases, 2nd edn. Commonwealth Mycological Institute, Kew, Surrey

Park HS, Yu JH (2012) Genetic control of asexual sporulation in filamentous fungi. Curr Opin Microbiol 15:669–677

Park G, Xue C, Zheng L, Lam S, Xu JR (2002) MST12 regulates infectious growth but not appressorium formation in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:183–192

Park G, Xue C, Zhao X, Kim Y, Orbach M, Xu J-R (2006) Multiple upstream signals converge on the adaptor protein Mst50 in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 18:2822–2835

Patkar RN, Xue YK, Shui GH, Wenk MR, Naqvi NI (2012) Abc3-mediated efflux of an endogenous digoxin-like steroidal glycoside by *Magnaporthe oryzae* is necessary for host invasion during blast disease. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002888

Qu SH, Liu GF, Zhou B, Bellizzi M, Zeng LR, Dai LY, Han B, Wang GL (2006) The broad-spectrum blast resistance gene Pi9 encodes a nucleotide-binding site-leucine-rich repeat protein and is a member of a multigene family in rice. Genetics 172:1901–1914

Ribot C, Hirsch J, Batzergue S, Tharreau D, Notteghem JL, Lebrun MH, Morel JB (2008) Susceptibility of rice to the blast fungus, *Magnaporthe grisea*. J Plant Physiol 165:114–124

Rodrigues FA, Benhamou N, Datnoff LE, Jones JB, Belanger RR (2003) Ultrastructural and cytochemical aspects of silicon-mediated rice blast resistance. Phytopathology 93:535–546

Rossman AY, Howard RJ, Valent B (1990) *Pyricularia grisea*, the correct name for the rice blast disease fungus. Mycologia 82:509–512

Ruger-Herreros C, Rodriguez-Romero J, Fernandez-Barranco R, Olmedo M, Fischer R, Corrochano LM, Canovas D (2011) Regulation of conidiation by light in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Genetics 188:809–U897

Saccardo PA (1880) Fungorum extra-europaeorum Pugillus. Michelia 2:136–149

Saitoh H, Fujisawa S, Ito A, Mitsuoka C, Berberich T, Tosa Y, Asakura M, Takano Y, Terauchi R (2009) SPM1 encoding a vacuole-localized protease is required for infection-related autophagy of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 300:115–121

Saitoh H, Fujisawa S, Mitsuoka C et al (2012) Large-scale gene disruption in *Magnaporthe oryzae* identifies MC69, a secreted protein required for infection by monocot and dicot fungal pathogens. PLoS Pathog 8(5):e1002711

Saleh D, Xu P, Shen Y et al (2012) Sex at the origin: an Asian population of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae* reproduces sexually. Mol Ecol 21:1330–1344

Saunders DG, Dagdas YF, Talbot NJ (2010a) Spatial uncoupling of mitosis and cytokinesis during appressorium-mediated plant infection by the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Plant Cell 22:2417–2428

Saunders DGO, Aves SJ, Talbot NJ (2010b) Cell cycle-mediated regulation of plant infection by the rice blast fungus. Plant Cell 22:497–507

Sesma A, Osbourn AE (2004) The rice leaf blast pathogen undergoes developmental processes typical of root-infecting fungi. Nature 431:582–586

Shang JJ, Tao Y, Chen XW et al (2009) Identification of a new rice blast resistance gene, Pid3, by genomewide comparison of paired nucleotide-binding site-leucine-rich repeat genes and their pseudogene alleles between the two sequenced rice genomes. Genetics 182:1303–1311

Sharma TR, Rai AK, Gupta SK, Singh NK (2010) Broad-spectrum blast resistance gene Pi-k(h) cloned from rice line Tetep designated as Pi54. J Plant Biochem Biotechnol 19:87–89

Shattil SJ, Kim C, Ginsberg MH (2010) The final steps of integrin activation: the end game. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol 11:288–300

Shi Z, Christian D, Leung H (1998) Interactions between spore morphogenetic mutations affect cell types, sporulation, and pathogenesis in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:199–207

Silué D, Tharreau D, Talbot NJ, Clergeot PH, Notteghem JL, Lebrun MH (1998) Identification and characterization of apf1 in a non-pathogenic mutant of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea* which is unable to differentiate appressoria. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 53:239–251

Skamnioti P, Gurr SJ (2007) *Magnaporthe grisea* cutinase2 mediates appressorium differentiation and host penetration and is required for full virulence. Plant Cell 19:2674–2689

Skamnioti P, Gurr SJ (2009) Against the grain: safeguarding rice from rice blast disease. Trends Biotechnol 27:141–150

Soanes DM, Kershaw MJ, Cooley RN, Talbot NJ (2002) Regulation of the MPG1 hydrophobin gene in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:1253–1267

Soanes DM, Alam I, Cornell M et al (2008) Comparative genome analysis of filamentous fungi reveals gene family expansions associated with fungal pathogenesis. PLoS One 3(6):e2300

Soanes DM, Chakrabarti A, Paszkiewicz KH, Dawe AL, Talbot NJ (2012) Genome-wide transcriptional profiling of appressorium development by the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002514

Springer ML, Yanofsky C (1992) Expression of con genes along the three sporulation pathways of *Neurospora crassa*. Genes Dev 6:1052–1057

Sreedhar L, Kobayashi DY, Bunting TE, Hillman BI, Belanger FC (1999) Fungal proteinase expression in the interaction of the plant pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae* with its host. Gene 235:121–129

Stergiopoulos I, de Wit PJGM (2009) Fungal effector proteins. Annu Rev Phytopathol 47:233–263

Sun CB, Suresh A, Deng YZ, Naqvi NI (2006) A multidrug resistance transporter in magnaporthe is required for host penetration and for survival during oxidative stress. Plant Cell 18: 3686–3705

Sweigard JA, Chumley FG, Valent B (1992) Disruption of a *Magnaporthe grisea* cutinase gene. Mol Gen Genet 232:183–190

Sweigard JA, Chumley FG, Carroll AM, Farrall L, Valent B (1995) Identification, cloning, and characterization of *PWL2*, a gene for host species specificity in the rice blast fungus. Plant Cell 7:1221–1233

Talbot NJ (2003) On the trail of a cereal killer: exploring the biology of *Magnaporthe grisea*. Annu Rev Microbiol 57:177–202

Talbot NJ, Kershaw MJ (2009) The emerging role of autophagy in plant pathogen attack and host defence. Curr Opin Plant Biol 12:444–450

Talbot NJ, Ebbole DJ, Hamer JE (1993) Identification and characterization of *MPG1*, a gene involved in pathogenicity from the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 5: 1575–1590

Talbot NJ, Kershaw MJ, Wakley GE, De Vries OMH, Wessels JGH, Hamer JE (1996) MPG1 encodes a fungal hydrophobin involved in surface interactions during infection-related development of *Magnaportha grisea*. Plant Cell 8:985–999

Talbot NJ, McCafferty HRK, Ma M, Moore K, Hamer JE (1997) Nitrogen starvation of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea* may act as an environmental cue for disease symptom expression. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 50:179–198

Tamasloukht M, Sejalon-Delmas N, Kluever A, Jauneau A, Roux C, Becard G, Franken P (2003) Root factors induce mitochondrial-related gene expression and fungal respiration during the developmental switch from asymbiosis to presymbiosis in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus *Gigaspora rosea*. Plant Physiol 131:1468–1478

Tanzer MM, Arst HN, Skalchunes AR, Coffin M, Darveaux BA, Heiniger RW, Shuster JR (2003) Global nutritional profiling for mutant and chemical mode-of-action analysis in filamentous fungi. Funct Integr Genomics 3:160–170

Thines E, Weber RWS, Talbot NJ (2000) MAP kinase and protein kinase A-dependent mobilization of triacylglycerol and glycogen during appressorium turgor generation by *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 12:1703–1718

Thinlay X, Finckh MR, Bordeos AC, Zeigler RS (2000) Effects and possible causes of an unprecedented rice blast epidemic on the traditional farming system of Bhutan. Agric Ecosyst Environ 78:237–248

Thongkantha S, Jeewon R, Vijaykrishna D, Lumyong S, McKenzie EHC, Hyde KD (2009) Molecular phylogeny of Magnaporthaceae (Sordariomycetes) with a new species *Ophioceras chiangdaoense* from *Dracaena loureiroi* in Thailand. Fungal Divers 34:157–173

Tredway LP (2006) Genetic relationships among *Magnaporthe oryzae* isolates from turfgrass hosts and relative susceptibility of "Penncross" and "Penn A-4" creeping bentgrass. Plant Dis 90:1531–1538

Tsurushima T, Don LD, Kawashima K, Murakami J, Nakayashiki H, Tosa Y, Mayama S (2005) Pyrichalasin H production and pathogenicity of *Digitaria*-specific isolates of *Pyricularia grisea*. Mol Plant Pathol 6:605–613

Tsurushima T, Minami Y, Miyagawa H, Nakayashiki H, Tosa Y, Mayama S (2010) Induction of chlorosis, ROs generation and cell death by a toxin isolated from *Pyricularia oryzae*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 74:2220–2225

Tucker SL, Talbot NJ (2001) Surface attachment and pre-penetration stage development by plant pathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:385–418

Tucker SL, Besi MI, Galhano R, Franceschetti M, Goetz S, Lenhert S, Osbourn A, Sesma A (2010) Common genetic pathways regulate organ-specific infection-related development in the rice blast fungus. Plant Cell 22:953–972

Ulrich K, Augustin C, Werner A (2000) Identification and characterization of a new group of root-colonizing fungi within the *Gaeumannomyces-Phialophora* complex. New Phytol 145: 127–136

Urban M, Bhargava T, Hamer JE (1999) An ATP-driven efflux pump is a novel pathogenicity factor in rice blast disease. EMBO J 18:512–521

Valent B, Chumley FG (1991) Molecular genetic analysis of the rice blast fungus, *Magnaporthe grisea*. Annu Rev Phytopathol 29:443–467

Valent B, Farrall L, Chumley F (1991) *Magnaporthe grisea* genes for pathogenicity and virulence identified through a series of backcrosses. Genetics 127:87–101

Vasilyeva LN (1998) Nizshie Rasteniya, Griby i Mokhoobraznye Dalnego Vostoka Rossii. Pirenomitsety i Lokuloaskomitsety, Sankt Petersburg

Veneault-Fourrey C, Barooah M, Egan M, Wakley G, Talbot NJ (2006) Autophagic fungal cell death is necessary for infection by the rice blast fungus. Science 312:580–583

Walker J (1972) Type studies on *Gaeumannomyces graminis* and related fungi. Trans Br Mycol Soc 58:427–457

Walker J (1980) *Gaeumannomyces*, *Linocarpon*, *Ophiobolus* and several other genera of scolecospored ascomycetes and *Phialophora* conidial states, with a note on hyphopodia. Mycotaxon 11:1–129

Wang Z-X, Yano M, Yamanouchi U, Iwamoto M, Monna L, Hayasaka H, Katayose Y, Sasaki T (1999) The Pib gene for rice blast resistance belongs to the nucleotide binding and leucine-rich repeat class of plant disease resistance genes. Plant J 19:55–64

Wang ZY, Thornton CR, Kershaw MJ, Debao L, Talbot NJ (2003) The glyoxylate cycle is required for temporal regulation of virulence by the plant pathogenic fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Microbiol 47:1601–1612

Wilson RA, Jenkinson JM, Gibson RP, Littlechild JA, Wang ZY, Talbot NJ (2007) Tps1 regulates the pentose phosphate pathway, nitrogen metabolism and fungal virulence. EMBO J 26: 3673–3685

Wilson RA, Gibson RP, Quispe CF, Littlechild JA, Talbot NJ (2010) An NADPH-dependent genetic switch regulates plant infection by the rice blast fungus. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 107:21902–21907

Wong PTW (2002) *Gaeumannomyces wongoonoo* sp nov., the cause of a patch disease of buffalo grass (St Augustine grass). Mycol Res 106:857–862

Wong PTW, Dong C, Stirling AM, Dickinson ML (2012) Two new *Magnaporthe* species pathogenic to warm-season turfgrassses in Australia. Australas Plant Pathol 41:321–329

Xiao JZ, Ohshima A, Kamakura T, Ishiyama T (1994) Extracellular glycoprotein(s) associated with cellular differentiation in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 7:639

Xu JR, Hamer JE (1996) MAP kinase and cAMP signalling regulate infection structure formation and pathogenic growth in the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe grisea*. Genes Dev 10:2696–2706

Xu JR, Urban M, Sweigard JA, Hamer JE (1997) The *CPKA* Gene of *Magnaporthe grisea* is essential for appressorial penetration. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 10:187–194

Xu JR, Staiger CJ, Hamer JE (1998) Inactivation of the mitogen-activated protein kinase Mps1 from the rice blast fungus prevents penetration of host cells but allows activation of plant defense responses. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:12713–12718

Xue C, Park G, Choi W, Zheng L, Dean RA, Xu J-R (2002) Two novel fungal virulence genes specifically expressed in appressoria of the rice blast fungus. Plant Cell 14:2107–2119

Xue MF, Yang J, Li ZG et al (2012) Comparative analysis of the genomes of two field isolates of the rice blast fungus *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS Genet 8(8):e1002869

Yang J, Zhao XY, Sun J, Kang ZS, Ding SL, Xu JR, Peng YL (2010) A novel protein com1 is required for normal conidium morphology and full virulence in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 23:112–123

Yao JM, Wang YC, Zhu YG (1992) A new variety of the pathogen of maize take-all. Acta Mycologica Sinica 11:99–104

Yoshida K, Saitoh H, Fujisawa S et al (2009) Association genetics reveals three novel avirulence genes from the rice blast fungal pathogen *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Plant Cell 21:1573–1591

You MP, Lanoiselet V, Wang CP, Shivas RG, Li YP, Barbetti MJ (2012) First report of rice blast (*Magnaporthe oryzae*) on rice (*Oryza sativa*) in Western Australia. Plant Dis 96:1228–1228

Yu J, Hu S, Wang J et al (2002) A draft sequence of the rice genome (*Oryza sativa* L. ssp. indica). Science 296:79–92

Yuan B, Zhai C, Wang WJ, Zeng XS, Xu XK, Hu HQ, Lin F, Wang L, Pan QH (2011) The Pik-p resistance to *Magnaporthe oryzae* in rice is mediated by a pair of closely linked CC-NBS-LRR genes. Theor Appl Genet 122:1017–1028

Zeigler RS (1998) Recombination in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Annu Rev Phytopathol 36:249–276

Zhai C, Lin F, Dong ZQ, He XY, Yuan B, Zeng XS, Wang L, Pan QH (2011) The isolation and characterization of Pik, a rice blast resistance gene which emerged after rice domestication. New Phytol 189:321–334

Zhang HF, Liu KY, Zhang X et al (2011a) Two phosphodiesterase genes, PDEL and PDEH, regulate development and pathogenicity by modulating intracellular cyclic AMP levels in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS One 6(2):e17241

Zhang HF, Xue CY, Kong LG, Li GT, Xu JR (2011b) A Pmk1-interacting gene is involved in appressorium differentiation and plant infection in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Eukaryot Cell 10: 1062–1070

Zhang N, Zhao S, Shen QR (2011c) A six-gene phylogeny reveals the evolution of mode of infection in the rice blast fungus and allied species. Mycologia 103:1267–1276

Zhao X, Kim Y, Park G, Xu J-R (2005) A mitogen-activated protein kinase cascade regulating infection-related morphogenesis in *Magnaporthe grisea*. Plant Cell 17:1317–1329

Zhao XH, Mehrabi R, Xu JR (2007) Mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways and fungal pathogenesis. Eukaryot Cell 6:1701–1714

Zhao S, Clarke BB, Shen QR, Zhang LS, Zhang N (2012) Development and application of a TaqMan real-time PCR assay for rapid detection of *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mycologia 104: 1250–1259

Zhou B, Qu SH, Liu GF, Dolan M, Sakai H, Lu GD, Bellizzi M, Wang GL (2006) The eight amino-acid differences within three leucine-rich repeats between Pi2 and Piz-t resistance proteins

determine the resistance specificity to *Magnaporthe grisea*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19: 1216–1228

Zhou ZZ, Li GH, Lin CH, He CZ (2009) Conidiophore stalk-less1 encodes a putative zinc-finger protein involved in the early stage of conidiation and mycelial infection in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:402–410

Zhou X, Liu W, Wang C, Xu Q, Wang Y, Ding S, Xu JR (2011) A MADS-box transcription factor MoMcm1 is required for male fertility, microconidium production and virulence in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. Mol Microbiol 80:33–53

Zhou XY, Zhang HF, Li GT, Shaw B, Xu JR (2012) The cyclase-associated protein cap1 is important for proper regulation of infection-related morphogenesis in *Magnaporthe oryzae*. PLoS Pathog 8

Zipfel C (2008) Pattern-recognition receptors in plant innate immunity. Curr Opin Immunol 20: 10–16

Chapter 5
Aspergillus: Genomics of a Cosmopolitan Fungus

Isabelle Benoit, Iran Malavazi, Gustavo Henrique Goldman, Scott E. Baker, and Ronald P. de Vries

5.1 *Aspergillus* Taxonomy and Lifestyles

The genus *Aspergillus* consists of more than 250 species including both pathogenic and beneficial species (Geiser et al. 2008). Several species are opportunistic pathogens of plants, animals, and humans (e.g., *A. fumigatus*, *A. terreus*) and/or produce toxins, such as aflatoxins and ochratoxins (e.g., *A. flavus*, *A. parasiticus*). On the other hand, several species are widely used in industrial applications for the production of foods, organic acids, and a large variety of enzymes (e.g., *A. niger*, *A. aculeatus*, *A. oryzae*). The broad relevance and economic importance of the genus have pushed it to the forefront of fungal research, with one of the largest academic and industrial research communities dedicated to this genus.

Members of the genus *Aspergillus* are characterized by the unifying feature of the "aspergillum," an asexual reproductive structure, and form a broadly monophyletic group. However, there is surprisingly large taxonomic divergence in the group both in terms of morphology (e.g., contrasting sexual states) (Geiser et al. 2008) and

I. Benoit • R.P. de Vries (✉)
CBS-KNAW Fungal Biodiversity Centre, Uppsalalaan 8, 3584 CT Utrecht, The Netherlands
e-mail: r.devries@cbs.knaw.nl

I. Malavazi
Departamento de Genética e Evolução, Universidade Federal de São Carlos, São Carlos, São Paulo, Brazil

G.H. Goldman
Faculdade de Ciências Farmacêuticas de Ribeirão Preto, Universidade de São Paulo, Ribeirão Preto, São Paulo, Brazil

Laboratório Nacional de Ciência e Tecnologia do Bioetanol – CTBE, Campinas, São Paulo, Brazil

S.E. Baker
Pacific Northwest National Laboratory, Environmental Molecular Science Laboratory, Richland, WA, USA

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_5,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

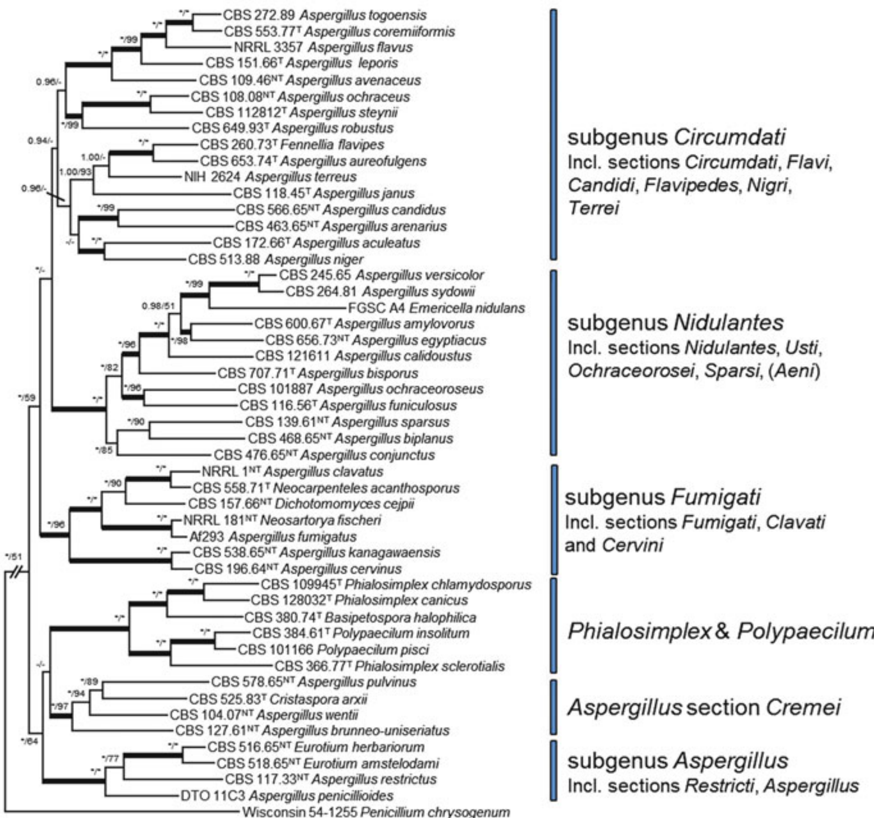


Fig. 5.1 Best-scoring maximum likelihood tree presenting current *Aspergillus* phylogeny. Based on Houbraken and Samson (2011)

phylogenetic difference (e.g., up to 30 % or greater genome sequence divergence) (Galagan et al. 2005). The first record of *Aspergillus* can be found in Micheli's Nova plantarum genera (Micheli 1729), but a more detailed description of the Aspergilli did not appear until the middle of the nineteenth century. The Aspergilli belong to the family of *Trichocomaceae* of the order *Eurotiales* of the class *Eurotiomycetes* of the phylum Ascomycota, and *Aspergillus* is a sister genus to *Penicillium* and *Talaromyces*. A recent study provided a detailed overview of the taxonomic relations between these species (Houbraken and Samson 2011). Based on this, the genus *Aspergillus* contains the subgenera *Circumdati* (including sections *Circumdati*, *Flavi*, *Candidi*, *Flavipedes*, *Nigri*, and *Terrei*), *Nidulantes* (including sections *Nidulantes*, *Usti*, *Ochraceorosei*, and *Sparsi*), *Fumigati* (including section *Fumigati*, *Clavati*, and *Cervini*), and *Aspergillus* (including sections *Restricti* and *Aspergillus*), as well as section *Cremei* and fungi originally named *Phialosimplex* and *Polypaecilum* (Fig. 5.1).

Several sections of this genus have received wide attention in research and society due to their medical, agricultural, or biotechnological importance. The section *Nigri*, also known as the black Aspergilli, is well known for its relevance to food mycology, medical mycology, and biotechnology. This section contains major spoilage fungi of various food products but also species that are used industrially for the production of enzymes and metabolites (Varga et al. 2000). In contrast, *A. fumigatus* is generally considered to be the most harmful opportunistic filamentous fungus to people (Pringle et al. 2005). It is not only a major opportunistic pathogen but also causes allergies globally (Denning 1998; Latge 1999). The best known species from the section *Terrei* is *A. terreus*, which is used for the production of itaconic acid and itatartaric acid (Bigelis and Arora 2009). It also produces a number of valuable secondary metabolites, such as the cholesterol-lowering drug lovastatin (Alberts et al. 1980) and the antitumor metabolites asterriquinone and terrein (Kaji et al. 1998; Arakawa et al. 2008).

The availability of genome sequences for several Aspergilli has enabled a genome-wide look at differences between closely and more distantly related species. An initial study on six Aspergilli demonstrated that genome comparisons follow the current view on *Aspergillus* taxonomy, in that closely related species (e.g., *A. oryzae* and *A. flavus* or *A. fumigatus* and *N. fischeri*) are also highly similar in genome content and organization (Rokas et al. 2007). Such analyses have also been done for larger sets of fungi (Wang et al. 2009), in which the composition vector method was used to create a fungal phylogeny. The relative position of the *Aspergillus* species included in this tree matches well with the more extensive phylogeny of the *Aspergillus* genus and its sister genera (Houbraken and Samson 2011). The availability of genomes also offers the possibility of quickly developing novel strain typing methods to discriminate between multiple isolates of a species or to aid in the recognition and identification of a species (Klaassen and Osherov 2007).

Many Aspergilli have a global distribution, although reports on this are strongly affected by the number of isolates that were described for any given species, which in itself is affected by the medical, agricultural, or biotechnological relevance of the species. Based on the isolates present in the CBS collection (http://www.cbs.knaw.nl/), global distribution can be observed for most of the well-studied Aspergilli, such as *A. nidulans*, *A. flavus*, *A. fumigatus*, *A. niger,* and *A. terreus*. Evaluating the biotope of the *Aspergillus* isolates in the CBS collection demonstrates that the majority was isolated from soil, followed by food and feed spoilage and indoor environments. Only a small number of isolates was obtained from wood, leaves or litter, or dung. A significant number of medical isolates is also present, but the majority of these are from *A. fumigatus*, confirming its status as the main human pathogen of this genus.

Despite not being considered major plant pathogens, several Aspergilli do affect plants and can cause significant spoilage problems on plant products, such as rotting, development of off-odors and off-flavors, and discoloration (Perrone et al. 2007). The most significant food problem originating from Aspergilli is the production of mycotoxins, such as aflatoxin and ochratoxin A (Varga et al. 2004).

The most important aflatoxin-producing species belong to the section *Flavi*, such as *A. flavus* and *A. parasiticus* (Bennett and Klich 2003), while ochratoxin is mainly produced by sections *Circumdati* and *Nigri* (Frisvad et al. 2004; Samson et al. 2004)

Some species, such as *A. flavus*, can also infect a broad range of agricultural crops, including monocots and dicots (St Leger et al. 2000). *A. flavus* is also the second most common (after *A. fumigatus*) fungus causing aspergillosis in immune-compromised humans (Denning et al. 1991). This negative reputation is a strong contrast with the positive reputation of its close relative *A. oryzae* that is widely used in the Japanese fermentation industry and as an industrial enzyme producer (Kobayashi et al. 2007). A recent study addressed the potential for biotechnology of *A. flavus* and demonstrated that it has a large selection of genes related to the production of secondary metabolites and carbohydrate-degrading enzymes (Cleveland et al. 2009). More recently, it was suggested that *A. oryzae* has evolved from *A. flavus* by domestication and selection by humans (Gibbons et al. 2012).

In soil, Aspergilli mainly use plant biomass as a carbon source and produce extensive enzyme systems to degrade this substrate (de Vries and Visser 2001). These enzymes have also found applications in a wide range of applications (de Vries and Visser 2001; de Vries 2003; van den Brink and de Vries 2011), and are discussed in more detail in Sect. 5.5.3.

5.2 Development and Current Status of *Aspergillus* Genomics

Aspergillus genomics initiated with the genome sequence of *A. nidulans* that was initially performed by Monsanto and later finished by the Broad Institute. During this period, also the genome sequences of *A. oryzae* and *A. fumigatus* were obtained, and publication of these first three genomes occurred in the same issue of Nature (Galagan et al. 2005; Machida et al. 2005; Nierman et al. 2005b). Within a relative short time after that, genome sequences also became available for *A. niger* (Pel et al. 2007; Andersen et al. 2011), *A. clavatus* (Fedorova et al. 2008), *A. terreus*, *A. flavus* (Payne et al. 2006), and *N. fischeri* (Fedorova et al. 2008), as well as a second genome for *A. fumigatus* (Nierman et al. 2005b; Fedorova et al. 2008). More recently, *A. carbonarius*, *A. aculeatus,* and *Eurotium herbariorum* (*Aspergillus herbariorum*) have been sequenced by the Joint Genome Institute (JGI) of the Department of Energy of the USA, and draft genomes have been published for *A. kawachii* (Futagami et al. 2011) and *A. sojae* (Sato et al. 2011). A project of the Community Sequencing Program (CSP2011) (Grigoriev et al. 2011) of the JGI involved sequencing of an additional eight Aspergilli (*A. brasiliensis*, *A. tubingensis*, *A. acidus*, *A. versicolor*, *A. sydowii*, *A. wentii*, *A. glaucus*, *A. zonatus*), most of which are already available through the JGI MycoCosm website (http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/programs/fungi/index.jsf) (Grigoriev et al. 2012). A recently granted CSP2013 project will sequence an additional three Aspergilli (*A. ochraceus*, *A. sparsus*, *A. cervinus*) as well as

12 Penicillia (*P. glabrum*, *P. citrinum*, *P. brasilianum*, *P. simplicissimum*, *P. araracuaraense*, *P. rapidoviride*, *P. oxalicum*, *P. corylophilum*, *P. anczewskii*, *P. jamesonlandense*, *P. brevicompactum*, *P. funiculosum*), *Talaromyces thermophilus,* and *Rasamsonia emersonii*. Together with the already available genomes of the sister genera from *Aspergillus*, *Penicillium rubens* (van den Berg et al. 2008), *Penicillium chrysogenum* (sequenced by JGI), *Talaromyces stipitatus,* and *Talaromyces marneffei* (Woo et al. 2011), this provides the most detailed set of genomes for any group of filamentous fungi (Gibbons and Rokas 2013).

There is relative high variability in the genomes of different *Aspergillus* species, which correlates with the taxonomic distance of the species (Rokas et al. 2007). Interestingly, the difference between the genomes of *A. oryzae* and *A. flavus* is similar to the difference between the two published *A. niger* genomes (Rokas et al. 2007). Comparison of the two *A. niger* genomes revealed several genome rearrangements, deletions, horizontal gene transfer, and a high frequency of single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), demonstrating the high level of genome evolution in these strains (Andersen et al. 2011). High variation in *Aspergillus* genomes was also detected using synteny analysis of *A. oryzae*, *A. nidulans,* and *A. fumigatus*, which demonstrated that the *A. oryzae* genome has a mosaic structure consisting of syntenic and non-syntenic blocks, possibly caused by genome-wide gene duplications events in *A. oryzae* (Machida et al. 2008).

The availability of several *Aspergillus* genome sequences has stimulated the development of several databases and tools dedicated to (post-)genomic studies of the genus. The first example of this was the comparative Aspergillus server at the Broad Institute (http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/aspergillus_group/MultiHome.html). This was the first online resource that enabled comparative analysis of multiple *Aspergillus* genomes using various tools. Two other resources for *Aspergillus* genomics are CADRE (http://www.cadre-genomes.org.uk) and Aspergillus Genomes (http://www.aspergillus-genomes.org.uk) and AspGD (http://www.aspgd.org). CADRE, the Central Aspergillus Data Repository, was initiated in 2001 to support the international *Aspergillus* research community by gathering all genomic information for this genome in one public resource. While it initially focused strongly on medical issues, it has grown to a more general resource that currently contains genomes and related data for eight Aspergilli (Mabey Gilsenan et al. 2012). It has tools for BLAST and browsing, gene analysis, and comparisons between genomes. Aspergillus Genomes is a union of CADRE and the *Aspergillus*/Aspergillosis website and focuses more on medical issues in relation to *Aspergillus* genomics (Mabey Gilsenan et al. 2009). AspGD was developed as comprehensive *Aspergillus* database through a collaborative effort of the University of Maryland and Stanford University and aims to provide the scientific research community with a web-based resource of structurally and functionally annotated genomes, supported by manual literature-based curation (Arnaud et al. 2012). Tools in AspGD include comparative and synteny analysis, BLAST, ORF histories, and possibilities for improvement of gene structure. Currently, AspGD hosts genomes for 12 Aspergilli, with more to be added in the coming year.

The comparative *Aspergillus* genome project that is running at JGI has also created a genome analysis infrastructure for these fungi within the MycoCosm portal of the JGI (http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/programs/fungi/index.jsf) (Grigoriev et al. 2012). Currently, MycoCosm contains genomes for 11 Aspergilli with more coming out as a result of the ongoing projects (see above).

Following the availability of *Aspergillus* genomes, post-genomic technologies such as transcriptomics and proteomics have been developed. Various types of microarrays have been generated for Aspergilli, ranging from glass slides to Affymetrix gene chips. While they have been mainly used for scientific studies, they have also found applications in monitoring fermentations (Maeda et al. 2004). More recently, RNAseq has started to replace microarrays in transcriptomics studies, due to the significant reduction in costs of RNA sequencing. Proteomics has been applied in several *Aspergillus* research areas. Two recent reviews of proteomics studies for several Aspergilli demonstrated the breadth of these studies, covering intracellular, extracellular, and cell wall proteomes and addressing topics from stress response to polysaccharide degradation and modification (Kim et al. 2008; Kniemeyer 2011). While the majority of the proteomics studies are aimed at specific scientific questions, proteomics can also aid in genome annotation and gene model validation. A recent study in *A. niger* mapped 405 identified peptide sequences to 214 genomic *loci,* and for 13 % of these *loci,* new or improved gene models could be constructed based on the proteomics data (Wright et al. 2009).

These resources have had a tremendous effect on many aspects of *Aspergillus* research, and some examples are listed below. Proteomics and transcriptomics analyses of the response of *A. fumigatus* to antifungals, such as Caspofungin (Cagas et al. 2011), Artemisinin (Gautam et al. 2011), and Coumarin (Singh et al. 2012), have identified potential drug targets and biomarkers to assess the relative efficacy of drug therapy. Such studies have also opened the door toward systems biology studies of *A. fumigatus* infection (Albrecht et al. 2011). In *A. nidulans* a detailed analysis of metabolic genes resulted in a metabolic pathway model that improved the functional annotation of the genome (David et al. 2008). A combination of genome-scale modeling with comparative genomics and transcriptomics revealed insights into the evolution and role of the highly efficient acidification by *A. niger* of its local environment (Andersen et al. 2009). The discovery of genomic evidence for sex in species with no known sexual stage has already resulted in the discovery of a sexual cycle in *A. fumigatus* (O'Gorman et al. 2009) and other species are currently under investigation. Genome mining of the Aspergilli has not only discovered many putative secondary metabolite gene clusters (Bok et al. 2006) but also demonstrated that several of the secondary metabolite gene clusters in *A. nidulans* are "silent" (not expressed under any condition tested) (Scherlach and Hertweck 2006). Activation of such a silent cluster was reported resulting in the discovery of novel metabolites (Bergmann et al. 2007). Genome comparison in combination with biological studies also highlighted differences between the Aspergilli, such as in regulation and metabolism of plant-related carbon sources for *A. niger* and *A. nidulans* (Battaglia et al. 2011;

Christensen et al. 2011; Gruben et al. 2012). A detailed genome analysis enabled an inventory of the polysaccharide-degrading potential of *A. niger* (Andersen et al. 2012), while comparative genomics highlighted the differences between *A. niger*, *A. oryzae,* and *A. nidulans* for this topic (Coutinho et al. 2009).

To illustrate in more detail the impact and potential of genomics for *Aspergillus*, three important *Aspergillus* research topics will be discussed in more detail in the sections below: plant biomass utilization, signal transduction, and secondary metabolism.

5.3 Plant Biomass Utilization

Estimating the total amount of plant biomass on earth is very difficult. Information on plant biomass is available from a mixture of sources; the data are often regional or national, based on different methodologies and not easily accessible. A database of average biomass per country is produced by the Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (FAO). Plant biomass includes woody and nonwoody vegetation, crops, waste, or by-products from agriculture or from industries but also domestic garbage. Plant biomass is the most renewable material on earth and, with the depletion of fossil energy, expected to be a valuable resource for sustainable energy and chemicals. By 2020, the European Union aims to have 20 % of total energy consumption from renewable energy sources with 10 % only for transport which is a very challenging commitment. In 2005, 66.1 % of renewable energy produced in the EU was from the breakdown of biomass (http://europa.eu/legislation_summaries/energy/renewable_energy/l27065_en.htm). In 2011, biomass fuels provided only about 4 % of the energy used in the United States (http://www.eia.gov/energyexplained/index.cfm?page=biomass_home). European projects such as Hype (http://www.helsinki.fi/hype), Disco (http://www.disco-project.eu), and Nemo (http://nemo.vtt.fi) are meant to develop novel-integrated concepts for hydrolysis and fermentation of lignocellulosic material to obtain bioethanol from second-generation biomass, i.e., from plant material that does not compete with food production.

5.3.1 Plant Cell Wall Polysaccharides

Fungi secrete a broad range of enzymes, breaking down the plant cell wall polymers into monomers that can be further taken up and metabolized as carbon sources. The main components of the plant cell wall are polysaccharides, cellulose, hemicellulose, and pectin, linked to each other and closely associated with lignin, a semi-random, three-dimensional aromatic polymer. The lignin fraction is very recalcitrant to degradation due to its complex structure and high molecular mass. The presence of lignin limits the saccharification yields and is responsible for the darkness of pulp

in high-quality white paper production. A limited number of enzymes are known to depolymerize lignin (Chen et al. 2012). These are oxidative enzymes such as peroxidases and laccases, and although some are present in *Aspergillus* genomes, delignification is not a well-known ability of the Aspergilli (Pel et al. 2007). Therefore, the focus is on the utilization and valorization of plant polysaccharides. Cellulose is the main carbohydrate produced by plants and consists of a linear polysaccharide of β-1.4-linked D-glucose units organized in microfibrils (Lavoine et al. 2012). Hemicellulose is considered to be the second most abundant plant cell wall component and consists of heterogeneous polysaccharides such as xylan, xyloglucan, galacto-, and galactoglucomannan of which the amount varies depending on plant origin (Peng et al. 2012). Pectin also consists of diverse and complex polysaccharides, such as homogalacturonan, rhamnogalacturonan-I, and substituted galacturonans (Hilz 2007).

Each of these polysaccharides has a broad range of applications. The worldwide production of cellulose as a biopolymer, for instance, is estimated to be between 10^{10} and 10^{11} tons each year. Cellulose, hemicelluloses, and pectins can be hydrolyzed into hexoses and pentoses and further fermented to produce bioethanol. Monosaccharides or partially hydrolyzed polysaccharides can be converted into added-value chemicals such as xylitol and furfural (Peng et al. 2012). Furfural is used as a building block for chemical synthesis (Pace et al. 2012), and vanillin is used in a broad range of flavors for foods, confectionery, and beverages (approximately 60 %); as a fragrance ingredient in perfumes and cosmetics (approximately 33 %); and for pharmaceuticals (approximately 7 %) (Priefert et al. 2001). Besides being more environmentally friendly, enzymatic treatments of the polysaccharides target specific linkages while chemical or mechanical treatments are less specific (Benoit et al. 2006). Carbohydrate-active enzymes acting on the plant polysaccharides are organized in several families based on amino acid sequence of the structurally related catalytic modules (http://www.cazy.org) (Henrissat 1991; Cantarel et al. 2009). Three different fungal hydrolases (β-1,4-endoglucanase, cellobiohydrolase, β-1,4-glucosidase) divided over seven families (GH1, 3, 5, 6, 7, 12, 45) are acting on cellulose, while 15 types of fungal enzymes, including hydrolases, lyases, and esterases divided over 21 families, are acting on pectin (van den Brink and de Vries 2011). Based on the annotated genomes and the CAZy database, transcriptomics and proteomics have become interesting tools to study the different sets of enzymes involved in polysaccharide degradation.

5.3.2 Aspergilli: Industrial and Model Organisms

Aspergilli are used for industrial production of enzymes and metabolites. The workhorse *A. niger,* for instance, produces high amounts of citric acid and is well known for its efficient secretion of glucoamylase (up to 20 g/L) (Finkelstein 1987). *A. oryzae* plays a central role in Asian traditional fermented condiments like soy sauce, miso, or sake. In addition to being industrial organisms, these two Aspergilli

became model organisms, together with *A. nidulans*, and have been for more than 50 years (Rittenour et al. 2009). These Aspergilli are relatively easy to grow and maintain in a restricted environment. Nutrients and growth conditions are well known. Their growth rate is relatively fast within the fungal kingdom, and they are recognized by the United States Department of Agriculture as a Generally Regarded As Safe (GRAS) organisms which makes them interesting to study their development and be a reference for other fungi. Moreover, many molecular tools were developed to transform them. Therefore, they are model organisms to study eukaryotic protein secretion (Baker 2006). The *fungal growth* database (http://www.Fung-Growth.org) displays the growth profiles of 42 Aspergilli grown on a broad range of substrates from monosaccharides to more complex substrates such as crude plant biomass. These substrates induce different responses from the Aspergilli. Therefore, the analysis of the transcripts and/or the secretome provides insights on how these fungi use their enzymes to efficiently degrade the substrate. Recently, the extracellular proteome of *A. nidulans* grown on sorghum stover was studied at different time points (Saykhedkar et al. 2012). A total of 294 extracellular proteins were identified including cellulases, hemicellulases, pectinases, chitinases, and lipases. This 14-day time course study revealed that most of the enzymes are already secreted at day 1, and only the relative abundance of the enzymes changes over the time. These data suggest that the breakdown of the plant polysaccharides is simultaneously done. The presence of main chain acting enzymes, accessory enzymes, and protein that could contribute to an efficient hydrolytic system make *A. nidulans* capable of degrading the major polysaccharides in sorghum without chemical pretreatment (Saykhedkar et al. 2012).

5.3.3 Comparative Proteomics: In Silico Versus In Vivo

Based on the presence of signal peptides in almost all secreted proteins, computational approaches coupled to mass spectrometric analysis have been used to predict the secretome of *A. niger*, *A. oryzae,* and *A. nidulans* (Tsang et al. 2009; Braaksma et al. 2010). The proteome size varies between strains and species and does not necessarily correlate with the genome size. *A. oryzae* has the largest genome but does not have the highest number of protein-coding genes nor signal peptide predictions (Table 5.1). The secretome of *A. niger* grown under six conditions, glucose, sorbitol, glycerol, birchwood xylan, citrus pectin and locust bean gum, during 2 days, identified a total of 222 proteins. Fewer than 15 % of these have been biochemically characterized (Tsang et al. 2009). Most of the putative enzymes involved in the hydrolysis of cellulose, xylan, and arabinan were secreted in all six conditions while mannanases and pectinases appeared to be more substrate dependent. Mannanases were only detected on locust bean gum and pectin, and pectinases were mainly detected on pectin. When the secretome of *A. niger* grown on galacturonic acid was compared to the secretome of the same strain grown on

Table 5.1 Genome size, proteome size, and signal peptide predictions of four *Aspergilli*

Species	*A. niger* CBS 513.88	*A. niger* ATCC 1015	*A. oryzae* RIB40	*A. nidulans* FGSC A4
Genome size (Mb)	33.93[a]	34.85[a]	37.6[b]	30.06[c]
Protein CDS	14,086[d]	11,197[e]	10,406[e]	10,665[e]
SignalP3 NN	1,831	1,540	1,751	1,469

Adapted from Braaksma et al. (2010)
[a]Andersen et al. (2011)
[b]Machida et al. (2005)
[c]Galagan et al. (2005)
[d]Number obtained from the Refseq section of GenBank
[e]Number obtained from http://www.broad.mit.edu/annotation/genome/aspergillus_group/MultiHome.html

sorbitol, the pectinolytic genes were clearly induced. For instance, pectin lyase A; exopolygalacturonase A, B, C, and X; as well as putative arabinofuranosidase and pectin acetylesterase were detected on galacturonic acid and not on sorbitol (Braaksma et al. 2010).

5.3.4 *Limitations in Protein Identification*

It has been shown that some secreted proteins are retained in the cell wall after being secreted (Levin et al. 2007). Some proteins secreted in solid-state cultures were found to be trapped in the cell wall during submerged culture, such as most of the secreted α-amylase and β-glucosidase of *A. oryzae* when grown in wheat bran submerged cultures (Oda et al. 2006). A recent study shows the positive effect of the cycloheximide on protein release into the medium. *A. niger* was grown on D-xylose, and the secreted proteins were analyzed within the different zones of the mycelium, from center to the periphery of the colony grown on solid medium. 187 proteins were identified from cultures without cycloheximide, of which 98 passed the filtering criteria, while 216 proteins were identified in the presence of cycloheximide, of which 148 passed the filtering criteria (Krijgsheld et al. 2012).

Incomplete peptide sequence databases, due to missed protein-encoding genes or gene model errors, affect the number of proteins identified in proteomics, but the method used also has an influence. The precipitated extracellular proteins from the culture filtrate can be directly digested by trypsin, followed by MALDI-TOF/MS (matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization time-of-flight mass spectrometry), or first be separated by 2-D or 1-D SDS gel electrophoresis, which is the most common technique for protein extraction. Extra steps such as an in-gel deglycosylation with PNGase F may increase the number of proteins that can be identified by MS (Bouws et al. 2008). However, a large number of secreted proteins are lost or remain unidentified. The hydrolysis of alkali pretreated rice straw by *A. fumigatus* has been studied using zymograms, followed by proteomics. The cocktail of enzymes

produced by a thermotolerant *A. fumigatus* strain resulted in >90 % saccharification of the substrate. β-glucosidase, cellobiohydrolase, xylanase, endoglucanase, and acetyl esterase activities were identified by zymograms. Secretome characterization revealed a combination of a variety of glycosyl hydrolases (Sharma et al. 2011). Although the proteome of *A. fumigatus* has been previously documented in a medically related context (Carberry and Doyle 2007), this study is the first report on *A. fumigatus*'s CAZymes.

5.3.5 Intracellular Proteome and Transcriptomics

Other approaches such as microsomal proteome analysis of *A. niger* gave more information on intracellular membrane traffic and protein secretion upon cellulase and hemicellulase induction by D-xylose or amylase induction by D-maltose compared to sorbitol (de Oliveira and de Graaff 2010; de Oliveira et al. 2010). Exploration of the intracellular proteome of *A. oryzae* and *A. niger* resulted in the identification of a much higher number of proteins. 522 proteins were identified from *A. oryzae*, amongst which 451 proteins are potentially involved in the production of soy sauce flavor (Zhao et al. 2012). From *A. niger* grown on D-xylose and maltose, differences found in the two intracellular proteomes were related to the first steps in carbon catabolism. The utilization of D-xylose or maltose affected the composition of the secretome but had a minor influence on the composition of the intracellular proteome. On the other hand, the different conditions of the cultures, in particular pH and the aeration factor, had a strong effect on the intracellular proteome (Lu et al. 2010).

Using transcriptomics, an overview of the expression of genes encoding (extracellular) plant cell wall-degrading enzymes as well as the genes involved in the related (intracellular) metabolic pathways is obtained. Transcriptome analysis of *A. niger* grown on sugarcane bagasse, a bioethanol substrate, revealed the genes specifically induced by this substrate. In addition to the predicted cellulases and hemicellulases, many genes encoding unknown functions had increased expression. Transporter-encoding genes potentially involved in oligosaccharide transport were also expressed (de Souza et al. 2011). Hitherto the limiting step in a total and efficient plant biomass valorization is the right enzyme cocktail. Combining the great ability of the Aspergilli to grow on a wide range of substrates with the post-genomic tools will help in designing novel-tailored enzymatic cocktails for biotechnology as well as understand better the interactions between the fungi and their environment (de Vries et al. 2011).

5.4 Signal Transduction

The complete genome sequence of several *Aspergillus* species published over the last 7 years has provided a valuable tool for the identification and deeper characterization of the gene function in this important genus. By these means, it has also led to an unprecedented understanding of the molecular basis of some of the most striking features of the fungal organisms and *Aspergilli* itself, i.e., their ability to sense the environment and to colonize diverse ecological niches (in the case of the saprobic lifestyle species) or to recognize and to adapt to the host's milieu (in the case of the pathogenic species). These events ultimately facilitate survival under different temperature and nutrient limitation and to overcome the host intrinsic defenses. Independently of the environments, the ability of the fungal cells to interact with them highly relies on their capacity to recognize the external boundaries of the cells and properly respond to the signals that emanate from this environment. All this information must be gathered together by the fungal cell by means of the well-orchestrated multiple circuits of a signal transduction system. Such systems enable the effector proteins to launch the appropriate response for cell homeostasis, proliferation, and quiescence, which finally represents an overall cell metabolic adaptation. Fungi are organisms for which adaptation is mandatory, and it is this capability that probably makes these organisms so versatile. Understanding how these diverse signaling networks are organized in the fungal cell allowing such versatility is an interesting point that *Aspergilli* genome exploitation can help to unravel.

Many of the mechanisms that connect signaling proteins into networks are thought to be highly modular; i.e., the catalytic core of a signaling pathway is physically and functionally separable from molecular domains or motifs that determine its linkage to both inputs and outputs. This high degree of modularity may make these systems more evolvable, creating the possibility for new pathways with different cell behaviors upon competitive or hostile environments [for a review see Bhattacharyya et al. (2006)]. However, the signaling pathways and output responses to external signals show a high degree of conservation and different signaling factors contribute to fungal adaptation. Environmental signals such as temperature, carbon source, pH, oxygen content, and mechanical or physical elements or soluble factors such as drugs or xenobiotics are elements that can trigger a variety of signaling pathways. Filamentous fungi are more tolerant to various conditions than yeasts and are thus expected to have more extensive sensing and signaling networks. Analysis of the genome of the *Aspergillus* species demonstrated that the organization of the sensing and signal transduction systems and particularly the upstream signaling mechanisms are more complex than those found in yeasts (Abe et al. 2010). The main common pathways which are shared in all *Aspergillus* species will be highlighted in the following sections of this chapter.

5.4.1 cAMP/PKA-Signaling Cascade and G-Protein-Coupled Receptors in Aspergillus

Although the fully sequenced genomes of several *Aspergillus* species have been analyzed, little is known about the signal transduction pathways involving the heterotrimeric guanine nucleotide-binding proteins (G-proteins). In eukaryotic cells, these proteins interact with the cell surface plasma membrane proteins which are members of a large superfamily of receptors having seven membrane-spanning regions. Collectively this superfamily is named G-protein-coupled receptors (GPCR). This signal transduction cascade becomes functional after the extracellular stimuli arrive at these membrane receptors. In fungi, these stimuli reflect those related to fungal cell survival and fitness, virulence, secondary metabolite production, morphogenetic events, and so on (Bolker 1998; Lengeler et al. 2000). Heterotrimeric G-proteins are composed of three subunits α, β, and γ forming a complex (Neves et al. 2002). The functioning dynamics of the GPCR complex includes the activation of the G-protein upon ligand binding at the cell surface. Figure 5.2 represents this sensitization step generally as the various extracellular signals provide inputs from the extracellular compartment. GPCR sensitization promotes the interaction between GPCR and the GDP-Gα inactive form of the Gα-Gβ-Gγ heterotrimeric complex (black circle in Fig 5.2) resulting in Gα-GDP to Gα-GTP exchange. This alteration leads to the dissociation of Gα-GTP from the Gβ-Gγ heterodimer. Once dissociated, the Gα-GTP subunit, Gβ-Gγ, or both can amplify and propagate signals by modulating activities of a number of effector proteins causing a given cell behavior [for a review, see Neves et al. (2002)].

Through genome analysis of *A. nidulans*, *A. fumigatus,* and *A. oryzae,* it was possible to identify at least 16 putative GPCR which were grouped in nine different classes based on detailed phylogenetic studies [Lafon et al. 2006 and revised in Yu (2006) and Yu and d'Enfert (2008)]. Figure 5.2 summarizes the GPCRs, the G-protein subunits present in the genome of *Aspergillus,* and the main downstream effectors which will be discussed in this chapter. Of these 16 GPCRs, up to now, very few have been well characterized, and most studies address GprA, GprB, and GprD (Han et al. 2004; Seo et al. 2004). Deletion of *gprD* resulted in hyphal and germination defects and increased production of cleistothecia (fruiting bodies), indicating that this GPCR is probably a negative regulator of sexual development in *A. nidulans* (Han et al. 2004). In contrast, the deletion strains Δ*gprA* and Δ*gprB* resulted in reduced cleistothecia which were significantly smaller than those in a wild-type *A. nidulans* strain (Seo et al. 2004). Moreover, the double mutant Δ*gprA*/Δ*gprB* exhibited complete absence of cleistothecia (Seo et al. 2004).

The most comprehensive characterization of the G-protein subunits is described in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*. Among them, Gα of *A. nidulans* FadA presents the so-called fluffy autolytic dominant phenotype since strains carrying dominant-activating mutations of this gene have a striking phenotype of increased accumulation of aerial hyphae and lack of development and conidiogenesis which leads to

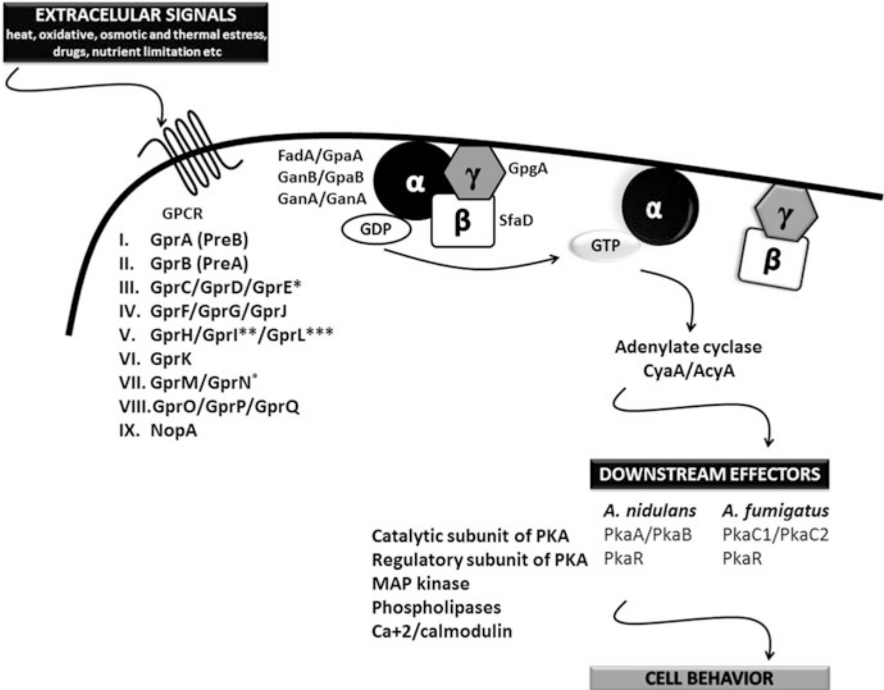


Fig. 5.2 Schematic representation of the cAMP-Protein kinase A-dependent pathway in *Aspergilli*. The figure shows the 11 families (I–XI) of GPCR (G-protein-coupled receptor) identified "in silico" for the *A. nidulans*, *A. fumigatus,* and *A. oryzae*. The description of those with functional analysis is available is in the text. The information in this figure is adapted from Lafon et al. (2006), Yu (2006), and Yu and d'Enfert (2008). *Only present in *A. nidulans*. **Not present in *A. oryzae*. ***Only present in *A. fumigatus*. The names for the three genes encoding different Gα subunits (*black circle*) are separated by a slash to indicate names in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, respectively, in each line. The Gβ (*white rectangle*) and Gγ (*gray hexagon*) subunits encode a single gene in each organism. The genome of *A. oryzae* also contains a fourth Gα subunit named GaoC, in addition to those mentioned here [for details refer to Lafon et al. (2006)]. The protein kinase A (PKA) is activated upon the action of the second messenger cAMP (cyclic AMP) which rises in concentration inside the cell by the increased activity of the adenylate cyclase gene (*cyaA* and *acyA* in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, respectively). Both *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus* have two PKA catalytic subunit-encoding genes and a single gene encoding the regulatory subunit (*pkaR*). The relevance of these genes in the cAMP-Protein kinase A-dependent pathway is discussed in the text. MAP kinase can be a downstream effector of a GPCR response, and the main MAP kinase pathways in *Aspergilli* are discussed in the Sect. 5.4.2. Phospholipases and calcium/calcineurin can also function as downstream effectors but will not be discussed in this text. The cellular behavior indicates the final element in the cell adaptation to the extracellular input signals. In general regards to an enhanced transcriptional activation of key genes which products ultimately drive the cell to adaptation and survival

complete hyphal disintegration in cultures (Yu et al. 1996, 1999; Hicks et al. 1997; Wieser et al. 1997). This phenotype indicates a clear role of *fadA* in vegetative growth and inhibition of sexual and asexual development. In contrast, an *A. fumigatus* strain containing a dominant-activating form of the *fadA* homolog, *gpaA*, also shows increased hyphal proliferation but not the fluffy autolytic phenotype (Yu et al. 2006). The Δ*gpaB* mutant from *A. fumigatus* resulted in reduced conidia production with normal growth rate but was almost avirulent in a mouse infection model (Liebmann et al. 2003, 2004).

The only pathway where a link between a G-protein and its downstream effector has been formally established is the GanB/CyaA cAMP-PKA cascade during germination (Yu and d'Enfert 2008). Hence, one of the well-studied cellular downstream effectors of the GPCR is the cAMP-PKA circuit. Signal transduction coming from GPCR activity stimulates the plasma membrane-bound enzyme adenylyl cyclase, encoded by the genes *cyaA* and *acyA* in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, respectively, but still uncharacterized in other *Aspergilli*, such as *A. oryzae* and *A. niger*. The activity of CyaA/AcyA results in the production of the second messenger cyclic AMP (adenosine 3′,5′-cyclic monophosphate) from ATP. The increased intracellular levels of cAMP activate protein kinase A (PKA). Activation of PKA takes place by the cAMP-induced conformational change in the PKA regulatory subunits which is ultimately released from the PKA catalytic subunit (see Fig. 5.2 for gene names), allowing it to phosphorylate downstream targets at serine or threonine residues, culminating in the cellular response upon stress or other signals. In this process, which is well conserved across eukaryotes, two cAMP molecules bind to the homodimeric structure of PKA regulatory subunit (encoded by *pkaR* in Aspergilli), releasing the catalytic PKA structure (Taylor et al. 1990, 2004). Both in *A. fumigatus* and *A. nidulans*, null mutants of *acyA* and *cyaA*, respectively, render defects in conidial germination, conidial production, and vegetative hyphal growth due to the lowered intracellular levels of cAMP (Fillinger et al. 2002; Liebmann et al. 2003).

The *Aspergillus* genomes contain two catalytic subunits of PKA which are phylogenetically distant from each other. *pkaA* and *pkaC1*(Fig. 5.2) belong to group I PKAs, which are closely related to the three protein kinase A catalytic subunit (TPKs) homologs present in the genome of *S. cerevisiae* (Robertson and Fink 1998). In contrast, *pkaB* and *pkaC2* belong to the group II PKAs which are exclusively present in filamentous fungi (Ni et al. 2005; Fuller et al. 2011). In *A. nidulans,* the overexpression of *pkaA* causes reduced but not completely absent conidia production. In contrast, deletion of *A. nidulans pkaA* caused a hyperconidiating phenotype and limited radial growth (Shimizu and Keller 2001) indicating a role in vegetative growth. In addition, *pkaA* is a negative regulator (at both transcriptional and posttrancriptional level) for production of the carcinogenic secondary metabolite sterigmatocystin (Shimizu and Keller 2001). Curiously in *A. fumigatus* the deletion of the *pkaC1* gene resulted in a contrasting condition of low conidia formation but the same phenotypes of impaired germination and vegetative growth (Liebmann et al. 2004).

Likewise in other fungal species such as fission and budding yeast, *C. albicans,* and the filamentous saprophyte *Neurospora crassa*, there is only one adenylate cyclase in the genome of *Aspergillus*. Deletions of this gene in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus* are not lethal, indicating that even in the absence of cAMP generated by the activity of CyaA or AcyA, the level of PKA activity is sufficient to signal for germination, hyphal growth, and conidiogenesis (Yu and d'Enfert 2008). In contrast, the loss of function of both genes encoding the two catalytic subunits of PKA, i. e., Δ*pkaA*/Δ*pkaB,* is lethal in *A. nidulans* (Ni et al. 2005). Remarkably, the same is not true for *A. fumigatus* where the double mutant strain Δ*pkaC1*/Δ*pkaC2* is viable although completely avirulent (Fuller et al. 2011).

The function of the single PKA regulatory subunit (*pkaR*) present in the genome of *A. fumigatus* and *A. niger* has been described, but a deletion mutant of this gene (AN4987) in the model organism *A. nidulans* has not been reported. In *A. fumigatus* the Δ*pkaR* strain resulted in impaired germination, vegetative growth, and conidia production as well as conidia hypersensitivity to oxidative stress agents (Zhao et al. 2006; Fuller et al. 2009). In the industrially important species *A. niger*, loss of function of the catalytic subunit of PKA (*pkaC*) resulted in a reduction of colony diameter, but the most severe phenotypes were, interestingly, observed in the PKA regulatory subunit (*pkaR*) disruption strain which resulted in very small colonies, absence of sporulation, and complete loss of growth polarity during submerged growth (Saudohar et al. 2002).

The current information in *Aspergilli* about GPCR and the cAMP-dependent protein A kinases (PKA) indicates that there is a striking diversity at the GPCR input level, but little diversity of components at the G-protein and cAMP-signaling level which is minimally conserved among the studied species but with some particularities. This may reflect the abilities of these fungi to adapt to various ecological niches and to integrate diverse environmental cues into highly conserved cellular processes (Lafon et al. 2006).

5.4.2 The Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Pathway

Mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPK) are a family of serine/threonine protein kinases, which are involved in the transduction of a variety of extracellular signals, regulating growth and differentiation processes. For this reason, MAPKs are central elements of several signaling pathways in eukaryotes. In addition, the MAPK mechanism of action involves the sequential phosphorylation of downstream protein targets of the MAP kinase pathway. Protein phosphorylation is regarded as one of the most important posttranslational modifications found in all eukaryotic organisms (Mok et al. 2011). The essential organization of the MAP kinase pathway consists of a sequential cascade of three protein kinases. On the top of the cascade, there is a MAPKKK (MAP kinase kinase kinase) which functions to phosphorylate the residues of serine and threonine of the immediately downstream MAKK (MAP kinase kinase), the second component of the pathway, which

Table 5.2 Components of the MAP kinase cascades in *Aspergillus* species

	Aspergillus	*S. cerevisiae* counterpart
Cell wall integrity pathway		
MAPKKK	*bckA/bck1*	BCK1
MAPKK	*mkkA/mkk2*	MKK1
MAPK	*mpkA*	MPK1 (SLT2)
High-osmolarity glycerol pathway		
MAPKKK	*sskB*	SSK2
MAPKK	*pbsA* or *pbsB/pbsB*	PBS2
MAPK	*hogA/sakA*	HOG1
Mating pathway		
MAPKKK	*steC*	STE11
MAPKK	*ste7/mkkB*	STE7
MAPK	*fus3/mpkB*	FUS3
mpkC pathway		
MAPKKK	–	–
MAPKK	–	–
MAPK	*mpkC*	–

Additional information about each gene can be found at the *Aspergillu*s Genome Database (AspGD) available at <http://www.aspergillusgenome.org/> (Arnaud et al. 2012) using the gene name provided here as entries. Gene names separated by a slash indicate aliases in the same *Aspergillus* specie and/or between them

becomes in turn activated. The activated MAPKK in a sequential manner dually phosphorylates the last component of the pathway, MAPK.

The signal that leads to activation of the MAPK cascade is perceived by a variety of types of receptors: G-protein-coupled (discussed in the previous section), histidine kinases phosphorelay sensors (described in the next section), and integral membrane proteins (Banuett 1998). After MAP kinase activation, the final target of the pathway is, in general, a transcription factor whose phosphorylation and activation enables the transcription of target genes to adjust the cell to the condition sensed by the receptor (Hill and Treisman 1995; Treisman 1996). There are four MAP kinases in the genome of *A. nidulans*, *A. fumigatus,* and *A. oryzae*, i.e., four different kinases that phosphorylate different transcription factors to adapt the cell to the extracellular stimuli (Reyes et al. 2006; Zhao et al. 2007; May 2008). These genes are named *mpkA*, *mpkB*, *sakA/HogA*, and *mpkC*. The first three are homologs of the yeast Slt2, Fus3, and Hog1, respectively, while *mpkC* has no orthologous genes or a pathway in *S. cerevisiae*. Table 5.2 shows the MAP kinases identified in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus* because these three species cover the majority of the functional characterization of the MAP kinase-signaling cascade which allows us to infer the function of such components in *Aspergillus* genomes.

The *Aspergillus* MAP kinase *mpkC* is the least characterized. Its sequence is very similar to *sakA/hogA* (Reyes et al. 2006). However, *mpkC* cannot be attributed to a specific cascade with a well-established cellular function such as the cell wall integrity (CWI) or the high-osmolarity glycerol pathways (HOG), which mainly respond to cell wall or osmotic stress input, respectively. Moreover, it is currently

unknown which MAPKKK and MAPKK signal leads to the downstream activation of *mpkC* (May 2008). In *A. fumigatus* and *A. nidulans*, Δ*mpkC* deletion strain showed a wild-type phenotype in minimal and complete medium under various concentrations of salts and solutes (Reyes et al. 2006; Jun et al. 2011). Nevertheless, it revealed an unexpected role in the assimilation of polyalcohol sugars, indicating that *mpkC* is involved in the signaling for carbon source utilization only in *A. fumigatus* (Reyes et al. 2006). Even though there is sequence similarity between *A. fumigatus mpkC* and *sakA*/*hogA* MAP kinases (68 % amino acid identity) (May et al. 2005), the transcriptional regulation of these two MAPK upon osmotic and oxidative stress or in response to carbon source shift indicated no overlapping patterns, suggesting that they may govern independent signaling pathways (Reyes et al. 2006). The same results were observed in the analysis of the Δ*mpkC* in *A. nidulans* which depicted no visible phenotype under standard growth conditions. However, a cross talk with the MAPK *hogA* was verified since the MAPKK *pbsA* was able to phosphorylate *mpkC* as well as its known target *hogA* in an overexpressing *mpkC* strain of *A. nidulans* (Furukawa et al. 2005).

One of the most studied MAP kinase pathways is the CWI which underlines the function and importance of the gene *mpkA* in *Aspergillus*. Deletion strains for almost all of the MAP kinase pathway components in the cell wall integrity (CWI) have been generated at least in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus,* and results were sometimes corroborative in both organisms. In *A. nidulans,* the deletion of *mpkA* showed abnormal hyphal structure and vegetative growth defects which could be rescued in the presence of osmotic stabilizers (Bussink and Osmani 1999), as well as increased sensitivity to the β 1,3-glucan synthase inhibitor Caspofungin (Mircus et al. 2009). In *A. fumigatus*, the CWI genes *bck1*, *mkk2,* and *mpkA* (Table 5.2) have been associated with impaired filamentous growth, decreased resistance to cell wall-disturbing and oxidative-stressing agents, thermotolerance defects, and abnormal hyphal morphology (Valiante et al. 2008, 2009). However, *A. fumigatus mpkA* is dispensable for virulence in a mouse model for invasive aspergillosis (Valiante et al. 2008), while the *mkk2* promotes virulence attenuation in the same model (Du et al. 2002). Interestingly, all the components of the CWI MAP kinase circuit in *A. fumigatus* are involved in the production of the melanin-related pigment derived from tyrosine degradation, pyomelanin (Valiante et al. 2009).

In *A. oryzae*, the function of the *mpkA* in the CWI was observed in a study where the subtilisin-like-processing enzyme *hexB* was deleted (Mizutani et al. 2004). The *hexB* loss-of-function mutant showed constitutively upregulated levels of both *mpkA* transcripts and the phosphorylation levels of MpkA in *A. oryzae*. This indicates that the phenotypic traits observed in the *hexB* mutant could be attributed to disordered CWI signaling.

The circuit coordinated by the *mpkB* MAP kinase homolog in *S. cerevisiae* (Ste11-Ste7-Fus3) is known as the sexual pathway of the budding yeast since it responds to pheromones, induces differentiation processes, and triggers sexual mating of yeast (Bardwell 2005). The most studied gene in this pathway in *Aspergillus* is MAPKKK *steC* (Table 5.2). A *steC* deletion strain exhibited reduced growth, brown-pigmented mycelium, and aberrant-sized conidiophores.

Furthermore, Δ*steC* was unable to form cleistothecia under sexual development conditions (Wei et al. 2003). More recently, some studies have devoted attention to the deletion strain of the MAP kinase *mpkB*. Deletion of *A. nidulans mpkB* caused slow vegetative growth, aberrant hyphal morphology, and also no cleistothecia formation under several sexual-inducing conditions, indicating that *mpkB* has an essential role during successful sexual reproduction in *A. nidulans* (Jun et al. 2011). In addition, the Δ*mpkB* mutant exhibited a decrease in sterigmatocystin gene expression and low mycotoxin levels. The mutation also affected the expression of genes involved in penicillin and terrequinone A synthesis (Atoui et al. 2008). *mpkB* was also necessary for normal expression of *laeA* (a methyltransferase-domain protein), which has been found to regulate secondary metabolism gene clusters (Bok and Keller 2004; Atoui et al. 2008; Bayram et al. 2008, 2012; Bayram and Braus 2012).

5.4.3 Two-Component Histidine Kinase Phosphorelay System

The two-component histidine kinase (HK) phosphorelay system (or tcs) is a signaling pathway initially identified and characterized in bacteria. In eukaryotes it is present only in slime mold, plant, and fungal cells. This system enables these cell types to sense and react to the extracellular stimuli with intracellular responses since it is connected to an output component such as activation of transcription or of a MAP kinase-signaling cascade (Hoch 2000; Santos and Shiozaki 2001, 2004; Catlett et al. 2003). As a consequence, several processes such as differentiation, growth, osmosensing, and chemotaxis can be controlled by this signaling machinery (Hoch 2000). The mechanisms and proteins involved in this two-component phosphorelay system have received attention in fungi since no similar pathway has been described in animal cells. In contrast, the other regulatory networks such as MAP kinase and GPCR (discussed above) are also present in higher eukaryotes. Therefore, it could be a promising target for the development of new antifungal compounds (Santos and Shiozaki 2001; Bahn 2008; Li et al. 2010).

The architecture of HK in fungal cells differs from that in prokaryotes. In bacteria, HK is composed of a sensor histidine kinase (HK) and a separate protein called response regulator (RR). In response to external stimuli, the sensor HK is autophosphorylated at the histidine residue followed by the transfer of this phosphoryl group to a conserved aspartate residue within a receiver domain of its cognate RR protein [for reviews see Hoch (2000), Santos and Shiozaki (2001), Catlett et al. (2003), and Li et al. (2010)]. In contrast, and although there are some exceptions, fungal cells have a so-called hybrid HK which combines both functions of sensor HK and RR in the same protein (Li et al. 2010). In other words, the phosphoryl group from the sensor HK is transferred directly to the RR domain in the same polypeptide (Catlett et al. 2003; McCormick et al. 2012). Fig. 5.3 depicts

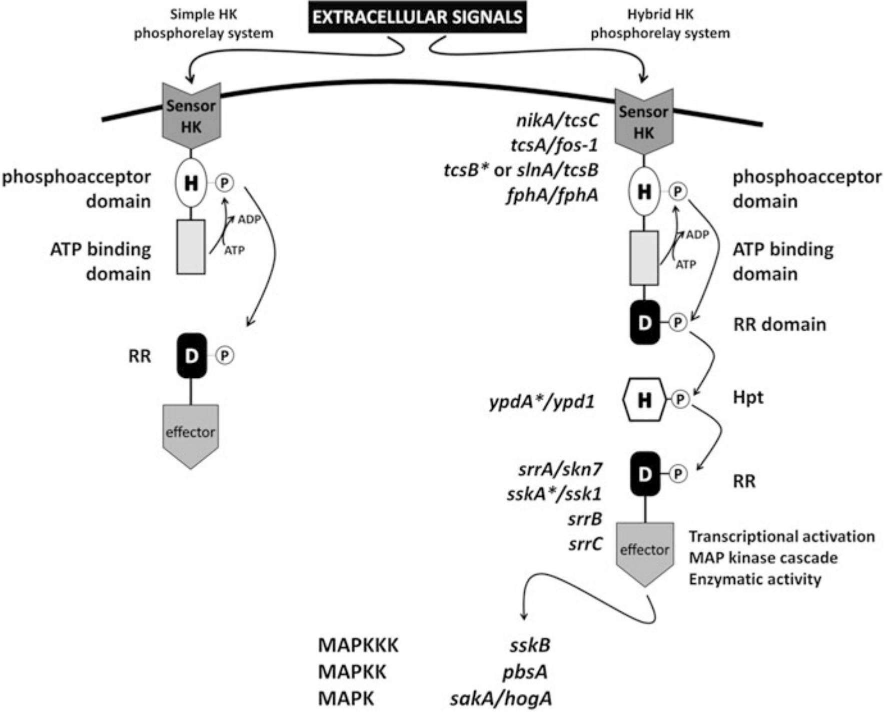


Fig. 5.3 Schematic representation and domain organization of the two-component histidine kinase (HK) phosphorelay system (or tcs) appearing in prokaryotes (*left*) or eukaryotes (*right*). Most eukaryotic and all fungal HKs are hybrids. An external stimulus is received by the sensor domain of the HK localized in the cell membrane. This signal typically catalyzes an ATP-dependent autophosphorylation reaction in which the protein kinase covalently attaches the γ-phosphoryl group from ATP to itself on a conserved histidine residue (indicated as **H**) in the phosphoacceptor domain. The phosphoryl group is subsequently transferred to a conserved aspartic acid residue (indicated as **D**) on a response regulator protein (**RR**) activating the effector domain to result in an output such as activation of transcription or a MAP kinase (MAPK) cascade or a specific enzymatic activity required. Hence, for a simple two-component system (*left*), the HK (sensor, phosphoacceptor, and ATP-binding domains) and the RR are separate proteins. On the other hand, for a hybrid two-component system (*right*), the HK (sensor, phosphoacceptor, and ATP-binding domains) and the second RR/effector protein are separate polypeptides. Structurally, a hybrid HK protein presents both HK and RR domains in the same polypeptide but generally requires additional rounds of phosphorelay events through an **HPt** domain (histidine-containing phosphotransfer intermediate protein, indicated as the *hexagon*) and a second cognate **RR** protein. The HPt domain can be part of the hybrid HK protein or a separate protein. The main components of the two-component phosphorelay system identified and characterized in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus* are described. From the 15 putative HK sensors identified in these species, four of them are characterized. There is a single Hpt protein in *Aspergillus* (*ypdA*). The four putative cognate RR in these species have also been described. The gene names separated by a slash indicate the names in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus*, respectively. The genes marked with an *asterisk* indicate those which belong to the circuit connecting the HK and HOG pathways in *A. nidulans* (for details see the text). In this circuit, the RR *sskA* activates the MAPKKK *sskB* ultimately activating the HOG pathway to drive the cell adaptation in conditions of hyperosmotic shock. Adapted from West and Stock (2001), Catlett et al. (2003), and Capra and Laub (2012)

the main differences in the prokaryote and eukaryote systems and highlights main events on the hybrid HK-mediated signal transduction cascade.

The fungal phosphorelay systems consist of a single or several hybrid HKs, a histidine-containing phosphotransfer (Hpt) protein, and one or two additional downstream canonical RRs (Vargas-Perez et al. 2007; McCormick et al. 2012). The Hpt component consists of a protein with a conserved motif (PFAM01627) where a second residue of histidine serves as a receptor for a second transfer of the phosphoryl group coming from the RR domain of the fungal hybrid HK (Fig. 5.3). This additional phosphorelay step may allow the organism to integrate multiple input signals arriving at the hybrid HK into a single output (Appleby et al. 1996; Catlett et al. 2003). The second RR component of the hybrid HK pathway mediates the activation of the effector, such as a MAP kinase cascade (Catlett et al. 2003).

Through analysis of *Aspergillus* and other filamentous fungal genomes, such as *Neurospora crassa*, *Fusarium verticillioides, Cochliobolus heterostrophus,* and *Botrytis cinerea*, 11 families of hybrid HK have been described in fungi, which were classified according to their protein sequence and domain organization [for reviews about HK families, see Catlett et al. (2003) and Hagiwara et al. (2007a)]. Compared to prokaryotes, yeasts such as *S. cerevisiae*, *S. pombe,* and *C. albicans* have a much lower number of hybrid HKs. For instance, in *S. cerevisiae* there is only one hybrid HK (Sln1), three RR (Ssk1, Skn7, and Rim15), and one Hpt (Ypd1) (Abe et al. 2010; Jung et al. 2012). Conversely, the genome of *A. nidulans* contains 15 hybrid HKs, four RR, and also a single one Hpt (Hagiwara et al. 2009). Interestingly, these hybrid HKs are more redundant than those identified in the essentially saprobic fungus *N. crassa*, which indicates the importance of the HK phosphorelay system to the *Aspergillus* species in the sensing and signaling of external stimuli (Abe et al. 2010).

Comparison of the *A. nidulans*, *A. oryzae,* and *A. fumigatus* genomes identified 15, 15, and 13 putative hybrid HKs, respectively, in these organisms. These HKs represent nine of the 11 families of HK described by Catlett et al. (2003)and Abe et al. (2010). Besides its functional relevance, the characterization of the hybrid HK in the *Aspergillus* species is still in its infancy compared to other families of signaling pathways. The best characterized HKs in *Aspergillus* are those in the model organism *A. nidulans* and in the opportunistic pathogen *A. fumigatus*. From the 15 HK identified in the genome of *A. nidulans* (Hagiwara et al. 2007a, 2009; Vargas-Perez et al. 2007), four have been characterized: *nikA*, *tcsA*, *tcsB* (or *slnA*, the homolog of *S. cerevisiae* Sln1), and *fphA* (Virginia et al. 2000; Furukawa et al. 2002; Blumenstein et al. 2005; Hagiwara et al. 2007b). Figure 5.3 shows the gene families currently characterized and its function in the *Aspergilli* phosphorelay system.

The *nikA* null mutant showed decreased radial growth but was not hypersensitive to high osmolarity (Vargas-Perez et al. 2007; Hagiwara et al. 2009). It was also required for efficient conidia production and expression of the transcription factor BrlA in *Aspergillus* involved in the early stages of asexual reproduction, and conidiogenesis was considerably lower in the Δ*nikA* strain (Hagiwara et al. 2009). The *tcsA* disruption strain in *A. nidulans* showed a complimentary phenotype with

the other HKs since it was also required for production of conidia but not for vegetative growth (Virginia et al. 2000).

The other characterized HK in *A. nidulans*, *tcsB* (or *slnA*), presented no detectable phenotype regarding vegetative growth or conidiation or in response to various stimuli such as osmotic and oxidative stressing agents and antifungal drugs (Furukawa et al. 2002, 2005). However, in the model yeast *S. cerevisiae,* there are strong evidences that the SLN1 (the homolog of *A. nidulans tcsB*) directly senses osmotic changes providing a connection between the HOG MAP kinase pathway and the HK pathway (Hohmann 2002). In yeast, the sensor Sln1p transfers the phosphate from its receiver domain to the Ypd1p under low-osmolarity conditions. Nevertheless, this phosphoryl transfer activity is reduced when the cell senses an osmotic shift to hyperosmotic condition. This scenario indicates that under hyposmolarity conditions, the HK is active and continuously phosphorylates the Hpt protein Ypd1p. Ypd1 phosphotransfer signal transducer therefore negatively regulates Ssk1p, thus preventing signaling beyond this step in the cascade. On the other hand, upon a hyperosmotic shock, the HK activity of Sln1p drops transiently, removing the negative regulation of Ssk1 eventually leading to activation of the downstream MAPKKK Ssk2p (Table 5.1) (Hohmann 2002).

The same hypertonic stress response is thought to occur in *A. nidulans* in that the loss of the negative regulation of the RR *sskA* (homolog of *S. cerevisiae* SSK1) results in phosphorylation of MAPKKK *sskB,* followed by MAPKK *pbsA* and consequent activation of the *sakA*/*hogA* MAPK pathway (Table 5.2 and Fig. 5.3). Interestingly, in *A. nidulans* the deletion of *tcsB* alone does not cause sensitivity to osmotic stress, which indicates that other HK may act in a compensatory manner and that *A. nidulans* has a more complex and robust osmoregulatory system than the yeast SLN1-YPD1-SSK1-HOG1 MAPK cascade (Furukawa et al. 2002, 2005; May 2008). The *A. fumigatus tcsB* counterpart is involved in partial tolerance to SDS, but as in *A. nidulans*, no apparent growth differences were observed under various growth conditions and stress induction. However, even with reports of minimal phenotypes "in vitro," the expression of *tcsB* (initially described as AfHK1) was increased in fungal cells isolated directly from the infected host (Du et al. 2002).

Functional descriptions are also available for *fos-1* (the homolog of *A. nidulans tcsA*), *tcsB* (*A. nidulans tcsB*), and *tcsC* (the homolog of *A. nidulans nikA*) in the pathogen *A. fumigatus* (Pott et al. 2000; Du et al. 2002, 2006; McCormick et al. 2012). Deletion of *A. fumigatus fos-1* greatly attenuated the virulence (Clemons et al. 2002) although the deletion mutant showed only minimal phenotypic changes in liquid or solid cultures. Only in liquid medium there was a delay in conidiophore development and strong resistance to the antifungal agents dicarboximide and cell wall-degrading enzymes, thus indicating a regulatory role of *fos-1* in cell wall organization (Pott et al. 2000). The HK *tcsC* of *A. fumigatus* is required for growth under hyperosmotic stress, hypoxia, and farnesol exposure but dispensable for normal growth, sporulation, and conidial viability. A characteristic feature of the Δ*tcsC* mutant is its resistance to certain fungicides, like fludioxonil. Both hyperosmotic stress and treatment with fludioxonil result in a TcsC-dependent

phosphorylation of the MAP kinase SakA, confirming a role for TcsC in this signaling pathway. However, *tcsC* is dispensable for virulence in *A. fumigatus* (McCormick et al. 2012).

The phytochrome *fphA* gene still remains uncharacterized in *A. fumigatus*. In *A. oryzae*, the only HK partially described is the *fphA* homolog which is known to be continuously expressed under red-light conditions (Hatakeyama et al. 2007). In *A. nidulans fphA* functions as a red-light sensor, and deletion of *fphA* leads to partial derepression of sexual development under red-light conditions (Blumenstein et al. 2005). In *A. niger* although the same orthologs of HK are present, with the exception of *tcsB*, none of them has been characterized yet.

The four RR in *A. nidulans* have also been functionally characterized (Hagiwara et al. 2007a; Vargas-Perez et al. 2007). The deletion strains Δ*ssrB* and Δ*ssrC* showed no phenotypes under the conditions tested. In contrast, *A. nidulans ssrA* and *sskA* are involved in osmotic stress resistance and are also required for oxidative stress tolerance (Hagiwara et al. 2007a; Vargas-Perez et al. 2007). In *A. fumigatus* the deletion mutant of *skn7* (*S. cerevisiae* SKN7) was morphologically similar to the wild-type strain but showed a decreased resistance to hydrogen peroxide and t-butyl hydroperoxide indicating the role of this gene in the detoxification of reactive oxygen species (Lamarre et al. 2007). It was also dispensable for virulence. Interestingly, the histidine-containing phosphotransfer intermediate protein, (Hpt) gene, *ypdA* is essential in *A. nidulans* (Furukawa et al. 2005; Vargas-Perez et al. 2007). This essentiality is due to the fact that the deletion of *ypdA* constitutively activates the HOG pathway by the reasons mentioned above.

Collectively these data indicate that the genome sequences of *Aspergillus* have fostered the study of the HKs present in such organisms as an important component of the signal transduction pathways. Depending on the species, the HK phosphorelay system can be implicated in the response to external stimuli such as osmotic and oxidative, hypoxia, resistance to antifungal compounds, and sexual and vegetative development (Santos and Shiozaki 2001; Catlett et al. 2003; Vargas-Perez et al. 2007; Bahn 2008; McCormick et al. 2012). Also, signaling pathways mediated by hybrid HK in *Aspergillus* differ in some aspects from those in *S. cerevisiae* or the pathogenic yeast *C. albicans* in terms of phenotypic traits since different responses to stressing conditions were identified (Du et al. 2006).

5.5 Secondary Metabolites of Aspergilli

The secondary metabolites of *Aspergillus* species impact our lives on a daily basis and span the range from harmful mycotoxins to beneficial pharmaceuticals, commodity chemical intermediates, and food additives. In addition, they are useful markers for the polyphasic approach to *Aspergillus* taxonomy [reviewed in Frisvad et al. (2008)]. The biosynthetic genes for secondary metabolites are often clustered. It is clear from the genomes of the *Aspergillus* species sequenced thus far that the molecules that have been characterized currently constitute a small percentage of

the potential production of secondary metabolites by *Aspergillus* and other ascomycetes. Progress in associating genetic pathways with production of specific secondary metabolites has been most recently reviewed by Sanchez et al. (2012). Advances in understanding regulation of secondary metabolite biosynthesis have also facilitated the detection of "silent" gene clusters. A combination of pathway-specific regulators working both in cis and trans with gene clusters as well as global regulators are responsible for activation and repression of secondary metabolite biosynthesis [reviewed by Brakhage (2013)]. In this section, we present a high-level overview of some of the important secondary metabolites derived from species of *Aspergillus* and for which a gene cluster is known and discuss current approaches for secondary metabolite analysis that take advantage of *Aspergillus* genomic resources.

5.5.1 Aflatoxin

In 1960, Turkey "X" Disease afflicted poultry in Great Britain. The course of the disease was "...generally short, and once a poultry was seen to be affected it would usually die within a week" (Bount 1961). The cause of the disease was quickly traced to *A. flavus*-contaminated peanut-derived feed imported from South America (Nesbitt et al. 1962; Van der Zijden et al. 1962). Subsequently members of the aflatoxin family of compounds were purified and the structures determined (Asao et al. 1963). Over the following decades a variety of approaches were used to elucidate the biosynthetic pathway of aflatoxin using a host of *Aspergillus* species. Gene clusters for production of aflatoxin or sterigmatocystin (a less toxic compound found late in the aflatoxin pathway and the final product of *Aspergillus nidulans*) have been elucidated (Yu et al. 2004b). Aflatoxin and sterigmatocystin are produced by the action of a polyketide synthase (PKS) and several modifying enzymes (Yu et al. 1995, 2004a; Brown et al. 1996b; Cary et al. 2009). The "starter unit" for aflatoxin is hexanoic acid, which is produced by the action a fatty acid synthase encoded by two genes in the cluster (Brown et al. 1996a; Watanabe et al. 1996). Interestingly, what appear to be nonfunctional versions of the aflatoxin biosynthetic pathway are found in the genomes of *A. oryzae* and *A. sojae*, two fungi commonly used in koji mold processes (Watson et al. 1999; Matsushima et al. 2001a, b; Takahashi et al. 2002; Lee et al. 2006; Tominaga et al. 2006; Kiyota et al. 2011).

5.5.2 Ochratoxin

Discovered in 1965 (van der Merwe et al. 1965), ochratoxin A (OTA) is an important contaminant of grains, meat, and wine. It is produced by a number of *Aspergillus* species including *A. carbonarius* and some strains of *Aspergillus niger* (Nielsen et al. 2009; Frisvad et al. 2011), as well as some species of *Penicillium*

(van Walbeek et al. 1969; Pitt 1987). A putative gene cluster elucidated through the genome sequencing of *A. niger* strain CBS 513.88 (Pel et al. 2007) supported the existing hypothesis that the biosynthetic pathway involves both a PKS and a non-ribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS) (O'Callaghan and Dobson 2006). There is a large deletion within this cluster found in the *A. niger* strain ATCC 1015—a non-OTA-producing strain—genome sequence (Andersen et al. 2011). Orthologs of the putative *A. niger* OTA biosynthetic genes were identified in the genome of *A. carbonarius* ITEM 5010, and the NRPS was subsequently deleted. The strain containing the deletion was unable to produce OTA, confirming the identification of the *A. carbonarius* OTA biosynthetic cluster (Gallo et al. 2012).

5.5.3 Fumonisins

Fumonisins are mycotoxins that have been well described in the ascomycete genus *Fusarium,* having been initially characterized in the late 1980s (Bezuidenhout et al. 1988; Gelderblom et al. 1988). It was therefore somewhat of a surprise when clusters encoding orthologs of genes whose products are involved in the fumonisin biosynthetic pathway were discovered in two *A. niger* strains whose genomes had been sequenced, ATCC 1015 and CBS 513.88 (Baker 2006; Pel et al. 2007). The production of fumonisin was later confirmed biochemically (Frisvad et al. 2007).

5.5.4 Lovastatin

The statins have had an enormous impact on the health of millions. Akira Endo, a researcher at Japan-based Sankyo, is credited with the discovery of a class of compounds (compactins from *Penicillium citrinum*) that inhibited HMG coA reductase, a key enzyme in cholesterol biosynthesis (Endo et al. 1976a, b, 1977). In the late 1970s researchers at Merck isolated mevinolin (lovastatin) from *A. terreus* (Alberts et al. 1980). By the late 1980s lovastatin had been approved as a treatment for high cholesterol in the United States [see this concise history of the statins (Tobert 2003)]. Lovastatin is a polyketide whose biosynthetic pathway has been elucidated—the gene cluster involved in lovastatin biosynthesis encodes two polyketide synthases as well as regulatory and numerous backbone "decorating" enzymes (Hendrickson et al. 1999; Kennedy et al. 1999).

5.5.5 *Associating Secondary Metabolites with Biosynthetic Pathways*

One striking result from the early *Aspergillus* sequencing projects was the diversity of secondary metabolite biosynthetic genes encoded within each genome (Galagan et al. 2005; Machida et al. 2005). The diversity of the genes encoding secondary metabolite biosynthetic genes has grown with each Aspergillus genome sequenced (Pel et al. 2007; Andersen et al. 2011). This vast catalog of polyketide synthases, terpene synthases, non-ribosomal peptide synthetases, and fatty acid synthases represents an uncharacterized frontier of chemical diversity whose exploration has been enabled by genome sequencing. The work of Kroken et al. (2003) is an excellent example of a phylogenetic approach that was used to characterize polyketide synthases. Similar analyses of secondary metabolite diversity have been performed utilizing one or more *Aspergillus* genomes [see, for example, Varga et al. (2003), Cramer et al. (2006), and Ferracin et al. (2012)].

There are a number of molecular genetic strategies for associating metabolites with their respective biosynthetic genes (Sanchez et al. 2012). A computational tool for identification of secondary metabolite gene clusters from *Aspergillus* genomic sequences is SMURF (Secondary Metabolite Unknown Regions Finder) (Khaldi et al. 2010; Sanchez et al. 2012). "Classical" genetic analysis combined with genomic sequence information has also been successful in associating pigment production with *A. niger* pigment biosynthetic genes (Jorgensen et al. 2011). Another approach to characterizing pigment production in *A. niger* was to identify orthologs of pigment pathways characterized in other fungal species (Baker 2008; Chiang et al. 2011). Combining genomics with molecular genetic manipulation of individual genes, whether through overexpression, deletion, or heterologous expression, has greatly accelerated the pace of associating genes and gene clusters with their respective secondary metabolites and biosynthetic pathways [reviewed in Sanchez et al. (2012)].

5.6 Concluding Remarks

This chapter has summarized and given only some examples of the impact the availability of genome sequences has had on *Aspergillus* research. It was predicted previously that sequencing and annotation of the first three Aspergilli will be seen as a transformational event in *Aspergillus* biology (Nierman et al. 2005a), and this has certainly come through. Soon more than 50 genomes of Aspergilli and related species will be available, providing a resource for both in-depth and comparative studies on a variety of topics. The combination of a large community that addresses nearly every aspect of *Aspergillus* biology; the medical, agricultural, and biotechnological relevance of the genus; and the development of high-quality tools and

infrastructures for detailed (post-)genomic analysis will guarantee that *Aspergillus* will remain at the forefront of fungal research, also in the field of genomics.

Acknowledgments GHG and IM were supported by the Fundação de Amparo à Pesquisa do Estado de São Paulo (FAPESP) and Conselho Nacional de Desenvolvimento Científico e Tecnológico (CNPq).

References

Abe K, Furukawa K, Fujioka T, Hagiwara D, Maeda H, Marui J, Mizutani O, Takahashi T, Yoshimi A, Yamagata Y, Gomi K, Hasegawa F (2010) Novel industrial applications of *Aspergillus oryzae* Genomics. In: Gomi K, Machida M (eds) Aspergillus: molecular biology and genomics. Caister Academic, Norfolk

Alberts AW, Chen J, Kuron G, Hunt V, Huff J, Hoffman C, Rothrock J, Lopez M, Joshua H, Harris E, Patchett A, Monaghan R, Currie S, Stapley E, Albers-Schonberg G, Hensens O, Hirshfield J, Hoogsteen K, Liesch J, Springer J (1980) Mevinolin: a highly potent competitive inhibitor of hydroxymethylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase and a cholesterol-lowering agent. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 77:3957–3961

Albrecht D, Kniemeyer O, Mech F, Gunzer M, Brakhage A, Guthke R (2011) On the way toward systems biology of *Aspergillus fumigatus* infection. Int J Med Microbiol 301:453–459

Andersen MR, Lehmann L, Nielsen J (2009) Systemic analysis of the response of *Aspergillus niger* to ambient pH. Genome Biol 10:R47

Andersen MR, Salazar MP, Schaap PJ, van de Vondervoort PJ, Culley D, Thykaer J, Frisvad JC, Nielsen KF, Albang R, Albermann K, Berka RM, Braus GH, Braus-Stromeyer SA, Corrochano LM, Dai Z, van Dijck PW, Hofmann G, Lasure LL, Magnuson JK, Menke H, Meijer M, Meijer SL, Nielsen JB, Nielsen ML, van Ooyen AJ, Pel HJ, Poulsen L, Samson RA, Stam H, Tsang A, van den Brink JM, Atkins A, Aerts A, Shapiro H, Pangilinan J, Salamov A, Lou Y, Lindquist E, Lucas S, Grimwood J, Grigoriev IV, Kubicek CP, Martinez D, van Peij NN, Roubos JA, Nielsen J, Baker SE (2011) Comparative genomics of citric-acid-producing *Aspergillus niger* ATCC 1015 versus enzyme-producing CBS 513.88. Genome Res 21:885–897

Andersen MR, Giese M, Vries PRD, Nielsen J (2012) Mapping the polysaccharide degradation potential of *Aspergillus niger*. BMC Genomics 13:313

Appleby JL, Parkinson JS, Bourret RB (1996) Signal transduction via the multi-step phosphorelay: not necessarily a road less traveled. Cell 86:845–848

Arakawa M, Someno T, Kawada M, Ikeda D (2008) A new terrein glucoside, a novel inhibitor of angiogenin secretion in tumor angiogenesis. J Antibiot 61:442–448

Arnaud MB, Cerqueira GC, Inglis DO, Skrzypek MS, Binkley J, Chibucos MC, Crabtree J, Howarth C, Orvis J, Shah P, Wymore F, Binkley G, Miyasato SR, Simison M, Sherlock G, Wortman JR (2012) The Aspergillus Genome Database (AspGD): recent developments in comprehensive multispecies curation, comparative genomics and community resources. Nucleic Acids Res 40:D653–D659

Asao T, Buchi G, Abdel-Kader MM, Chang SB, Wick EL, Wogan GN (1963) Aflatoxins B and G. J Am Chem Soc 85:1706–1707

Atoui A, Bao D, Kaur N, Grayburn WS, Calvo AM (2008) *Aspergillus nidulans* natural product biosynthesis is regulated by mpkB, a putative pheromone response mitogen-activated protein kinase. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:3596–3600

Bahn YS (2008) Master and commander in fungal pathogens: the two-component system and the HOG signaling pathway. Eukaryot Cell 7:2017–2036

Baker SE (2006) *Aspergillus niger* genomics: past, present and into the future. Med Mycol 44 (Suppl 1):S17–S21

Baker SE (2008) *Aspergillus* genomics and DHN-melanin conidial pigmentation. In: Varga J, Samson RA (eds) *Aspergillus* in the genomic era. Wageningen Academic, Wageningen, pp 73–85

Banuett F (1998) Signalling in the yeasts: an informational cascade with links to the filamentous fungi. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 62:249–274

Bardwell L (2005) A walk-through of the yeast mating pheromone response pathway. Peptides 26:339–350

Battaglia E, Hansen SF, Leendertse A, Madrid S, Mulder H, Nikolaev I, de Vries RP (2011) Regulation of pentose utilisation by AraR, but not XlnR, differs in *Aspergillus nidulans* and *Aspergillus niger*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 91:387–397

Bayram O, Braus GH (2012) Coordination of secondary metabolism and development in fungi: the velvet family of regulatory proteins. FEMS Microbiol Rev 36:1–24

Bayram O, Krappmann S, Ni M, Bok JW, Helmstaedt K, Valerius O, Braus-Stromeyer S, Kwon NJ, Keller NP, Yu JH, Braus GH (2008) VelB/VeA/LaeA complex coordinates light signal with fungal development and secondary metabolism. Science 320:1504–1506

Bayram O, Bayram OS, Ahmed YL, Maruyama J, Valerius O, Rizzoli SO, Ficner R, Irniger S, Braus GH (2012) The *Aspergillus nidulans* MAPK module AnSte11-Ste50-Ste7-Fus3 controls development and secondary metabolism. PLoS Genet 8:e1002816

Bennett JW, Klich M (2003) Mycotoxins. Clin Microbiol Rev 16:497–516

Benoit I, Navarro D, Marnet N, Rakotomanomana N, Lesage-Meessen L, Sigoillot J-C, Asther M, Asther M (2006) Feruloyl esterases as a tool for the release of phenolic compounds from agro-industrial by-products. Carbohydr Res 341:1820–1827

Bergmann S, Schumann J, Scherlach K, Lange C, Brakhage AA, Hertweck C (2007) Genomics-driven discovery of PKS-NRPS hybrid metabolites from *Aspergillus nidulans*. Nat Chem Biol 3:213–217

Bezuidenhout SC, Gelderblom WCA, Gorst-Allman CP, Horak M, Marasas WFO, Spiteller G, Vleggaar RM (1988) Structure elucidation of the Fumonisins, mycotoxins from *Fusarium moniliforme*. J Chem Soc Chem Commun 11:743–745

Bhattacharyya RP, Remenyi A, Yeh BJ, Lim WA (2006) Domains, motifs, and scaffolds: the role of modular interactions in the evolution and wiring of cell signaling circuits. Annu Rev Biochem 75:655–680

Bigelis T, Arora DK (2009) Organic acids of fungi. In: Arora DK, Elander RP, Murekji KG (eds) Fungal biotechnology. Marcel Dekker, New York, pp 357–376

Blumenstein A, Vienken K, Tasler R, Purschwitz J, Veith D, Frankenberg-Dinkel N, Fischer R (2005) The *Aspergillus nidulans* phytochrome FphA represses sexual development in red light. Curr Biol 15:1833–1838

Bok JW, Keller NP (2004) LaeA, a regulator of secondary metabolism in *Aspergillus* spp. Eukaryot Cell 3:527–535

Bok JW, Hoffmeister D, Maggio-Hall LA, Murillo R, Glasner JD, Keller NP (2006) Genomic mining for *Aspergillus* natural products. Chem Biol 13:31–37

Bolker M (1998) Sex and crime: heterotrimeric G proteins in fungal mating and pathogenesis. Fungal Genet Biol 25:143–156

Bount WP (1961) Turkey "X" disease. Turkeys 9:52–55

Bouws H, Wattenberg A, Zorn H (2008) Fungal secretomes-nature's toolbox for white biotechnology. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 80:381–388

Braaksma M, Martens-Uzunova E, Punt P, Schaap P (2010) An inventory of the *Aspergillus niger* secretome by combining in silico predictions with shotgun proteomics data. BMC Genomics 11:584

Brakhage AA (2013) Regulation of fungal secondary metabolism. Nat Rev Microbiol 11:21–32

Brown DW, Adams TH, Keller NP (1996a) *Aspergillus* has distinct fatty acid synthases for primary and secondary metabolism. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93:14873–14877

Brown DW, Yu JH, Kelkar HS, Fernandes M, Nesbitt TC, Keller NP, Adams TH, Leonard TJ (1996b) Twenty-five coregulated transcripts define a sterigmatocystin gene cluster in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 93:1418–1422

Bussink HJ, Osmani SA (1999) A mitogen-activated protein kinase (MPKA) is involved in polarized growth in the filamentous fungus, *Aspergillus nidulans*. FEMS Microbiol Lett 173:117–125

Cagas SE, Jain MR, Li H, Perlin DS (2011) Profiling the *Aspergillus fumigatus* proteome in response to caspofungin. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 55:146–154

Cantarel B, Coutinho P, Rancurel C, Bernard T, Lombard V, Henrissat B (2009) The Carbohydrate-Active EnZymes database (CAZy): an expert resource for Glycogenomics. Nucleic Acids Res 37:D233–D238

Capra EJ, Laub MT (2012) Evolution of two-component signal transduction systems. Annu Rev Microbiol 66:325–347

Carberry S, Doyle S (2007) Proteomic studies in biomedically and industrially relevant fungi. Cytotechnology 53:95–100

Cary JW, Ehrlich KC, Beltz SB, Harris-Coward P, Klich MA (2009) Characterization of the *Aspergillus ochraceoroseus* aflatoxin/sterigmatocystin biosynthetic gene cluster. Mycologia 101:352–362

Catlett NL, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (2003) Whole-genome analysis of two-component signal transduction genes in fungal pathogens. Eukaryot Cell 2:1151–1161

Chen Q, Marshall MN, Geib SM, Tien M, Richard TL (2012) Effects of laccase on lignin depolymerization and enzymatic hydrolysis of ensiled corn stover. Bioresour Technol 117:186–192

Chiang YM, Meyer KM, Praseuth M, Baker SE, Bruno KS, Wang CC (2011) Characterization of a polyketide synthase in *Aspergillus niger* whose product is a precursor for both dihydroxynaphthalene (DHN) melanin and naphtho-gamma-pyrone. Fungal Genet Biol 48:430–437

Christensen U, Gruben BS, Madrid S, Mulder H, Nikolaev I, de Vries RP (2011) Unique regulatory mechanism for D-galactose utilization in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:7084–7087

Clemons KV, Miller TK, Selitrennikoff CP, Stevens DA (2002) fos-1, a putative histidine kinase as a virulence factor for systemic aspergillosis. Med Mycol 40:259–262

Cleveland TE, Yu J, Fedorova N, Bhatnagar D, Payne GA, Nierman WC, Bennett JW (2009) Potential of *Aspergillus flavus* genomics for applications in biotechnology. Trends Biotechnol 27:151–157

Coutinho PM, Andersen MR, Kolenova K, vanKuyk PA, Benoit I, Gruben BS, Trejo-Aguilar B, Visser H, van Solingen P, Pakula T, Seiboth B, Battaglia E, Aguilar-Osorio G, de Jong JF, Ohm RA, Aguilar M, Henrissat B, Nielsen J, Stalbrand H, de Vries RP (2009) Post-genomic insights into the plant polysaccharide degradation potential of *Aspergillus nidulans* and comparison to *Aspergillus niger* and *Aspergillus oryzae*. Fungal Genet Biol 46(Suppl 1):S161–S169

Cramer RA Jr, Stajich JE, Yamanaka Y, Dietrich FS, Steinbach WJ, Perfect JR (2006) Phylogenomic analysis of non-ribosomal peptide synthetases in the genus *Aspergillus*. Gene 383:24–32

David H, Ozcelik IS, Hofmann G, Nielsen J (2008) Analysis of *Aspergillus nidulans* metabolism at the genome-scale. BMC Genomics 9:163

de Oliveira JM, de Graaff LH (2010) Proteomics of industrial fungi: trends and insights for biotechnology. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 89:225–237

de Oliveira JM, van Passel MW, Schaap PJ, de Graaff LH (2010) Shotgun proteomics of Aspergillus niger microsomes upon D-xylose induction. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:4421–4429

de Souza WR, de Gouvea PF, Savoldi M, Malavazi I, de Souza Bernardes LA, Goldman MH, de Vries RP, de Castro Oliveira JV, Goldman GH (2011) Transcriptome analysis of *Aspergillus niger* grown on sugarcane bagasse. Biotechnol Biofuels 4:40

de Vries RP (2003) Regulation of *Aspergillus* genes encoding plant cell wall polysaccharide degrading enzymes; relevance for industrial production. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 61:10–20

de Vries RP, Visser J (2001) *Aspergillus* enzymes involved in degradation of plant cell wall polysaccharides. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 65:497–522

de Vries RP, Benoit I, Doehlemann G, Kobayashi T, Magnuson JK, Panisko EA, Baker SE, Lebrun M-H (2011) Post-genomic approaches to understanding interactions between fungi and their environment. IMA Fungus 2:81–86

Denning DW (1998) Invasive aspergillosis. Clin Infect Dis 26:781–803, quiz 804–785

Denning DW, Follansbee SE, Scolaro M, Norris S, Edelstein H, Stevens DA (1991) Pulmonary aspergillosis in the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome. N Engl J Med 324:654–662

Du C, Li R, Ma S, Wang D (2002) Cloning of *Aspergillus fumigatus* histidine kinase gene fragment and its expression during invasive infection. Mycopathologia 153:5–10

Du C, Sarfati J, Latge JP, Calderone R (2006) The role of the *sakA* (Hog1) and *tcsB* (sln1) genes in the oxidant adaptation of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Med Mycol 44:211–218

Endo A, Kuroda M, Tanzawa K (1976a) Competitive inhibition of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl coenzyme A reductase by ML-236A and ML-236B fungal metabolites, having hypocholesterolemic activity. FEBS Lett 72:323–326

Endo A, Kuroda M, Tsujita Y (1976b) ML-236A, ML-236B, and ML-236C, new inhibitors of cholesterogenesis produced by *Penicillium citrinium*. J Antibiot 29:1346–1348

Endo A, Tsujita Y, Kuroda M, Tanzawa K (1977) Inhibition of cholesterol synthesis in vitro and in vivo by ML-236A and ML-236B, competitive inhibitors of 3-hydroxy-3-methylglutaryl-coenzyme A reductase. Eur J Biochem 77:31–36

Fedorova ND, Khaldi N, Joardar VS, Maiti R, Amedeo P, Anderson MJ, Crabtree J, Silva JC, Badger JH, Albarraq A, Angiuoli S, Bussey H, Bowyer P, Cotty PJ, Dyer PS, Egan A, Galens K, Fraser-Liggett CM, Haas BJ, Inman JM, Kent R, Lemieux S, Malavazi I, Orvis J, Roemer T, Ronning CM, Sundaram JP, Sutton G, Turner G, Venter JC, White OR, Whitty BR, Youngman P, Wolfe KH, Goldman GH, Wortman JR, Jiang B, Denning DW, Nierman WC (2008) Genomic islands in the pathogenic filamentous fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Genet 4:e1000046

Ferracin LM, Fier CB, Vieira ML, Monteiro-Vitorello CB, Varani Ade M, Rossi MM, Muller-Santos M, Taniwaki MH, Thie Iamanaka B, Fungaro MH (2012) Strain-specific polyketide synthase genes of *Aspergillus niger*. Int J Food Microbiol 155:137–145

Fillinger S, Chaveroche MK, Shimizu K, Keller N, d'Enfert C (2002) cAMP and ras signalling independently control spore germination in the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 44:1001–1016

Finkelstein DB (1987) Improvement of enzyme production in *Aspergillus*. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 53:349–352

Frisvad JC, Frank M, Houbraken JAMP, Kuijpers AFA, Samson RA (2004) New ochratoxin A producing species of *Aspergillus* section *Circumdati*. Stud Mycol 50:23–43

Frisvad JC, Smedsgaard J, Samson RA, Larsen TO, Thrane U (2007) Fumonisin B2 production by *Aspergillus niger*. J Agric Food Chem 55:9727–9732

Frisvad JC, Andersen B, Thrane U (2008) The use of secondary metabolite profiling in chemotaxonomy of filamentous fungi. Mycol Res 112:231–240

Frisvad JC, Larsen TO, Thrane U, Meijer M, Varga J, Samson RA, Nielsen KF (2011) Fumonisin and ochratoxin production in industrial *Aspergillus niger* strains. PLoS One 6:e23496

Fuller KK, Zhao W, Askew DS, Rhodes JC (2009) Deletion of the protein kinase A regulatory subunit leads to deregulation of mitochondrial activation and nuclear duplication in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Eukaryot Cell 8:271–277

Fuller KK, Richie DL, Feng X, Krishnan K, Stephens TJ, Wikenheiser-Brokamp KA, Askew DS, Rhodes JC (2011) Divergent Protein Kinase A isoforms co-ordinately regulate conidial germination, carbohydrate metabolism and virulence in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Mol Microbiol 79:1045–1062

Furukawa K, Katsuno Y, Urao T, Yabe T, Yamada-Okabe T, Yamada-Okabe H, Yamagata Y, Abe K, Nakajima T (2002) Isolation and functional analysis of a gene, tcsB, encoding a transmembrane hybrid-type histidine kinase from *Aspergillus nidulans*. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:5304–5310

Furukawa K, Hoshi Y, Maeda T, Nakajima T, Abe K (2005) *Aspergillus nidulans* HOG pathway is activated only by two-component signalling pathway in response to osmotic stress. Mol Microbiol 56:1246–1261

Futagami T, Mori K, Yamashita A, Wada S, Kajiwara Y, Takashita H, Omori T, Takegawa K, Tashiro K, Kuhara S, Goto M (2011) Genome sequence of the white koji mold *Aspergillus kawachii* IFO 4308, used for brewing the Japanese distilled spirit shochu. Eukaryot Cell 10:1586–1587

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Cuomo C, Ma LJ, Wortman JR, Batzoglou S, Lee SI, Basturkmen M, Spevak CC, Clutterbuck J, Kapitonov V, Jurka J, Scazzocchio C, Farman M, Butler J, Purcell S, Harris S, Braus GH, Draht O, Busch S, D'Enfert C, Bouchier C, Goldman GH, Bell-Pedersen D, Griffiths-Jones S, Doonan JH, Yu J, Vienken K, Pain A, Freitag M, Selker EU, Archer DB, Penalva MA, Oakley BR, Momany M, Tanaka T, Kumagai T, Asai K, Machida M, Nierman WC, Denning DW, Caddick M, Hynes M, Paoletti M, Fischer R, Miller B, Dyer P, Sachs MS, Osmani SA, Birren BW (2005) Sequencing of *Aspergillus nidulans* and comparative analysis with *A. fumigatus* and *A. oryzae*. Nature 438:1105–1115

Gallo A, Bruno KS, Solfrizzo M, Perrone G, Mule G, Visconti A, Baker SE (2012) New insight in the ochratoxin A biosynthetic pathway by deletion of an nrps gene in *Aspergillus carbonarius*. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:8208–8218

Gautam P, Upadhyay SK, Hassan W, Madan T, Sirdeshmukh R, Sundaram CS, Gade WN, Basir SF, Singh Y, Sarma PU (2011) Transcriptomic and proteomic profile of *Aspergillus fumigatus* on exposure to artemisinin. Mycopathologia 172:331–346

Geiser DM, Samson RA, Varga J, Rokas A, Witiak SM (2008) A review of molecular phylogenetics in *Aspergillus*, and prospects for a robust genus-wide phylogeny. In: Varga J, Samson RA (eds) *Aspergillus* in the genomic era. Wageningen Academic, Wageningen, pp 17–32

Gelderblom WC, Jaskiewicz K, Marasas WF, Thiel PG, Horak RM, Vleggaar R, Kriek NP (1988) Fumonisins–novel mycotoxins with cancer-promoting activity produced by Fusarium moniliforme. Appl Environ Microbiol 54:1806–1811

Gibbons JG, Rokas A (2013) The function and evolution of the *Aspergillus* genome. Trends Microbiol 21:14–22

Gibbons JG, Salichos L, Slot JC, Rinker DC, McGary KL, King JG, Klich MA, Tabb DL, McDonald WH, Rokas A (2012) The evolutionary imprint of domestication on genome variation and function of the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus oryzae*. Curr Biol 22:1403–1409

Grigoriev IV, Cullen D, Goodwin SB, Hibbett D, Jeffries TW, Kubicek CP, Kuske C, Magnuson JK, Martin F, Spatafora JW, Tsang A, Baker SE (2011) Fueling the future with fungal genomics. Mycology 2:192–209

Grigoriev IV, Nordberg H, Shabalov I, Aerts A, Cantor M, Goodstein D, Kuo A, Minovitsky S, Nikitin R, Ohm RA, Otillar R, Poliakov A, Ratnere I, Riley R, Smirnova T, Rokhsar D, Dubchak I (2012) The genome portal of the Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute. Nucleic Acids Res 40:D26–D32

Gruben BS, Zhou M, de Vries RP (2012) GalX regulates the D-galactose oxido-reductive pathway in *Aspergillus niger*. FEBS Lett 586(22):3980–3985

Hagiwara D, Asano Y, Marui J, Furukawa K, Kanamaru K, Kato M, Abe K, Kobayashi T, Yamashino T, Mizuno T (2007a) The SskA and SrrA response regulators are implicated in oxidative stress responses of hyphae and asexual spores in the phosphorelay signaling network of *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71:1003–1014

Hagiwara D, Matsubayashi Y, Marui J, Furukawa K, Yamashino T, Kanamaru K, Kato M, Abe K, Kobayashi T, Mizuno T (2007b) Characterization of the NikA histidine kinase implicated in

the phosphorelay signal transduction of *Aspergillus nidulans*, with special reference to fungicide responses. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71:844–847
Hagiwara D, Mizuno T, Abe K (2009) Characterization of NikA histidine kinase and two response regulators with special reference to osmotic adaptation and asexual development in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 73:1566–1571
Han KH, Seo JA, Yu JH (2004) A putative G protein-coupled receptor negatively controls sexual development in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 51:1333–1345
Hatakeyama R, Nakahama T, Higuchi Y, Kitamoto K (2007) Light represses conidiation in koji mold *Aspergillus oryzae*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71:1844–1849
Hendrickson L, Davis CR, Roach C, Nguyen DK, Aldrich T, McAda PC, Reeves CD (1999) Lovastatin biosynthesis in *Aspergillus terreus*: characterization of blocked mutants, enzyme activities and a multifunctional polyketide synthase gene. Chem Biol 6:429–439
Henrissat B (1991) A classification of glycosyl hydrolases based on amino acid sequence similarities. Biochem J 280:309–316
Hicks JK, Yu JH, Keller NP, Adams TH (1997) *Aspergillus* sporulation and mycotoxin production both require inactivation of the FadA G alpha protein-dependent signaling pathway. EMBO J 16:4916–4923
Hill CS, Treisman R (1995) Transcriptional regulation by extracellular signals: mechanisms and specificity. Cell 80:199–211
Hilz H (2007) Characterisation of cell wall polysaccharides in bilberries and black currants. Ph.D. thesis, Wageningen University, The Netherlands
Hoch JA (2000) Two-component and phosphorelay signal transduction. Curr Opin Microbiol 3:165–170
Hohmann S (2002) Osmotic stress signaling and osmoadaptation in yeasts. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:300–372
Houbraken J, Samson RA (2011) Phylogeny of *Penicillium* and the segregation of Trichocomaceae into three families. Stud Mycol 70:1–51
Jorgensen TR, Park J, Arentshorst M, van Welzen AM, Lamers G, Vankuyk PA, Damveld RA, van den Hondel CA, Nielsen KF, Frisvad JC, Ram AF (2011) The molecular and genetic basis of conidial pigmentation in *Aspergillus niger*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:544–553
Jun SC, Lee SJ, Park HJ, Kang JY, Leem YE, Yang TH, Chang MH, Kim JM, Jang SH, Kim HG, Han DM, Chae KS, Jahng KY (2011) The MpkB MAP kinase plays a role in post-karyogamy processes as well as in hyphal anastomosis during sexual development in *Aspergillus nidulans*. J Microbiol 49:418–430
Jung K, Fried L, Behr S, Heermann R (2012) Histidine kinases and response regulators in networks. Curr Opin Microbiol 15:118–124
Kaji A, Saito R, Nomura M, Miyamoto K, Kiriyama N (1998) Relationship between the structure and cytotoxic activity of asterriquinone, an antitumor metabolite of *Aspergillus terreus*, and its alkyl ether derivatives. Biol Pharm Bull 21:945–949
Kennedy J, Auclair K, Kendrew SG, Park C, Vederas JC, Hutchinson CR (1999) Modulation of polyketide synthase activity by accessory proteins during lovastatin biosynthesis. Science 284:1368–1372
Khaldi N, Seifuddin FT, Turner G, Haft D, Nierman WC, Wolfe KH, Fedorova ND (2010) SMURF: genomic mapping of fungal secondary metabolite clusters. Fungal Genet Biol 47:736–741
Kim Y, Nandakumar MP, Marten MR (2008) The state of proteome profiling in the fungal genus *Aspergillus*. Brief Funct Genomic Proteomic 7:87–94
Kiyota T, Hamada R, Sakamoto K, Iwashita K, Yamada O, Mikami S (2011) Aflatoxin non-productivity of *Aspergillus oryzae* caused by loss of function in the aflJ gene product. J Biosci Bioeng 111:512–517
Klaassen CH, Osherov N (2007) *Aspergillus* strain typing in the genomics era. Stud Mycol 59:47–51

Kniemeyer O (2011) Proteomics of eukaryotic microorganisms: the medically and biotechnologically important fungal genus *Aspergillus*. Proteomics 11:3232–3243

Kobayashi T, Abe K, Asai K, Gomi K, Juvvadi PR, Kato M, Kitamoto K, Takeuchi M, Machida M (2007) Genomics of *Aspergillus oryzae*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 71:646–670

Krijgsheld P, Altelaar AFM, Post H, Ringrose JH, Müller WH, Heck AJR, Wösten HAB (2012) Spatially resolving the secretome within the mycelium of the cell factory *Aspergillus niger*. J Proteome Res 11:2807–2818

Kroken S, Glass NL, Taylor JW, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (2003) Phylogenomic analysis of type I polyketide synthase genes in pathogenic and saprobic ascomycetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:15670–15675

Lafon A, Han KH, Seo JA, Yu JH, d'Enfert C (2006) G-protein and cAMP-mediated signaling in aspergilli: a genomic perspective. Fungal Genet Biol 43:490–502

Lamarre C, Ibrahim-Granet O, Du C, Calderone R, Latge JP (2007) Characterization of the SKN7 ortholog of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:682–690

Latge JP (1999) *Aspergillus fumigatus* and aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Rev 12:310–350

Lavoine N, Desloges I, Dufresne A, Bras J (2012) Microfibrillated cellulose – its barrier properties and applications in cellulosic materials: a review. Carbohydr Polym 90:735–764

Lee YH, Tominaga M, Hayashi R, Sakamoto K, Yamada O, Akita O (2006) *Aspergillus oryzae* strains with a large deletion of the aflatoxin biosynthetic homologous gene cluster differentiated by chromosomal breakage. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 72:339–345

Lengeler KB, Davidson RC, D'Souza C, Harashima T, Shen WC, Wang P, Pan XW, Waugh M, Heitman J (2000) Signal transduction cascades regulating fungal development and virulence. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 64:746–785

Levin AM, de Vries RP, Wösten HAB (2007) Localization of protein secretion in fungal colonies using a novel culturing technique; the ring-plate system. J Microbiol Methods 69:399–401

Li D, Agrellos OA, Calderone R (2010) Histidine kinases keep fungi safe and vigorous. Curr Opin Microbiol 13:424–430

Liebmann B, Gattung S, Jahn B, Brakhage AA (2003) cAMP signaling in *Aspergillus fumigatus* is involved in the regulation of the virulence gene *pksP* and in defense against killing by macrophages. Mol Genet Genomics 269:420–435

Liebmann B, Muller M, Braun A, Brakhage AA (2004) The cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase a network regulates development and virulence in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Infect Immun 72:5193–5203

Lu X, Sun J, Nimtz M, Wissing J, Zeng AP, Rinas U (2010) The intra- and extracellular proteome of *Aspergillus niger* growing on defined medium with xylose or maltose as carbon substrate. Microb Cell Fact 9:23

Mabey Gilsenan JE, Atherton G, Bartholomew J, Giles PF, Attwood TK, Denning DW, Bowyer P (2009) *Aspergillus* genomes and the Aspergillus cloud. Nucleic Acids Res 37:D509–D514

Mabey Gilsenan J, Cooley J, Bowyer P (2012) CADRE: the Central Aspergillus Data REpository 2012. Nucleic Acids Res 40:D660–D666

Machida M, Asai K, Sano M, Tanaka T, Kumagai T, Terai G, Kusumoto K, Arima T, Akita O, Kashiwagi Y, Abe K, Gomi K, Horiuchi H, Kitamoto K, Kobayashi T, Takeuchi M, Denning DW, Galagan JE, Nierman WC, Yu J, Archer DB, Bennett JW, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Fedorova ND, Gotoh O, Horikawa H, Hosoyama A, Ichinomiya M, Igarashi R, Iwashita K, Juvvadi PR, Kato M, Kato Y, Kin T, Kokubun A, Maeda H, Maeyama N, Maruyama J, Nagasaki H, Nakajima T, Oda K, Okada K, Paulsen I, Sakamoto K, Sawano T, Takahashi M, Takase K, Terabayashi Y, Wortman JR, Yamada O, Yamagata Y, Anazawa H, Hata Y, Koide Y, Komori T, Koyama Y, Minetoki T, Suharnan S, Tanaka A, Isono K, Kuhara S, Ogasawara N, Kikuchi H (2005) Genome sequencing and analysis of *Aspergillus oryzae*. Nature 438:1157–1161

Machida M, Terabayashi Y, Sano M, Yamane N, Tamano K, Payne GA, Yu J, Cleveland TE, Nierman WC (2008) Genomics of industrial Aspergilli and comparison with toxigenic relatives. Food Addit Contam Part A Chem Anal Control Expo Risk Assess 25:1147–1151

Maeda H, Sano M, Maruyama Y, Tanno T, Akao T, Totsuka Y, Endo M, Sakurada R, Yamagata Y, Machida M, Akita O, Hasegawa F, Abe K, Gomi K, Nakajima T, Iguchi Y (2004) Transcriptional analysis of genes for energy catabolism and hydrolytic enzymes in the filamentous fungus *Aspergillus oryzae* using cDNA microarrays and expressed sequence tags. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 65:74–83

Matsushima K, Chang PK, Yu J, Abe K, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE (2001a) Pre-termination in aflR of *Aspergillus sojae* inhibits aflatoxin biosynthesis. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 55:585–589

Matsushima K, Yashiro K, Hanya Y, Abe K, Yabe K, Hamasaki T (2001b) Absence of aflatoxin biosynthesis in koji mold (*Aspergillus sojae*). Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 55:771–776

May GS (2008) Mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways in Aspergilli. In: Goldam GH, Osmani SA (eds) The Aspergilli genomics, medical aspects, biotechnology, and research methods. CRC, Boca Raton

May GS, Xue T, Kontoyiannis DP, Gustin MC (2005) Mitogen activated protein kinases of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Med Mycol 43(Suppl 1):S83–S86

McCormick A, Jacobsen ID, Broniszewska M, Beck J, Heesemann J, Ebel F (2012) The two-component sensor kinase TcsC and its role in stress resistance of the human-pathogenic mold *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS One 7:e38262

Micheli PA (1729) Nova Plantarum Genera. Typis B Paperinii, Florentiae, 234 pp

Mircus G, Hagag S, Levdansky E, Sharon H, Shadkchan Y, Shalit I, Osherov N (2009) Identification of novel cell wall destabilizing antifungal compounds using a conditional *Aspergillus nidulans* protein kinase C mutant. J Antimicrob Chemother 64:755–763

Mizutani O, Nojima A, Yamamoto M, Furukawa K, Fujioka T, Yamagata Y, Abe K, Nakajima T (2004) Disordered cell integrity signaling caused by disruption of the kexB gene in *Aspergillus oryzae*. Eukaryot Cell 3:1036–1048

Mok J, Zhu X, Snyder M (2011) Dissecting phosphorylation networks: lessons learned from yeast. Expert Rev Proteomics 8:775–786

Nesbitt BF, O'Kelly J, Sargeant K, Sheridan A (1962) *Aspergillus flavus* and turkey X disease. Toxic metabolites of Aspergillus flavus. Nature 195:1062–1063

Neves SR, Ram PT, Iyengar R (2002) G protein pathways. Science 296:1636–1639

Ni M, Rierson S, Seo JA, Yu JH (2005) The pkaB gene encoding the secondary protein kinase A catalytic subunit has a synthetic lethal interaction with pkaA and plays overlapping and opposite roles in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Eukaryot Cell 4:1465–1476

Nielsen KF, Mogensen JM, Johansen M, Larsen TO, Frisvad JC (2009) Review of secondary metabolites and mycotoxins from the *Aspergillus niger* group. Anal Bioanal Chem 395:1225–1242

Nierman WC, May G, Kim HS, Anderson MJ, Chen D, Denning DW (2005a) What the *Aspergillus* genomes have told us. Med Mycol 43(Suppl 1):S3–S5

Nierman WC, Pain A, Anderson MJ, Wortman JR, Kim HS, Arroyo J, Berriman M, Abe K, Archer DB, Bermejo C, Bennett J, Bowyer P, Chen D, Collins M, Coulsen R, Davies R, Dyer PS, Farman M, Fedorova N, Fedorova N, Feldblyum TV, Fischer R, Fosker N, Fraser A, Garcia JL, Garcia MJ, Goble A, Goldman GH, Gomi K, Griffith-Jones S, Gwilliam R, Haas B, Haas H, Harris D, Horiuchi H, Huang J, Humphray S, Jimenez J, Keller N, Khouri H, Kitamoto K, Kobayashi T, Konzack S, Kulkarni R, Kumagai T, Lafton A, Latge J-P, Li W, Lord A, Lu C, Majoros WH, May GS, Miller BL, Mohamoud Y, Molina M, Monod M, Mouyna I, Mulligan S, Murphy L, O'Neil S, Paulsen I, Penalva MA, Pertea M, Price C, Pritchard BL, Quail MA, Rabbinowitsch E, Rawlins N, Rajandream M-A, Reichard U, Renauld H, Robson GD, de Cordoba SR, Rodriguez-Pena JM, Ronning CM, Rutter S, Salzberg SL, Sanchez M, Sanchez-Ferrero JC, Saunders D, Seeger K, Squares R, Squares S, Takeuchi M, Tekaia F, Turner G, de Aldana CRV, Weidman J, White O, Woodward J, Yu J-H, Fraser C, Galagan JE, Asai K, Machida M, Hall N, Barrell B, Denning DW (2005b) Genomic sequence of the pathogenic and allergenic filamentous fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nature 438:1151–1156

O'Callaghan J, Dobson AD (2006) Molecular characterization of ochratoxin A biosynthesis and producing fungi. Adv Appl Microbiol 58:227–243

O'Gorman CM, Fuller HT, Dyer PS (2009) Discovery of a sexual cycle in the opportunistic fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nature 457:471–474

Oda K, Kakizono D, Yamada O, Iefuji H, Akita O, Iwashita K (2006) Proteomic analysis of extracellular proteins from *Aspergillus oryzae* grown under submerged and solid-state culture conditions. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:3448–3457

Pace V, Hoyos P, Castoldi L, Domínguez de María P, Alcántara AR (2012) 2-Methyltetrahydrofuran (2-MeTHF): a biomass-derived solvent with broad application in organic chemistry. ChemSusChem 5:1369–1379

Payne GA, Nierman WC, Wortman JR, Pritchard BL, Brown D, Dean RA, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Machida M, Yu J (2006) Whole genome comparison of *Aspergillus flavus* and *Aspergillus oryzae*. Med Mycol 44(S1):9–11

Pel HJ, de Winde JH, Archer DB, Dyer PS, Hofmann G, Schaap PJ, Turner G, de Vries RP, Albang R, Albermann K, Andersen MR, Bendtsen JD, Benen JA, van den Berg M, Breestraat S, Caddick MX, Contreras R, Cornell M, Coutinho PM, Danchin EG, Debets AJ, Dekker P, van Dijck PW, van Dijk A, Dijkhuizen L, Driessen AJ, D'Enfert C, Geysens S, Goosen C, Groot GS, de Groot PW, Guillemette T, Henrissat B, Herweijer M, van den Hombergh JP, van den Hondel CA, van der Heijden RT, van der Kaaij RM, Klis FM, Kools HJ, Kubicek CP, van Kuyk PA, Lauber J, Lu X, van der Maarel MJ, Meulenberg R, Menke H, Mortimer MA, Nielsen J, Oliver SG, Olsthoorn M, Pal K, van Peij NN, Ram AF, Rinas U, Roubos JA, Sagt CM, Schmoll M, Sun J, Ussery D, Varga J, Vervecken W, van de Vondervoort PJ, Wedler H, Wosten HA, Zeng AP, van Ooyen AJ, Visser J, Stam H (2007) Genome sequencing and analysis of the versatile cell factory *Aspergillus niger* CBS 513.88. Nat Biotechnol 25:221–231

Peng F, Peng P, Xu F, Sun R-C (2012) Fractional purification and bioconversion of hemicelluloses. Biotechnol Adv 30:879–903

Perrone G, Susca A, Cozzi G, Ehrlich K, Varga J, Frisvad JC, Meijer M, Noonim P, Mahakarnchanakul W, Samson RA (2007) Biodiversity of *Aspergillus* species in some important agricultural products. Stud Mycol 59:53–66

Pitt JI (1987) *Penicillium viridicatum*, *Penicillium verrucosum,* and production of ochratoxin A. Appl Environ Microbiol 53:266–269

Pott GB, Miller TK, Bartlett JA, Palas JS, Selitrennikoff CP (2000) The isolation of FOS-1, a gene encoding a putative two-component histidine kinase from *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 31:55–67

Priefert H, Rabenhorst J, Steinbüchel A (2001) Biotechnological production of vanillin. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 56:296–314

Pringle A, Baker DM, Platt JL, Wares JP, Latge JP, Taylor JW (2005) Cryptic speciation in the cosmopolitan and clonal human pathogenic fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Evolution 59:1886–1899

Reyes G, Romans A, Nguyen CK, May GS (2006) Novel mitogen-activated protein kinase MpkC of Aspergillus fumigatus is required for utilization of polyalcohol sugars. Eukaryot Cell 5:1934–1940

Rittenour WR, Si H, Harris SD (2009) Hyphal morphogenesis in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Fungal Biol Rev 23:20–29

Robertson LS, Fink GR (1998) The three yeast A kinases have specific signaling functions in pseudohyphal growth. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 95:13783–13787

Rokas A, Payne G, Fedorova ND, Baker SE, Machida M, Yu J, Georgianna DR, Dean RA, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Wortman JR, Maiti R, Joardar V, Amedeo P, Denning DW, Nierman WC (2007) What can comparative genomics tell us about species concepts in the genus *Aspergillus*? Stud Mycol 59:11–17

Samson RA, Houbraken JAMP, Kuijpers AFA, Frank JM, Frisvad JC (2004) New ochratoxin A or sclerotium producing species in *Aspergillus* section *Nigri*. Stud Mycol 50:45–61

Sanchez JF, Somoza AD, Keller NP, Wang CC (2012) Advances in *Aspergillus* secondary metabolite research in the post-genomic era. Nat Prod Rep 29:351–371

Santos JL, Shiozaki K (2001) Fungal histidine kinases. Sci STKE 2001:re1

Santos JL, Shiozaki K (2004) Phosphorelay signaling in yeast in response to changes in osmolarity. Sci STKE 2004:tr12

Sato A, Oshima K, Noguchi H, Ogawa M, Takahashi T, Oguma T, Koyama Y, Itoh T, Hattori M, Hanya Y (2011) Draft genome sequencing and comparative analysis of *Aspergillus sojae* NBRC4239. DNA Res 18:165–176

Saudohar M, Bencina M, van de Vondervoort PJ, Panneman H, Legisa M, Visser J, Ruijter GJ (2002) Cyclic AMP-dependent protein kinase is involved in morphogenesis of *Aspergillus niger*. Microbiology 148:2635–2645

Saykhedkar S, Ray A, Ayoubi-Canaan P, Hartson S, Prade R, Mort A (2012) A time course analysis of the extracellular proteome of *Aspergillus nidulans* growing on sorghum stover. Biotechnol Biofuels 5:52

Scherlach K, Hertweck C (2006) Discovery of aspoquinolones A-D, prenylated quinoline-2-one alkaloids from *Aspergillus nidulans*, motivated by genome mining. Org Biomol Chem 4:3517–3520

Seo JA, Han KH, Yu JH (2004) The *gprA* and *gprB* genes encode putative G protein-coupled receptors required for self-fertilization in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 53:1611–1623

Sharma M, Soni R, Nazir A, Oberoi H, Chadha B (2011) Evaluation of glycosyl hydrolases in the secretome of *Aspergillus fumigatus* and saccharification of alkali-treated rice straw. Appl Biochem Biotechnol 163:577–591

Shimizu K, Keller NP (2001) Genetic involvement of a cAMP-dependent protein kinase in a G protein signaling pathway regulating morphological and chemical transitions in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Genetics 157:591–600

Singh S, Gupta S, Singh B, Sharma SK, Gupta VK, Sharma GL (2012) Proteomic characterization of *Aspergillus fumigatus* treated with an antifungal coumarin for identification of novel target molecules of key pathways. J Proteome Res 11:3259–3268

St Leger RJ, Screen SE, Shams-Pirzadeh B (2000) Lack of host specialization in *Aspergillus flavus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:320–324

Takahashi T, Chang PK, Matsushima K, Yu J, Abe K, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Koyama Y (2002) Nonfunctionality of *Aspergillus sojae aflR* in a strain of *Aspergillus parasiticus* with a disrupted *aflR* gene. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3737–3743

Taylor SS, Buechler JA, Yonemoto W (1990) cAMP-dependent protein kinase: framework for a diverse family of regulatory enzymes. Annu Rev Biochem 59:971–1005

Taylor SS, Yang J, Wu J, Haste NM, Radzio-Andzelm E, Anand G (2004) PKA: a portrait of protein kinase dynamics. Biochim Biophys Acta 1697:259–269

Tobert JA (2003) Lovastatin and beyond: the history of the HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors. Nat Rev Drug Discov 2:517–526

Tominaga M, Lee YH, Hayashi R, Suzuki Y, Yamada O, Sakamoto K, Gotoh K, Akita O (2006) Molecular analysis of an inactive aflatoxin biosynthesis gene cluster in *Aspergillus oryzae* RIB strains. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:484–490

Treisman R (1996) Regulation of transcription by MAP kinase cascades. Curr Opin Cell Biol 8:205–215

Tsang A, Butler G, Powlowski J, Panisko EA, Baker SE (2009) Analytical and computational approaches to define the *Aspergillus niger* secretome. Fungal Genet Biol 46:S153–S160

Valiante V, Heinekamp T, Jain R, Hartl A, Brakhage AA (2008) The mitogen-activated protein kinase MpkA of *Aspergillus fumigatus* regulates cell wall signaling and oxidative stress response. Fungal Genet Biol 45:618–627

Valiante V, Jain R, Heinekamp T, Brakhage AA (2009) The MpkA MAP kinase module regulates cell wall integrity signaling and pyomelanin formation in *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Fungal Genet Biol 46:909–918

van den Berg MA, Albang R, Albermann K, Badger JH, Daran JM, Driessen AJ, Garcia-Estrada C, Fedorova ND, Harris DM, Heijne WHM, Joardar V, Kiel JAK, Kovalchuk A, Martin JF, Nierman WC, Nijland JG, Pronk JT, Roubos JA, van der Klei IJ, van Peij NN, Veenhuis M, von Dohren H, Wagner C, Wortman J, Bovenberg RAL (2008) Genome sequencing and analysis of the filamentous fungus *Penicillium chrysogenum*. Nat Biotechnol 26:1161–1168

van den Brink J, de Vries RP (2011) Fungal enzyme sets for plant polysaccharide degradation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 91:1477–1492

van der Merwe KJ, Steyn PS, Fourie L, Scott DB, Theron JJ (1965) Ochratoxin A, a toxic metabolite produced by *Aspergillus ochraceus* Wilh. Nature 205:1112–1113

Van der Zijden ASM, Koelensmid WAA, Boldingh J (1962) *Aspergillus flavus* and Turkey X disease: isolation in crystalline form of a toxin responsible for Turkey X disease. Nature 195:1060–1062

van Walbeek W, Scott PM, Harwig J, Lawrence JW (1969) *Penicillium viridicatum* Westling: a new source of ochratoxin A. Can J Microbiol 15:1281–1285

Varga J, Kevei F, Hamari Z, Tóth B, Téren J, Croft JH, Kozakiewicz Z (2000) Genotypic and phenotypic variability among black Aspergilli. In: Samson RA, Pitt JI (eds) Integration of modern taxonomic methods for *Penicillium* and *Aspergillus* classification. Harwood Academic, Amsterdam, pp 397–411

Varga J, Rigo K, Kocsube S, Farkas B, Pal K (2003) Diversity of polyketide synthase gene sequences in *Aspergillus* species. Res Microbiol 154:593–600

Varga J, Juhász A, Kevei F, Kozakiewicz Z (2004) Molecular diversity of agriculturally important *Aspergillus* species. Eur J Plant Pathol 110:627–640

Vargas-Perez I, Sanchez O, Kawasaki L, Georgellis D, Aguirre J (2007) Response regulators SrrA and SskA are central components of a phosphorelay system involved in stress signal transduction and asexual sporulation in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Eukaryot Cell 6:1570–1583

Virginia M, Appleyard CL, McPheat WL, Stark MJ (2000) A novel 'two-component' protein containing histidine kinase and response regulator domains required for sporulation in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Curr Genet 37:364–372

Wang H, Xu Z, Gao L, Hao B (2009) A fungal phylogeny based on 82 complete genomes using the composition vector method. BMC Evol Biol 9:195

Watanabe CM, Wilson D, Linz JE, Townsend CA (1996) Demonstration of the catalytic roles and evidence for the physical association of type I fatty acid synthases and a polyketide synthase in the biosynthesis of aflatoxin B1. Chem Biol 3:463–469

Watson AJ, Fuller LJ, Jeenes DJ, Archer DB (1999) Homologs of aflatoxin biosynthesis genes and sequence of aflR in *Aspergillus oryzae* and *Aspergillus sojae*. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:307–310

Wei H, Requena N, Fischer R (2003) The MAPKK kinase SteC regulates conidiophore morphology and is essential for heterokaryon formation and sexual development in the homothallic fungus *Aspergillus nidulans*. Mol Microbiol 47:1577–1588

West AH, Stock AM (2001) Histidine kinases and response regulator proteins in two-component signaling systems. Trends Biochem Sci 26:369–376

Wieser J, Yu JH, Adams TH (1997) Dominant mutations affecting both sporulation and sterigmatocystin biosynthesis in *Aspergillus nidulans*. Curr Genet 32:218–224

Woo PC, Lau SK, Liu B, Cai JJ, Chong KT, Tse H, Kao RY, Chan CM, Chow WN, Yuen KY (2011) Draft genome sequence of *Penicillium marneffei* strain PM1. Eukaryot Cell 10:1740–1741

Wright JC, Sugden D, Francis-McIntyre S, Riba-Garcia I, Gaskell SJ, Grigoriev IV, Baker SE, Beynon RJ, Hubbard SJ (2009) Exploiting proteomic data for genome annotation and gene model validation in *Aspergillus niger*. BMC Genomics 10:61

Yu JH (2006) Heterotrimeric G protein signaling and RGSs in *Aspergillus nidulans*. J Microbiol 44:145–154

Yu JH, d'Enfert C (2008) Signal transduction in Aspergilli. In: Goldman GH, Osmani SA (eds) The Aspergilli genomics, medical aspects, biotechnology, and research methods. CRC, Boca Raton

Yu J, Chang PK, Cary JW, Wright M, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Payne GA, Linz JE (1995) Comparative mapping of aflatoxin pathway gene clusters in *Aspergillus parasiticus* and *Aspergillus flavus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:2365–2371

Yu JH, Wieser J, Adams TH (1996) The *Aspergillus* FlbA RGS domain protein antagonizes G protein signaling to block proliferation and allow development. EMBO J 15:5184–5190

Yu JH, Rosen S, Adams TH (1999) Extragenic suppressors of loss-of-function mutations in the aspergillus FlbA regulator of G-protein signaling domain protein. Genetics 151:97–105

Yu J, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE (2004a) Completed sequence of aflatoxin pathway gene cluster in *Aspergillus parasiticus*. FEBS Lett 564:126–130

Yu J, Chang PK, Ehrlich KC, Cary JW, Bhatnagar D, Cleveland TE, Payne GA, Linz JE, Woloshuk CP, Bennett JW (2004b) Clustered pathway genes in aflatoxin biosynthesis. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:1253–1262

Yu JH, Mah JH, Seo JA (2006) Growth and developmental control in the model and pathogenic aspergilli. Eukaryot Cell 5:1577–1584

Zhao W, Panepinto JC, Fortwendel JR, Fox L, Oliver BG, Askew DS, Rhodes JC (2006) Deletion of the regulatory subunit of protein kinase A in *Aspergillus fumigatus* alters morphology, sensitivity to oxidative damage, and virulence. Infect Immun 74:4865–4874

Zhao X, Mehrabi R, Xu JR (2007) Mitogen-activated protein kinase pathways and fungal pathogenesis. Eukaryot Cell 6:1701–1714

Zhao G, Hou L, Yao Y, Wang C, Cao X (2012) Comparative proteome analysis of *Aspergillus oryzae* 3.042 and A. oryzae 100–8 strains: towards the production of different soy sauce flavors. J Proteomics 75:3914–3924

Chapter 6
Trichoderma: Genomic Aspects of Mycoparasitism and Biomass Degradation

Christian P. Kubicek and Irina S. Druzhinina

6.1 Introduction

Species of *Trichoderma* (teleomorph *Hypocrea*,[1] Hypocreales, Ascomycota, Dikarya) have been isolated from an innumerable diversity of natural and artificial substrates, thus demonstrating their high opportunistic potential and adaptability to various ecological conditions (Druzhinina et al. 2011). *Trichoderma* has a broad impact on mankind: one of its species—*T*. reesei—has become the major industrial producer of enzymes for conversion of plant biomass into soluble sugars for biofuel and biorefinery production (Kumar et al. 2008; Kubicek et al. 2009). In addition, the intrinsic ability of *Trichoderma* to parasitize or even prey on other fungi has been widely used for the biological control of pests (mainly against fungi, but also against nematodes), particularly with strains of *T*. cf. *harzianum*, *T*. *atroviride*, *T*. *virens*, and *T*. *asperellum* (Benitez et al. 2004; Harman et al. 2004; Druzhinina

[1] In this review we accommodate the changes proposed at the International Botanical Congress in July 2011 for the International Code of Botanical Nomenclature and the ongoing discussion on the future single taxon name for *Hypocrea/Trichoderma* that may be followed at the website of the IUMS International Subcommission on *Trichoderma* taxonomy at http://www.isth.info/content.php?page_id=102. Therefore we use the single generic name *Trichoderma* not only for asexual species but also for holomorphs when the sexual stage is described. However at first mention of holomorphic species both teleomorph (*Hypocrea*) and anamorph (*Trichoderma*) names are given. When the whole genus of *Trichoderma* and *Hypocrea* spp. is considered, the term *Trichoderma* is applied.

C.P. Kubicek (✉) • I.S. Druzhinina
Research Area Biotechnology and Microbiology, Institute of Chemical Engineering, Vienna University of Technology, Gumpendorferstrasse 1a, 1060 Vienna, Austria

Austrian Center of Industrial Biotechnology ACIB GmBH c/o Institute of Chemical Engineering, Vienna University of Technology, Gumpendorferstrasse 1a, 1060 Vienna, Austria
e-mail: ckubicek@mail.zserv.tuwien.ac.at

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*,
Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_6,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

et al. 2011). More recently, this ability was expanded by the findings that some *Trichoderma* spp. can trigger and enhance the self-defense of plants towards pathogens as well (Aly et al. 2011; Shoresh et al. 2010).

Yet some species of the genus *Trichoderma* also have negative impacts on mankind. In a clinical context, some species (mainly *T. longibrachiatum* and *Hypocrea orientalis*) have been shown to occur as opportunistic pathogens of immunocompromised humans (Kredics et al. 2011). In addition, two species (*T. brevicompactum* and *T. arundinaceum*) were proven to be the only trichothecene producer within *Trichoderma* (Nielsen et al. 2005). Plant pathogenic strains of *Trichoderma* have not been reported, but a small number of species (*T. aggressivum*, *T. pleuroticola*, *T. pleurotum*, and *T. mienum*) have been found as mycoparasites in the commercial mushrooms *Agaricus* and *Pleurotus*, respectively (Seaby 1998; Samuels et al. 2002; Komoń-Zelazowska et al. 2007; Kim et al. 2012).

All these properties make *Trichoderma* an interesting object for comparative genomics, which may lead to the identification of genes and pathways responsible for this panoply of interactions with the environment. Before discussing the results that have been obtained so far, we shall briefly describe the biology of these fungi.

6.2 Biology of *Trichoderma*

6.2.1 Taxonomy and Phylogeny of Trichoderma

The genus *Trichoderma* was established by Persoon (1794) based on four species collected in Germany (see Samuels 2006). Of these taxa only one species, *T. viride*, remained in *Trichoderma*. Bisby (1939) postulated that *Trichoderma* consists only of a single species, and this concept remained valid until the end of the 1960s. Therefore, all *Trichoderma* strains that were isolated in this time were named *T. viride*—a fact that led to a confusion about species producing enzymes, mycotoxins, and acting as mycoparasites in the literature and even in textbooks. In 1969, Rifai (1969) fundamentally revised the species concept of *Trichoderma* by recognizing nine aggregate species and postulated that each of these aggregates may actually turn out to be several species once appropriate methods for distinction would become available. His work was expanded and revised by Bissett (1984, 1991a, b, c, 1992), who grouped Rifai's aggregate species into the five sections, each of which consisted of several species.

In the late nineties, PCR and DNA sequence analysis were introduced and became widely accepted as a standard technique in fungal systematics. Application of these tools and the development of appropriate theoretical frameworks for the use of molecular analytical data in species recognition rapidly led to an increase in the number of species in *Trichoderma* (Druzhinina et al. 2006). Today, the application of the genealogic concordance phylogenetic species recognition concept

(Taylor et al. 2000) is the gold standard of molecular species identification also in *Trichoderma* and has led to a reappraisal of the phylogeny of all the sections proposed by Bissett. Although some sections were proven to be monophyletic, most other sections showed paraphyly. Consequently, molecular taxonomists prefer to talk of *Trichoderma* "clades" in the sense of strains that emerge from statistically supported hypothetical taxonomic units (nodes) or lone lineages. As of the time of this writing, *Trichoderma* consists of at least 200 species that are contained in 16 phylogenetic clades and several lone lineages [for a detailed review, see Atanasova et al. (2013a)].

6.2.2 *Developmental Biology of* Trichoderma

Trichoderma spp. have a heterothallic mode of sexual reproduction. Consequently, mating is only possible between individuals that contain different mating types genes, *mat1-1* and *mat1-2*, which reside in the same chromosomal location but lack sequence similarity. This "bipolar heterothallism" has recently been genetically characterized in *T. reesei* (Seidl et al. 2008), but its occurrence is also evident in *T. virens* and *T. atroviride* from the findings of only one of the two mating types in the genomes of the respective strains.

Saprotrophic growth of *Trichoderma* is usually accompanied by the production of asexual spores. Sporulation depends primarily on the type and availability of the carbon source (Friedl et al. 2008) and can be modulated by other environmental parameters such as illumination, nutrient deprivation, low pH, and mechanical injury (Steyaert et al. 2010; Schmoll et al. 2010; Carreras-Villasenor et al. 2012). Interestingly, sporulation in *Trichoderma* can also be induced by volatile organic compounds (mainly medium chain alcohols) from neighboring colonies of the same species (Nemcovic et al. 2008) or by water soluble metabolites (Friedl and Druzhinina, 2012), suggesting the existence of a sort of *quorum sensing* mechanism.

Results from field observations in Central Europe suggest that the *Trichoderma* anamorphs usually develop before the teleomorph, but sometimes conidiophores are also found on overmature stromata, illustrating the broader range of optimal environmental conditions for anamorph compared to teleomorph (Jaklitsch 2009, 2011).

Molecular strain taxonomy has led to the identification of many teleomorph-anamorph relationships in *Trichoderma*, but true clonality has so far been confirmed for several species using *in silico* population analytic methods (e.g., *T. longibrachiatum*, *T. parareesei*, *T. harzianum* sensu stricto (Druzhinina et al. 2008; Druzhinina et al. 2010a, b; Atanasova et al. 2010) and proposed for *T. asperellum* and *T. asperelloides*; Samuels et al. 2010). Interestingly, all confirmed clonal species of *Trichoderma* appear to be cosmopolitan (at least for a certain climatic range such as the tropics or temperate climates), suggesting a link between intense asexual reproduction and environmental opportunism.

6.2.3 Trichoderma *and Its Habitats*

A rather limited group of *Trichoderma* species, all being successful opportunists, can be found in a wide range of habitats. They have consequently been isolated from water, soil, decaying wood, walls, and even nonnatural materials such as rubber foam or kerosene tanks (Klein and Eveleigh 1998). As explained recently (Kubicek et al. 2011; Druzhinina et al. 2011), the innate nature of almost all *Trichoderma* spp. is mycoparasitism or mycotrophy, i.e., the attack and eventual killing of other fungi and feeding on them. The molecular physiology of this process has been studied to some extent and can be divided into several stages: recognition of the presence of a potential prey ("sensing"), induction of the biochemical tools to besiege the prey, actual attack, and eventual killing and feeding on the prey. In particular, the signaling between *Trichoderma* and the host and the role of extracellular hydrolytic enzymes and secondary metabolites have been studied intensively, and the results obtained are the subject of several reviews (Viterbo et al. 2002; Seidl 2008; Vinale et al. 2008; Omann and Zeilinger 2010; Susi et al. 2011; Mukherjee et al. 2012a, b; Druzhinina et al. 2012).

The second habitat that is frequently associated with some *Trichoderma* species is the rhizosphere of plants. *Trichoderma* spp. have been known since decades to be "rhizosphere competent," i.e., to grow and develop within the soil volume influenced by root exudates. This takes place without causing disease but eventually antagonizing pathogenic microorganisms (Lewis and Papavizas 1984). However, metagenomic analyses showed that *Trichoderma* spp. are rather infrequent in soils (Bue et al. 2009; Lim et al. 2010). It is therefore difficult to decide whether rhizosphere is in fact a natural habitat of *Trichoderma*, or if the fungus follows its preys/hosts into the soil in general and to the rhizosphere in particular [for review and arguments, see Druzhinina et al. (2011)]. However, in any case some *Trichoderma* spp. can trigger an induced systemic resistance (ISR) in the plants. This induction starts with the recognition of microbe-associated molecular patterns by so-called pattern recognition receptors of the plant, which subsequently activates a primary defense response in the plant. *Trichoderma* molecules that have been shown to trigger ISR include secreted xylanases, cellulases, and the cellulose-binding protein swolenin [see Shoresh et al. (2010)], small cysteine-rich secreted proteins (Djonovic et al. 2006, 2007), peptaibols (Viterbo et al. 2007; Leitgeb et al. 2007), and an unknown PKS-NRPS product (Mukherjee et al. 2012b). In all these cases, knockout of the respective genes did not impair the ability of *Trichoderma* to colonize the roots, although the induction of ISR was abolished in most cases. Thus, *Trichoderma*, at first glance, does not seem to benefit from the plant's response. There is a debate as to whether the interaction between *Trichoderma* and plants is a form of symbiosis (Harman et al. 2004). Based on available data, this hypothesis cannot be proven (Druzhinina et al. 2011). However, some *Trichoderma* taxa (including several novel species) are reported to live inside the plants as endophytes and thereby contribute to the health of the plants by promoting plant growth, delaying onset of drought stress and inhibition of

pathogens (Bae et al. 2009; Bailey et al. 2006; Hanada et al. 2008, 2010; Jaklitsch et al. 2006; Samuels et al. 2006; Tejesvi et al. 2006). Druzhinina et al. (2011) proposed that mycotrophs may have become endophytes by entering the plant roots via parasitism on mycorrhizal fungi as described by (de Jaeger et al. 2010).

The opportunistic nature of *Trichoderma* spp. has also allowed some species to undergo various types of interactions with other organisms, including marine sponges, terrestrial invertebrates, and mammals [for review, see Druzhinina et al. (2011)]. Some *Trichoderma* spp. can successfully antagonize and kill plant parasitic nematodes, offering a new not-yet-fully explored possibility to combat these agricultural pests (Casas-Flores and Herrera-Estrella 2007). *Trichoderma* recently also joined the emerging list of such opportunistic pathogenic fungi that cause invasive mycoses of mammals, including humans, under conditions of an impaired immune system (Kredics et al. 2011). So far mainly two species—*T. longibrachiatum* and *H*. orientalis—have been proven to infect immunocompromised patients. The mechanisms of these interactions have not been studied yet, but the enhanced arsenal of proteases (as described above) may play an important role in this trait [for review, see Druzhinina et al. (2011)].

6.3 Genomic Attributes of *Trichoderma*

6.3.1 General Genomic Features

The wild-type progenitor of the industrial cellulase producer strains of *T. reesei*, *T. reesei* QM 6a, was the first *Trichoderma* species whose genome was sequenced (Martinez et al. 2008). The rationale for this was that all *T. reesei* strains currently used in industry or by academics are mutants of this single wild-type isolate. Consequently, the genomes of several of these enhanced producers (QM 9123, QM 9414, NG14, RUT C30) were subsequently also sequenced. The sequence was compared to QM 6a in order to trace the genomic alterations that accompanied selection for increased cellulase production (Le Crom et al. 2009; Vitikainen et al. 2010; see Sect. 6.5, below). Three years later, the genomes of two *Trichoderma* spp. that are vigorous mycoparasites—*T. virens* Gv29-8 and *T. atroviride* IMI 206040—were also published (Kubicek et al. 2011). Today, the genomes of two more strong mycoparasites, *T. harzianum* sensu stricto (CBS 226.95) and *T. asperellum* (CBS 433.97), and the two facultative human pathogens, *T. longibrachiatum* (ATCC 18648) and *T. citrinoviride*, have also been sequenced and are publically available at JGI (http://www.genome.jgi-psf.org/), and more (e.g., *T. parareesei*, *T.* cf. *harzianum*, and *T. koningii*) were sequenced in proprietary projects in Europe and China. However, at the time of this writing, all of them are still in the process of analysis, and the preliminary data obtained so far will not be used in this review. This review will therefore concentrate on data from *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens* only.

Table 6.1 Chromosomes of *T. reesei* and genes mapped on them[a]

Chromosome	Size (mbp)	Mapped genes	Scaffolds	Size (mbp)
1	3.6	*pyr4*, *egl2*, *xyn1*	1	2.75
		cbh2	3	1.91
		benA	16	0.82
		xyn2	27	0.43
		cbh1	29	0.38
2	3.2	*pyr2*	2	2.00
3	4.2			
4	4.2			
5	5.1	*pma1*[a]	11	1.15
6	6	*tub1*	37	<0.2
7	6.2	*egl1*	10	1.15
		bgl1	6	1.45

[a]Data taken form Carter et al. (1992)

The genome sizes of *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens* are 34.1, 36.1, and 38.8 Mbp, respectively, and harbor 9143, 11865, and 12518 gene models, in the range of average numbers for Pezizomycotina fungi (see DOE JGI program MycoCosm http://www.genome.jgi.doe.gov/programs/fungi/index.jsf). All strains examined appear to have seven chromosomes. The sizes of the chromosomal bands in strain *T. reesei* QM 6a are approximately 6.2, 6.0, 5.1, 2 × 4.2 (doublet), 3.6, and 3.2 Mb (Carter et al. 1992; Mäntylä et al. 1992). Their cumulative size (32.5 Mbp) correlates with the 34.1 Mbps determined from genome sequencing. Herrera-Estrella et al. (1993) reported the presence of six chromosomes in *T. reesei* QM 6a and *T.* "*harzianum*" (which was later reidentified to actually be *T. atroviride*) IMI 206040, but this smaller number is likely the result of overlooking the doublet chromosomal band. No chromosome numbers are yet available for *T. virens*. Despite this information, genome mapping has not been performed yet because the ability to cross *Trichoderma* spp. was not available until recently (Seidl et al. 2008). The genome sequence of *T. reesei* is therefore still distributed among 71 scaffolds, of which the longest (scaffold 1) is 2.75 Mb and the shortest 8,513 bps. A number of genes have been mapped to the chromosomes (Table 6.1), but they do not yet allow the drawing of a draft map. In fact, the data suggest that the gene order on some of the scaffolds does not resemble that on the chromosome, because the sum of all scaffolds that contain genes that (Carter et al. 1992) mapped in chromosome 1 would far exceed the size of this chromosome (Table 6.1). Only a few genes have been mapped on the *T. atroviride* chromosomes (Herrera-Estrella et al. 1993).

The comparably smaller gene repertoire in *T. reesei* is likely due to the operation of the repeat-induced point mutation (RIP) effect (Selker 1990), because among these three species, *T. reesei* is the only one that is known almost exclusively from sexually propagating cultures (Kubicek et al. 2011). A similar small genome size was also detected for *T. citrinoviride* (unpublished data), which in temperate climates is also predominantly found in the form of its teleomorph *Hypocrea*

schweinitzii (Jaklitsch 2009), whereas the newly sequenced asexual species *T. longibrachiatum*, *T. harzianum* sensu stricto, and *T. asperellum* display genome sizes in the range of those found in *T. atroviride* and *T. virens* (data not given).

6.3.2 Gene Expansion in Mycoparasitic Trichoderma *spp.*

Sequence similarities between orthologous and syntenic proteins in *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens* were 74 %, which resembles the evolutionary distance between Osteichthyes (bony fish) and Hominidae (Fedorova et al. 2008). The vast majority of the genes occur in all three *Trichoderma* species, but *T. atroviride* and *T. virens* share 1,273 orthologues that are not present in *T. reesei* and in addition contain 2,510 and 2,756 orphan genes, respectively. This is also reflected in the shared protein clusters (Fig. 6.1), which reveal 3,733 shared PFAM clusters (http://www.pfam.sanger.ac.uk), and only 124 and 116 unique for *T. atroviride* and *T. virens*, respectively, whereas *T. reesei* contains 775 unique clusters. The genes that were present in only *T. atroviride* and *T. virens* were enriched in PFAM protein domains for fungal specific Zn(2)Cys(6) transcription factors (PF00172, PF04082), solute transporters (PF07690, PF00083), and putative secondary metabolite synthesizing and modifying enzymes (oxidoreductases, monooxygenases, AMP activation of acids, phosphopantetheine attachment, and synthesis of isoquinoline alkaloids) (Kubicek et al. 2011).

Markov cluster algorithm (MCL) analysis of the three *Trichoderma* species, together with 44 related genomes that were available at November 4, 2012, in the JGI database (DOE JGI program MycoCosm http://www.genome.jgi.doe.gov/programs/fungi/index.jsf), shows that *T. virens* and *T. atroviride* have a unique genome inventory among all Pezizomycotina: they harbor the highest number of genes that encode proteins with ankyrin and HET/ankyrin/NACHT domains among all other fungi (Fig. 6.2). Ankyrin repeats play important roles in microbial pathogenesis in bacteria and have been suggested to also exert an important biological role in endosymbiosis of *Wolbachia* (Walker et al. 2007). Proteins containing the ankyrin domain have not been studied systematically in Pezizomycotina so far. A preliminary phylogenetic analysis of randomly chosen *Trichoderma* ankyrin proteins and 99 homologous fungal sequences encoding proteins with ankyrin domain revealed that the *Trichoderma* genes formed their own clades, suggesting that the ankyrin-domain proteins may evolve by extensive gene duplication. Since also the genomes of *T. harzianum* and *T. asperellum* harbor expanded sets of ankyrin-domain proteins (unpublished data), it is possible that these genes contribute to the unique opportunistic success of *Trichoderma*.

Genes encoding proteins with HET (heterokaryon incompatibility)/NACHT domains are part of the genetic systems that lead to recognition of and response to nonself during cell fusion between different individuals belonging to the same species. Fedorova et al. (2005) have proposed that the HET domain may represent a

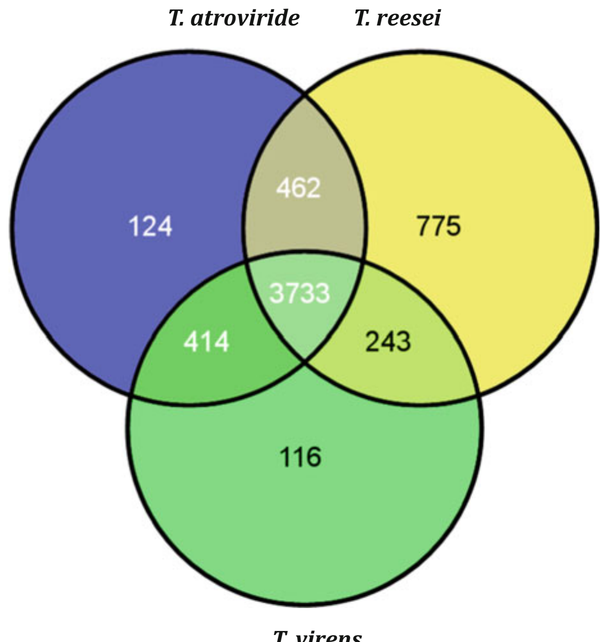


Fig. 6.1 Distribution of shared and unique orthologous Pfam families between *T*. *reesei*, *T*. *virens*, and *T*. *atroviride*. Ortho-MCL (http://www.orthomcl.cbil.upenn.edu) was used for identification of clusters in the three species

niche adaptation strategy of filamentous fungi to react to stimuli associated with defense against pathogens, self/nonself recognition, differentiation, or analogous roles. Paoletti and Saupe (2009) proposed that the *het* genes might also have a function in the recognition and response to pathogens. It will be interesting to investigate whether some of the HET proteins are involved in the reaction mechanisms during mycoparasitism in *Trichoderma*.

6.4 Specific Genomic Features

6.4.1 The Secretome of Trichoderma

Unlike most of higher organisms, fungi digest their food outside of their cells and to this end secrete enzymes and proteins for breaking down macromolecular nutrients and for the interaction with components of the environment that cannot penetrate through the cell wall. The inventory of secreted proteins may therefore be indicative of the habitat to which a given organism has become adapted. To this end, several studies used proteomic approaches to investigate *Trichoderma* spp. during saprotrophic growth, growth on lignocelluloses or chitin, and during interaction with other fungi and/or plants (Grinyer et al. 2005; Suarez et al. 2006; Marra et al. 2007). However, as we have previously discussed (Druzhinina et al. 2012),

function	**ankyrin_1**	**MFS_1**	**ADH_short**	**sugar transport**	**HET,** *PF05729, NACHT, PF00400, WD40*	**MFS_1**	**CFEM**	**cytochrome P450**	**MFS_1,** *PF00083, sugar transport*	**adh_short**	**HET**	**MFS_1**	**HET**	**aldehyde dehydrogenase**	**CO_esterase**	**ABC transporter,** *PF00664, ABC membrane domain*	**ADH_N-terminal,** *PF00107, ADH_zinc_N-terminal*	**TPR domain,** TPR_4,PF07720,TPR_3, PF06985, HET, PF07721	**sugar transport**	**RAS**	**PKS (see appendix)**	**NmrA** *isoflavon reductase (PF02716)*	**methyltransferase_12,** *PF08241, methyltransferase_11*
Tr	**32**	**34**	**40**	**39**	**15**	**31**	**29**	**25**	**17**	**19**	**11**	**25**	**13**	**20**	**13**	**13**	**15**	**2**	**11**	**21**	**9**	**10**	**18**
Tv	**118**	**57**	**54**	**51**	**51**	**47**	**46**	**44**	**36**	**34**	**33**	**31**	**30**	**30**	**28**	**25**	**24**	**24**	**23**	**22**	**22**	**22**	**21**
Ta	**99**	**52**	**52**	**46**	**41**	**53**	**32**	**28**	**39**	**29**	**29**	**30**	**34**	**24**	**20**	**13**	**25**	**16**	**18**	**21**	**14**	**24**	**18**
S. nod	17	75	48	64	0	41	76	54	28	13	30	25	50	19	21	9	10	4	16	20	16	8	13
S. popu.	1	33	49	32	0	31	22	31	9	5	1	9	3	15	12	5	9	0	6	20	6	2	9
F. oxy.	67	128	85	126	28	58	80	79	44	39	29	43	45	54	35	20	25	23	56	24	17	18	84
V. dal.	22	67	46	57	1	27	45	31	19	15	4	23	17	24	17	8	15	9	31	21	9	4	24
A. acu.	44	70	56	66	13	78	74	53	41	11	1	32	0	25	32	27	22	6	15	21	29	10	10
C. sat.	52	53	50	50	32	40	79	55	22	9	24	17	43	24	18	6	9	33	11	21	18	6	10
N. crassa	4	27	31	29	1	20	29	16	17	6	25	8	9	14	8	9	8	2	6	23	6	4	27
A. brass.	4	48	55	55	0	36	54	42	19	5	13	16	16	21	19	8	11	3	12	21	11	3	11
S. scler.	16	31	39	44	17	40	49	43	33	7	17	11	15	13	16	15	12	13	5	22	22	3	15
C. hetero.	45	53	57	51	16	44	77	60	24	14	19	20	36	27	17	7	12	20	13	21	21	7	9
M. grisea	18	55	42	44	1	23	86	52	32	13	13	13	18	17	17	12	7	4	14	22	29	7	16
Tuberm.	0	16	20	17	0	12	7	11	7	3	0	2	0	10	1	4	4	10	1	24	1	0	17
N. tetra.	6	26	27	30	2	21	23	16	17	6	23	8	8	13	8	9	8	3	6	20	6	4	28
C. zeae	11	59	73	51	1	44	42	45	21	8	6	16	21	26	14	6	14	0	9	21	8	6	15
N. haema.	42	161	100	121	18	56	94	79	51	42	129	42	99	66	34	17	32	12	65	24	12	28	90
L. macu.	3	43	36	50	2	30	48	27	15	4	10	15	14	17	18	5	7	1	6	22	14	4	8
A. nidulans	36	86	63	80	10	57	60	57	35	12	1	23	2	27	15	13	13	16	21	21	21	8	12
P. tritic	18	45	53	48	8	36	57	49	30	8	19	19	14	21	19	8	10	11	9	23	17	5	9
M. grami	11	57	65	45	3	43	23	40	17	9	2	18	21	20	16	14	11	2	13	22	10	5	12
B. cine.	28	39	50	58	9	51	54	59	50	16	32	27	27	14	36	17	14	10	6	21	26	5	14
C. globo.	33	28	32	36	15	26	47	30	29	7	10	16	17	12	15	11	7	20	7	18	25	4	21
A. carb.	24	63	72	71	6	88	84	63	37	20	6	36	12	33	29	23	20	7	13	22	21	12	13
C. heter.	53	55	57	51	22	44	82	62	27	14	23	20	38	27	18	7	12	22	13	22	20	7	10
A. niger	48	71	66	77	13	92	79	73	51	18	10	40	9	32	35	23	18	11	13	21	40	9	10
F. gram.	29	86	53	69	17	38	76	48	32	18	39	26	34	30	21	16	11	13	27	22	12	11	49
N. discreta	5	25	25	30	0	19	26	17	16	6	19	9	5	13	8	9	8	1	6	22	6	3	25
C. para.	33	48	44	58	2	51	92	54	55	23	39	19	47	19	29	15	13	5	13	25	29	9	16
PFAM	PF00023	PF07690	PF00106	PF00083	PF06985	PF07690	PF05730	PF00067	PF07690	PF00106	PF06985	PF07690	PF06985	PF00171	PF00135	PF00005	PF08240	PF00515	PF00083	PF00071	various	PF05368	PF08242

Fig. 6.2 Number of orthologous PFAM families in Pezizomycotina. Those that are significantly enriched in *Trichoderma* are given in *bold*

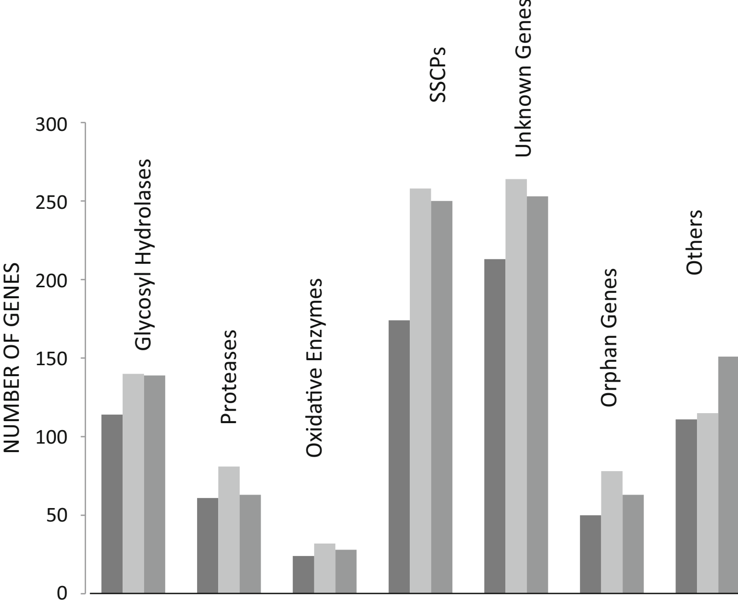


Fig. 6.3 Distribution of major gene families in the secretome from *T. reesei* (darkest bars), *T. atroviride* (lightest bars), and *T. virens*. Data are taken from Druzhinina et al. (2012)

these analyses provide only partial information. Here, we will concentrate only on the *in silico* identification of secreted proteins (Druzhinina et al. 2012): the version 2 annotations of the genomes of *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens* encode—after removal of membrane proteins—747, 968, and 947 proteins, respectively, that contain a statistically highly supported signal peptide and thus enter the secretory pathway. Roughly 85 % of them can be attributed to six groups (Fig. 6.3): carbohydrate-active enzymes (CAZys), proteases, small secreted cysteine-rich proteins (SSCPs), oxidative enzymes, hypothetical conserved proteins (i.e., proteins for which orthologues are found in other ascomycetes but whose amino acid sequence does not allow the prediction of a function), and orphan proteins (which are present only in *Trichoderma*). The high number of unknown proteins is striking, indicating that our knowledge on the proteins secreted by this fungus is very incomplete.

6.4.1.1 Small Secreted Cysteine-Rich Proteins (SSCPs)

As shown in Fig. 6.3, SSCPs comprise the largest group of proteins secreted by *Trichoderma*. They are identified by the criteria that (a) their M_r should be less than or equal to 300 amino acids long [as recommended by Martin et al. (2008)] and (b) containing four or more cysteine residues (Kubicek et al. 2011). Similarity searches and phylogenetic analyses allow their further subdivision into four groups:

(1) hydrophobins and hydrophobin-like proteins; (2) elicitor-like proteins; (3) proteins with similarity to MRSP1 (MAP kinase repressed secreted protein 1), a 16 kDa protein that was identified to be strongly overexpressed in a delta-tmk1 (a MAPK) mutant of *T. virens* and which bears the conserved four-cysteine pattern C-X29-C[P/G]C-X31-C; and (4) SSCPs for which no member with a known function has as yet been identified (Kubicek et al. 2011). Among them the hydrophobins, probably the best known SSCPs, are characterized by the presence of eight positionally conserved cysteine residues of which 4 occur in conserved C–C doublets. They are found on the outer surfaces of cell walls of hyphae and conidia, where they mediate interactions between the fungus and the environment, and are also secreted out of the cells to alter the hydrophobicity and/or hydrophily of solid structures in the habitat, for example at the attachment to plant roots (Viterbo et al. 2005) and to increase cutinase activities on hydrophobic polymeric substrates (Espino-Rammer et al. 2013). Hydrophobins differ in their solubility in solvents, hydropathy profiles, and spacing between the conserved cysteines, which led to the postulation of two classes, I and II. Among ascomycetes, *Trichoderma* is known to have the largest number of class II hydrophobins (Kubicek et al. 2008), and some of its subgroups were even shown to be under positive selection pressure (I.S. Druzhinina, unpublished data). In addition, *T. atroviride* and *T. virens*—but not *T. reesei*—have hydrophobins that not only fail to fit into the characteristics of class II but also deviate from the class I hydrophobins of other fungi in their hydropathy, cysteine spacing, and protein surface pattern. These predicted proteins thus form separate clades within ascomycete class I hydrophobins in phylogenetic analysis (Seidl et al. 2011). Because of the widespread applications of hydrophobins in biotechnology and biomedical technologies (Scholtmeijer et al. 2004), some of them (including HFB1 and HFB2 of *T. reesei*) are the subjects of structural and mechanistic investigations (Bayry et al. 2012).

A second SSCP group, for which interest has recently been emerging, is the elicitor-like proteins. They are frequently named "cerato-platanins" or "Snodprot" in the literature, due to their first description from *Ceratocystis fimbriata* and *Stagonospora nodorum* (Pazzagli et al. 2006). One of them, *T. virens* Sm1 and its *T. atroviride* orthologue EPL1, has been studied in some detail: EPL1 makes up for the major portion of proteins secreted by *T. atroviride* during growth on glucose (Seidl et al. 2008), and Sm1 induces systemic disease resistance in cotton and maize (Djonovic et al. 2006, 2007). It is therefore likely that the group 2 SSCPs are factors which aid in the interaction of *Trichoderma* with plants, as already shown for plant pathogenic fungi (Rep 2005). However, their exact role is difficult to predict because SSCPs are important for symbiotic interactions in the ectomycorrhizal basidiomycetes *Laccaria* (Plett et al. 2011). This high number of these SSCPs in *Trichoderma* and the functions already identified for these proteins in other fungi suggests that they could play a mutualistic role in *Trichoderma*, which may be in interaction with the plant, endophytism but also antagonization of fungi, bacteria, and higher soil organisms.

6.4.1.2 Polysaccharide Hydrolyzing Enzymes

Being non-plant pathogenic opportunistic saprotrophs and mycoparasites, *Trichoderma* spp. should be expected to possess a strong arsenal of extracellular enzymes capable of hydrolyzing both the polymers in their habitat (pre-decayed wood, soil litter) as well as for feeding on living or dead fungi. This expectation is nicely fulfilled in the case of the latter: the cell wall of asco- and basidiomycetes consists mainly of chitin and β-(1,3)-glucan (Latgé, 2007), and *Trichoderma*—and in particular *T. atroviride* and *T. virens*—consequently display a much higher number of glycoside hydrolase (GH) family 18 chitinolytic enzymes, GH75 chitosanases, and various β-1,3-glucanases families (GH17, GH55, GH64, and GH81) than other fungi. The properties of these hydrolases have been described in detail in several recent papers and reviews, and the reader is referred to them (Seidl 2008; Kubicek et al. 2011). Ihrmark et al. (2010) studied the evolutionary patterns of the chitinase genes *chi18-5*, *chi18-13*, *chi18-15*, and *chi18-17*, which all exhibit specific expression during mycoparasitism-related conditions, from 13 different *Trichoderma* spp. They found that two members (*chi18-15* and *chi18-17*) evolve under positive selection typical of rapid coevolutionary interactions, which underlines the importance of chitinases in mycotrophy and perhaps also in mycoparasitism.

The plant cell wall consists of the β-(1,4)-linked glucose polymer cellulose, hemicellulose polysaccharides of varying composition, and lignin. Like most ascomycetes, *Trichoderma* cannot degrade lignin. However, it secretes a powerful enzyme system for the degradation of cellulose and hemicelluloses which was the reason for developing *T. reesei* towards the industrial producer of these enzymes. It was therefore expected that *T. reesei* would also display a considerable amplification of the genes encoding the corresponding enzymes such as cellobiohydrolases and endo-β-1,4-glucanases. Somewhat disappointingly, however, the *T. reesei* genome contains only a minimal repertoire of these enzymes, two cellobiohydrolases (GH6 and GH7) and four endo-β-1,4-glucanases (GH5, GH7, GH12 and GH45) (Martinez et al. 2008), and these numbers are similar in *T. atroviride* and *T. virens* (Kubicek et al. 2011). This is in striking contrast to the cellulase repertoire of other saprophytic fungi-like *Aspergilli* and plant pathogenic fungi (Gibson et al. 2011). A very efficient system for induction of expression of these genes, rather than a large cellulase repertoire, can account for the high cellulolytic activity of *T. reesei*. A comparison with other fungi such as *Neurospora crassa* or *Aspergillus nidulans* reveals that in *T. reesei*, one single transcription factor (the Zn2Cys6-type transactivator XYR1) induces not only the expression of xylanase genes (as in *N. crassa* and *A. nidulans*) but also all cellulase genes and several more hemicellulase genes (Stricker et al. 2006; Akel et al. 2009; Bischof et al. 2013). The importance of this regulator is also reflected by the analysis of two cellulase hyperproducing mutants (RUT C30 and CL847), which were shown to display a deregulated and increased expression of *xyr1*. This coregulation of cellulases and hemicellulases may be further augmented by another feature that distinguishes the

genomes of *T. reesei* (and also *T. atroviride* and *T. virens*; unpublished data) from that of other Pezizomycotina: the occurrence of the cellulase and hemicellulase genes in clusters (Martinez et al. 2008). In *T. reesei*, 130 of the 316 (41 %) of the GH and other carbohydrate-active proteins (such as glycosyl transferases, carbohydrate esterases, and carbohydrate-binding proteins; further termed "CAZyme" genes) occur in 25 discrete regions ranging from 14 kb to 275 kb in length at an average density of fivefold greater than the expected density for randomly distributed genes. Most of these clusters occur near the end of the respective *T. reesei* scaffolds and within or near nonsyntenic genomic areas (Kubicek 2012). In particular, the genes encoding cellulose-binding proteins are exclusively found in the syntenic gaps (Martinez et al. 2008). This suggests that these CAZymes are either located near the chromosomal ends or in dynamic (repeat-rich) regions of the genome.

The degradation of lignocelluloses by cellulases and hemicellulases could be further augmented by oxidative enzymes: the *Trichoderma* secretome contains a number of oxidative enzymes, including glucose oxidases, multicopper oxidases (including laccases), and copper radical oxidases (glycolate oxidases), whose induction by cellulose is accompanied by a strong upregulation of genes encoding iron-uptake systems, ferric reductases, and oxalate decarboxylases (Bischof et al. 2013). Together, these proteins could perform an oxidative attack on the cellulose, thereby increasing the number of amorphous areas that serve as places for attack by cellulases. This could also balance the low number of polysaccharide monooxygenases (formerly called GH61 endo-β-1,4-glucanases), of which *Trichoderma* possesses only a comparatively low number.

Despite the small number of cellulases in *T. reesei*, all three *Trichoderma* spp. are enriched in some hemicellulolytic components, such as GH27 α-galactosidases, GH30 glucuronyl-xylanases, GH43 α-arabinofuranosidases/β-xylosidases, GH67 and GH79 α-methyl-glucuronidases, and GH95 α-fucosidases (Kubicek 2012). This suggests that *Trichoderma* has apparently specialized towards efficient hydrolysis of some hemicelluloses side chains. Interestingly, several of these enzymes are encoded by genes that share no homologues in other fungi but only in bacteria. These genes may thus have been obtained by horizontal gene transfer, further stressing that they are important for successful competition in the natural habitat of *Trichoderma*.

The reduced set of enzymes involved in the degradation of pectin (GH28 polygalacturonases and pectin/pectate lyases) is of further interest: a functional analysis of an endopolygalacturonase gene from *T. cf. harzianum* T34 showed that the enzyme is required for root colonization but does not induce plant defense reactions (Moran-Diez et al. 2009). The reduced activity of *Trichoderma* on pectin may thus minimize plant defense reactions and thereby facilitate the interaction of *Trichoderma* with plants.

6.4.1.3 Proteolytic Enzymes

Trichoderma also secretes about 20 % of its proteases into the medium (Druzhinina et al. 2012). Their composition is dominated by aspartyl proteases, methionyl peptidases, aminopeptidases S, subtilisin peptidases, dipeptidyl peptidases, sedolisins, and prolyl peptidases. Some of these genes are highly expressed during antagonism of *Rhizoctonia solani* by *T. atroviride* and *T. virens* (Seidl et al. 2009a, b; Atanasova et al. 2012), and knockout strains in some proteases showed a reduced antagonistic reaction (Benitez et al. 2004). There is also some evidence that proteases may be involved in the attack of nematodes, and it was speculated that they may aid in the interaction with human tissues (Kredics et al. 2004). Proteases are also an important issue in the enzyme producer *T. reesei*, where they can lead to massive degradation of the proteins secreted by the fungus. The regulation of protease production by *Trichoderma* has not yet been investigated but obviously presents a major gap in our understanding of this fungal genus.

6.4.2 Trichoderma *Genes for Secondary Metabolites*

Numerous secondary metabolites from various *Trichoderma* spp. have been reported [for review, see Shivasithamparam and Ghisalberti (1998)], but due to a high level of uncertainty about the true species nature of the producing organism (most strains were identified only according to superficial morphological characters), their production by *T. reesei*, *T.virens*, and *T. atroviride* cannot be deduced. Also the genes for synthesis of these metabolites have in most cases not been identified. Therefore, *in silico* identification of secondary metabolite genes from genome data can only be performed for gene families that comprise typical and unique features: this criterion is fulfilled with the nonribosomal peptide synthetases (NRPS) and the polyketide synthases. *T. reesei*, *T. virens*, and *T. atroviride* contain 11, 18, and 18 PKS gene, respectively. While the numbers for PKS are average within fungi, the NRPS genes of *Trichoderma*—particularly of *T. virens*—are among the highest of all fungi. We have recently shown that this is apparently due to recent duplications of cyclodipeptide synthases, cyclosporin/enniatin synthase-like proteins, and NRPS hybrid proteins (Kubicek et al. 2011).

6.4.2.1 Nonribosomal Peptide Synthases

The genomes of *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens* harbor 10, 16, and 28 NRPS-encoding genes, respectively (Kubicek et al. 2011). Half of the NRPS genes present in *T. atroviride* or *T. virens* are unique for the respective species and occur within nonsyntenic islands of the genome, indicating their origin by recent genome rearrangements, which is also reflected in a higher nucleotide dissimilarity (about

30 %) than the average of genes between *T. atroviride* and *T. virens*. A unique feature of *Trichoderma* and close relative fungal families (Hypocreaceae, Clavicipitaceae, and Bionectriaceae) is the presence of two NRPSs that synthesize modified peptides, termed peptaibols: these are small (500–2,000 Da) linear peptides containing a high number of non-proteinogenic, α,α'-dialkylated α-amino acids like isovaline and α-aminoisobutyric acid (Aib). In addition, their N-terminal amino acid is acetylated and the C-terminus is reduced to an amino alcohol, mostly phenylalaninol. These properties have given rise to the name peptaibol (*pept*ide, *Aib*, and amino alcoh*ol*). Peptaibols form a helical structure with the hydrophobic side chains exposed to the surface. This structure allows them to interact with natural and artificial bilayers to form pores or voltage-dependent ion channels, increasing membrane permeability (Rebuffat et al. 1999). The structure and properties of more than 700 peptaibols are collected in the Peptaibol Database (http://www.peptaibol.cryst.bbk.ac.uk/home.shtml), and details of their biochemistry and structure are reviewed by Duclohier (2007).

Of the two genes encoding peptaibol synthases in *Trichoderma*, one synthesizes the short (10–14 aa) and one the long (18–25 aa) peptaibols. Interestingly, the former synthase synthesizes two small peptaibols (11 and 14 kDa; Mukherjee et al. 2011; Degenkolb et al. 2012) which has been attributed to module skipping (Mukherjee et al. 2011; Degenkolb et al. 2012) and could be further kinetically regulated by the chemical structure of the intermediate peptides. By this mechanism, the two synthases give rise to the multitude of peptides produced by these enzymes depending on the available precursor concentrations. As an example, Stoppacher et al. (2008), using LC-MS, detected 20 trichorzianes and 15 trichoatrokontins (representing the high and smaller peptaibols, respectively) in culture filtrates of *T. atroviride*.

Two other NRPSs, for which genes are present in *T. virens* and *T. reesei*, but not in *T. atroviride*, synthesize the epipolythiodioxopiperazine-type peptides gliotoxin and gliovirin (Patron et al. 2007). The former is exclusively produced by so-called "Q-strains" of *T. virens*, whereas the latter is only produced by "P-strains" of *T. virens* (Mukherjee et al. 2012a, b). Gliotoxin has fungistatic action and is also known from the opportunistic human pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus* (Eurotiales, Ascomycota) where it has been discussed as a virulence factor (Dagenais and Keller, 2009). Its toxicity is due to the presence of a disulfide bridge in the molecule which can inactivate proteins via reaction with thiol groups and generate reactive oxygen species by redox cycling (Gardiner et al. 2005). Gliovirin has antimicrobial properties particularly against Oomycota (Mukherjee et al. 2012a).

The *T. virens* strain whose genome has been sequenced is a "Q-strain" (*T. virens* Gv29-8), and genomic data are therefore only available for gliotoxin biosynthesis. The synthase and the auxiliary biosynthetic enzymes are located in a cluster containing eight genes that are closely similar to those of *A. fumigatus* (Patron et al. 2007). Transcriptomic data during the confrontation of *T. virens* with *R. solani* have shown that gliotoxin formation is an early and major trait in the antagonism (Atanasova et al. 2012): almost all genes required for its biosynthesis were upregulated. These include genes involved in the production of the precursor of

gliotoxin, L-phenylalanine, synthesis of the glutathione required for the formation of the central disulfide bond, and *gliT*, encoding a thioredoxin reductase that has been shown to protect *A. fumigatus* against its own gliotoxin (Schrettl et al. 2010). These data nicely complement earlier findings of detection of gliotoxin in the rhizosphere (Lumsden et al. 1992), and it may thus be the major principle in the antagonistic interaction of *T. virens* "Q-strains" with their preys.

Two NRPS of *Trichoderma* encode siderophores. Lehner et al. (2013) reported that *Trichoderma* spp., despite having only two genes, produced 12–14 siderophores, with six common to all species tested. The highest number (15) of siderophores was detected for *Trichoderma harzianum*, whereas *T. reesei* had the most distinctive pattern, producing one unique siderophore (cis-fusarinine) and three others that were present only in *T. harzianum* and not in other species. These data suggest that the high diversity of siderophores produced by *Trichoderma* spp. is—like in the case of the peptaibols—the result of further modifications of the nonribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS) products.

None of the other *Trichoderma* NRPSs have as yet been characterized and consequently their products are unknown.

6.4.2.2 Polyketide Synthases

Out of a total of 47 PKS-encoding genes in the three sequenced *Trichoderma* spp., 29 fall into a single orthologous group (Baker et al. 2012). The loci of these PKSs are frequently flanked by cytochrome P450 monooxygenases, FAD-dependent monooxygenases, short-chain dehydrogenases/reductases, or epimerases next to PKS-encoding genes, suggesting that they are auxiliary components in the biosynthesis of the respective metabolites. Three PKS genes are induced during interaction of *T. atroviride* with *R. solani* and may therefore be involved in its antagonistic activities (Atanasova et al. 2013a, b). The *T. reesei* PKS gene Trire2:82208 has been shown by gene deletion to be responsible for the green color of the conidia but interestingly also to be involved in protection against other fungi but less in the direct attack on them (Atanasova et al. 2013a, b).

The genomes of the three *Trichoderma* spp. also harbor genes encoding mixed PKS-NRPS hybrids (2, 4, and 4 in *T. reesei*, *T. atroviride*, and *T. virens*, respectively). A mutation in one of the PKS-NRPS hybrid genes impaired the ability of *T. virens* to induce the defense response gene encoding phenylalanine ammonia lyase in maize roots, suggesting a putative role for the associated metabolite product in ISR (Mukherjee et al. 2012b).

6.4.2.3 Isoprenoid Derivatives

In addition to the products of NRPS and PKS, microorganisms and plants also synthesize secondary metabolites from isoprenoid precursors. The genomes of *T. reesei* and *T. atroviride* do not contain genes that can obviously be related to

these activities. However, Mukherjee et al. (2006) identified a cluster in the genome of *T. virens* that included three cytochrome P450 genes and one terpene cyclase. Because these genes are underexpressed in the mutant that is unable to produce viridin and viridiol, they proposed that this cluster could be responsible for the production of viridin.

One of the more prominent isoprenoid-derived secondary metabolites claimed to be synthesized by *Trichoderma* are trichothecenes. These are compounds that comprise a family of over 200 secondary metabolites with a common tricyclic 12,13-epoxytrichothec-9-ene (EPT) core structure and which are reported to be produced by species in at least six genera of the fungal order Hypocreales (class Sordariomycetes): *Fusarium*, *Myrothecium*, *Spicellum*, *Stachybotrys*, *Trichoderma*, and *Trichothecium*. The structure of trichothecenes identifies them as small, amphipathic molecules that can pass cell membranes by passive diffusion, which are therefore easily absorbed via the skin and gastrointestinal systems and result in a rapid effect on fast growing cells and tissues (Wannemacher and Winer 1977; McCormick et al. 2011). Exposure to trichothecenes can cause a number of symptoms, from feed refusal, immunological problems, vomiting, skin dermatitis, to immunosuppressive effects and neurotoxicity (Ueno 1985).

The precursors of trichothecene biosynthesis are formed in the isoprenoid biosynthetic pathway, from which the specific trichothecene biosynthetic pathway branches off at farnesyl pyrophosphate by the action of the enzyme trichodiene synthase (termed “Tri5” in *Fusarium* spp.) which catalyzes the cyclization of farnesyl pyrophosphate to trichodiene (McCormick et al. 2011). Trichodiene then undergoes a series of oxygenations catalyzed by the cytochrome P450 monooxygenase TRI4 to finally form the intermediate isotrichotriol. Detailed reviews on the biosynthesis of trichothecenes have been published, and the reader is referred to these sources for details [for review, see McCormick et al. (2011)].

The reputation of *Trichoderma* as a trichothecene producer is due to the problems with *Trichoderma* species identification (see Sect. 6.2.1): trichodermin was isolated from “*Trichoderma viride*” (Godtfredsen and Vangedal 1965); Watts et al. (1988) reported the production of trichodermin by “*T. reesei*,” and Corley et al. (1994) isolated the “harzianum A” from *T. harzianum*. The above named “*T. viride*” isolate is not available, and its identity thus cannot be reassessed. As for *T. reesei*, its genome sequence lacks a *tri5* orthologue, so that, in principle, it is unable to initiate trichothecene biosynthesis, a fact that is also underscored by the absence of trichothecene metabolites in culture filtrates of *T. reesei* QM 9414 grown on various different conditions (M. Sulyok and C.P. Kubicek, unpublished data). As for the harzianum A producer “*T. harzianum*,” Nielsen et al. (2005) proved that this strain is in fact *T. brevicompactum*. They investigated several molecularly assessed *Trichoderma* spp. and found that species from the *T. brevicompactum* clade (*T. brevicompactum*, *T. arundinaceum*, *T. turrialbense*, and *T. protrudens*) are the only source of trichothecene production within the genus *Trichoderma*.

6.4.2.4 Volatile Secondary Metabolites

In addition to terpenoids, several other volatile metabolites have been reported to be produced by *Trichoderma*. A recent thorough investigation has been done on *T. atroviride* (Stoppacher et al. 2010). Unfortunately, there is hardly any information available on the genes of their synthesis. 6-n-pentyl-2H-pyran-2-one (6PP), a volatile component with coconut aroma and antifungal activity, is one of the most well-studied secondary metabolites from a biocontrol perspective (Bonnarme et al. 1997; Cooney et al. 2001; Reithner et al. 2005, 2007; Vinale et al. 2008). 6PP formation has been detected in *T. atroviride*, but not in *T. reesei* and *T. virens* (Reino et al. 2008). Its biosynthesis may occur via linoleic acid, analogous to jasmonate synthesis in which the necessary hydroxyl group originates from an oxidation by lipoxygenase (Serrano-Carreon et al. 1993). Atanasova et al. (2012) detected a lipoxygenase gene (Triat1:33350) that is present in *T. atroviride* and not in *T. reesei* and *T. virens*. It is overexpressed during contact with *R. solani* (Atanasova et al. 2012) in correlation with the characteristic coconut smell of the *T. atroviride* cultures (Aghcheh et al. 2013).

6.5 Genome Sequencing of *T. reesei* Cellulase-Producing Mutants

The availability of the *T. reesei* wild-type (QM 6a) genome sequence and the progress in high-throughput massive parallel sequencing technologies made it possible to also sequence the genomes of several mutant strains that are either improved or defective in cellulase production (Fig. 6.4). Le Crom et al. (2009) compared the genome sequence of *T. reesei* QM 6a (Martinez et al. 2008) with two isolates of the improved producer lineage developed at Rutgers University, NG14, and RUT C30 (Eveleigh and Montenecourt 1979). Three mutations (a truncation of the *cre1* gene encoding the carbon catabolite repressor CRE1, Ilmen et al. (1996); a frame shift mutation in the glucosidase II alpha subunit gene *gls2* involved in protein glycosylation which increases protein secretion, Geysens et al. (2005); and an 85-kb deletion that eliminated 29 genes, including transporters, transcription factors, and primary metabolic enzymes, Seidl et al. (2008)) had previously been described to occur in strain RUT C30. The comparison of the genomic sequence of strains NG14 and RUT C30 with that of QM 6a identified a further 18 and additional 25, respectively, non-synonymous mutations in them. Nine of the 18 mutated genes in *T. reesei* NG14 are involved either in RNA metabolism (3 genes), protein secretion/vacuolar targeting (3 genes), or transcriptional regulation (3 genes). Genes affected in RUT C30 partially fall into the same categories but also include genes involved in sugar transport and general metabolism (8 genes), probably due to the selection for growth on glycerol in the presence of 2-deoxyglucose (Eveleigh and Montenecourt, 1979). Vitikainen et al. (2010),

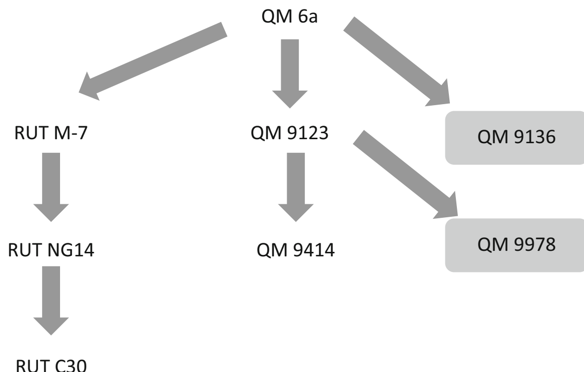


Fig. 6.4 Genealogy of *T. reesei* mutants, whose genome has already been sequenced. Strains over *gray* background specify cellulase-negative strains

using tiling arrays and comparative genomic hybridization, identified additional 12 and 4 mutations in NG14 and RUT C30, respectively. These mutations, besides unknown genes, comprised a transcription factor and a clathrin complex subunit in NG14 and another transcription factor and a Gβ-WD40 protein in RUT C30. A systematic functional analysis of these genes is currently under investigation in our laboratory and may potentially identify novel components relevant to cellulase production.

A reverse approach is the sequencing of mutants that are defective in cellulase production. The genomes of two such strains have also been sequenced: *T. reesei* QM 9136, which is unable to grow on cellulose and does not secrete any cellulases when grown on soluble cellulase inducers (Mandels et al. 1971), and *T. reesei* QM 9978, which is also unable to grow on cellulose, but which grows and secretes cellulases on soluble cellulase inducers (Zeilinger et al. 2000). In the case of QM 9136, the key mutation was identified as a frame shift in the cellulase regulator gene *xyr1* which leads to a C-terminally truncated protein and whose cellulase-negative phenotype can be recovered by transformation with the native *xyr1* gene. The mutations present in QM 9978 are less straightforward to interpret and are the subject of current investigations.

6.6 Benefits From the *Trichoderma* Genome Sequences

Obviously, the availability of genome sequences provides only an overview about the genetic repertoire of an organism, and an interpretation of the differences from other organisms requires the integrated use of other "-*omic*" techniques (i.e., systems biology) and availability of high-throughput techniques to manipulate and investigate genes. Due to the strong industrial interest, these have so far most advanced in *T. reesei*: oligonucleotide arrays and tiling arrays have been constructed for genome-wide analyses of gene expression under different cellulase and hemicellulase-inducing conditions (Häkkinen et al. 2012; Ivanova et al. 2013), under conditions of asexual sporulation (Metz et al. 2011) and UV-light signaling

(Tisch et al. 2012). Microarray strategies were also devised to understand the consequences of mutations in regulator genes (such as those encoding the carbon catabolite repressor CRE1 or the protein methyltransferase LAE1, which is believed to regulate the transcriptional activity of chromatin; Portnoy et al. 2011a, b; Seiboth et al. 2012; Karimi-Aghcheh et al. 2012). The genome sequence was also used for ChIP-seq with antibodies against histone modifications known to be associated with transcriptionally active (H3K4me2 and -me3) or silent (H3K9me3) chromatin, in order to study chromatin changes during cellulase production (Aghcheh et al. 2013). In combination with proteomic and metabolomic investigations, these data can be used for relating protein production rate to metabolic activities (Arvas et al. 2011). Also, manipulation of genes that are significantly upregulated under these conditions led to the identification of new regulators of cellulase and hemicellulase production (Ivanova et al. 2013).

To support such investigations, systems for high-frequency homologous transformation have been developed: fungi contain two pathways for integration of uptaken DNA, one leading to homologous and one leading to heterologous integration. Guangtao et al. (2009) and Steiger et al. (2011) deleted one of the genes involved in ectopic integration (the orthologues of yeast *ku70* or human *LIG4*). The corresponding strains display more than 90 % integration of transformed DNA into the homologous locus. By employing a Cre/loxP-based excision system, both marker insertion and marker excision can be positively selected for by combining resistance to hygromycin B and loss of sensitivity to fluoroacetamide, thus enabling an unlimited use of the same markers. Alternatively, a blaster cassette has been developed which also enables unlimited marker recycling (Hartl and Seiboth 2005). Schmoll et al. (2012) have integrated the targeted transformation system into a high-throughput gene knockout system which is based on yeast recombination for fast vector synthesis and a genome-wide database of primers for amplification of the respective gene fragments.

Corresponding developments with *T. virens* and *T. atroviride* lag somewhat behind *T. reesei*. Towards studying the interaction of *Trichoderma* with plants, E. Monte and coworkers designed arrays consisting of a combination of *T. reesei* gene oligonucleotides and probes based on ESTs from seven different *Trichoderma* spp. (including *T. cf. harzianum* CECT2413, *T. atroviride*, and *T. asperellum* grown in the presence of plant pathogen cell walls). Samolski et al. (2009) investigated gene expression of *T. cf. harzianum* CECT2413 when contacting the roots of tomato plants using these arrays. They detected transcripts putatively encoding proteins related to *Trichoderma*-host (fungus or plant) associations, such as the SSCPs Sm1/Elp1 and QID74, proteases, endochitinases, biosynthesis of nitric oxide, xenobiotic detoxification, mycelium development, and those responsible for formation of infection structures in plant tissues. Rubio et al. (2012)—working with *T. harzianum* CECT 2413 (T34), *T. virens* Gv29-8 (T87), and *T. hamatum* IMI 224801 and using the same arrays—showed that after 20 hours of incubation in the presence of tomato plants, genes involved in chitin degradation (i.e., *N*-acetylglucosamine-6-phosphate deacetylase, glucosamine-6-phosphate deaminase, and some chitinases) were the most significantly upregulated.

Towards the identification of genes related to mycoparasitism in *T. atroviride*, Reithner et al. (2011) used a high-throughput sequencing approach to analyze the changes in the transcriptome of *T. atroviride* IMI 206040 during interactions with *R. solani*. The most abundant KOG group found during direct contact was "metabolism." Relative gene expression analysis of these genes, conducted at different stages of mycoparasitism against *Botrytis cinerea* and *Phytophthora capsici*, revealed a synergistic transcription of various genes involved in cell wall degradation. Atanasova et al. (2012) compared the transcriptional responses of *T. atroviride* IMI 206040 and *T. virens* Gv29-8 with that of *T. reesei* QM 6a during confrontations with a plant pathogenic fungus *R. solani*. They found that the three *Trichoderma* spp. exhibited a strikingly different transcriptomic response already before physical contact with alien hyphae. *T. atroviride* expressed an array of genes involved in production of secondary metabolites, GH16 β-glucanases, various proteases, and SSCPs. *T. virens*, on the other hand, expressed mainly the genes for biosynthesis of gliotoxin, respective precursors, and also glutathione, which is necessary for gliotoxin biosynthesis. In contrast, *T. reesei* increased the expression of genes encoding cellulases and hemicellulases and of the genes involved in solute transport. Thus, the initial *Trichoderma* mycotrophy has differentiated into several alternative ecological strategies ranging from parasitism to predation and efficient saprotrophy.

Clearly, these studies only provide initial snapshots of the transcriptional processes that go on during the interaction of *Trichoderma* spp. with plants or other fungi, and functional gene analysis will be necessary to reveal the mechanisms that are involved. To this end, Catalano et al. (2010) constructed a *ku70*-deficient strain of *T. virens* which can be used for high-throughput gene deletion analysis. A first approach towards a more comprehensive use of *T. atroviride* transcriptomics has been recently published by Hernández-Oñate et al. (2012), using high-throughput RNA-seq analyses of the triggering of conidiation by mechanical injury. Gene-replacement experiments demonstrated that injury triggers NADPH oxidase (Nox)-dependent ROS production and that Nox1 and NoxR are essential for asexual development in response to damage.

6.7 Concluding Remarks

Although *Trichoderma* does not have the glorious biological history of *Neurospora* or *Aspergillus*, and its research community is consequently smaller, it is nevertheless of high importance to mankind in several ways: *T. reesei* is one of the leading filamentous fungi for enzyme and heterologous protein producing biotechnology, and other species are employed as versatile fungicides and phytostimulating agents. It is therefore not surprising that the three species that have been sequenced and annotated (*T. reesei*, *T. virens*, *T. atroviride*) and two of those whose genome sequences have recently been released (*T. asperellum*, *T. harzianum* sensu stricto) are relevant to these two areas. While their analysis is still only at the beginning, the

sequence of further species such as *T. longibrachiatum* and *T. citrinoviride* will help to answer the question whether the ability to interact with animals is due to the gain or loss of genes or a change in their regulation and—a significant difference from the other species sequenced so far—what makes them capable of growing at the body temperature of mammals. In addition, the further sequencing of *Trichoderm*a species that are obligate endophytes [e.g., see Druzhinina et al. (2011)] may contribute to a deeper understanding of the mechanisms involved in *Trichoderma*-plant interaction.

As for future research perspectives, the already available data offer a room for basic and applied science. As an example, the large number of genes encoding oxidative enzymes (cytochrome P450 monooxygenases, FAD-linked oxidases/ monooxygenases), methyltransferases, esterases, and transcription factors and which are often found in clusters in the genome may encode enzymes for the synthesis of unknown secondary metabolites. Aghcheh et al. (2013) have shown that overexpression of the *lae1* gene activates the expression of some silent secondary metabolite genes in *T. reesei*, and this tool may aid in the above attempts.

Acknowledgements Genome sequencing and analysis were supported by the Office of Science of the US Department of Energy under contract number DE-AC02-05CH11231. The authors own work on this topic was supported by grants from the Austrian Science Fund P-17895 to I.S.D.

References

Aghcheh RK, Druzhinina IS, Kubicek CP (2013) The putative protein methyltransferase LAE1 of *Trichoderma atroviride* is a key regulator of asexual development and mycoparasitism. PLoS One. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0067144

Akel E, Metz B, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2009) Molecular regulation of arabinan and L-arabinose metabolism in *Hypocrea jecorina (Trichoderma reesei)*. Eukaryot Cell 8:1837–1844

Aly AH, Debbab A, Proksch P (2011) Fungal endophytes: unique plant inhabitants with great promises. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 90:1829–1845

Arvas M, Pakula T, Smit B, Rautio J, Koivistoinen H, Jouhten P, Lindfors E, Wiebe M, Penttilä M, Saloheimo M (2011) Correlation of gene expression and protein production rate – a system wide study. BMC Genomics 12:616

Atanasova L, Jaklitsch WM, Komon-Zelazowska M, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2010) The clonal species *Trichoderma parareesei* sp. nov., likely resembles the ancestor of the cellulase producer *Hypocrea jecorina*/*T. reesei*. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:7259–7267

Atanasova L, Le Crom S, Gruber S, Coulpier F, Seidl-Seiboth V, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2012) Comparative transcriptomics reveals versatile strategies of *Trichoderma* mycoparasitism. BMC Genomics 14:121

Atanasova L, Druzhinina IS, Jaklitsch WM (2013a) Two hundred *Trichoderma* species recognized based on molecular phylogeny. In: Mukherjee PK, Sigh US, Horwitz BA, Schmoll M, Mukherjee M (eds) *Trichoderma*: biology and applications. CABI, Wallingford, Oxon

Atanasova L, Know BP, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS, Baker SE (2013) The *Trichoderma reesei* polyketide synthase gene PKS1 is necessary for conidial and perithecial color and environmental fitness Euk Cell, revised ms submitted

Bailey BA, Bae H, Strem MD, Roberts DP, Thomas SE, Crozier J, Samuels GJ, Choi IY, Holmes KA (2006) Fungal and plant gene expression during the colonization of cacao seedlings by endophytic isolates of four *Trichoderma* species. Planta 224:1449–1464

Baker SE, Perrone G, Richardson NM, Gallo A, Kubicek CP (2012) Phylogenetic analysis and evolution of polyketide synthase encoding genes in *Trichoderma*. Microbiology 158:147–154

Bayry J, Aimanianda V, Guijarro JI, Sunde M, Latgé JP (2012) Hydrophobins—unique fungal proteins. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002700

Benítez T, Rincón AM, Limón MC, Codón AC (2004) Biocontrol mechanisms of *Trichoderma* strains. Int Microbiol 7:249–260

Bisby GR (1939) *Trichoderma viride* Pers ex Fries, and notes on *Hypocrea*. Trans Br Mycol Soc 23:149–168

Bischof R, Gamauf C, Schirrmacher G, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2013) Comparative analysis of the *Trichoderma reesei* transcriptome on the cellulase inducing substrates wheat straw and lactose. Biotechnol Biofuel (submitted for publication)

Bissett J (1984) A revision of the genus *Trichoderma* I Sect *Longibrachiatum* sect nov. Can J Bot 62:924–931

Bissett J (1991a) A revision of the genus *Trichoderma* II Infrageneric classification. Can J Bot 69:2357–2372

Bissett J (1991b) A revision of the genus *Trichoderma* III Sect Pachybasium. Can J Bot 69:2373–2417

Bissett J (1991c) A revision of the genus *Trichoderma* IV additional notes on section *Longibrachiatum*. Can J Bot 69:2418–2420

Bissett J (1992) *Trichoderma atroviride*. Can J Bot 70:639–641

Bonnarme P, Djian A, Latrasse A, Feron G, Ginies C, Durand A, Le Quere J-L (1997) Production of 6-pentyl-α-pyrone by *Trichoderma* sp. from vegetable oils. J Biotechnol 56:143–150

Buée M, Reich M, Murat C, Morin E, Nilsson RH, Uroz S, Martin F (2009) 454 Pyrosequencing analyses of forest soils reveal an unexpectedly high fungal diversity. New Phytol 184:449–456

Carreras-Villaseñor N, Sánchez-Arreguín JA, Herrera-Estrella AH (2012) *Trichoderma*: sensing the environment for survival and dispersal. Microbiology 158:3–16

Carter GL, Allison D, Rey MW, Dunn-Coleman NS (1992) Chromosomal and genetic analysis of the electrophoretic karyotype of *Trichoderma reesei*: mapping of the cellulase and xylanase genes. Mol Microbiol 6:2167–2174

Casas-Flores S, Herrera-Estrella A (2007) Antagonism of plant parasitic nematodes by fungi. In: Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (eds) Environmental and microbial relationships (Mycota IV). Springer, Heidelberg, pp 147–157

Catalano V, Vergara M, Hauzenberger JR, Seiboth B, Sarrocco S, Vannacci G, Kubicek CP, Seidl-Seiboth V (2010) Use of a non-homologous end-joining-deficient strain (delta-*ku70*) of the biocontrol fungus *Trichoderma virens* to investigate the function of the laccase gene lcc1 in sclerotia degradation. Curr Genet 57:13–23

Cooney JM, Lauren DR, di Menna ME (2001) Impact of competitive fungi on trichothecene production by *Fusarium graminearum*. J Agric Food Chem 49:522–526

Corley DG, Miller-Wideman M, Durley RC (1994) Isolation and structure of harzianum A: a new trichothecene from *Trichoderma harzianum*. J Nat Prod 57:422–425

Dagenais TR, Keller NP (2009) Pathogenesis of *Aspergillus fumigatus* in Invasive Aspergillosis. Clin Microbiol Rev 22:447–465

De Jaeger N, Declerck S, de la Providencia IE (2010) Mycoparasitism of arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi: a pathway for the entry of saprotrophic fungi into roots. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 73:312–322

Degenkolb T, Karimi AR, Dieckmann R, Neuhof T, Baker SE, Druzhinina IS, Kubicek CP, Brückner H, von Döhren H (2012) The production of multiple small peptaibol families by single 14-module Peptide synthetases in *Trichoderma/Hypocrea*. Chem Biodivers 9:499–535

Djonovic S, Pozo MJ, Dangott LJ, Howell CR, Kenerley CM (2006) Sm1, a proteinaceous elicitor secreted by the biocontrol fungus *Trichoderma virens* induces plant defense responses and systemic resistance. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:838–853

Djonovic S, Vargas WA, Kolomiets MV, Horndeski M, Wiest A, Kenerley CM (2007) A proteinaceous elicitor Sm1 from the beneficial fungus *Trichoderma virens* is required for induced systemic resistance in maize. Plant Physiol 145:875–889

Druzhinina IS, Koptchinskiy A, Kubicek CP (2006) The first one hundred *Trichoderma* species characterized by molecular data. Mycoscience 47:55–64

Druzhinina IS, Komoń-Zelazowska M, Kredics L, Hatvani L, Antal Z, Belayneh T, Kubicek CP (2008) Different reproductive strategies of *Hypocrea orientalis* and genetically close but clonal *Trichoderma longibrachiatum*, both capable to cause invasive mycoses of humans. Microbiology 154:3447–3459

Druzhinina IS, Komon-Zelazowska M, Atanasova L, Seidl V, Kubicek CP (2010a) Evolution and ecophysiology of an industrial producer *Hypocrea jecorina* (Anamorph *Trichoderma reesei*) and a new sympatric agamospecies related to it. PLoS One 5:e9191

Druzhinina IS, Kubicek CP, Komoń-Zelazowska M, Mulaw TB, Bissett J (2010b) The *Trichoderma harzianum* demon: complex speciation history resulting in coexistence of hypothetical biological species, recent agamospecies and numerous relict lineages. BMC Evol Biol 10:94

Druzhinina IS, Seidl-Seiboth V, Herrera-Estrella A, Horwitz BA, Kenerley CM, Monte E, Mukherjee PK, Zeilinger S, Grigoriev IV, Kubicek CP (2011) *Trichoderma*: the genomics of opportunistic success. Nat Rev Microbiol 16:749–759

Druzhinina IS, Shelest E, Kubicek CP (2012) Novel traits of *Trichoderma* predicted through the analysis of its secretome. FEMS Microbiol Lett 337:1–9

Duclohier H (2007) Peptaibiotics and peptaibols: an alternative to classical antibiotics? Chem Biodivers 4:1023–1026

Espino-Rammer L, Ribitsch D, Przylucka A, Marold A, Greimel KJ, Herrero Acero E, Guebitz GM, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2013) The two novel class II hydrophobins of *Trichoderma* stimulate enzymatic hydrolysis of poly(ethylene terephthalate). Appl Environ Microbiol 79 (14):4230–4238

Eveleigh DE, Montenecourt BS (1979) Increasing yields of extracellular enzymes. Adv Appl Microbiol 25:57–74

Fedorova ND, Badger JH, Robson GD, Wortman JR, Nierman WC (2005) Comparative analysis of programmed cell death pathways in filamentous fungi. BMC Genomics 6:177

Fedorova ND, Khaldi N, Joardar VS, Maiti R, Amedeo P, Anderson MJ, Crabtree J, Silva JC, Badger JH, Albarraq A, Angiuoli S, Bussey H, Bowyer P, Cotty PJ, Dyer PS, Egan A, Galens K, Fraser-Liggett CM, Haas BJ, Inman JM, Kent R, Lemieux S, Malavazi I, Orvis J, Roemer T, Ronning CM, Sundaram JP, Sutton G, Turner G, Venter JC, White OR, Whitty BR, Youngman P, Wolfe KH, Goldman GH, Wortman JR, Jiang B, Denning DW, Nierman WC (2008) Genomic islands in the pathogenic filamentous fungus *Aspergillus fumigatus*. PLoS Genet 4:e1000046

Friedl MA, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2008) Carbon source dependence of conidiation and its photostimulation in *Hypocrea atroviridis*. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:245–250

Friedl MA, Druzhinina IS (2012) Taxon-specific metagenomics of Trichoderma reveals a narrow community of opportunistic species that regulate each other's development. Microbiology 158:69–83

Gardiner DM, Waring P, Howlett BJ (2005) The epipolythiodioxopiperazine (ETP) class of fungal toxins: distribution, mode of action, functions and biosynthesis. Microbiology 151:1021–1032

Geysens S, Pakula T, Uusitalo J, Dewerte I, Penttilä M, Contreras R (2005) Cloning and characterization of the glucosidase II alpha subunit gene of *Trichoderma reesei*: a frameshift mutation results in the aberrant glycosylation profile of the hypercellulolytic strain Rut-C30. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:2910–2924

Gibson DM, King BC, Hayes ML, Bergstrom GC (2011) Plant pathogens as a source of diverse enzymes for lignocellulose digestion. Curr Opin Microbiol 14:264–270

Godtfredsen WO, Vangedal S (1965) Trichodermin, a new sesquiterpene antibiotic. Acta Chem Scand 19:1088–1102

Grinyer J, Hunt S, McKay M, Herbert BR, Nevalainen H (2005) Proteomic response of the biological control fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* to growth on the cell walls of *Rhizoctonia solani*. Curr Genet 47:381–388

Guangtao Z, Hartl L, Schuster A, Polak S, Schmoll M, Wang T, Seidl V, Seiboth B (2009) Gene targeting in a nonhomologous end joining deficient *Hypocrea jecorina*. J Biotechnol 139:146–151

Häkkinen M, Arvas M, Oja M, Aro N, Penttilä M, Saloheimo M, Pakula TM (2012) Re-annotation of the CAZy genes of *Trichoderma reesei* and transcription in the presence of lignocellulosic substrates. Microb Cell Fact 11:134

Hanada RE, de Jorge ST, Pomella AW, Hebbar KP, Pereira JO, Ismaiel A, Samuels GJ (2008) *Trichoderma martiale* sp. nov, a new endophyte from sapwood of *Theobroma cacao* with a potential for biological control. Mycol Res 112:1335–1343

Hanada RE, Pomella AW, Costa HS, Bezerra JL, Loguercio LL, Pereira JO (2010) Endophytic fungal diversity in Theobroma cacao (cacao) and *T. grandiflorum* (cupuaçu) trees and their potential for growth promotion and biocontrol of black-pod disease. Fungal Biol 114:901–910

Harman GE, Howell CR, Viterbo A, Chet I, Lorito M (2004) *Trichoderma* species – opportunistic, avirulent plant symbionts. Nat Rev Microbiol 2:43–56

Hartl L, Seiboth B (2005) Sequential gene deletions in *Hypocrea jecorina* using a single blaster cassette. Curr Genet 48:204–211

Hernández-Oñate MA, Esquivel-Naranjo EU, Mendoza-Mendoza A, Stewart A, Herrera-Estrella AH (2012) An injury-response mechanism conserved across kingdoms determines entry of the fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* into development. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109 (37):14918–14923

Herrera-Estrella A, Goldman GH, van Montagu M, Geremia RA (1993) Electrophoretic karyotype and gene assignment to resolved chromosomes of *Trichoderma* spp. Mol Microbiol 7:515–521

Ihrmark K, Asmail N, Ubhayasekera W, Melin P, Stenlid J, Karlsson M (2010) Comparative molecular evolution of *Trichoderma* chitinases in response to mycoparasitic interactions. Evol Bioinform Online 6:1–26

Ilmen M, Thrane C, Penttilä M (1996) The glucose repressor gene cre1 of *Trichoderma*: isolation and expression of a full-length and a truncated mutant form. Mol Gen Genet 251:451–460

Ivanova C, Baath J, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2013) Systems analysis of lactose metabolism in *Trichoderma reesei* identifies a lactose permease that is essential for cellulase induction. PLoS One 8(5):e62631

Jaklitsch WM (2009) European species of *Hypocrea* Part I. The green-spored species. Stud Mycol 63:1–91

Jaklitsch WM (2011) European species of *Hypocrea* part II: species with hyaline ascospores. Fungal Divers 48:1–250

Jaklitsch WM, Samuels GJ, Dodd SL, Lu BS, Druzhinina IS (2006) *Hypocrea rufa*/*Trichoderma viride*: a reassessment, and description of five closely related species with and without warted conidia. Stud Mycol 56:135–177

Karimi-Aghcheh R, Bok JW, Phatale PA, Smith KM, Baker SE, Lichius A, Omann M, Zeilinger S, Seiboth B, Rhee C, Keller NP, Freitag M, Kubicek CP (2012) Functional analyses of *Trichoderma reesei* LAE1 reveal conserved and contrasting roles of this regulator. G3 (Bethesda) 3(2):369–378

Kim CS, Shirouzu T, Nakagiri A, Sotome K, Nagasawa E, Maekawa N (2012) *Trichoderma mienum* sp nov, isolated from mushroom farms in Japan. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 102 (4):629–641

Klein D, Eveleigh DE (1998) Ecology of Trichoderma. In: Kubicek CP, Harman GE (eds) *Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium*, vol 1. Taylor and Francis, London, pp 57–69

Komoń-Zelazowska M, Bissett J, Zafari D, Hatvani L, Manczinger L, Woo S, Lorito M, Kredics L, Kubicek CP, Druzhinina IS (2007) Genetically closely related but phenotypically divergent Trichoderma species cause world-wide green mould disease in oyster mushroom farms. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:7415–7426

Kredics L, Antal Z, Szekeres A, Manczinger L, Dóczi I, Kevei F, Nagy E (2004) Production of extracellular proteases by human pathogenic *Trichoderma longibrachiatum* strains. Acta Microbiol Immunol Hung 51:283–295

Kredics L, Hatvani L, Manczinger L, Vágvölgyi C, Antal Z (2011) *Trichoderma*. In: Liu D (ed) Molecular detection of human fungal pathogens. CRC, Boca Raton, FL, pp 509–526

Kubicek CP (2012) Systems biological approaches towards understanding cellulase production by *Trichoderma reesei*. J Biotechnol 163:133–142

Kubicek CP, Baker S, Gamauf C, Kenerley CM, Druzhinina IS (2008) Purifying selection and birth-and-death evolution in the class II hydrophobin gene families of the ascomycete *Trichoderma/Hypocrea*. BMC Evol Biol 8:4

Kubicek CP, Mikus M, Schuster A, Schmoll M, Seiboth B (2009) Metabolic engineering strategies for the improvement of cellulase production by *Hypocrea jecorina*. Biotechnol Biofuels 2:19

Kubicek CP, Herrera-Estrella A, Seidl-Seiboth V, Martinez DA, Druzhinina IS, Thon M, Zeilinger S, Casas-Flores S, Horwitz BA, Mukherjee PK, Mukherjee M, Kredics L, Alcaraz LD, Aerts A, Antal Z, Atanasova L, Cervantes-Badillo MG, Challacombe J, Chertkov O, McCluskey K, Coulpier F, Deshpande N, von Döhren H, Ebbole DJ, Esquivel-Naranjo EU, Fekete E, Flipphi M, Glaser F, Gómez-Rodríguez EY, Gruber S, Han C, Henrissat B, Hermosa R, Hernández-Oñate M, Karaffa L, Kosti I, Le Crom S, Lindquist E, Lucas S, Lübeck M, Lübeck PS, Margeot A, Metz B, Misra M, Nevalainen H, Omann M, Packer N, Perrone G, Uresti-Rivera EE, Salamov A, Schmoll M, Seiboth B, Shapiro H, Sukno S, Tamayo-Ramos JA, Tisch D, Wiest A, Wilkinson HH, Zhang M, Coutinho PM, Kenerley CM, Monte E, Baker SE, Grigoriev IV (2011) Comparative genome sequence analysis underscores mycoparasitism as the ancestral life style of *Trichoderma*. Genome Biol 12:R40

Kumar R, Singh S, Singh OV (2008) Bioconversion of lignocellulosic biomass: biochemical and molecular perspectives. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 35:377–391

Latgé JP (2007) The cell wall: a carbohydrate armour for the fungal cell. Mol Microbiol 66:279–290

Le Crom S, Schackwitz W, Pennacchio L, Magnuson JK, Culley DE, Collett JR, Martin J, Druzhinina IS, Mathis H, Monot F, Seiboth B, Cherry B, Rey M, Berka R, Kubicek CP, Baker SE, Margeot A (2009) Tracking the roots of cellulase hyperproduction by the fungus *Trichoderma reesei* using massively parallel DNA sequencing. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:16151–16156

Lehner SM, Atanasova L, Neumann NK, Krska R, Lemmens M, Druzhinina IS, Schuhmacher R (2013) Isotope-assisted screening for iron-containing metabolites reveals a high degree of diversity among known and unknown siderophores produced by *Trichoderma* spp. Appl Environ Microbiol 79:18–31

Leitgeb B, Szekeres A, Manczinger L, Vágvölgyi C, Kredics L (2007) The history of alamethicin: a review of the most extensively studied peptaibol. Chem Biodivers 4:1027–1051

Lewis JA, Papavizas GC (1984) A new approach to stimulate population proliferation of *Trichoderma* species and other potential biocontrol fungi introduced into natural soils. Phytopathology 74:1240–1244

Lim YW, Kim BK, Kim C, Jung HS, Kim BS, Lee JH, Chun J (2010) Assessment of soil fungal communities using pyrosequencing. J Microbiol 48:284–289

Lumsden RD, Locke JC, Adkins ST, Walter JF, Ridout CJ (1992) Isolation and localization of the antibiotic gliotoxin produced by *Gliocladium virens* from alginate prill in soil and soilless media. Phytopathology 82:230–235

Mandels M, Weber J, Parizek R (1971) Enhanced cellulase production by a mutant of *Trichoderma viride*. Appl Microbiol 21:152–154

Mäntylä AL, Rossi KH, Vanhanen SA, Penttilä ME, Suominen PL, Nevalainen KM (1992) Electrophoretic karyotyping of wild-type and mutant *Trichoderma longibrachiatum* (*reesei*) strains. Curr Genet 21:471–477

Marra R, Ambrosino P, Carbone V, Vinale F, Woo SL, Ruocco M, Ciliento R, Lanzuise S, Ferraioli S, Soriente I, Gigante S, Turrà D, Fogliano V, Scala F, Lorito M (2007) Study of

the three-way interaction between Trichoderma atroviride, plant and fungal pathogens by using a proteomic approach. Curr Genet 50:307–321

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahrén D, Brun A, Danchin EG, Duchaussoy F, Gibon J, Kohler A, Lindquist E, Pereda V, Salamov A, Shapiro HJ, Wuyts J, Blaudez D, Buée M, Brokstein P, Canbäck B, Cohen D, Courty PE, Coutinho PM, Delaruelle C, Detter JC, Deveau A, DiFazio S, Duplessis S, Fraissinet-Tachet L, Lucic E, Frey-Klett P, Fourrey C, Feussner I, Gay G, Grimwood J, Hoegger PJ, Jain P, Kilaru S, Labbé J, Lin YC, Legué V, Le Tacon F, Marmeisse R, Melayah D, Montanini B, Muratet M, Nehls U, Niculita-Hirzel H, Oudot-Le Secq MP, Peter M, Quesneville H, Rajashekar B, Reich M, Rouhier N, Schmutz J, Yin T, Chalot M, Henrissat B, Kües U, Lucas S, Van de Peer Y, Podila GK, Polle A, Pukkila PJ, Richardson PM, Rouzé P, Sanders IR, Stajich JE, Tunlid A, Tuskan G, Grigoriev IV (2008) The genome of *Laccaria bicolor* provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martinez D, Berka RM, Henrissat B, Saloheimo M, Arvas M, Baker SE, Chapman J, Chertkov O, Coutinho PM, Cullen D, Danchin EG, Grigoriev IV, Harris P, Jackson M, Kubicek CP, Han CS, Ho I, Larrondo LF, de Leon AL, Magnuson JK, Merino S, Misra M, Nelson B, Putnam N, Robbertse B, Salamov AA, Schmoll M, Terry A, Thayer N, Westerholm-Parvinen A, Schoch CL, Yao J, Barabote R, Nelson MA, Detter C, Bruce D, Kuske CR, Xie G, Richardson P, Rokhsar DS, Lucas SM, Rubin EM, Dunn-Coleman N, Ward M, Brettin TS (2008) Genome sequence analysis of the cellulolytic fungus *Trichoderma reesei* (syn *Hypocrea jecorina*) reveals a surprisingly limited inventory of carbohydrate active enzymes. Nat Biotechnol 26:553–560

McCormick SP, Stanley AM, Stover NA, Alexander NJ (2011) Trichothecenes: from simple to complex mycotoxins. Toxins (Basel) 3:802–814

Metz B, Seidl-Seiboth V, Haarmann T, Kopchinskiy A, Lorenz P, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2011) Expression of biomass-degrading enzymes is a major event during conidium development in *Trichoderma reesei*. Eukaryot Cell 10:1527–1735

Moran-Diez E, Hermosa R, Ambrosino P, Cardoza RE, Gutiérrez S, Lorito M, Monte E (2009) The ThPG1 endopolygalacturonase is required for the *Trichoderma harzianum*-plant beneficial interaction. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:1021–1031

Mukherjee M, Horwitz BA, Sherkhane PD, Hadar R, Mukherjee PK (2006) A secondary metabolite biosynthesis cluster in *Trichoderma virens*: evidence from analysis of genes underexpressed in a mutant defective in morphogenesis and antibiotic production. Curr Genet 50:193–202

Mukherjee PK, Wiest A, Ruiz N, Keightley A, Moran-Diez ME, McCluskey K, Pouchus YF, Kenerley CM (2011) Two classes of new peptaibols are synthesized by a single non-ribosomal peptide synthetase of *Trichoderma virens*. J Biol Chem 286:4544–4554

Mukherjee PK, Buensanteai N, Moran-Diez ME, Druzhinina IS, Kenerley CM (2012a) Functional analysis of non-ribosomal peptide synthetases (NRPSs) in *Trichoderma virens* reveals a polyketide synthase (PKS)/NRPS hybrid enzyme involved in the induced systemic resistance response in maize. Microbiology 158:155–165

Mukherjee PK, Horwitz BA, Kenerley CM (2012b) Secondary metabolism in *Trichoderma* – a genomic perspective. Microbiology 158:35–45

Nemcovic M, Jakubíková L, Víden I, Farkas V (2008) Induction of conidiation by endogenous volatile compounds in *Trichoderma* spp. FEMS Microbiol Lett 284:231–236

Nielsen KF, Gräfenhan T, Zafari D, Thrane U (2005) Trichothecene production by *Trichoderma brevicompactum*. J Agric Food Chem 53:8190–8196

Omann M, Zeilinger S (2010) How a mycoparasite employs G-protein signaling: using the example of *Trichoderma*. J Signal Transduct 2010:123126

Paoletti M, Saupe SJ (2009) Fungal incompatibility: evolutionary origin in pathogen defense? Bioessays 31:1201–1210

Patron NJ, Waller RF, Cozijnsen AJ, Straney DC, Gardiner DM, Nierman WC, Howlett BJ (2007) Origin and distribution of epipolythiodioxopiperazine (ETP) gene clusters in filamentous ascomycetes. BMC Evol Biol 7:174

Pazzagli L, Pantera B, Carresi L, Zoppi C, Pertinhez TA, Spisni A, Tegli S, Scala A, Cappugi G (2006) Cerato-platanin, the first member of a new fungal protein family: cloning, expression, and characterization. Cell Biochem Biophys 44:512–521

Persoon CH (1794) Disposita methodical fungorum. Römers Neues Mag Bot 1:81–128

Plett JM, Kemppainen M, Kale SD, Kohler A, Legué V, Brun A, Tyler BM, Pardo AG, Martin F (2011) A secreted effector protein of *Laccaria bicolor* is required for symbiosis development. Curr Biol 21:1197–1203

Portnoy T, Margeot A, Le Crom S, Linke R, Atanasova L, Fekete E, Sándor E, Karaffa L, Druzhinina IS, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2011a) The CRE1 carbon catabolite repressor of the fungus *Trichoderma reesei*: a master regulator of carbon assimilation. BMC Genomics 12:269

Portnoy T, Margeot A, Seidl V, Le Crom S, Ben Chaabane F, Linke R, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2011b) Differential regulation of the cellulase transcription factors XYR1, ACE2, and ACE1 in Trichoderma reesei strains producing high and low levels of cellulase. Eukaryot Cell 10:262–271

Rebuffat C, Goulard B, Bodo G, Roquebert MF (1999) The peptaibol antibiotics from *Trichoderma* soil fungi; structural diversity and membrane properties. Recent Res Devel Org Bioorg Chem 3:65–91

Reino JL, Guerrero RF, Hernández-Galan R, Collado IG (2008) Secondary metabolites from species of the biocontrol agent *Trichoderma*. Phytochem Rev 7:89–123

Reithner B, Brunner K, Schuhmacher R, Peissl I, Seidl V, Krska R, Zeilinger S (2005) The G protein alpha subunit Tga1 of *Trichoderma atroviride* is involved in chitinase formation and differential production of antifungal metabolites. Fungal Genet Biol 42:749–760

Reithner B, Schuhmacher R, Stoppacher N, Pucher M, Brunner K, Zeilinger S (2007) Signaling via the *Trichoderma atroviride* mitogen-activated protein kinase Tmk1 differentially affects mycoparasitism and plant protection. Fungal Genet Biol 44:1123–1133

Reithner B, Ibarra-Laclette E, Mach RL, Herrera-Estrella A (2011) Identification of mycoparasitism-related genes in *Trichoderma atroviride*. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:4361–4370

Rep M (2005) Small proteins of plant-pathogenic fungi secreted during host colonization. FEMS Microbiol Letts 253:19–27

Rifai MA (1969) A revision of the genus *Trichoderma*. Mycol Pap 116:1–56

Rubio MB, Domínguez S, Monte E, Hermosa R (2012) Comparative study of *Trichoderma* gene expression in interactions with tomato plants using high-density oligonucleotide microarrays. Microbiology 158:119–128

Samolski I, de Luis A, Vizcaíno JA, Monte E, Suárez MB (2009) Gene expression analysis of the biocontrol fungus *Trichoderma harzianum* in the presence of tomato plants, chitin, or glucose using a high-density oligonucleotide microarray. BMC Microbiol 9:217

Samuels GJ (2006) *Trichoderma*: a review of biology and systematics of the genus. Mycol Res 100:923–935

Samuels GJ, Dodd SL, Gams W, Castlebury LA, Petrini O (2002) *Trichoderma* species associated with the green mold epidemic of commercially grown *Agaricus bisporus*. Mycologia 94:146–170

Samuels GJ, Suarez C, Solis K, Holmes KA, Thomas SE, Ismaiel A, Evans HC (2006) *Trichoderma theobromicola* and *T. paucisporum*: two new species isolated from cacao in South America. Mycol Res 110:381–392

Samuels GJ, Ismaiel A, Bon MC, De Respinis S, Petrini O (2010) *Trichoderma asperellum* sensu lato consists of two cryptic species. Mycologia 102:944–966

Schmoll M, Esquivel-Naranjo EU, Herrera-Estrella A (2010) *Trichoderma* in the light of day–physiology and development. Fungal Genet Biol 47:909–916

Schmoll M, Tian C, Sun J, Tisch D, Glass NL (2012) Unravelling the molecular basis for light modulated cellulase gene expression - the role of photoreceptors in *Neurospora crassa*. BMC Genomics. doi:10.1186/1471-2164-13-127

Scholtmeijer K, Janssen MI, van Leeuwen MB, van Kooten TG, Hektor H, Wösten HAB (2004) The use of hydrophobins to functionalize surfaces. Biomed Mater Eng 14:447–454

Schrettl M, Carberry S, Kavanagh K, Haas H, Jones GW, O'Brien J, Nolan A, Stephens J, Fenelon O, Doyle S (2010) Self-protection against gliotoxin—a component of the gliotoxin biosynthetic cluster, GliT, completely protects *Aspergillus fumigatus* against exogenous gliotoxin. PLoS Pathog 6:e1000952

Seaby D (1998) *Trichoderma* as a weed and pathogen in mushroom cultivation. In: Harman GE, Kubicek CP (eds) *Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium*, vol 2, Enzymes, biological control and commercial applications. Taylor and Francis, London, pp 267–283

Seiboth B, Aghcheh RK, Phatale PA, Linke R, Sauer DG, Hartl L, Smith KM, Baker SE, Freitag M, Kubicek CP (2012) The putative protein methyltransferase LAE1 controls cellulase gene expression in *Trichoderma reesei*. Mol Microbiol 84:1150–1164

Seidl V (2008) Chitinases of filamentous fungi: a large group of diverse proteins with multiple physiological functions. Fungal Biol Rev 22:36–42

Seidl V, Gamauf C, Druzhinina IS, Hartl L, Seiboth B, Kubicek CP (2008) The *Hypocrea jecorina* (*Trichoderma reesei*) hypercellulolytic mutant RUT C30 lacks a 85 kb (29 gene-encoding) region of the wild-type genome. BMC Genomics 9:327

Seidl V, Seibel C, Kubicek CP, Schmoll M (2009a) Sexual development in the industrial workhorse *Trichoderma reesei*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:13909–13914

Seidl V, Song LF, Lindquist EA, Gruber S, Koptchinskiy A, Zeilinger S, Schmoll M, Martinez P, Sun J, Grigoriev I, Herrera-Estrella A, Baker SE, Kubicek CP (2009b) Transcriptomic response of the mycoparasitic fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* to the close presence of a fungal prey. BMC Genomics 10:567

Seidl V, Gruber S, Sezerman U, Schwecke T, Albayrak A, Neuhof T, von Döhren H, Baker SE, Kubicek CP (2011) Novel hydrophobins from *Trichoderma* define a new hydrophobin subclass: protein properties, evolution, regulation, and processing. J Mol Evol 72:339–351

Selker EU (1990) Premeiotic instability of repeated sequences in *Neurospora crassa*. Annu Rev Genet 24:579–613

Serrano-Carreon L, Hathout Y, Bensoussan M, Belin JM (1993) Metabolism of linoleic acid or mevalonate and 6-pentyl-α-pyrone biosynthesis by *Trichoderma* species. Appl Environ Microbiol 59:2945–2950

Shoresh M, Harman GE, Mastouri F (2010) Induced systemic resistance and plant responses to fungal biocontrol agents. Annu Rev Phytopathol 48:21–43

Sivasithamparam K, Ghisalberti EL (1998) Secondary metabolism in *Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium*. In: Kubicek CP, Harman GE (eds) *Trichoderma* and *Gliocladium*, vol 1, Basic biology, taxonomy and genetics. Taylor and Francis, London, pp 139–191

Steiger MG, Vitikainen M, Uskonen P, Brunner K, Adam G, Pakula T, Penttilä M, Saloheimo M, Mach RL, Mach-Aigner AR (2011) Transformation system for *Hypocrea jecorina* (*Trichoderma reesei*) that favors homologous integration and employs reusable bidirectionally selectable markers. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:114–121

Steyaert JM, Weld RJ, Mendoza-Mendoza A, Stewart A (2010) Reproduction without sex: conidiation in the filamentous fungus *Trichoderma*. Microbiology 156:2887–2900

Stoppacher N, Zeilinger S, Omann M, Lassahn PG, Roitinger A, Krska R, Schuhmacher R (2008) Characterisation of the peptaibiome of the biocontrol fungus *Trichoderma atroviride* by liquid chromatography/tandem mass spectrometry. Rapid Commun Mass Spectrom 22:1889–1898

Stoppacher N, Kluger B, Zeilinger S, Krska R, Schuhmacher R (2010) Identification and profiling of volatile metabolites of the biocontrol fungus Trichoderma atroviride by HS-SPME-GC-MS. J Microbiol Methods 81:187–193

Stricker AR, Grosstessner-Hain K, Würleitner E, Mach RL (2006) Xyr1 (xylanase regulator 1) regulates both the hydrolytic enzyme system and D-xylose metabolism in *Hypocrea jecorina*. Eukaryot Cell 5:2128–2137

Suárez MB, Sanz L, Chamorro MI, Rey M, González FJ, Llobell A, Monte E (2006) Proteomic analysis of secreted proteins from *Trichoderma harzianum* identification of a fungal cell wall-induced aspartic protease. Fungal Genet Biol 42:924–934

Susi P, Aktuganov G, Himanen J, Korpela T (2011) Biological control of wood decay against fungal infection. J Environ Manage 92:1681–1689

Taylor JW, Jacobson DJ, Kroken S, Kasuga T, Geiser DM, Hibbett DS, Fisher MC (2000) Phylogenetic species recognition and species concepts in fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 31:21–32

Tejesvi MV, Mahesh B, Nalini MS, Prakash HS, Kini KR, Subbiah V, Shetty HS (2006) Fungal endophyte assemblages from ethnopharmaceutically important medicinal trees. Can J Microbiol 52:427–435

Tisch D, Kubicek CP, Schmoll M (2012) The phosducin-like protein PhLP1 impacts regulation of glycoside hydrolases and light response in *Trichoderma reesei*. BMC Genomics 12:613

Ueno Y (1985) The toxicology of mycotoxins. Crit Rev Toxicol 14:99–132

Vinale F, Sivasithamparam K, Ghisalberti EL, Marra R, Woo SL, Lorito M (2008) *Trichoderma*–-plant–pathogen interactions. Soil Biol Biochem 40:1–10

Viterbo A, Ramot O, Chemin L, Chet I (2002) Significance of lytic enzymes from *Trichoderma* spp in the biocontrol of fungal plant pathogens. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 81:549–556

Viterbo A, Harel M, Horwitz BA, Chet I, Mukherjee PK (2005) *Trichoderma* mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling is involved in induction of plant systemic resistance. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:6241–6246

Viterbo A, Wiest A, Brotman Y, Chet I, Kenerley CM (2007) The 18mer peptaibols from *Trichoderma virens* elicit plant defence responses. Mol Plant Pathol 8:737–746

Vitikainen M, Arvas M, Pakula T, Oja M, Penttilä M, Saloheimo M (2010) Array comparative genomic hybridization analysis of *Trichoderma reesei* strains with enhanced cellulase production properties. BMC Genomics 11:441

Walker T, Klasson L, Sebaihia M, Sanders MJ, Thomson NR, Parkhill J, Sinkins SP (2007) Ankyrin repeat domain-encoding genes in the wPip strain of Wolbachia from the Culex pipiens group. BMC Biol 5:39

Wannemacher RW, Winer SL (1977) Trichothecene mycotoxins. In: Sidell RR, Takafuji ET, Franz DR (eds) Medical aspects of chemical and biological warfare. Office of the Surgeon General at TMM Publications, Washington, DC, pp 655–676

Watts R, Dahiya J, Chaudhary K, Tauro P (1988) Isolation and characterization of a new antifungal metabolite of *Trichoderma reesei*. Plant Soil 107:81–84

Zeilinger S, Haller M, Mach R, Kubicek CP (2000) Molecular characterization of a cellulase-negative mutant of *Hypocrea jecorina*. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 277:581–588

Chapter 7
Fusarium oxysporum: A "Moving" View of Pathogenicity

Apratim Chakrabarti

7.1 Introduction

The genus *Fusarium* is a large, complex one, and the saying goes that if something is green, then there is some *Fusarium* growing on it, in it and with it. The diversity of hosts that *Fusarium* attacks, the number of pathogenic taxa and the range of habitats in which they cause disease are the greatest in plant pathology. This highly diverse genus contains some of the most notorious plant pathogens that affect agricultural and horticultural crop productions globally. Examples of havoc caused by this disease include near wipeout of the banana industry by *Fusarium* (Panama) wilt in the 1960s (Stover and Ploetz 1990) to recent outbreaks of *Fusarium* head scab in wheat (Kazan et al. 2012). Members of this genus are important human pathogens and is the second most important mould causing infections in immunocompromised patients, often with a lethal outcome (Ortoneda et al. 2004).

More than three centuries after the introduction of this genus, the great diversity present within *Fusaria* represents a formidable challenge for classifying its members into distinct species. Delineation depended on morphological features, biological species concepts and, more recently, phylogenetic studies involving polymorphisms in several gene sequences (Summerell et al. 2010; Taylor et al. 2000). Depending on the methods applied, the number of identified species ranged from 9 to over 1,000 (Leslie et al. 2006). At the time of writing this review, the Fusarium-ID database (http://isolate.fusariumdb.org/index.php) lists 76 distinct

A. Chakrabarti (✉)
Research School of Biology, Australian National University, Canberra, Australia

Office of the Gene Technology Regulator, Commonwealth Department of Health and Ageing, Canberra, Australia

Australian Centre for Necrotrophic Fungal Pathogens, Department of Environment and Agriculture, Curtin University, Perth, Australia
e-mail: apratim.chakrabarti@gmail.com

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_7,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

species of *Fusarium* based on sequence of the translation elongation factor 1 alpha (EF-1α) gene (Geiser et al. 2004).

The most significant development in *Fusarium* research in recent times has been the availability of whole genome sequences. In 2007, the *F. graminearum* genome sequence was first published (Cuomo et al. 2007b), and the Broad Institute released a comparative genomics database containing assembled and annotated whole genome sequences of *F. graminearum* (resequenced), *F. verticillioides* and *F. oxysporum* (http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/fusarium_group/MultiHome.html). Soon after, the *F. solani* (teleomorph *Nectria haematococca*) whole genome sequence became available (Coleman et al. 2009; http://genome.jgi-psf.org/Necha2/Necha2.home.html). Availability of these high-quality, assembled and annotated genome sequences has greatly facilitated both forward and reverse genetic approaches to identify pathogenicity genes, novel modes of plant–pathogen interaction as well as evolution of *Fusarium* species as a group.

This chapter will focus on the species complex *Fusarium oxysporum*, the most commonly studied group causing vascular wilt diseases in a large number of plants. *Fusarium oxysporum* is well represented amongst soilborne fungi and is present in all types of soil across the globe. While all the strains exist saprophytically, some are well known for their capabilities to infect and induce wilt in plants, while others are not pathogenic to crops from whose asymptomatic roots (or rhizospheres) they were isolated (Gordon and Martyn 1997). The disease-causing isolates have been of natural interest to plant pathologists, and more than 100 different crops have been identified as hosts to *F. oxysporum* (Dean et al. 2012). In contrast to this broad host range at the species level, host specificity exists at the forma specialis level. Designation of forma specialis is primarily a description of host-infection function of an isolate rather than a taxonomical one and geneological discordance and conflicting relation between different formae speciales have been observed when sequence data from translational elongation factor 1-α and ribosomal intergenic spacer region were analysed (O'Donnell et al. 2009). Isolates within a given forma specialis group infecting one particular plant species can be of single or multiple clonal lineage (mono- and polyphyletic) (O'Donnell et al. 1998; Skovgaard et al. 2001). With the help of molecular markers, it was shown that isolates from different formae speciales can be more closely related than isolates within a forma specialis (Fourie et al. 2009, 2011). This polyphyletic origin of isolates within a forma specialis suggests that pathogenicity has independently evolved several times. Given that *F. oxysporum* predominantly, if not exclusively, reproduces through asexual means, the origin of pathogenicity in *F. oxysporum* is highly intriguing.

At the sub-forma specialis level, isolates are classified into races based on cultivar specificity of the host genotype. This corresponds with the gene-for-gene hypothesis for host resistance and has been well documented in the case of tomato and *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Takken and Rep 2010). The other classification widely used at the sub-forma specialis level is vegetative compatibility group (VCG). Isolates that can form a stable heterokaryon when two hyphae are fused are grouped under the same VCG, while isolates that cannot do so are under different VCGs. VCG grouping can identify isolates that share common alleles at

the VCG determining loci. This does not necessarily imply that they share the same lineage (Leslie et al. 2006).

7.2 Plant Infection by *F. oxysporum*

F. oxysporum can survive in the soil for extended periods of time as chlamydospores and is notoriously difficult to eliminate once soil is infested (Agrios 2004). Despite the large number of plants infected by *F. oxysporum*, disease incidence and mechanisms of plant infection have been studied in a limited number of plant species, e.g. tomato, cotton, banana, melon, bean, chickpea and more recently *Arabidopsis thaliana*. The process of plant infection has been visualised using light, fluorescence, electron and multiphoton microscopy(Bishop and Cooper 1983, 1984; Czymmek et al. 2007; Lagopodi et al. 2002; Olivain and Alabouvette 1999; Olivain et al. 2006). Dormant *F. oxysporum* chlamydospores present in the soil germinate under favourable conditions and infect plants through their roots. Initially the hypha attaches itself on the root surface and grows along the junctions of epidermal cells to form a dense network intermingled with root hairs. Following surface colonisation, direct penetration of the epidermal cells takes place. Although penetration occurs primarily at root tips, penetrations at random positions along root hairs as well as in the meristematic zones of primary and lateral roots have all been reported. However, no specialised penetration structure has so far been observed. Following penetration, the fungus continues to grow both inter- and intracellularly through the cortex tissue until it reaches xylem vessels. Entry into xylem vessels occurs through pits, and the fungus switches to a distinctive vascular phase where it remains confined within the xylem vessels. At this stage, the fungus proliferates within the xylem vessel and pervades through production of microconidia that spread upwards with xylem sap flow (Fig. 7.1). In the pre-vascular and vascular stages, plants respond to fungal invasion through activation of defence response mechanisms which include production of callose deposition, accumulation of phenolics, formation of tyloses (outgrowths of adjoining xylem parenchyma cells through pits) and gels in infected cells (Beckman 2000; Beckman and Roberts 1995). Characteristic wilt symptoms appear as a result of severe water stress caused by fungal proliferation combined with host-defence responses. At later stages of infection, as the plant dies, the fungus switches from a biotrophic to a necrotrophic mode, invades the host parenchyma and sporulates profusely. The whole process is highly coordinated and involves recognition of the host root, penetration, suppression and/or evasion of host-defence responses, toxin production, sporulation and growth. Cell-wall-degrading enzymes, enzymatic detoxification of phytoalexins, signalling pathways through mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPK) and G-proteins, peroxisome function, multiple transcription factors and more recently effector

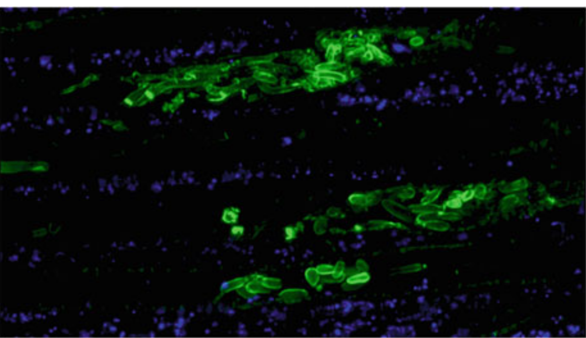


Fig. 7.1 *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* growing inside xylem cells of infected cotton stem (longitudinal section). The fungus was stained with FITC-conjugated wheat germ agglutinin and observed using epifluorescence microscopy

proteins have all been implicated in the process of plant infection (Di Pietro et al. 2003; Michielse and Rep 2009).

7.3 Sensing the Environment

The first and foremost critical step in plant infection is sensing stimuli from plants and responding with appropriate physiological and morphological changes. These responses include spore germination, directed hyphal growth, adhesion to plants, development of specialised infection structures and expression of lytic enzymes and involve or are accompanied by changes in gene expression patterns triggered through signalling pathways.

One environmental condition that *F. oxysporum*, like all other microorganisms, must adapt to for its growth and proliferation is external pH. It responds to external pH by tailoring expression of genes encoding proteins that are directly exposed to the environment such as permeases, secreted enzymes and intercellular enzymes involved in production of secreted toxins, antibiotics or compounds that can influence external pH. A key component for adaptation to extracellular pH is PacC, a Cys2-His2 zinc finger-type transcription factor (Peñalva et al. 2008). PacC has been studied in great detail in *Aspergillus nidulans* where it controls expression of number of genes including phosphatases, xylanase, GABA permease and genes involved in penicillin biosynthesis, siderophore biosynthesis and Li^+ tolerance. The *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* orthologue of the *A. nidulans* PacC protein regulates expression of both alkaline and acidic condition-responsive genes (Caracuel et al. 2003). The *PACC* gene itself is overexpressed under alkaline conditions and a loss-of-function mutation in *PACC* resulted in poor growth under alkaline condition, increased acid protease activity and overexpression of acid-induced polygalacturonase genes. In contrast, a gain-of-function mutation mimicked growth under alkaline conditions with increased alkaline protease activity and acid phosphatase levels (Caracuel et al. 2003). The *PACC* gene also negatively regulates pathogenesis and a *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* mutant

carrying a dominant activating allele was less virulent on tomato plants than the wild-type while loss of *PACC* function resulted in earlier induction of disease symptoms (Caracuel et al. 2003). This is possibly due to negative regulation of acid-expressed genes important for infection as spore germination, root attachment, colonisation of vascular tissue and invasive growth was unaffected for both loss- and gain-of-function mutants. In *F. graminearum*, production of trichothecene mycotoxins is induced by low pH and is negatively regulated by PacC (Gardiner et al. 2009; Merhej et al. 2012).

7.4 Signalling Pathways Involved in Pathogenesis

The environmental cues are widely perceived through membrane receptors and translated into signalling response pathways through the action of G-proteins (Bölker 1998; Hamm 1998; Marinissen and Gutkind 2001). G-proteins are heterotrimeric proteins of α, β and γ subunits. In the inactive state, the Gα subunit binds GDP and, upon perception of stimuli by G-protein coupled receptors, exchanges its bound GDP for GTP and dissociates from the Gβγ subunit. The free Gα:GTP and Gβγ subunits then activate distinct downstream effectors including enzymes (adenylyl cyclase, phospholipases, phosphodiesterases and protein kinases), ion channels and small GTPases, thus regulating multiple signalling pathways and playing crucial roles in vegetative growth, sporulation, mating and virulence in fungi (Bölker 1998).

Fungal Gα proteins are grouped into three classes. The gene *FGA1* encoding α subunit of class I G-proteins has been cloned and characterised in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *cucumerium* (Jain et al. 2002). Disruption of this gene had no appreciable effects on hyphal growth, but colony morphology was altered and the *FGA1* mutants produced approximately half the number of conidia as compared to the wild type. When cucumber plants were challenged, disease development and severity of the disease was significantly delayed in the case of the disruption mutant as compared to the wild type. Cyclic AMP (cAMP) level was also reduced in the mutants to approximately 65 % of the wild type which suggests that Gα protein of *F. oxysporum*, unlike its mammalian counterpart, positively controls cAMP levels (Jain et al. 2002). In comparison, disruption of the α protein subunit of class III G-protein (Fga2) resulted in complete loss of pathogenicity, but growth, colony morphology and conidiation was unaltered (Jain et al. 2005). The *FGA1*/*FGA2* double mutants had phenotype characteristics of either *FGA1* or *FGA2* mutants, except heat survival of bud cells in double mutants was significantly increased over the single mutants which were more resistant than the wild type (Jain et al. 2002, 2005). These observations suggest presence of two different signalling pathways for Fga1 and Fga2 possibly involving cAMP. When the gene for G-protein β-subunit (Fgb1) was disrupted, the mutant showed characteristics similar to the *FGA1* disruption mutant (Jain et al. 2003). In the mutant, hyphal growth remained unaltered, colony morphology was affected, conidia production was reduced, heat resistance was better and both cellular cAMP

and pathogenicity were reduced. While this shows that Fga1 and Fgb1 have partially overlapping functions and both positively regulate cAMP homeostasis, addition of extracellular cAMP could not restore phenotypic effects observed in the case of the *FGB1* mutant suggesting participation of Fgb1 in more than one signalling pathways that are not regulated by cAMP (Jain et al. 2003). The *FGB1* gene has also been studied in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* where it regulates polarised hyphal growth, hyphal branching, microconidiation as well as virulence on tomato plants and fruits (Delgado-Jarana et al. 2005). However, in this instance, two of the altered phenotypes, hyper-elongation and reduced subapical branching could be reversed by addition of cAMP.

Another well-conserved signalling pathway that plays critical role in plant pathogenesis and infection-related morphogenesis in fungi is mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK) pathway. MAPKs are a family of serine/threonine kinases that are activated in response to environmental stimuli through a cascade of kinases (MAPK kinase and MAPK kinase kinase) eventually resulting in regulation of downstream transcription factors and target gene expression. In *F. oxysporum* the *FMK1* gene, encoding a member of the YERK1 (yeast extracellular signal-regulated kinase 1) MAPK family, controls several key steps in pathogenesis (Di Pietro et al. 2001, 2003). A disruption mutant of the *FMK1* gene in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* failed to infect tomato plants and could not macerate tomato fruit tissue when microconidial suspension was injected into fruit tissue (Di Pietro et al. 2001). Expression of the pectate lyase genes was severely compromised in the *FMK1* mutant. In contrast, expression of endo- or exo-polygalacturonase genes was hardly affected, and hyphal growth or conidiation on potato dextrose agar in the mutant was similar to the wild type. On further examination, it was found that conidia from the *FMK1* mutant failed to germinate into germ tubes and attachment to root surface could not be established. Fmk1 is also needed for fungal hyphal fusion (Prados Rosales and Di Pietro 2008). However, phosphorylation status of Fmk1 remains unaltered in the *FGB1* mutant, and the *FGB1* mutant shows reduced virulence, while the *FMK1* mutant is totally avirulent suggesting these two proteins function in independent pathways. How these signalling cascades regulate virulence is not clear.

One upstream protein of the MAPK pathway is the transmembrane protein Msb2 which carries a large extracellular glycosylated mucin homology domain and a short cytoplasmic region (Cullen et al. 2004; Perez-Nadales and Di Pietro 2011). Msb2 is expressed at high levels at early stages of infection and regulates expression of two genes, *FRP1* and a class V chitin synthase gene that are transcriptionally activated by the MAPK cascade (Perez-Nadales and Di Pietro 2011). Msb2 is also required for contact-induced phosphorylation of the MAPK Fmk1. The Δ*msb2* gene knock-out mutants showed impaired root penetration, pectinolytic activity and invasive growth on tomato fruits, but at lesser extent, than the Δ*fmk1* or the Δ*msb2*Δ*fmk2* double mutants which suggests Msb2 contributes to Fmk1-mediated pathogenesis (Perez-Nadales and Di Pietro 2011). Msb2 also contributes additively to Fmk1 regulation of hyphal growth under nitrogen starvation conditions but does not affect hyphal fusion (Perez-Nadales and Di Pietro 2011). These observations indicate that Msb2 may not act exclusively as upstream component of the Fmk1

MAPK cascade or other upstream components exists and there is significant crosstalk amongst those components and MAPK pathways. Further research will be required to define role of Msb2 in signalling through various MAPK cascades, signalling partners as well as factors downstream of MAPK pathways that regulate pathogenesis in *F. oxysporum*.

In yeast, the homeodomain transcription factor Ste12 functions downstream of the MAPKs Fus3 and Kss1 (Rispail and Di Pietro 2009, 2010a). The Ste12 protein is activated by Fus3 and Kss1 and controls mating, filamentous and invasive growth. The *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* homologue of Ste12 is required for surface penetration (judged by observation of development on cellophane membranes), invasive growth on tomato fruit tissue and disease incidence in whole plants. It is not, however, essential for hyphal fusion, surface adhesion on plant roots or expression of pectinolytic enzymes (Rispail and Di Pietro 2009). This gene is upregulated in planta at early stages of infection in highly virulent strains of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *phaseoli* as well as by nitrogen starvation. However, in contrast to *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, disruption of the *STE12* gene in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *phaseoli* only delayed development of disease symptoms, but not severity. It has been proposed that difference in organic and inorganic nitrogen status within the xylem vessels of legume and the non-legume plant system under study may account for this difference.

The other signalling gene that has been implicated in virulence in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* is a two-component histidine kinase (Rispail and Di Pietro 2010b). In yeast, histidine kinase Sln1 acts as a sensor protein upstream of the osmoregulator MAPK Hog1 (Rispail and Di Pietro 2010a). The *F. oxysporum* orthologue of the *SLN1* gene, *FHK1*, is similarly required for adaptation to hyperosmotic stress (Rispail and Di Pietro 2010b). The Δ*fhk1* mutant is more sensitive to oxidative stress and demonstrated significant delay in symptom development as compared to the wild type. However unlike Δ*fmk1* or Δ*fmk1*Δ*fhk1* double mutant, deletion of only the *FHK1* gene did not impair cellophane penetration or colonisation of host tissue in the mutant. This suggests that Fhk1 contributes to plant virulence independent of Fmk1 (Rispail and Di Pietro 2010b). Opposing roles of Fmk1 and Fhk1 in response to oxidative stress and additive roles in response to hyperosmotic stress were also noted in this study. It is possible that MAPK pathways in *F. oxysporum* are involved in more than one response pathway and they possibly crosstalk.

Nutrient status of the surrounding environment is also a crucial factor in a pathogenic life style, and nutrient stress plays a crucial role in pathogenicity. In particular, nitrogen limitation has often been linked with expression of pathogenicity genes, in a number of fungi (Bolton and Thomma 2008; Snoeijers et al. 2000). Generally ammonium nitrogen is preferred as a source of nitrogen over less available sources like nitrate. The nature of available nitrogen regulates nitrogen assimilation through nitrogen catabolite repression. Genes needed for nitrogen utilisation are downregulated in the presence of a preferred source. This control is achieved through a GATA-binding zinc-finger transcription factor, AreA in *Aspergillus nidulans* and Nit2 in *Neurospora crassa*, which functions as a transcriptional

activator of genes involved in uptake and utilisation of secondary nitrogen sources (Schure et al. 2006). In response to ammonium, AreA transcription is downregulated and also its co-repressor NmrA binds to AreA to alter its DNA-binding activity, resulting in nitrogen catabolite repression. In *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, the AreA orthologue Fnr1 is present at a basal level in hyphae growing on nitrate and is overexpressed when ammonia or glutamine is the source of nitrogen (Divon et al. 2006). Growth of *FNR1* gene-disruption mutants was restricted on nitrate-containing media, and their ability to utilise a number of secondary sources of nitrogen was impaired (Divon et al. 2006). In the *FNR1* disruption mutant, transcripts of genes that are involved in in planta acquisition of nitrogen, e.g. general amino acid permease (*GAP1*), peptide transporter (*MTD1*) and uricase, were detected at a lower level. Moreover, nitrate-induced expression of nitrate reductase (*NIT1*) and nitrite reductase (*NII1*) genes was not detected in the Δ*fnr1*/*AREA* null mutant, which suggests that Fnr1/AreA activates nitrogen catabolism genes in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Divon et al. 2006; Lopez-Berges et al. 2010).

Apart from its role as transcriptional activator of nitrogen catabolism genes, Fnr1/AreA is also involved in ammonium suppression of plant infection by *F. oxysporum*. A delay in symptom development was observed in *F. oxysporum*-infected plants growing on ammonium nitrate, but not sodium nitrate, suggesting ammonium negatively regulates plant infection (Lopez-Berges et al. 2010). Ammonium also negatively regulates various infection-related phenomena like cellophane penetration, fusion of vegetative hyphae or root adhesion. This ammonium suppression of development leading to plant infection is mediated through MeaB protein in *A. nidulans* (Wong et al. 2007). MeaB is a negative regulator of AreA and functions by activating transcription of the AreA co-suppressor protein NmrA. However, contrary to what might be expected, this suppression in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* is not achieved through Fnr1/AreA. Instead, Fnr1/AreA acts as an independent suppressor of cellophane penetration, hyphal fusion and root adhesion (Lopez-Berges et al. 2010). Ammonium suppression of the plant infection was only partially relieved in the Δ*fnr1*/*AREA* mutant. Fnr1/AreA is also required for ammonium-driven downregulation of *STE12* expression. Together these observations strongly suggest that Fnr1/AreA in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* serves a dual role; it acts as an activator of nitrogen catabolism genes and as a repressor of nitrogen-regulated virulence functions (Lopez-Berges et al. 2010). A similar loss of severity of disease symptoms and lower expression of pathogenicity genes have been reported in AreA/Nut1^{-} mutant in *Magnaporthe grisea* (Soanes et al. 2002). In *Cladosporium fulvum*, however, disruption of the GATA-binding nitrogen response factor gene *NRF1* did not affect virulence (Pérez-García et al. 2001).

Another protein that is involved in nitrogen regulation of virulence functions in *F. oxysporum* is the serine/threonine kinase TOR (target of rapamycin). TOR is a key player in the nutrient response pathway in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, and inhibition of TOR by rapamycin mimics nitrogen stress. In *F. fujikuroi*, blocking TOR function resulted in perturbation of expression of number of AreA-regulated

genes (Teichert et al. 2006). TOR inhibition in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* resulted in reversion of glutamine-induced suppression of cellophane penetration, hyphal fusion, root adhesion and de-repression of nitrogen catabolism genes (Lopez-Berges et al. 2010). Role of TOR in nitrogen catabolite repression is not dependent on MeaB but possibly exerted through inhibition of Fnr1/AreA.

7.5 Breaking Barriers at the Gate

While invading plants, pathogenic fungi must breach through physical barriers like the plant cell wall. Primary components of plant cell walls are polysaccharides like cellulose, hemicellulose and pectin; pectic (homogalacturonan and rhamnogalacturonan) and hemicellulosic polysaccharides (xyloglucans, glucomannans, xylans and mixed-linkage glucans) form a matrix. The matrix embeds cellulose microfibrils as well as number of cell-wall proteins. While fungi like *M. oryzae* and *Ustilago maydis* use specialised structures like appressoria and penetration pegs to puncture through (Tucker and Talbot 2001), lack of such specialised structures in *F. oxysporum* has always been an important factor in linking penetration with plant cell-wall-degrading enzymes. Enzymes like exo- and endopolygalacturonases, endo-xylanase and pectate lyase have been purified, characterised, cloned and their roles in plant pathogenesis studied (Di Pietro et al. 2003; Di Pietro and Roncero 1996a, b, 1998, 2006; Garcıća Maceira et al. 1997, 2001; Gomez-Gomez et al. 2001, 2002). A general theme that came out of these studies was that disruption of the CWDE genes individually did not have any detectable effect on virulence, possibly because of functional redundancy (Di Pietro et al. 2003; Michielse and Rep 2009). Many of these CWDE genes are regulated in a concerted manner and are subjected to glucose catabolite repression. For example, the xylanase encoding genes *XYL2*, *XYL3*, *XYL4* and *XYL5* were induced in presence of oat-spelt xylan and tomato vascular tissue but were suppressed by simple sugars like glucose, xylose or arabinose in the media (Gomez-Gomez et al. 2001, 2002). A transcription factor that acts as a common positive regulator of xylanase genes, XlnR, has been identified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Calero-Nieto et al. 2007, 2008). A null mutant of the XlnR regulator was impaired in expression of all the three (*XYL2*, *XYL3* and *XYL4*) genes, but disease induction on tomato plant was not affected (Calero-Nieto et al. 2007). However, this mutant was able to grow on xylan as sole carbon source indicating either residual xylanase activity is sufficient for breaking down plant cell walls or there could be yet undiscovered xylanase genes.

The *SNF1* (sucrose non-fermenting) gene, which codes for a protein kinase, is essential for de-repression of a battery of genes and invasive growth repressed by glucose in *S. cerevisiae* (Palecek et al. 2002; Young et al. 2012). A mutant of the *SNF1* gene in *F. oxysporum* exhibited restricted growth on complex carbon sources and expression of exo- and endopolygalacturonase and pectate lyase genes was substantially lower than in the wild-type pathogen under de-repressive conditions

(Ospina-Giraldo et al. 2003). The *SNF1* mutants were also less virulent on *A. thaliana* and cabbage plants, possibly as a result of less effective cell-wall penetration. However, this could also be due to impaired ability of the mutants to grow on complex carbon sources as symptom development was also delayed on plants where roots were cut to facilitate entry.

Two other proteins that play a role in glucose repression of CDWE are Frp1 and Cre1 (Jonkers and Rep 2009a; Jonkers et al. 2009). The Frp1 protein belongs to the family of F-box proteins that form the SCF (Skp1–Cullin–F-box protein) complex involved in ubiquitination and subsequent degradation of target proteins (Jonkers and Rep 2009b). F-box proteins bind specific substrates destined for ubiquitination and link them to the SCF complex by binding Skp1 through their F-box motifs. The Frp1 protein was first identified as a protein required for pathogenesis in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* through insertional mutagenesis experiments (Duyvesteijn et al. 2005). Reduced virulence of the Δ*frp1* mutant on tomato plants was related to its inability to penetrate tomato roots possibly due to reduced expression of several CWDE genes including *XYL2*, *XYL3*, *XYL5*, *PG1* (endo-polygalacturonase), *PL1* (pectate lyase) and *ARA1* (arabinase) (Jonkers et al. 2009). Interestingly, expression of the XlnR regulator protein was not affected in the mutant, suggesting that deletion of the Frp1 protein resulted in permanent repression of the CWDE genes. The Δ*frp1* mutant also failed to grow normally on a number of complex sugar sources like organic acids, sugar alcohols and polysaccharides. These growth defects are attributed to severely reduced expression of the isocitrate lyase enzyme (*ICL1*) (Jonkers et al. 2009).

Attempts to generate a Δ*cre*A knock-out mutant in wild type or in Δ*frp*1 background was not successful, but when a N-terminal GST fusion with CreA replaced wild-type CreA, the mutants behaved similar to Δ*cre*A mutants in *Aspergillus nidulans* and *Neurospora crassa* and wild-type colony morphology could be restored by ectopic overexpression of wild-type CreA in the GST:CreA mutants (Jonkers and Rep 2009a). Expression of the *ICL1*, *ARA1* and *XYL2* genes was restored in this GST:CreA mutant in the Δ*frp1* background (Jonkers and Rep 2009a). Accompanying these changes, the ability to grow on complex sugar sources and infect plants was also restored in the ΔFrp1/GST:CreA mutant. In *A. nidulans* a number of genes expressed during growth on glucose and ethanol and regulated by CreA and Ara1, and *XLY2* genes from *F. oxysporum* contain potential CreA binding sites in their promoter regions (Jonkers and Rep 2009a). How Frp1 and CreA function together in regulating carbon catabolite repression is currently unclear.

While the fungus tries to breach through the plant cell wall using the CWDEs, integrity of its own cell wall is also equally important for successful invasion. An important structural component of cell wall of filamentous fungi is chitin. Chitin synthases which catalyse chitin chain formation are integral membrane proteins that play essential roles in hyphal growth and differentiation (Roncero 2002). There are several structural classes of chitin synthase, and representatives of classes I–V and VII have been identified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Madrid et al. 2003; Martin-Udiroz et al. 2004, 2008). Targeted disruption of the *CHSV* gene rendered the fungus sensitive to tomato root extracts and in particular to the plant's defence

compounds H_2O_2 and α-tomatine (Madrid et al. 2003). The mutant exhibited some evidence of hyphal lysis and balloon-like swellings that are densely stained by the chitin-binding dye calcofluor white. These abnormalities could be reversed by addition of osmoprotectant to the growth media. All of these observations strongly indicate that the cell-wall integrity of the fungus is affected in the deletion mutant. Similar defects in cell-wall structure were documented in the gene-deletion mutant of the *CHSVb* gene, a class VII chitin synthase, although unlike the Δ*chsV* mutant some of these effects could not be reversed by addition of sorbitol into media (Martinez-Rocha et al. 2008). Also, inter-hyphal septa were observed in the Δ*chsVb*, but not the Δ*chsV* mutant indicating *CHSV* and *CHSVb* play somewhat different roles in hyphal morphogenesis. Both of these gene-disruption mutants were severely compromised in plant infection. Plants inoculated with these mutants did not show any wilt symptoms and remained as healthy as mock-inoculated plants (Madrid et al. 2003; Martinez-Rocha et al. 2008). Null mutants of the *CHS1* and *CHS7* genes were reduced in virulence and were more sensitive to SDS, but hyphal lysis, or sensitivity towards calcofluor white were like wild-type strains (Martin-Udiroz et al. 2004). An association of chitin synthases and virulence in plants is well documented in fungal pathosystems (Lenardon et al. 2010). Disrupted cell-wall structures may lead to early leakage of fungal cell components triggering an early defence response from plants and/or render these mutants more susceptible to plant antimicrobial defence compounds. Interestingly, promoter regions of the *CHS2*, *CHS3*, *CHS7* and *CHSV* genes have a stress-response element binding site. It is possible that chitin synthase genes function to maintain cell-wall integrity in response to plant defence compounds and are thus an important part of pathogenesis (Madrid et al. 2003; Martin-Udiroz et al. 2004, 2008). In line with this suggestion, it was observed that deletion of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici gas1* gene encoding the glucan-processing enzyme, β-1,3-glucanosyl transferase, resulted in substantially reduced virulence towards tomato plants(Caracuel et al. 2005). However, at the same time, the deletion mutants were more resistant to cell-wall-degrading enzymes. The null mutant also exhibited increased expression of *CHSV* and a Rho-type GTPase gene that acts as a master regulator of cell-wall integrity (Caracuel et al. 2005; Levin 2005). The exact role of *GAS1* in pathogenesis remains to be determined. Loss of virulence in the null mutants can be explained by possible defects in host surface recognition, hyphal morphogenesis or increased secretion of potent plant defence elicitors like β-1,3-glucan- and β-1,6-glucan-protein complexes as reported for *GAS1* deletion mutants in yeast (Kapteyn et al. 1997). Targeted disruption of the *RHO1* gene in *F. oxysporum* also resulted in alterations of cell-wall structures, changes in chitin and glucan synthase enzymatic activities and reduced virulence on tomato plants (Martinez-Rocha et al. 2008). In summary all these observations underline the importance of fungal cell-wall architecture and morphogenesis in plant infection.

7.6 Coping with Plant Defence Compounds

Apart from the structural barriers to pathogen entry, plants employ variety of secondary metabolites and pathogenesis-related proteins many of which have antifungal activities. One such secondary metabolite present in tomato plants is α-tomatine, a glycosylated terpenoid phytotoxin with soap-like property (saponins) that can induce apoptotic cell death in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Ito et al. 2007). *Fusarium oxysporum*, like many other pathogenic fungi, detoxifies this terpenoid glycoalkaloid using the glycosyl hydrolase enzyme tomatinase (Lairini et al. 1996), and hydrolysis products can suppress induced defence responses in the plant (Ito et al. 2004). One tomatinase gene *TOM1* encoding a family 10 glycosyl hydrolase enzyme has been cloned and characterised from *F. oxysporum* f. sp. l*ycopersici* (Roldan-Arjona et al. 1999). This gene is induced by tomatine and expressed in planta throughout the disease cycle (Roldan-Arjona et al. 1999). Partial silencing of this gene in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* resulted in reduced virulence on tomato (Ito et al. 2002). On solid media containing α-tomatine, growth of a Δ*tom1* mutant was reduced as compared to wild type, and the null mutant was also delayed in symptom development (Pareja-Jaime et al. 2008) confirming tomatinase activity is required for full virulence. In contrast, symptom development and death were hastened for plants infected with a constitutively *TOM1* overexpressing line (Pareja-Jaime et al. 2008). However, some residual tomatinase activity was detected in the Δ*tom1* null mutant. This is possibly due to presence of four more putative tomatinase genes with high homology to glycosyl hydrolase family 3 genes in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, two of which, *Tom2* and *Tom5*, are expressed in the null mutant (Pareja-Jaime et al. 2008).

The other class of chemicals plants employ in their defence are phenolic compounds like flavonoids, anthocyanins, phytoalexins, tannins, lignin and furanocoumarins. While phenolic compounds can act as precursors of physical defence system (e.g. lignification) or antimicrobial/antifungal agents, pathogens can not only detoxify them but also can exploit these chemicals as cues for host recognition and/or source of nutrients. One way for *F. oxysporum* to deal with plant phenolics is oxidising them through the action of laccase, a copper-containing enzyme that has been implicated in morphogenesis, interaction with host, defence and lignin degradation in fungi (Thurston 1994). So far, six laccase genes, *LCC1–5* and *LCC9* have been isolated from *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Canero and Roncero 2008a). Of these, expression of *LCC3* and *LCC5* is pH dependent and appears to be regulated by the pH-responsive transcription factor PacC, whereas *LCC1*, *LCC3* and *LCC9* are differentially expressed during plant infection. However, although disruption mutants of the *LCC1*, *LCC3* and *LCC5* genes were more sensitive to oxidative stress and phenolic compounds that can act as defence chemicals and/or lignin precursors, they were as pathogenic as the wild type (mutants for *LCC2*, *LCC4* and *LCC9* could not be generated) (Canero and Roncero 2008a). In contrast, a mutant of the chloride channel gene *CLC1* was more sensitive to oxidative stress, had reduced laccase activity and was delayed in disease

symptom development (Canero and Roncero 2008b). This could be due to requirement of the chloride channel for effective loading of copper, an allosteric effector of laccase enzymes. Thus, while not essential individually, cumulative laccase activity may contribute towards fungal virulence.

Lignin breakdown products are further metabolised by soil microbes through the β-ketoadipate pathway (Harwood and Parales 1996). Through this pathway, lignin monomers generated through oxidative depolymerisation by peroxidases and laccases along with other aromatic carbohydrates and amino aromatics are converted to protocatechuate or catechol and finally to β-ketoadipate. Additional enzymatic steps then covert β-ketoadipate into TCA cycle intermediates succinyl CoA and acetyl CoA. In a random insertional mutagenesis experiment, two genes coding for catechol dioxygenase and carboxy-cis,cis-muconate cyclase enzymes of the β-ketoadipate pathway were identified as pathogenicity genes for *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Michielse et al. 2009a). The carboxy-cis,cis-muconate cyclase (*CMLE1*) gene-deletion mutant failed to develop any wilt symptom in tomato plants verifying importance of this enzyme in plant infection (Michielse et al. 2012). This enzyme was also essential for growth on number of aromatic compounds, e.g. ferulic acid, coumaric acid, vanillic acid and cinnamic acid as well as on lignin. Coumaric, vanillic and cinnamic acid can have an inhibitory effect of growth and germination of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *niveum* (Wu et al. 2008a, b, c), and coumaric acid at high doses of 100 mg/L could reduce germination frequency in the Δ*cmle1* mutant of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Michielse et al. 2012). The CMLE enzyme is required for in planta pathogen growth, but not for spore germination and root colonisation. This implies that the loss of pathogenicity in the Δ*cmle1* mutant could be due its inability to catabolise lignin and its breakdown products. Toxic effects of various plant phenolics could also contribute to this loss of pathogenicity in this mutant.

7.7 Fighting Back: Toxin Production

Fusarium species produce an array of secondary metabolites with equally diverse mode of biosynthesis and function. Many of these secondary metabolites are toxic to other organisms. In particular, fumonisins and trichothecenes are of great concern due to their presence in *Fusarium*-infected cereals. While *F. verticillioides* and *F. graminearum* gained worldwide importance as producers of these two mycotoxins, *F. oxysporum* also produces number of secondary metabolites (Luz et al. 1990), and the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome contains 12 clusters of genes predicted to be involved in secondary metabolite production (Ma et al. 2010). While information on the role of individual metabolites or genes is limiting, *F. oxysporum* culture filtrates and in particular fusaric acid have been extensively used to screen for plants resistant to *Fusarium* wilt (Bulk 1991; Matsumoto et al. 1995; Vu et al. 2004).

In fungi, the velvet family of regulatory proteins regulate secondary metabolite production and coordinate it with light response and morphological differentiation (Bayram and Braus 2012). Members of the velvet family interact with each other and also with LaeA, a regulator protein of secondary metabolism (Bayram and Braus 2012; Bayram et al. 2008). In *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, the first clue to involvement of the velvet complex came through transposon mutagenesis experiments. A loss-of-virulence mutant in which a transposon element was inserted in a gene with homology to VelB of *A. nidulans* was identified (Lopez-Berges et al. 2009). *F. oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici* homologues of *veA*, *velC* and *laeA* have been isolated and demonstrated to have regulatory roles in hyphal development, conidiation and light response (Lopez-Berges et al. 2013). The velvet complex also regulates transcription of two nonribosomal peptide synthetase genes involved in production of the siderophores ferricrocin and triacetyl fusarinine C, two genes for biosynthesis of the mycotoxin beauvericin and an ABC transporter (Lopez-Berges et al. 2013). Concordant with their roles, production of beauvericin was reduced in the deletion mutants of the *VEA*, *VELB* and *LAEA* genes. The *VEA* and *VELB* genes, but not *VELC*, also contribute towards virulence towards tomato plants as significantly lesser number of plants died when challenged with Δ*veA* and Δ*velB* mutants, whereas the Δ*velC* mutant was as virulent as the wild type. The Δ*laeA* mutant was even less virulent and was affected in colonisation of stems at later stages of infection. VeA and LaeA are also required for successful infection of immunodepressed mice. This reduced pathogenicity on both plant and mammalian hosts was attributed to attenuated production of the mycotoxin beauvericin (Lopez-Berges et al. 2013).

7.8 Effector Proteins

One of the most exciting recent developments in the field of *Fusarium* wilt research has been the discovery of disease effector proteins produced by *Fusarium oxysporum*. Effectors are small proteins or molecules that alter host cells and function to promote pathogen growth. They may or may not elicit host-defence responses (Ellis et al. 2009; Hogenhout et al. 2009). At times an effector protein is recognised by corresponding plant resistance proteins and triggers defence mechanisms in plants. Such effectors are classically defined as avirulence proteins (Hogenhout et al. 2009). While effector proteins have been detected in a number of forma specialis of *Fusarium oxysporum*, their role in virulence to plants has only been demonstrated for a limited few.

Fusarium effectors were first described in the model wilt pathogen *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* as proteins secreted in the xylem (SIX) of infected tomato plants (Rep et al. 2004). So far, 11 SIX proteins have been described (Houterman et al. 2008; Lievens et al. 2009; Rep et al. 2004; Takken and Rep 2010), and the number is likely to increase (Martijn Rep, personal communication). SIX1, the founder member of these secreted proteins, is a small cysteine-rich protein that is

required for full virulence towards tomato (Rep et al. 2004). SIX1 is expressed specifically at early stages of infection, and using a GFP reporter gene fused with the *SIX1* promoter, it was demonstrated that the *SIX1* promoter is specifically induced upon entry into roots and only on living, but not dead plant material (van der Does et al. 2008). This induction was also observed in the presence of cultured cells as well as non-host cells, although only a fraction of the hyphae expressed GFP under these conditions. In tomato, the SIX1 protein is recognised by the I-3 resistance protein. However, absence or mutations in the *SIX1* gene do not always correlate with virulence on *I-3* tomato plants and led to the idea that I-3/SIX1 (Avr3)-dependent resistance can be suppressed by other effector proteins (Rep et al. 2005). Such a suppressive function is indeed played by SIX4/Avr1 protein which is present only in race 1 isolates and recognised by the tomato I and I-1 resistance proteins (Houterman et al. 2008). SIX4/Avr1 can also suppress the tomato *I-2* gene-mediated resistance, but is not needed for full virulence. The *I-2* gene-mediated resistance is triggered in response to the SIX3/Avr2 effector protein from *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* race 2 (Houterman et al. 2009). SIX3/Avr2 is also required for full virulence on susceptible tomato plants (lack *I-2* genes), and functional mutants of the SIX3/Avr2 proteins can evade their detection by I-2, thus breaking the I-2-mediated resistance. This deployment of various resistance genes by tomato and emergence of strategies in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* for continued virulence on tomato fits well into the current zigzag model of plant-pathogen co-evolution (Jones and Dangl 2006; Takken and Rep 2010).

Discovery of these effector proteins in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* prompted search for similar effectors in other formae speciales of *Fusarium*. Among the SIX proteins tested so far, SIX6 is the most widely distributed and was found in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* (cotton wilt), *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *niveum* (watermelon wilt), *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *radicis-cucumerinum* (crown and root rot of cucurbits), *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *melonis* (muskmelon wilt) and *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *passiflorae* (passion fruit wilt) among the 26 formae speciales screened in two different studies (Chakrabarti et al. 2011; Lievens et al. 2009). In *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum*, the *SIX6* gene was detected in pathogenic isolates from two different VCGs but was absent from closely related non-pathogenic *F. oxysporum* isolates collected from cultivated cotton fields (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). This wide occurrence, along with loss of virulence in Δ*six6* mutants of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Martijn Rep, personal communication), suggests a general role for SIX6 in pathogenesis. Paradoxically, SIX6 was detected only in the Australian isolates of *Fov* and was absent from all the non-Australian isolates tested (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). It is possible that Australian isolates of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum*, which are phylogenetically distinct from the overseas isolates, uniquely employ SIX6 in infecting the cotton plants (Chakrabarti et al. 2011).

SIX6 also shows an extraordinary pattern of sequence variation between different formae speciales. All of the SIX6 proteins are 214/215 amino acids long and have conserved cysteine residues most likely involved in disulphide-bond formation (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). Most of the *Fov*-SIX6 protein shows high sequence identity with the other SIX6 proteins, but there is a 48-amino-acid region of high

sequence divergence (only 35 % sequence identity) which includes a stretch of 14 amino acids with no sequence identity to *Fol*-SIX6. On the N-terminal side of this 48-amino-acid region, *Fov*-SIX6 shows complete identity with *Fol*-SIX6 and an 89 % identity on the C-terminal side. In contrast to *Fov*-SIX6, the SIX6 proteins from other subspecies have fewer variant residues compared to *Fol*-SIX6, and these are more evenly distributed. It is likely that the conserved cysteine residues are important for structural integrity while intervening residues are involved in effector function and have evolved to avoid detection or acquire a novel virulence function. Intriguingly, the 14 divergent residues in *Fov*-SIX6 are flanked by cysteine residues and so probably form a variant protein loop anchored at either end by disulphide bonds. The *Fov*-SIX6 and *Fol*-SIX6 proteins therefore offer a unique opportunity to compare both protein structure and function in different pathosystems.

Recently SIX1, SIX4, SIX8 and SIX9 homologues have been detected in the genome of the *Arabidopsis*-infecting *F. oxysporum* isolate *Fo*5176 (Thatcher et al. 2012). Conservation at the amino acid sequence level between the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* effectors and their *Fo*5167 counterparts varied from 65 % (SIX9) to near identity (SIX4). The *Fo5176-SIX4* gene is highly expressed during plant infection, and deletion of this gene resulted in loss of virulence (Thatcher et al. 2012). A positive role of *Fo*5176-SIX4 effectors was also demonstrated by increased susceptibility of Arabidopsis plants expressing *Fo5176-SIX4*. Jasmonic acid response genes were also downregulated in the deletion mutant. Jasmonic acid response plays a significant role in wilt disease development in *Arabidopsis*, and it has been proposed that *Fusarium oxysporum* promotes jasmonate signalling to induce host susceptibility (Kidd et al. 2009; Thatcher et al. 2009). Thus, the *Fo5176*-SIX4 protein may function through activation of jasmonate signalling pathways. However, other *Fusarium* proteins must be involved as activation of the jasmonate signalling pathway was not observed in *Arabidopsis* plants expressing *Fo5176*-SIX4 (Thatcher et al. 2012).

Similar attempts were made to identify effector proteins in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense*, and genes with homology to *Fol*-SIX1 were detected in all pathogenic races of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *cubense*, whereas SIX7 and SIX8 homologues were detected only in the race 4 isolates (Meldrum et al. 2012). However, in no case full-length genes have been isolated, nor have their functions been studied.

In the cotton *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* system, microarray experiments detected more than 2,100 genes that are expressed during plant infection under tissue culture conditions (Dowd et al. 2004; McFadden et al. 2006). Bioinformatic analysis of these differentially expressed genes identified 30 genes encoding SIX-like proteins (cysteine-rich secreted proteins) for which homologues were present in the *Fusarium* database but no function was predicted (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). An additional 31 genes encoding similar cysteine-rich secreted proteins were detected for which no similar genes could be found in any databases (potentially cotton or *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* genes). These 61 genes were further tested for their presence or absence in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* isolates and related non-pathogenic *F. oxysporum* isolates collected from cultivated cotton fields. Two putative effector protein genes, *PEP1* and *PEP2*, were detected only

in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* isolates, but not in the non-pathogens (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). *PEP1* encodes a 270-amino-acid protein with eight cysteines, and a homologue of *PEP1* interrupted by a transposon is present in the chromosome 14 of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (pathogenicity chromosome; see later). *PEP1* appears to be an intact expressed gene and member of a small gene family. PEP2 encodes an 86-amino-acid protein and was absent in non-Australian isolates of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*. However, sequences similar to *PEP1* and *PEP2* genes could be detected in *F. oxysporum* isolates collected from native Australian *Gossypium* spp. (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). Whether PEP1 and PEP2 are true effectors and if so, their role in pathogenesis remains to be established.

7.9 Transcription Factors

Generally pathogenicity genes are defined as genes that are unnecessary for vegetative growth but required for plant infection. It is only natural that expression of the pathogenicity genes will be controlled by transcription factors in response to physical, physiological or environmental cues. There are almost 900 putative transcription factors identified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* with a preponderance of fungal specific Zn2Cys6-type transcription regulators (Ma et al. 2010). Not surprisingly, two such transcription factors, Fow2 and Sge1, were identified as pathogenicity genes in random mutagenesis experiments (Imazaki et al. 2007; Michielse et al. 2009b). Fow2 is a Zn2Cys6-type transcription factor identified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *melonis* as essential for plant infection but dispensable for hyphal growth on complete media, conidiation and utilisation of 95 different carbon sources (Imazaki et al. 2007). Initial stages of infection like spore germination and root attachment were unaffected in the Δ*fow2* mutant, but the mutant failed to invade root and colonise plant tissue. Homologues of Fow2 were detected in six other formae speciales of *F. oxysporum*, and disruption of Fow2 in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* also resulted in similar loss of pathogenicity on tomato plants suggesting a conserved role of this transcription factor in plant infection (Imazaki et al. 2007).

FTF1 is another Zn2Cys6 transcription factor that is specifically expressed during plant infection in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *phaseoli* (Ramos et al. 2007). The *FTF1* gene is present in multiple copies only in the highly virulent strains of this pathogen and is absent from weakly virulent or non-pathogenic isolates. Furthermore, in planta expression level of *FTF1* correlated with degree of virulence (de Vega-Bartol et al. 2011; Ramos et al. 2007). Whether FTF1 is required for plant infection or how it functions is not clear. Interestingly, in Australian isolates of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum*, at least 12 copies of this gene are present, while non-pathogens isolated from cultivated cotton fields had only 3–5 copies (Chakrabarti et al. 2011).

The *SGE1* gene encodes a nuclear protein homologous to the WOR1 and RYP1 transcriptional regulators that regulate the infection-related dimorphic switch in

Candida albicans and *Histoplasma capsulatum*. A *SGE1* ortholog was initially identified in *Agrobacterium*-mediated random insertional mutagenesis experiments as a non-pathogenic mutant of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Michielse et al. 2009a). A deletion mutant of the *SGE1* gene could successfully colonise root surface and penetrate roots but was impaired in parasitic growth within xylem tissue (Michielse et al. 2009b). The Δ*sge1* mutant also produced significantly less conidia, but conidia germination was unaffected. The *SGE1* gene also regulates expression of at least four SIX genes (*SIX1*, *SIX2*, *SIX3* and *SIX5*; Michielse et al. 2009b). *SIX1* and *SIX2* genes are not expressed in axenic culture but are induced post-penetration and/or in presence of tomato cells, while *SIX3* and *SIX5* are expressed under both conditions. Expression of *FOW2* and *FTF1* genes were also altered in the Δ*sge1* mutant, and production of fusaric acid and beauvericin was also lowered (Michielse et al. 2009b). Expression of the *SGE1* is 3–5-fold upregulated during plant infection. SGE1 may also be regulated at the post-translation level, as it carries a putative protein kinase A phosphorylation site that is required for its role in pathogenicity (Michielse et al. 2009b). Whether or how SGE1 acts as a global regulator of plant infection or how expression/function of SGE1 itself is regulated remains to be elucidated. FGP1, a WOR1-like protein from *F. graminearum*, is similarly involved in conidiation and regulates a number of genes involved in secondary metabolism including trichothecene production (Jonkers et al. 2012). However, *SGE1* could not complement *FGP1* and vice versa, and hence these two regulators, despite their sequence similarity, are functionally divergent (Jonkers et al. 2012).

HapX is a transcription factor of the bZIP family that plays a role in iron homeostasis and virulence in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). Iron is an essential element for any organism, and its level is tightly regulated as increased iron levels are toxic. Loss of the *HAPX* gene resulted in reduced growth under iron-limiting conditions, but iron content in the Δ*hapX* mutant was similar to the wild type (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). However, this also caused an increase in intercellular siderophores and de-repression of iron-regulated genes that are repressed under iron starvation. Interestingly, many genes were also induced under iron-limiting conditions in a *HAPX*-dependent manner and included number of known pathogenicity genes, e.g. glucanase, pectate lyase and *SIX3* (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). Many iron-starvation-induced genes, e.g. *SRBA*, *SIDA* and *HAPX*, are also dramatically induced at early stages of plant infection; wilt symptom development was significantly delayed in the Δ*hapX* mutant as compared to wild type (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). Mortality of immunocompromised mice challenged with *F. oxysporum* was also significantly lower for the Δ*hapX* mutant (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). This shows that reprogramming of iron-dependent genes through HapX is an important aspect of both mammalian and plant infection by *F. oxysporum*. In line with this observation, both growth and plant infection by the Δ*hapX* mutant were further impaired in presence of root-colonising *Pseudomonas putida* and *P. fluorescens* (Lopez-Berges et al. 2012). The antagonistic activity of these pseudomonads was dependent on siderophore production,

suggesting that direct competition for iron is important for biocontrol by these bacteria.

7.10 Genomics of *Fusarium oxysporum*: Lineage-Specific Regions and Pathogenicity Chromosomes

The first available *F. oxysporum* genome is from the tomato pathogen *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* strain 4287 (NRRL 34936) and is 60 Mb in size which is significantly larger than the nearest *F. verticillioides* (42 Mb) and related *F. graminearum* (36 Mb) genomes (Cuomo et al. 2007a; Ma et al. 2010). The *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome sequence has been assembled in 15 chromosomes and contains 17,735 coding genes (Ma et al. 2010). A significant part of the genome is composed of repetitive sequences (16.8 Mb) and transposable elements (3.98 %) and accounts for much of the increased size in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome. A three-way comparison between *F. oxysporum*, *F. verticillioides and F. graminearum* genomes identified more than 9,000 orthologous genes with high sequence similarity (an average identity of 91 % with *F. verticillioides* and 85 % with *F. graminearum* counterparts; Ma et al. 2010). When compared to other Ascomycetes, these three *Fusarium* species are enriched in genes for predicted transcription factors, lytic enzymes, transmembrane transporters and G-protein-coupled receptors (Ma et al. 2010). Altogether 2,280 transcription factors from 46 different families have been predicted in these three *Fusarium* species. Within this group, *F. oxysporum* is particularly enriched in transcription factors from the bHLH, Zn2Cys6 and bZIP families (Ma et al. 2010). All three fungi also carry the full complement of plant cell-wall-degrading enzymes in which pectate lyases are particularly over-represented due to an increase in copy number (members of the pectate lyase 1, 2 and 4 family) as well as presence of unique members (pectate lyase 9; Ma et al. 2010). Members of all the five classes of ABC transporters are also over-represented in all the three *Fusarium* species with *F. oxysporum* having the highest number of these transporters (Ma et al. 2010). This increase in number of ABC transporters is quite significant, because members of the pleiotropic drug resistance protein transporter family (or ABCG family) are responsible for tolerance to toxic compounds and plant secondary metabolites. This may explain *Fusarium* species tolerance to various azoles. Additionally there are five unique ABC transporters in *Fusarium* that are not present in any other sequenced fungal genomes. Members of the G-protein-coupled receptor family like the cAMP-receptor-like proteins, opsins/opsin-related proteins, homologues of human membrane progestin receptor and homologues of *M. oryzae* PTH11 are also over-represented in all the three *Fusarium* species (Ma et al. 2010). In particular, homologues of *PTH11*, a known pathogenicity factor in *M. grisea* (DeZwaan et al. 1999) are far more prevalent in *Fusarium* species; 98 members of this family are present in *F. oxysporum* as compared to 60 in *M. grisea*. In line with the

diversity of secondary metabolites produced by *Fusarium*, a number of secondary metabolite genes grouped into clusters was also identified in all the three *Fusarium* species (Ma et al. 2010). Genes from the majority of these clusters are co-regulated. However, only few of these secondary metabolite gene clusters are shared amongst these three species.

Genome sequences of the three *Fusarium* species were also analysed for synteny and chromosomal rearrangements (Kistler et al. 1998; Rep and Kistler 2010). Most of the *F. verticillioides* 11 chromosomes aligned in large, almost end-to-end blocks with any one of the four large chromosomes of *F. graminearum*. In addition to polymorphism-rich telomere proximal regions, *F. graminearum* chromosomes also have discrete interstitial regions of diversity. These interstitial polymorphic regions of *F. graminearum* chromosomes aligned well with ends of *F. verticillioides* chromosomes and mark sites of chromosomal fusion in *F. graminearum*.

When *F. oxysporum* and *F. verticillioides* genomes were aligned, over 90 % of the *F. verticillioides* genome was found to be syntenic to *F. oxysporum*, and all the 11 chromosomes of *F. verticillioides* had their corresponding ones in *F. oxysporum* with little local rearrangement and only one major translocation event (Ma et al. 2010). In contrast there were no significant orthologous sequences in *F. verticillioides* for the whole of chromosomes 3, 6, 14 and 15; part of chromosomes 1 and 2 and most of the unmapped regions from *F. oxysporum*. These are the lineage-specific (LS) regions in *F. oxysporum*. These lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* genome are rich in transposable elements, particularly DNA transposons, and arose through segmental duplications, with little exchange of genetic information with conserved regions of the genome (Ma et al. 2010). When short sequence reads from *F. oxysporum* strain 5176, a pathogen on *Arabidopsis*, were aligned with *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome sequences, the short alignments did not uniformly cover the genome. While conserved regions of the genome had greater than 80 % coverage, genomic regions corresponding to the lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome were covered at a very low level (0–10 %). Thus, the lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome are also enriched in strain- or forma specialis-specific sequences (Ma et al. 2010). In line with this, it was also observed that all the fungal ESTs detected in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* infected cotton plants aligned with conserved regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome.

The lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome are particularly enriched in secreted proteins (Ma et al. 2010; Rep and Kistler 2010). These include nine SIX proteins, several other small cysteine-rich proteins of unknown function (potential effectors), necrosis- and ethylene-inducing proteins (NEP) and carbohydrate active enzymes (CAZY). All of these proteins either have been demonstrated or are predicted to play important roles in plant pathogenesis. *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genes encoded in the lineage-specific region are very similar to the NEP genes from *Verticillium dahliae*, the only other wilt-producing fungus (Klosterman et al. 2011). Among the CAZYs, glycoside hydrolases are particularly over-represented in the lineage-specific regions, and many of them are expressed during plant infection (Ma et al. 2010). This expansion

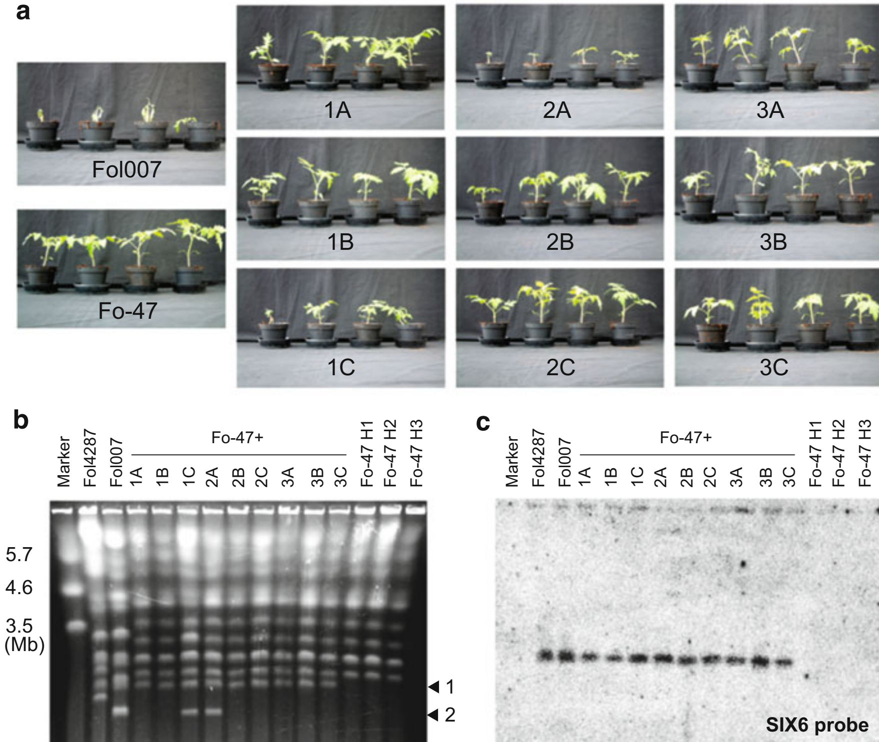


Fig. 7.2 A pathogenecity chromosome is present in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. l*ycopersici*. Antibiotic-resistant pathogenic strains (*Fol-007*), nonpathogenic strains (*Fo-47*) and double-drug-resistant strains obtained by cocultivating of *Fo-47* and *Fol-007* were tested for disease incidence on tomato (**a**). All but one of the double-drug-resistant strains were virulent (*Fo-47*+; 1A-3C). *Fol-4287* (sequenced strain), *Fol-007*, *Fo-47*+ and *Fo-47* strains (H1–H3) were karyotyped using contour-clamped homogenous electric field (CHEF) gel electrophoresis (**b**). All the *Fo-47*+ strains have the same karyotype as *Fo-47* except for the presence of one or two small chromosomes from *Fol-007* (*black arrowheads*). The larger of these two transferred chromosomes carries the *SIX6* gene present in the chromosome 14 of *Fol-4287* (**c**) and is the "pathogenicity" chromosome in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *Lycopersici*. Adapted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd: Nature (Ma et al. 2010), copyright 2010

of CWDEs may account for the broad host range of *F. oxysporum*. Other proteins that have been expanded in *F. oxysporum* are secreted peroxidases that provide protection to oxidative stress and proteins involved in lipid metabolism and generation of lipid-derived secondary messengers, GPCRs and regulator of G-proteins signalling (RGS; Ma et al. 2010). Examples include a perilipin-like Cap20 protein that regulates release of free fatty acids and is a pathogenicity determinant in *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*. This protein is present in nine copies in *F. oxysporum* as opposed to single copies in *F. graminearum* and *F. verticillioides*.

The small non-orthologous chromosomes, chromosomes 3, 6, 14 and 15, of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* are absent from a *F. oxysporum* strain

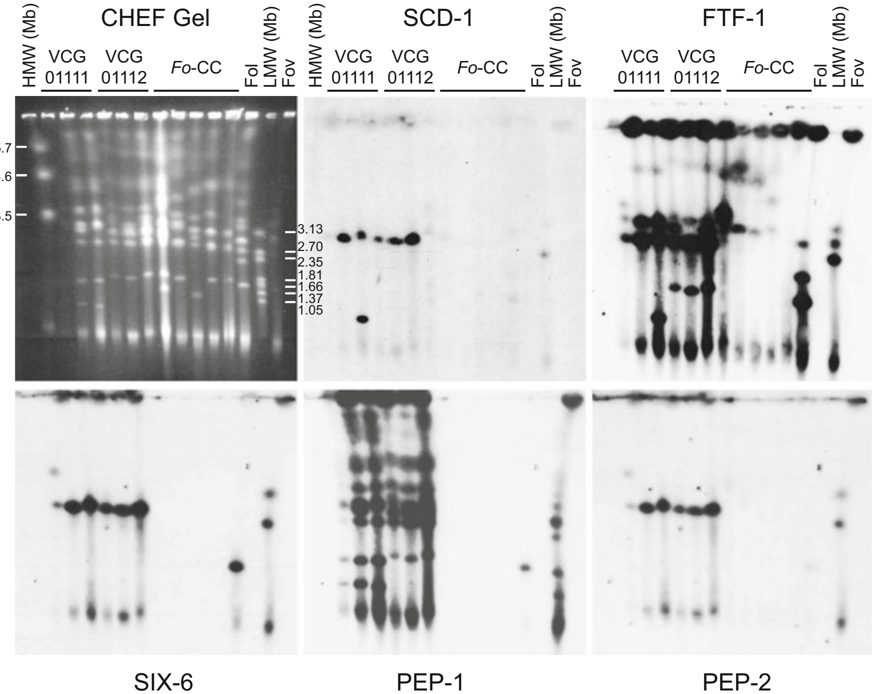


Fig. 7.3 A supernumerary chromosome is present in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum*. Chromosomes from *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* isolates from two different VCGs, related nonpathogenic *F. oxysporum* isolates collected from cultivated cotton fields (Fo-CC) and *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lysopersici* (Fol) were karyotyped. The supernumerary chromosome in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* isolates carries *Fov-SIX6*, *PEP2* and at least one copy of *PEP1*, *SCD1* and *FTF1*. *Fov-SIX6*, *PEP1* and *PEP2* are present only in the pathogenic isolates, and the *FTF1* and *SCD1* genes are amplified in the pathogenic isolates. This supernumerary chromosome is an ideal candidate for pathogenicity chromosome in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* (Chakrabarti et al. 2011)

non-pathogenic on tomato (Ma et al. 2010; Rep and Kistler 2010) (Fig. 7.2). Likewise, non-conserved supernumerary chromosomes carrying genes for resistance to plant antimicrobials, utilisation of specific carbon and nitrogen sources and host-specific pathogenicity are also described in *Nectria haematococca* (anamorph *F. solani*; Coleman et al. 2009) and *Alternaria alternata* (Hu et al. 2012). A supernumerary chromosome has been described for the cotton pathogen *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* (Chakrabarti et al. 2011). This ~3.6-Mb chromosome is present in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* isolates from two different VCGs but is absent from phylogenetically related non-pathogenic *F. oxysporum* isolates collected from cultivated cotton fields and carries all three putative effector genes (Fov-SIX6, PEP1 and PEP2) identified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *vasinfectum* and at least one copy of the *FTF1* and *SCD1* genes that are specifically amplified in *F. oxysporum* f. sp. v*asinfectum* (Fig. 7.3).

Over-representation and expansion of genes coding for potential effectors, virulence factors, CWDEs, transcription factors and other pathogenesis-related genes and a near-absence of housekeeping genes in the lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome combined with their specific presence in pathogenic isolates strongly suggest a connection between presence of these lineage-specific regions and plant infection as well as host range. In particular, the supernumerary chromosome 14 of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* contains all the known genes for in planta secreted proteins (Ma et al. 2010; Rep and Kistler 2010). Conidia from *F. oxysporum* f sp. *lycopersici* strain 007 (*Fol*-007) with a selectable marker gene (Zeocin, BLE) inserted in the chromosome 14 was cocultured with conidia from a hygromycin-resistant *F. oxysporum* strain that does not infect tomato (*Fo*-47) and double-drug-resistant strains thus obtained were able to cause wilt disease on tomato (Ma et al. 2010) (Fig. 7.2a). All the double-drug-resistant strains (*Fo*-47+) had a karyotype similar to the *Fo*-47 parent except for the presence of one or two small chromosomes from *Fol*-007 (Fig. 7.2b). All the pathogenic *Fo*-47+ strains were found to carry the chromosome 14 from *Fol*-007 (Fig. 7.2c), and two of the pathogenic ones, which showed highest level of virulence, also received another chromosome corresponding to the smallest chromosome of *Fol*-007. This smallest chromosome was positive for one marker associated with a 1.3-Mb region from chromosome 3 and another marker for a 1.0-Mb region on chromosome 6. Both of these regions correspond to large duplicated lineage-specific regions of the *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* genome. None of the conserved chromosomes were transferred. Thus, acquisition of the *Fol*-007 chromosome 14 by *Fo*-47 rendered the non-pathogenic *Fo*-47 capable of infecting plants (Ma et al. 2010). Interestingly, no double-drug resistant strain containing a tagged chromosome of *Fo*-47 in *Fol*-007 background could be obtained even when a randomly generated Zeocin-resistant *Fol*-007 strain was used. This preferential transfer may be determined by factors like size, composition and stability of the mobile chromosome. Although information is lacking on how frequently they occur under natural conditions, existence of such a transfer process threatens the practice of using non-pathogenic *Fusaria* as biological control, many of which are used on a commercial scale.

Transfer of supernumerary chromosomes has also been experimentally demonstrated in *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides* and *Alternaria alternata*. In *Colletotrichum gloeosporioides*, two distinct pathotypes, types A and B, exist that are morphologically identical in culture but are asexual, vegetatively incompatible and genetically distinct (He et al. 1998). A 2-Mb supernumerary chromosome is present in pathotype A and some, but not all, field isolates of pathotype B. Cocultivation of a pathotype A transformant carrying hygromycin resistance marker in the 2-Mb supernumerary chromosome with phleomycin resistance pathotype B resulted in double-drug-resistant transformants carrying the entire 2-Mb supernumerary chromosome from pathotype A (He et al. 1998). Like chromosome 14 of *F. oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici*, double-drug resistance could only be obtained when the hygromycin resistance marker was present in the 2-Mb supernumerary chromosome.

Alternaria alternata is another asexual filamentous fungus where both pathogenic and non-pathogenic types occur. A small conditionally dispensable chromosome of varying size carrying genes for *Alternaria* toxin biosynthesis is present in the pathogenic isolates of this fungus (Akagi et al. 2009; Akamatsu et al. 1999; Hatta et al. 2002; Johnson et al. 2001). Spontaneous or induced loss of this extra chromosome in tomato and apple pathotypes of *A. alternata* resulted in loss of pathogenicity (Johnson et al. 2001; Akagi et al. 2009). Protoplast fusion of tomato and strawberry pathotypes produced a fusant that could infect both tomato and strawberry. This fusant produced both tomato and strawberry pathotype-specific toxins, and conditionally dispensable chromosomes derived from both the parental pathotypes were detected in the hybrid. The hybrid's genetic make-up was that of the strawberry pathotype except for the additional pathogenicity chromosome from the tomato pathotype.

While this demonstrates that conditionally dispensable chromosomes can be transferred and stably maintained in a new genome, how this occurs remains a question. Although formation of bridges though pili or pili-like structures is not reported in fungi, fusion between fungal cells can occur through conidial, germ tube or hyphal anastomosis (Read and Roca 2006; Roca et al. 2006). While conidial anastomosis and germ tube fusions appear to be different processes, similar regulatory processes are involved in conidial and hyphal fusions. In *F. oxysporum*, fusion between germinating conidia and vegetative hypha frequently occurs at early stages of plant infection (Mesterhazy 1973; Rosales and Di Pietro 2008; Ruiz-Roldan et al. 2010), and although not essential for plant infection, such fusion appears to contribute towards effective adhesion and colonisation of the root surface (Rosales and Di Pietro 2008). Hyphal fusion is achieved through directed growth of fusing hyphae towards each other and formation of anastomosis tubes (Ruiz-Roldan et al. 2010). Once the bridge is formed, one of the nuclei undergoes division and the daughter nucleus moves into the recipient compartment through the anastomosis tube. After that, the resident nucleus is degraded (Ruiz-Roldan et al. 2010). Similar movement of nucleus has been observed in conidial anastomosis in *Colletotrichum* and *N. crassa* (Roca et al. 2003, 2005). Such heterokaryosis can result in mitotic crossing over and haploidisation leading to parasexual recombination and thus contribute to genetic variation, including horizontal gene or chromosome transfer in fungi lacking sexual production. Anastomosis between individuals is controlled by *Het* or *Vic* loci (heterokaryon or vegetative incompatibility) and most frequently observed between genetically identical individuals (self-anastomosis; Glass et al. 2000). Although heterokaryons formed between non-identical genotypes of different *Het* group are followed by cell death or severe growth impairment, non-self-anastomosis (both intra- and interspecies) has been reported to occur (Qu et al. 2008; Roca et al. 2004; Toda and Hyakumachi 2006), and slow-growing heterokaryons formed have been suggested as an intermediate form through which horizontal chromosome transfer can take place (Manners and He 2011). In a recent study it was observed that fused conidia from incompatible strains of *C. lindemuthianum* could escape incompatibility triggered cell death for at least 30 min (Ishikawa et al. 2012). Following anastomosis, heterokaryon

formation and nuclear fusion or transfer of nuclear proteins were noted which at times resulted in uninucleate heterokaryons. Colonies formed from such uninucleate heterokaryons were resistant to both the antibiotics to which parental strains were individually resistant, and their race specificities were altered as well (Ishikawa et al. 2012). This strongly suggests that conidial anastomosis in *C. lindemuthianum* can survive, at least under the experimental conditions; incompatibility-related cell death and parasexual recombination can occur in such cases leading to new genetic variability. Such a scenario could explain horizontal gene and/or chromosome transfers between genetically distant lineages of *F. oxysporum*, emergence of new pathogenic lineages and their apparent polyphyletic origins. Loading one mobile chromosome with pathogenicity genes would be of great ecological advantage to the fungus for such one-step conversion of a benign strain into a pathogenic one on a new host plant. What is the frequency of such transfer in nature, what are the proteins involved in such flow of genetic information, how such a process would be controlled and whether transposable elements and repeats present in supernumerary chromosomes plays a role in horizontal transfers are questions that need answers.

7.11 Outlook

In recent years, genome sequencing and analysis of plant pathogenic *Fusarium* spp. has shed new lights into both molecular mechanisms and evolution of pathogenicity. While major progress has been made in the discovery of small effector proteins, lots remain to be determined about their role in disease incidence and their mode of action. It is expected that these findings will help devise novel strategies for management of the menace called Fusaria.

Another finding of immense practical significance is that most of the host-specific virulence genes are present on lineage-specific chromosome(s) that are devoid of house-keeping genes and that these chromosomes can be horizontally transferred to non-pathogenic strains rendering these pathogenic. Horizontal chromosome transfer can explain independent evolution of host-specific virulence within a forma specialis where members are grouped together based on their virulence on a host but are genetically distant. While the universality of this phenomenon needs to be established involving more members of this group, a possibility exists that many non-pathogenic Fusaria used as biocontrol agents for management of pathogenic Fusaria (competitive exclusion) can acquire novel virulence through horizontal transfer of "pathogenicity chromosomes" which might pose a serious problem in future. Till questions are answered regarding mechanism, natural occurrence and role of horizontal chromosome transfer in evolution of *Fusarium*, use of non-pathogenic strains as a mean to control *Fusarium* diseases should be dealt with caution.

References

Agrios GN (2004) Plant pathology, 5th edn. Elsevier, Burlington, MA

Akagi Y, Akamatsu H, Otani H, Kodama M (2009) Horizontal chromosome transfer, a mechanism for the evolution and differentiation of a plant-pathogenic fungus. Eukaryot Cell 8:1732–1738

Akamatsu H, Taga M, Kodama M, Johnson R, Otani H, Kohmoto K (1999) Molecular karyotypes for Alternaria plant pathogens known to produce host-specific toxins. Curr Genet 35:647–656

Bayram O, Braus GH (2012) Coordination of secondary metabolism and development in fungi: the velvet family of regulatory proteins. FEMS Microbiol Rev 36:1–24

Bayram O, Krappmann S, Ni M, Bok JW, Helmstaedt K, Valerius O, Braus-Stromeyer S, Kwon NJ, Keller NP, Yu JH, Braus GH (2008) VelB/VeA/LaeA complex coordinates light signal with fungal development and secondary metabolism. Science 320:1504–1506

Beckman CH (2000) Phenolic-storing cells: keys to programmed cell death and periderm formation in wilt disease resistance and in general defence responses in plants? Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 57:101–110

Beckman CH, Roberts E (1995) On the nature and genetic basis for resistance and tolerance to fungal wilt diseases of plants. Adv Bot Res 21:35–77

Bishop C, Cooper RM (1983) An ultrastructural study of vascular colonization in three vascular wilt diseases. I. Colonization of susceptible cultivars. Physiol Plant Pathol 23:323–343

Bishop C, Cooper RM (1984) Ultrastructure of vascular colonization by fungal wilt pathogens. II. Invasion of resistant cultivars. Physiol Plant Pathol 24:277–289

Bölker M (1998) Sex and crime: heterotrimeric G proteins in fungal mating and pathogenesis. Fungal Genet Biol 25:143–156

Bolton MD, Thomma BPHJ (2008) The complexity of nitrogen metabolism and nitrogen-regulated gene expression in plant pathogenic fungi. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 72:104–110

Bulk R (1991) Application of cell and tissue culture and in vitro selection for disease resistance breeding—a review. Euphytica 56:269–285

Calero-Nieto F, Di Pietro A, Roncero MI, Hera C (2007) Role of the transcriptional activator xlnR of Fusarium oxysporum in regulation of xylanase genes and virulence. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 20:977–985

Calero-Nieto F, Hera C, Di Pietro A, Orejas M, Roncero MI (2008) Regulatory elements mediating expression of xylanase genes in Fusarium oxysporum. Fungal Genet Biol 45:28–34

Canero DC, Roncero MI (2008a) Functional analyses of laccase genes from Fusarium oxysporum. Phytopathology 98:509–518

Canero DC, Roncero MI (2008b) Influence of the chloride channel of Fusarium oxysporum on extracellular laccase activity and virulence on tomato plants. Microbiology 154:1474–1481

Caracuel Z, Roncero MI, Espeso EA, Gonzalez-Verdejo CI, Garcia-Maceira FI, Di Pietro A (2003) The pH signalling transcription factor PacC controls virulence in the plant pathogen Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Microbiol 48:765–779

Caracuel Z, Martinez-Rocha AL, Di Pietro A, Madrid MP, Roncero MI (2005) Fusarium oxysporum gas1 encodes a putative beta-1,3-glucanosyltransferase required for virulence on tomato plants. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 18:1140–1147

Chakrabarti A, Rep M, Wang B, Ashton A, Dodds P, Ellis J (2011) Variation in potential effector genes distinguishing Australian and non-Australian isolates of the cotton wilt pathogen Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum. Plant Pathol 60:232–243

Coleman JJ, Rounsley SD, Rodriguez-Carres M, Kuo A, Wasmann CC, Grimwood J, Schmutz J, Taga M, White GJ, Zhou S, Schwartz DC, Freitag M, Ma LJ, Danchin EG, Henrissat B, Coutinho PM, Nelson DR, Straney D, Napoli CA, Barker BM, Gribskov M, Rep M, Kroken S, Molnar I, Rensing C, Kennell JC, Zamora J, Farman ML, Selker EU, Salamov A, Shapiro H, Pangilinan J, Lindquist E, Lamers C, Grigoriev IV, Geiser DM, Covert SF, Temporini E, Vanetten HD (2009) The genome of Nectria haematococca: contribution of supernumerary chromosomes to gene expansion. PLoS Genet 5:e1000618

Cullen PJ, Sabbagh W Jr, Graham E, Irick MM, Van Olden EK, Neal C, Delrow J, Bardwell L, Sprague GF Jr (2004) A signaling mucin at the head of the Cdc42-and MAPK-dependent filamentous growth pathway in yeast. Sci Signal 18:1695

Cuomo CA, Güldener U, Xu JR, Trail F, Turgeon BG, Di Pietro A, Walton JD, Ma LJ, Baker SE, Rep M (2007) The Fusarium graminearum genome reveals a link between localized polymorphism and pathogen specialization. Science 317:1400–1402

Czymmek KJ, Fogg M, Powell DH, Sweigard J, Park SY, Kang S (2007) In vivo time-lapse documentation using confocal and multi-photon microscopy reveals the mechanisms of invasion into the *Arabidopsis* root vascular system by *Fusarium oxysporum*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:1011–1023

de Vega-Bartol JJ, Martin-Dominguez R, Ramos B, Garcia-Sanchez MA, Diaz-Minguez JM (2011) New virulence groups in Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. phaseoli: the expression of the gene coding for the transcription factor ftf1 correlates with virulence. Phytopathology 101:470–479

Dean R, Van Kan JA, Pretorius ZA, Hammond-Kosack KE, Di Pietro A, Spanu PD, Rudd JJ, Dickman M, Kahmann R, Ellis J, Foster GD (2012) The top 10 fungal pathogens in molecular plant pathology. Mol Plant Pathol 13:414–430

Delgado-Jarana J, Martinez-Rocha AL, Roldan-Rodriguez R, Roncero MI, Di Pietro A (2005) Fusarium oxysporum G-protein beta subunit Fgb1 regulates hyphal growth, development, and virulence through multiple signalling pathways. Fungal Genet Biol 42:61–72

DeZwaan TM, Carroll AM, Valent B, Sweigard JA (1999) Magnaporthe grisea pth11p is a novel plasma membrane protein that mediates appressorium differentiation in response to inductive substrate cues. Plant Cell 11:2013–2030

Di Pietro A, Roncero M (1996a) Purification and characterization of a pectate lyase from *Fusarium oxysporum* f. sp. *lycopersici* produced on tomato vascular tissue. Physiol Mol Plant Pathol 49:177–185

Di Pietro A, Roncero MIG (1996b) Endopolygalacturonase from Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici: purification, characterization, and production during infection of tomato plants. Phytopathology 86:1324–1330

Di Pietro A, Roncero MI (1998) Cloning, expression, and role in pathogenicity of pg1 encoding the major extracellular endopolygalacturonase of the vascular wilt pathogen Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 11:91–98

Di Pietro A, Roncero MIG (2006) Purification and characterization of an exo-polygalacturonase from the tomato vascular wilt pathogen Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici. FEMS Microbiol Lett 145:295–299

Di Pietro A, Garcia-MacEira FI, Meglecz E, Roncero MI (2001) A MAP kinase of the vascular wilt fungus Fusarium oxysporum is essential for root penetration and pathogenesis. Mol Microbiol 39:1140–1152

Di Pietro A, Madrid MP, Caracuel Z, Delgado-Jarana J, Roncero MI (2003) Fusarium oxysporum: exploring the molecular arsenal of a vascular wilt fungus. Mol Plant Pathol 4:315–325

Divon HH, Ziv C, Davydov O, Yarden O, Fluhr R (2006) The global nitrogen regulator, FNR1, regulates fungal nutrition-genes and fitness during Fusarium oxysporum pathogenesis. Mol Plant Pathol 7:485–497

Dowd C, Wilson IW, McFadden H (2004) Gene expression profile changes in cotton root and hypocotyl tissues in response to infection with Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 17:654–667

Duyvesteijn RG, van Wijk R, Boer Y, Rep M, Cornelissen BJ, Haring MA (2005) Frp1 is a Fusarium oxysporum F-box protein required for pathogenicity on tomato. Mol Microbiol 57:1051–1063

Ellis JG, Rafiqi M, Gan P, Chakrabarti A, Dodds PN (2009) Recent progress in discovery and functional analysis of effector proteins of fungal and oomycete plant pathogens. Curr Opin Plant Biol 12:399–405

Fourie G, Steenkamp ET, Gordon TR, Viljoen A (2009) Evolutionary relationships among the Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. cubense vegetative compatibility groups. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:4770–4781

Fourie G, Steenkamp ET, Ploetz RC, Gordon TR, Viljoen A (2011) Current status of the taxonomic position of Fusarium oxysporum formae specialis cubense within the Fusarium oxysporum complex. Infect Genet Evol 11:533–542

Garcia-Maceira FI, Di Pietro A, Huertas-Gonzalez MD, Ruiz-Roldan MC, Roncero MI (2001) Molecular characterization of an endopolygalacturonase from Fusarium oxysporum expressed during early stages of infection. Appl Environ Microbiol 67:2191–2196

Garcıća Maceira FI, Pietro A, Roncero MIG (1997) Purification and characterization of a novel exopolygalacturonase from Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici. FEMS Microbiol Lett 154:37–43

Gardiner DM, Osborne S, Kazan K, Manners JM (2009) Low pH regulates the production of deoxynivalenol by Fusarium graminearum. Microbiology 155:3149–3156

Geiser D, del Mar Jiménez-Gasco M, Kang S, Makalowska I, Veeraraghavan N, Ward T, Zhang N, Kuldau G, O'Donnell K (2004) FUSARIUM-ID v. 1.0: a DNA sequence database for identifying Fusarium. Eur J Plant Pathol 110:473–479

Glass NL, Jacobson DJ, Shiu PK (2000) The genetics of hyphal fusion and vegetative incompatibility in filamentous ascomycete fungi. Annu Rev Genet 34:165–186

Gomez-Gomez E, Isabel M, Roncero G, Di Pietro A, Hera C (2001) Molecular characterization of a novel endo-beta-1,4-xylanase gene from the vascular wilt fungus Fusarium oxysporum. Curr Genet 40:268–275

Gomez-Gomez E, Ruiz-Roldan MC, Di Pietro A, Roncero MI, Hera C (2002) Role in pathogenesis of two endo-beta-1,4-xylanase genes from the vascular wilt fungus Fusarium oxysporum. Fungal Genet Biol 35:213–222

Gordon T, Martyn R (1997) The evolutionary biology of Fusarium oxysporum. Annu Rev Phytopathol 35:111–128

Hamm HE (1998) The many faces of G protein signaling. J Biol Chem 273:669–672

Harwood CS, Parales RE (1996) The beta-ketoadipate pathway and the biology of self-identity. Annu Rev Microbiol 50:553–590

Hatta R, Ito K, Hosaki Y, Tanaka T, Tanaka A, Yamamoto M, Akimitsu K, Tsuge T (2002) A conditionally dispensable chromosome controls host-specific pathogenicity in the fungal plant pathogen Alternaria alternata. Genetics 161:59–70

He C, Rusu AG, Poplawski AM, Irwin JA, Manners JM (1998) Transfer of a supernumerary chromosome between vegetatively incompatible biotypes of the fungus Colletotrichum gloeosporioides. Genetics 150:1459–1466

Hogenhout SA, Van der Hoorn RA, Terauchi R, Kamoun S (2009) Emerging concepts in effector biology of plant-associated organisms. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:115–122

Houterman PM, Cornelissen BJ, Rep M (2008) Suppression of plant resistance gene-based immunity by a fungal effector. PLoS Pathog 4:e1000061

Houterman PM, Ma L, van Ooijen G, de Vroomen MJ, Cornelissen BJ, Takken FL, Rep M (2009) The effector protein Avr2 of the xylem-colonizing fungus Fusarium oxysporum activates the tomato resistance protein I-2 intracellularly. Plant J 58:970–978

Hu J, Chen C, Peever T, Dang H, Lawrence C, Mitchell T (2012) Genomic characterization of the conditionally dispensable chromosome in Alternaria arborescens provides evidence for horizontal gene transfer. BMC Genomics 13:171

Imazaki I, Kurahashi M, Iida Y, Tsuge T (2007) Fow2, a Zn(II)2Cys6-type transcription regulator, controls plant infection of the vascular wilt fungus Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Microbiol 63:737–753

Ishikawa FH, Souza EA, Shoji JY, Connolly L, Freitag M, Read ND, Roca MG (2012) Heterokaryon incompatibility is suppressed following conidial anastomosis tube fusion in a fungal plant pathogen. PLoS One 7:e31175

Ito S, Takahara H, Kawaguchi T, Tanaka S, Kameya-Iwaki M (2002) Post-transcriptional silencing of the tomatinase gene in Fusarium oxysporum f. sp lycopersici. J Phytopathol 150:474–480

Ito S, Eto T, Tanaka S, Yamauchi N, Takahara H, Ikeda T (2004) Tomatidine and lycotetraose, hydrolysis products of alpha-tomatine by Fusarium oxysporum tomatinase, suppress induced defense responses in tomato cells. FEBS Lett 571:31–34

Ito S, Ihara T, Tamura H, Tanaka S, Ikeda T, Kajihara H, Dissanayake C, Abdel-Motaal FF, El-Sayed MA (2007) alpha-Tomatine, the major saponin in tomato, induces programmed cell death mediated by reactive oxygen species in the fungal pathogen Fusarium oxysporum. FEBS Lett 581:3217–3222

Jain S, Akiyama K, Mae K, Ohguchi T, Takata R (2002) Targeted disruption of a G protein alpha subunit gene results in reduced pathogenicity in Fusarium oxysporum. Curr Genet 41:407–413

Jain S, Akiyama K, Kan T, Ohguchi T, Takata R (2003) The G protein beta subunit FGB1 regulates development and pathogenicity in Fusarium oxysporum. Curr Genet 43:79–86

Jain S, Akiyama K, Takata R, Ohguchi T (2005) Signaling via the G protein alpha subunit FGA2 is necessary for pathogenesis in Fusarium oxysporum. FEMS Microbiol Lett 243:165–172

Johnson LJ, Johnson RD, Akamatsu H, Salamiah A, Otani H, Kohmoto K, Kodama M (2001) Spontaneous loss of a conditionally dispensable chromosome from the Alternaria alternata apple pathotype leads to loss of toxin production and pathogenicity. Curr Genet 40:65–72

Jones JDG, Dangl JL (2006) The plant immune system. Nature 444:323–329

Jonkers W, Rep M (2009a) Mutation of CRE1 in Fusarium oxysporum reverts the pathogenicity defects of the FRP1 deletion mutant. Mol Microbiol 74:1100–1113

Jonkers W, Rep M (2009b) Lessons from fungal F-box proteins. Eukaryot Cell 8:677–695

Jonkers W, Rodrigues CD, Rep M (2009) Impaired colonization and infection of tomato Δroots by the Deltafrp1 mutant of Fusarium oxysporum correlates with reduced CWDE gene expression. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:507–518

Jonkers W, Dong Y, Broz K, Kistler HC (2012) The Wor1-like protein Fgp1 regulates pathogenicity, toxin synthesis and reproduction in the phytopathogenic fungus Fusarium graminearum. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002724

Kapteyn JC, Ram AF, Groos EM, Kollar R, Montijn RC, Van Den Ende H, Llobell A, Cabib E, Klis FM (1997) Altered extent of cross-linking of beta1,6-glucosylated mannoproteins to chitin in Saccharomyces cerevisiae mutants with reduced cell wall beta1,3-glucan content. J Bacteriol 179:6279–6284

Kazan K, Gardiner DM, Manners JM (2012) On the trail of a cereal killer: recent advances in Fusarium graminearum pathogenomics and host resistance. Mol Plant Pathol 13(4):399–413

Kidd BN, Edgar CI, Kumar KK, Aitken EA, Schenk PM, Manners JM, Kazan K (2009) The mediator complex subunit PFT1 is a key regulator of jasmonate-dependent defense in Arabidopsis. Plant Cell 21:2237–2252

Kistler HC, Alabouvette C, Baayen RP, Bentley S, Brayford D, Coddington A, Correll J, Daboussi MJ, Elias K, Fernandez D, Gordon TR, Katan T, Kim HG, Leslie JF, Martyn RD, Migheli Q, Moore NY, O'Donnell K, Ploetz RC, Rutherford MA, Summerell B, Waalwijk C, Woo S (1998) Systematic numbering of vegetative compatibility groups in the plant pathogenic fungus Fusarium oxysporum. Phytopathology 88:30–32

Klosterman SJ, Subbarao KV, Kang S, Veronese P, Gold SE, Thomma BP, Chen Z, Henrissat B, Lee YH, Park J, Garcia-Pedrajas MD, Barbara DJ, Anchieta A, de Jonge R, Santhanam P, Maruthachalam K, Atallah Z, Amyotte SG, Paz Z, Inderbitzin P, Hayes RJ, Heiman DI, Young S, Zeng Q, Engels R, Galagan J, Cuomo CA, Dobinson KF, Ma LJ (2011) Comparative genomics yields insights into niche adaptation of plant vascular wilt pathogens. PLoS Pathog 7: e1002137

Lagopodi AL, Ram AF, Lamers GE, Punt PJ, Van den Hondel CA, Lugtenberg BJ, Bloemberg GV (2002) Novel aspects of tomato root colonization and infection by Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. radicis-lycopersici revealed by confocal laser scanning microscopic analysis using the green fluorescent protein as a marker. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:172–179

Lairini K, Perez-Espinosa A, Pineda M, Ruiz-Rubio M (1996) Purification and characterization of tomatinase from Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:1604–1609

Lenardon MD, Munro CA, Gow NA (2010) Chitin synthesis and fungal pathogenesis. Curr Opin Microbiol 13:416–423

Leslie JF, Summerell BA, Bullock S (2006) The Fusarium laboratory manual. Wiley, Oxford

Levin DE (2005) Cell wall integrity signaling in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 69:262–291

Lievens B, Houterman PM, Rep M (2009) Effector gene screening allows unambiguous identification of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici races and discrimination from other formae speciales. FEMS Microbiol Lett 300:201–215

Lopez-Berges MS, Di Pietro A, Daboussi MJ, Wahab HA, Vasnier C, Roncero MI, Dufresne M, Hera C (2009) Identification of virulence genes in Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici by large-scale transposon tagging. Mol Plant Pathol 10:95–107

Lopez-Berges MS, Rispail N, Prados-Rosales RC, Di Pietro A (2010) A nitrogen response pathway regulates virulence functions in Fusarium oxysporum via the protein kinase TOR and the bZIP protein MeaB. Plant Cell 22:2459–2475

Lopez-Berges MS, Capilla J, Turra D, Schafferer L, Matthijs S, Jochl C, Cornelis P, Guarro J, Haas H, Di Pietro A (2012) HapX-mediated iron homeostasis is essential for rhizosphere competence and virulence of the soilborne pathogen Fusarium oxysporum. Plant Cell 24:3805–3822

Lopez-Berges MS, Hera C, Sulyok M, Schafer K, Capilla J, Guarro J, Di Pietro A (2013) The velvet complex governs mycotoxin production and virulence of Fusarium oxysporum on plant and mammalian hosts. Mol Microbiol 87:49–65

Luz J, Paterson R, Brayford D (1990) Fusaric acid and other metabolite production in Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum. Lett Appl Microbiol 11:141–144

Ma LJ, van der Does HC, Borkovich KA, Coleman JJ, Daboussi MJ, Di Pietro A, Dufresne M, Freitag M, Grabherr M, Henrissat B, Houterman PM, Kang S, Shim WB, Woloshuk C, Xie X, Xu JR, Antoniw J, Baker SE, Bluhm BH, Breakspear A, Brown DW, Butchko RA, Chapman S, Coulson R, Coutinho PM, Danchin EG, Diener A, Gale LR, Gardiner DM, Goff S, Hammond-Kosack KE, Hilburn K, Hua-Van A, Jonkers W, Kazan K, Kodira CD, Koehrsen M, Kumar L, Lee YH, Li L, Manners JM, Miranda-Saavedra D, Mukherjee M, Park G, Park J, Park SY, Proctor RH, Regev A, Ruiz-Roldan MC, Sain D, Sakthikumar S, Sykes S, Schwartz DC, Turgeon BG, Wapinski I, Yoder O, Young S, Zeng Q, Zhou S, Galagan J, Cuomo CA, Kistler HC, Rep M (2010) Comparative genomics reveals mobile pathogenicity chromosomes in Fusarium. Nature 464:367–373

Madrid MP, Di Pietro A, Roncero MI (2003) Class V chitin synthase determines pathogenesis in the vascular wilt fungus Fusarium oxysporum and mediates resistance to plant defence compounds. Mol Microbiol 47:257–266

Manners JM, He C (2011) Slow-growing heterokaryons as potential intermediates in supernumerary chromosome transfer between biotypes of Colletotrichum gloeosporioides. Mycol Prog 10:383–388

Marinissen MJ, Gutkind JS (2001) G-protein-coupled receptors and signaling networks: emerging paradigms. Trends Pharmacol Sci 22:368–376

Martinez-Rocha AL, Roncero MI, Lopez-Ramirez A, Marine M, Guarro J, Martinez-Cadena G, Di Pietro A (2008) Rho1 has distinct functions in morphogenesis, cell wall biosynthesis and virulence of Fusarium oxysporum. Cell Microbiol 10:1339–1351

Martin-Udiroz M, Madrid MP, Roncero MI (2004) Role of chitin synthase genes in Fusarium oxysporum. Microbiology 150:3175–3187

Martin-Urdiroz M, Roncero MI, Gonzalez-Reyes JA, Ruiz-Roldan C (2008) ChsVb, a class VII chitin synthase involved in septation, is critical for pathogenicity in Fusarium oxysporum. Eukaryot Cell 7:112–121

Matsumoto K, Barbosa ML, Souza LAC, Teixeira JB (1995) Race 1 fusarium wilt tolerance on banana plants selected by fusaric acid. Euphytica 84:67–71

McFadden HG, Wilson IW, Chapple RM, Dowd C (2006) Fusarium wilt (Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum) genes expressed during infection of cotton (Gossypium hirsutum)dagger. Mol Plant Pathol 7:87–101

Meldrum R, Fraser-Smith S, Tran-Nguyen LTT, Daly A, Aitken EAB (2012) Presence of putative pathogenicity genes in isolates of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. cubense from Australia. Australas Plant Pathol 41:551–557

Merhej J, Urban M, Dufresne M, Hammond-Kosack KE, Richard-Forget F, Barreau C (2012) The velvet gene, FgVe1, affects fungal development and positively regulates trichothecene biosynthesis and pathogenicity in Fusarium graminearum. Mol Plant Pathol 13:363–374

Mesterhazy A (1973) The morphology of an underscribed form of anastomosis in Fusarium. Mycologia 65:916–919

Michielse CB, Rep M (2009) Pathogen profile update: Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Plant Pathol 10:311–324

Michielse CB, van Wijk R, Reijnen L, Cornelissen BJ, Rep M (2009a) Insight into the molecular requirements for pathogenicity of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici through large-scale insertional mutagenesis. Genome Biol 10:R4

Michielse CB, van Wijk R, Reijnen L, Manders EM, Boas S, Olivain C, Alabouvette C, Rep M (2009b) The nuclear protein Sge1 of Fusarium oxysporum is required for parasitic growth. PLoS Pathog 5:e1000637

Michielse CB, Reijnen L, Olivain C, Alabouvette C, Rep M (2012) Degradation of aromatic compounds through the beta-ketoadipate pathway is required for pathogenicity of the tomato wilt pathogen Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici. Mol Plant Pathol 13:1089–1100

O'Donnell K, Kistler HC, Cigelnik E, Ploetz RC (1998) Multiple evolutionary origins of the fungus causing Panama disease of banana: concordant evidence from nuclear and mitochondrial gene genealogies. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 95:2044–2049

O'Donnell K, Gueidan C, Sink S, Johnston PR, Crous PW, Glenn A, Riley R, Zitomer NC, Colyer P, Waalwijk C, Lee T, Moretti A, Kang S, Kim HS, Geiser DM, Juba JH, Baayen RP, Cromey MG, Bithell S, Sutton DA, Skovgaard K, Ploetz R, Corby Kistler H, Elliott M, Davis M, Sarver BA (2009) A two-locus DNA sequence database for typing plant and human pathogens within the Fusarium oxysporum species complex. Fungal Genet Biol 46:936–948

Olivain C, Alabouvette C (1999) Process of tomato root colonization by a pathogenic strain of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici in comparison with a non-pathogenic strain. New Phytol 141:497–510

Olivain C, Humbert C, Nahalkova J, Fatehi J, L'Haridon F, Alabouvette C (2006) Colonization of tomato root by pathogenic and nonpathogenic Fusarium oxysporum strains inoculated together and separately into the soil. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:1523–1531

Ortoneda M, Guarro J, Madrid MP, Caracuel Z, Roncero MI, Mayayo E, Di Pietro A (2004) Fusarium oxysporum as a multihost model for the genetic dissection of fungal virulence in plants and mammals. Infect Immun 72:1760–1766

Ospina-Giraldo MD, Mullins E, Kang S (2003) Loss of function of the Fusarium oxysporum SNF1 gene reduces virulence on cabbage and Arabidopsis. Curr Genet 44:49–57

Palecek SP, Parikh AS, Huh JH, Kron SJ (2002) Depression of Saccharomyces cerevisiae invasive growth on non-glucose carbon sources requires the Snf1 kinase. Mol Microbiol 45:453–469

Pareja-Jaime Y, Roncero MI, Ruiz-Roldan MC (2008) Tomatinase from Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici is required for full virulence on tomato plants. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:728–736

Peñalva MA, Tilburn J, Bignell E, Arst HN (2008) Ambient pH gene regulation in fungi: making connections. Trends Microbiol 16:291–300

Pérez-García A, Snoeijers SS, Joosten MHAJ, Goosen T, De Wit PJGM (2001) Expression of the avirulence gene Avr9 of the fungal tomato pathogen Cladosporium fulvum is regulated by the global nitrogen response factor NRF1. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:316–325
Perez-Nadales E, Di Pietro A (2011) The membrane mucin Msb2 regulates invasive growth and plant infection in Fusarium oxysporum. Plant Cell 23:1171–1185
Prados Rosales RC, Di Pietro A (2008) Vegetative hyphal fusion is not essential for plant infection by Fusarium oxysporum. Eukaryot Cell 7:162–171
Qu P, Yamashita K, Toda T, Priyatmojo A, Kubota M, Hyakumachi M (2008) Heterokaryon formation in Thanatephorus cucumeris (Rhizoctonia solani) AG-1 IC. Mycol Res 112:1088–1100
Ramos B, Alves-Santos FM, Garcia-Sanchez MA, Martin-Rodrigues N, Eslava AP, Diaz-Minguez JM (2007) The gene coding for a new transcription factor (ftf1) of Fusarium oxysporum is only expressed during infection of common bean. Fungal Genet Biol 44:864–876
Read ND, Roca MG (2006) Vegetative hyphal fusion in filamentous fungi. In: Baluska F, Volkmann D, Barlow PW (eds) Cell-cell channels. Springer, New York, NY, pp 87–98
Rep M, Kistler HC (2010) The genomic organization of plant pathogenicity in Fusarium species. Curr Opin Plant Biol 13:420–426
Rep M, van der Does HC, Meijer M, van Wijk R, Houterman PM, Dekker HL, de Koster CG, Cornelissen BJ (2004) A small, cysteine-rich protein secreted by Fusarium oxysporum during colonization of xylem vessels is required for I-3-mediated resistance in tomato. Mol Microbiol 53:1373–1383
Rep M, Meijer M, Houterman PM, van der Does HC, Cornelissen BJ (2005) Fusarium oxysporum evades I-3-mediated resistance without altering the matching avirulence gene. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 18:15–23
Rispail N, Di Pietro A (2009) Fusarium oxysporum Ste12 controls invasive growth and virulence downstream of the Fmk1 MAPK cascade. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:830–839
Rispail N, Di Pietro A (2010a) The homeodomain transcription factor Ste12: connecting fungal MAPK signalling to plant pathogenicity. Commun Integr Biol 3:327–332
Rispail N, Di Pietro A (2010b) The two-component histidine kinase Fhk1 controls stress adaptation and virulence of Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Plant Pathol 11:395–407
Roca MG, Davide LC, Mendes-Costa MC, Wheals A (2003) Conidial anastomosis tubes in Colletotrichum. Fungal Genet Biol 40:138–145
Roca MG, Davide LC, Davide LM, Mendes-Costa MC, Schwan RF, Wheals AE (2004) Conidial anastomosis fusion between Colletotrichum species. Mycol Res 108:1320–1326
Roca MG, Arlt J, Jeffree CE, Read ND (2005) Cell biology of conidial anastomosis tubes in Neurospora crassa. Eukaryot Cell 4:911–919
Roca GM, Read ND, Wheals AE (2006) Conidial anastomosis tubes in filamentous fungi. FEMS Microbiol Lett 249:191–198
Roldan-Arjona T, Perez-Espinosa A, Ruiz-Rubio M (1999) Tomatinase from Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. lycopersici defines a new class of saponinases. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 12:852–861
Roncero C (2002) The genetic complexity of chitin synthesis in fungi. Curr Genet 41:367–378
Rosales RCP, Di Pietro A (2008) Vegetative hyphal fusion is not essential for plant infection by Fusarium oxysporum. Eukaryot Cell 7:162–171
Ruiz-Roldan MC, Kohli M, Roncero MI, Philippsen P, Di Pietro A, Espeso EA (2010) Nuclear dynamics during germination, conidiation, and hyphal fusion of Fusarium oxysporum. Eukaryot Cell 9:1216–1224
Schure EG, Riel NAW, Verrips CT (2006) The role of ammonia metabolism in nitrogen catabolite repression in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. FEMS Microbiol Rev 24:67–83
Skovgaard K, Nirenberg HI, O'Donnell K, Rosendahl S (2001) Evolution of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. vasinfectum races inferred from multigene genealogies. Phytopathology 91:1231–1237

Snoeijers SS, Pérez-García A, Joosten MHAJ, De Wit PJGM (2000) The effect of nitrogen on disease development and gene expression in bacterial and fungal plant pathogens. Eur J Plant Pathol 106:493–506

Soanes DM, Kershaw MJ, Cooley RN, Talbot NJ (2002) Regulation of the MPG1 hydrophobin gene in the rice blast fungus Magnaporthe grisea. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 15:1253–1267

Stover R, Ploetz R (1990) Fusarium wilt of banana: some history and current status of the disease. In: Ploetz R (ed) Fusarium wilt of banana. APS Press, St Paul, MN, USA, pp 1–7

Summerell BA, Laurence MH, Liew ECY, Leslie JF (2010) Biogeography and phylogeography of Fusarium: a review. Fungal Divers 44:3–13

Takken F, Rep M (2010) The arms race between tomato and Fusarium oxysporum. Mol Plant Pathol 11:309–314

Taylor JW, Jacobson DJ, Kroken S, Kasuga T, Geiser DM, Hibbett DS, Fisher MC (2000) Phylogenetic species recognition and species concepts in fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 31:21–32

Teichert S, Wottawa M, Schonig B, Tudzynski B (2006) Role of the Fusarium fujikuroi TOR kinase in nitrogen regulation and secondary metabolism. Eukaryot Cell 5:1807–1819

Thatcher LF, Manners JM, Kazan K (2009) Fusarium oxysporum hijacks COI1-mediated jasmonate signaling to promote disease development in Arabidopsis. Plant J 58:927–939

Thatcher LF, Gardiner DM, Kazan K, Manners JM (2012) A highly conserved effector in Fusarium oxysporum is required for full virulence on Arabidopsis. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:180–190

Thurston CF (1994) The structure and function of fungal laccases. Microbiology 140:19–26

Toda T, Hyakumachi M (2006) Heterokaryon formation in Thanatephorus cucumeris anastomosis group 2-2 IV. Mycologia 98:726–736

Tucker SL, Talbot NJ (2001) Surface attachment and pre-penetration stage development by plant pathogenic fungi. Annu Rev Phytopathol 39:385–417

van der Does HC, Duyvesteijn RG, Goltstein PM, van Schie CC, Manders EM, Cornelissen BJ, Rep M (2008) Expression of effector gene SIX1 of Fusarium oxysporum requires living plant cells. Fungal Genet Biol 45:1257–1264

Vu TT, Sikora RA, Hauschild R (2004) Effects of endophytic Fusarium oxysporum towards Radopholus similis activity in absence of banana. Commun Agric Appl Biol Sci 69:381–385

Wong KH, Hynes MJ, Todd RB, Davis MA (2007) Transcriptional control of nmrA by the bZIP transcription factor MeaB reveals a new level of nitrogen regulation in Aspergillus nidulans. Mol Microbiol 66:534–551

Wu HS, Liu DY, Bao W, Ying RR, Ou YH, Huo ZH, Li YF, Shen QR (2008a) Effects of vanillic acid on the growth and development of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. niveum. Allelo J 22:111–122

Wu HS, Raza W, Fan JQ, Sun YG, Bao W, Shen QR (2008b) Cinnamic acid inhibits growth but stimulates production of pathogenesis factors by in vitro cultures of Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. niveum. J Agric Food Chem 56:1316–1321

Wu HS, Raza W, Liu DY, Wu CL, Mao ZS, Xu YC, Shen QR (2008c) Allelopathic impact of artificially applied coumarin on Fusarium oxysporum f. sp. niveum. World J Microbiol Biotechnol 24:1297–1304

Young ET, Zhang C, Shokat KM, Parua PK, Braun KA (2012) The AMP-activated protein kinase Snf1 regulates transcription factor binding, RNA polymerase II activity, and mRNA stability of glucose-repressed genes in Saccharomyces cerevisiae. J Biol Chem 287:29021–29034

Chapter 8
Genomics and Spectroscopy Provide Novel Insights into the Mechanisms of Litter Decomposition and Nitrogen Assimilation by Ectomycorrhizal Fungi

Anders Tunlid, Francois Rineau, Mark Smits, Firoz Shah, Cesar Nicolas, Tomas Johansson, Per Persson, and Francis Martin

8.1 Introduction

A large part of the nitrogen (N) in forest soils is present in organic forms including proteins but also other compounds like amino sugars and heterocyclic N molecules (Nannipieri and Eldor 2009). Several studies have demonstrated that forest trees have the capacity to acquire organic N in the form of amino acids. However, free amino acids generally account for only a small fraction of the organic N pool, and the ecological significance of this uptake is a matter of discussion (Näsholm et al. 2009). Moreover, organic N compounds in soils are found in association with polyphenols, polysaccharides, and other degradation products of plant and microbial polymers (Piccolo 2001). To get access to the organic N embedded in such complexes of soil organic matter (SOM), at least part of the shielding compounds, including polyphenols, needs to be degraded. For these reasons, it is generally thought that forest trees are dependent on the depolymerizing activity of microorganisms to access the organic N fraction (Schimel and Bennett 2004; Read

A. Tunlid (✉) • F. Shah • C. Nicolas • T. Johansson
Department of Biology, Microbial Ecology Group, Lund University, Ecology Building, SE-223 62 Lund, Sweden
e-mail: anders.tunlid@biol.lu.se

F. Rineau • M. Smits
Centre for Environmental Sciences, Hasselt University, Building D, Agoralaan, 3590 Diepenbeek, Limburg, Belgium

P. Persson
Department of Biology, Microbial Ecology Group, Lund University, Ecology Building, SE-223 62 Lund, Sweden

Centre for Environmental and Climate Research (CEC), Lund University, Ecology Building, SE-223 62 Lund, Sweden

F. Martin
INRA-Nancy, Lab of Excellence ARBRE, UMR INRA-University of Lorraine 'Interactions Arbres/Micro-organismes', 54280 Champenoux, France

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*,
Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_8,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

and Perez-Moreno 2004). Frank (1894) proposed already at the end of the nineteenth century that fungal symbionts, i.e., mycorrhizal fungi, might be one of the key organisms performing this activity. However, the "organic nitrogen theory" of mycorrhizal fungi was largely ignored until the mid-1980s (Trappe 2005; Read and Perez-Moreno 2003). As a result, the view has emerged that soils contain two distinct functional groups of fungi: the decomposers, which are involved in the decomposition of complex organic material and release of their nutrient content, and the fungal mutualists that absorb the mineral nutrients released by the decomposition process.

In boreal forests saprotrophic fungi are primarily found in the surface litter layers, while mycorrhizal fungi are dominating in underlying layers containing more decomposed litter and humic-rich SOM (Lindahl et al. 2007). Humic substances originate from the microbial decay of leaf litter, root litter, and root exudates. The main constituent of the plant litter is lignocellulose. Lignin, one of the most abundant components of lignocellulose, is a recalcitrant aromatic polymer consisting of phenylpropane units joined by C–C and ether linkages (Ralph et al. 2004). During the initial stages of SOM decay, the lignin polymers are chemically modified, and C and nutrients become available for saprotrophic fungi and bacteria, thereby promoting further degradation. The undecayed portion of the plant litter remains in the soil together with microbially derived compounds and residues. This mixture, operationally defined as humic substances, consists of relatively small molecules that associate with each other in supramolecular aggregates. These aggregates are stabilized by hydrophobic interactions and hydrogen (H) bonding, and their properties are determined by all of the constituents and their associations (Sutton and Sposito 2005) (Fig. 8.1).

Lignin decay mechanisms have been studied almost exclusively in the context of wood decomposition. Two main types of mechanisms have been characterized in detail: decomposition by white-rot fungi and by brown-rot fungi (Hatakka and Hammel 2010). The white-rot fungi degrade all components of lignocellulose including cellulose, hemicelluloses, and lignin. Lignin degradation in these fungi depends on the concerted action of dedicated peroxidases and hydrolytic enzymes that include various cellulases and hemicellulases. The brown-rot fungi have developed a different decay strategy being able to degrade most of the cellulose and hemicelluloses, leaving the lignin polymer essentially undigested albeit chemically modified. The brown-rot fungi express a distinct set of hemicellulases, endoglucanases, and oxidases during the degradation of lignocellulosic material but lack ligninolytic peroxidases, as well as many of the exocellulases present in white-rot fungi. Of major importance for the disruption of the lignin barrier of brown-rot fungi is the production of free radicals by a Fenton mechanism (Martinez et al. 2009; Eastwood et al. 2011). During this reaction, Fe^{2+} reacts with H_2O_2 to produce hydroxyl radicals ($OH^{\cdot}$) that can unspecifically oxidize both lignin and cellulose molecules (Fig. 8.1).

In contrast to the decay of lignin in wood, little is known about the decomposition of lignin residues and other recalcitrant aromatic compounds in humic-rich SOM. Recently, it was shown that the genome of the humicolous fungus *Agaricus*

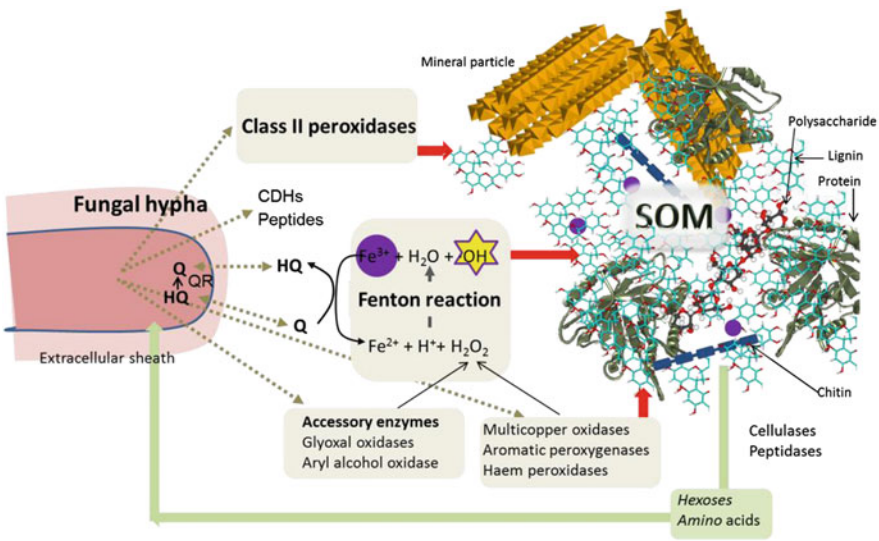


Fig. 8.1 A schema of the complex interactions between fungal hyphae and soil components, which ultimately determine the extent and rate of soil organic matter (SOM) degradation (see main text for explanations)

bisporus is rather similar to those of wood-decaying fungi (Morin et al. 2012). The genome of this fungus encodes a full repertoire of polysaccharide-degrading enzymes similar to that of wood decayers. However, a striking expansion of gene families encoding heme-thiolate peroxidases and β-etherases is distinctive from the Agaricomycotina wood decayers and suggests abilities to broadly attack lignin residues in humic-rich environments (Morin et al. 2012).

The interfaces between microorganisms and soil constituents, including SOM and soil mineral particles, are the zone in which the oxidative SOM degradation reactions occur (Fig. 8.1). These complex interfaces constitute less than 1 % of the soil volume and are distributed heterogeneously in small-scale habitats, connected by water-saturated or water-unsaturated pore space. The biological, chemical, and physical heterogeneity of these microhabitats is likely to have a large effect on the turnover of SOM (Schmidt et al. 2011). At the molecular level, this turnover is controlled by the properties of the fungal hyphae–SOM–mineral assemblies.

The interactions between the ensemble of biologically produced molecules required for oxidative degradation and the components of these assemblies need to be uncovered to understand C decomposition at the molecular level. We consider that this can be accomplished only by unifying experimental information about the gene expression of the fungi with information about the molecular structure and properties of the SOM (Fig. 8.2). The growing wealth of genome sequences of fungi and the application and development of novel spectroscopic methods have open up new possibilities for such research. This review covers some recent studies using such approaches and the insight that they provide regarding mechanisms for litter

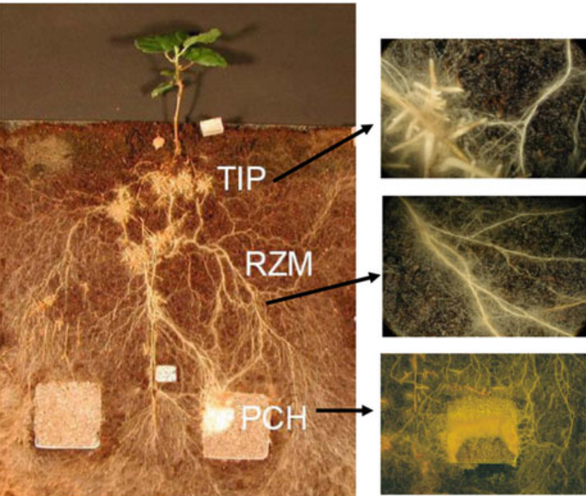


Fig. 8.2 The extrametrical mycelium developed from an ectomycorrhizal fungus. A birch (*Betula pendula*) seedling colonized by the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Paxillus involutus*. The fungus colonizes the plant's root tips (TIP). Supported by plant C, the fungal mycelia grow extensively and fuse to form thick rhizomorphs (RZM). When the mycelia encounter a patch (PCH) with organic material, the material is degraded, and the assimilated nutrients are transferred to the plant. Reprinted from Wright et al. (2005) with permission

decomposition and N assimilation by ectomycorrhizal (ECM) fungi. However, we will first give a short background to the ecology of litter decomposition by ECM fungi highlighting areas of uncertainty.

8.2 Ectomycorrhizal Fungi as Decomposers

8.2.1 The Extramatrical Mycelium: The Interface Between ECM and Soil

Ectomycorrhizae (ECM) is the dominant type of mycorrhiza found in association with tree roots in a boreal forest (Smith and Read 1997). Development of the ECM tissue proceeds through the differentiation of a fungal mantle surrounding the plant root, inwardly directed hyphae which form the Hartig net around root cortical cells and externally directed hyphae forming the extramatrical mycelium in the soil (Fig. 8.2). Supported by carbon (C) from the host plant, the extramatrical mycelium can grow extensively within the soil and efficiently prospect for nutrients, often at considerable distances from the plant root system (Read and Perez-Moreno 2003). The mycelial system is regarded as indeterminate, structurally and physiologically heterogeneous network that interconnects multiple plant root systems (Cairney and Burke 1996). The development and differentiation of the extramatrical mycelia

differ between different taxa of ECM fungi, and it has been proposed that the morphology of the mycelia can be used as a trait to classify ECM into various ecological groups (Agerer 2001). Such exploration types explore the surrounding soils by extramatrical mycelia which are either concentrated in vicinity of the mycorrhizal mantle or formed as far-reaching strands (i.e., rhizomorphs) (cf. Fig. 8.2). When encountering a patch of nutrients, the hyphae can proliferate extensively. Hydrolytic and oxidative enzymes are secreted, and nutrients are released and assimilated by the mycelium and transported to the host plant. Once the organic material is fully colonized by the fungus and the available nutrients withdrawn, the amount of plant C allocated to the mycelium in the patch rapidly decreases, and the mycelium dies (Leake et al. 2001). Residues of the ECM fungal mycelium can persist in soil for long time and may constitute a large fraction of SOM (Clemmensen et al. 2013).

Direct evidences that ECM fungi could assimilate organic N from complex organic matter and transfer the N to the host plant emerged from a number of seminal experiments performed by David Read and colleagues using soil microcosms (Abuzinadah et al. 1986; Read and Perez-Moreno 2003). By using soil microcosms, it could be demonstrated (Abuzinadah et al. 1986) that mycorrhizal plants of *Pinus contorta* associated with the ECM fungi *Paxillus involutus*, *Suillus bovinus*, and *Rhizopogon roseolus* could grow on a substrate supplemented with protein as the sole N source. Since then, numerous studies have shown that ECM fungi can assimilate organic N from proteins and other complex natural organic substrates like litter material, pollen grains, and chitin (that is the main component of necromass of fungal mycelia and soil mesofauna) (Read and Perez-Moreno 2004). In these experiments the N sources were exploited and a significant portion of N was delivered to the host plant (Read and Perez-Moreno 2004). More recently, field studies using isotope analyses also provide evidences that ECM fungi mobilize N during litter decomposition in boreal forest soils (Lindahl et al. 2007).

8.2.2 Nutrient-Mobilizing Enzymes

Assimilation of N from organic sources requires the secretion of a range of different enzymes. It has been reported that ECM fungi can indeed express extracellular enzymes that can degrade proteins and, at least to some extent, other organic compounds in plant-litter material (such as cellulose, hemicellulose, and polyphenols) in which N is embedded (Zhu et al. 1990; Norkrans 1950; Haselwandter et al. 1990; Trojanowski et al. 1984). Moreover studies of soil microcosms have shown that the assimilation of N from patches of plant-litter material by the ECM fungus *P. involutus* is associated with an enhanced protease and polyphenol oxidase activity (Bending and Read 1995).

There have been numerous attempts to measure the activities of nutrient-mobilizing enzymes secreted by ECM in the field. Microplate enzymatic tests

have been developed to measure secreted enzyme activities by freshly harvested ECM root tips. These assays are using commercially available substrates for peptidase, hydrolytic and oxidative enzymes involved in the decomposition of lignocellulose, chitin, and phosphorous containing organic compounds (Courty et al. 2005). These cultivation-independent methods have been used in field studies examining the temporal and spatial dynamics of enzyme activities involved in nutrient cycling and how they are influenced by disturbance (Pritsch and Garbaye 2011). One intriguing result from these studies is that the enzyme activities were elevated at some periods when the level of photosynthate was low (Courty et al. 2007; Cullings et al. 2008). This observation suggests that ECM fungi may live as facultative saprotrophs, i.e., they can degrade and metabolize SOM as an alternative C source when the energy supply from the host plants is low. Hence, it has been proposed that the saprotrophic activity of ECM fungi might represent a significant pathway of C loss in forest ecosystems (Talbot et al. 2008).

8.2.3 The Mechanism of Litter Decomposition Is Unclear

However, the efficiency by which ECM fungi can degrade and metabolize SOM is not clear, and the evidences that they can act as facultative saprotrophs have been questioned. As compared with saprotrophic fungi, ECM genome sequence information show a reduced set of genes encoding plant cell wall-degrading enzymes (Martin et al. 2008; Nagendran et al. 2009), which suggests that ECM fungi have limited capacity to degrade plant-litter material. Furthermore, there are several reports showing that ECM fungi have—particularly in comparison with saprophytic fungi—only a limited enzymatic ability to degrade and mobilize N from protein–polyphenol complexes (Bending and Read 1996; Wu et al. 2003). The conclusions drawn from field studies using enzyme activity profiling have also been questioned based on the fact that the assays are unspecific and therefore may overestimate the decomposing activities of ECM fungi (Baldrian 2009). Moreover, it has been argued that the ECM fungi are mostly found in humic soil layer (Lindahl et al. 2007), which is composed only of low-energy-content molecules that cannot support an extensive saprotrophic growth of ECM fungi (Baldrian 2009).

8.3 Conversion of Organic Matter by ECM Fungi

8.3.1 Probing Chemical Modifications of SOM Using Spectroscopy

To examine the mechanisms by which ECM fungi degrade complex organic material extracted from plant-litter material, the fungus *Paxillus involutus* was grown in an axenic model system that allowed careful control of growth conditions

and precise sampling of the substrate for spectroscopic analyses and harvesting of mycelium for transcriptome profiling (Rineau et al. 2012). *P. involutus* (Batsch) Fr. (Basidiomycetes, Boletales) is widely distributed in the Northern Hemisphere and is one of the best-studied ECM fungi, especially with respect to the physiology related to the uptake and transformation of nutrients (Wallander and Söderström 1999). The SOM constituents of organic material extracted from forest litter and from maize compost material. Low-molecular-weight material such as inorganic N sources was removed from the extracts by ultrafiltration, and the fungus was starved for N before the SOM extracts were added.

A range of spectroscopic techniques was used to characterize the conversion of the major components of the SOM by *P. involutus*. Fourier transform infrared (FTIR) spectroscopy provides a chemical fingerprint of the functional group composition (e.g., carbonyls, carboxyls, hydroxyls, phenols, and phenyls) as well as information on the alteration of these groups as a result of degradation. Synchronous fluorescence spectroscopy was used for a more detailed characterization of the aromatic molecules. This technique allows for measurement of the degree of condensation and substitution of humic substances (Senesi et al. 1991). Finally, a quantitative in-depth analysis of the composition of the SOM was conducted by pyrolysis gas chromatography (Py-GC/MS). This technique also allowed the measurement of the degree of oxidation of the lignin building blocks. The results obtained with those three techniques demonstrated that, while *P. involutus* assimilated half of the organic N in the SOM, the polyphenols and polysaccharides were at least partially degraded. Of particular interest were the chemical modifications of the lignin residues as detected by Py-GC/MS (Fig. 8.3). They included the removal and oxidation of side chains, which are modifications that have also been observed during the degradation of lignin through Fenton reactions by brown-rot fungi (Martinez et al. 2011; Yelle et al. 2011).

8.3.2 Production of Iron-Reducing Compounds

A key requirement for the Fenton mechanism is a system for reduction of Fe^{3+} to Fe^{2+}, which might be accomplished by extracellular fungal metabolites or reductive enzymes (Hatakka and Hammel 2010). The iron-reducing activity was indeed significantly increased during decomposition of the organic matter extracts by *P. involutus* (Rineau et al. 2012), suggesting that iron-reducing compound(s) was secreted during organic matter degradation. The chemical structures and the role of secondary metabolites in iron redox cycling have been studied in the brown-rot bolete *Serpula lacrymans* (Eastwood et al. 2011). It remains to be determined whether *P. involutus* produces similar metabolites during the decomposition of plant-litter material.

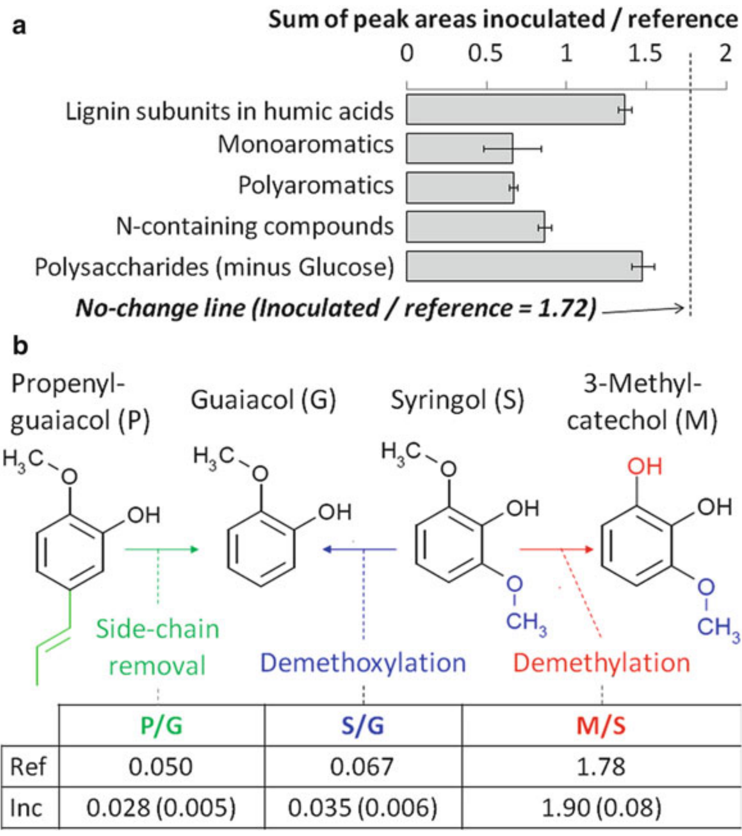
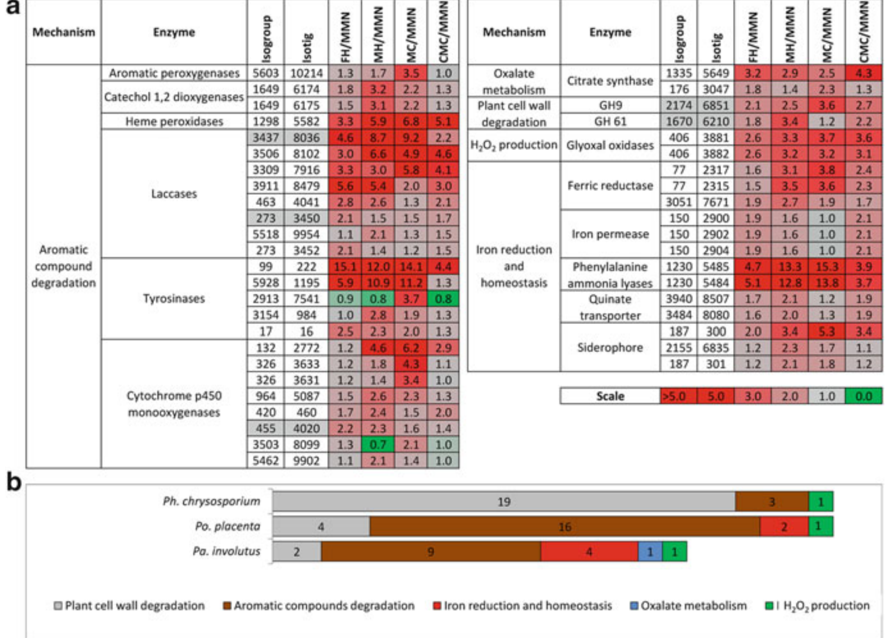


Fig. 8.3 Degradation of organic material extracted from forest litter by *P. involutus*. The material was analyzed using pyrolysis GC/MS after 7 days of incubation (Inoculated) and before incubation (Reference). (**a**) Relative amounts of the major groups of organic compounds. A ratio below the "no change line" indicates that this particular class of pyrolysis products was depleted in the Inoculated as compared to the Reference samples. "Lignin" does not refer to genuine plant lignin but rather parts of the lignin molecule that are present in the humic acids as residuals of the degradation process. (**b**) Chemical modification of lignin residuals subunits. Numbers indicate the relative peak area of the different lignin subunits in the reference sample against the average relative peak area in the incubated samples ($N = 5$, error bars denote standard error). Reprinted from Rineau et al. (2012) with permission

8.3.3 Trancriptome Profiling

The involvement of a Fenton-based biodegradation system during the decomposition of the SOM extracts was confirmed by analyzing the transcriptional response in *P. involutus* using DNA microarrays. The array contained probes for 12,214 transcripts (isotigs) that were obtained by sequencing the transcriptome of *P. involutus* when grown on the SOM extracts (Rineau et al. 2012). Based on manual annotations, we identified 269 transcripts encoding enzymes known to be



a

Mechanism	Enzyme	Isogroup	Isotig	FH/MMN	MH/MMN	MC/MMN	CMC/MMN
Aromatic compound degradation	Aromatic peroxygenases	5603	10214	1.3	1.7	3.5	1.0
	Catechol 1,2 dioxygenases	1649	6174	1.8	3.2	2.2	1.3
		1649	6175	1.5	3.1	2.2	1.3
	Heme peroxidases	1298	5582	3.3	5.9	6.8	5.1
	Laccases	3437	8036	4.6	8.7	9.2	2.2
		3506	8102	3.0	6.6	4.9	4.6
		3309	7916	3.3	3.0	5.8	4.1
		3911	8479	5.6	5.4	2.0	3.0
		463	4041	2.8	2.6	1.3	2.1
		273	3450	2.1	1.5	1.5	1.7
		5518	9954	1.1	2.1	1.3	1.5
		273	3452	2.1	1.4	1.2	1.5
	Tyrosinases	99	222	15.1	12.0	14.1	4.4
		5928	1195	5.9	10.9	11.2	1.3
		2913	7541	0.9	0.8	3.7	0.8
		3154	984	1.0	2.8	1.9	1.3
		17	16	2.5	2.3	2.0	1.3
	Cytochrome p450 monooxygenases	132	2772	1.2	4.6	6.2	2.9
		326	3633	1.2	1.8	4.3	1.1
		326	3631	1.2	1.4	3.4	1.0
		964	5087	1.5	2.6	2.3	1.3
		420	460	1.7	2.4	1.5	2.0
		455	4020	2.2	2.3	1.6	1.4
		3503	8099	1.3	0.7	2.1	1.0
		5462	9902	1.1	2.1	1.4	1.0

Mechanism	Enzyme	Isogroup	Isotig	FH/MMN	MH/MMN	MC/MMN	CMC/MMN
Oxalate metabolism	Citrate synthase	1335	5649	3.2	2.9	2.5	4.3
		176	3047	1.8	1.4	2.3	1.3
Plant cell wall degradation	GH9	2174	6851	2.1	2.5	3.6	2.7
	GH 61	1670	6210	1.8	3.4	1.2	2.2
H_2O_2 production	Glyoxal oxidases	406	3881	2.6	3.3	3.7	3.6
		406	3882	2.6	3.2	3.2	3.1
Iron reduction and homeostasis	Ferric reductase	77	2317	1.6	3.1	3.8	2.4
		77	2315	1.5	3.5	3.6	2.3
		3051	7671	1.9	2.7	1.9	1.7
	Iron permease	150	2900	1.9	1.6	1.0	2.1
		150	2902	1.9	1.6	1.0	2.1
		150	2904	1.9	1.6	1.0	2.1
	Phenylalanine ammonia lyases	1230	5485	4.7	13.3	15.3	3.9
		1230	5484	5.1	12.8	13.8	3.7
	Quinate transporter	3940	8507	1.7	2.1	1.2	1.9
		3484	8080	1.6	2.0	1.3	1.9
	Siderophore	187	300	2.0	3.4	5.3	3.4
		2155	6835	1.2	2.3	1.7	1.1
		187	301	1.2	2.1	1.8	1.2

Scale	>5.0	5.0	3.0	2.0	1.0	0.0

Fig. 8.4 Regulation of genes potentially involved in organic matter degradation by *P. involutus*. (**a**) Expression profile of 44 genes that were manually annotated as potentially involved in organic matter degradation and were upregulated more than twice (false discovery rate $q < 0.01$) in at least one of pairwise comparisons in media containing extracts of complex organic material versus mineral nutrient medium (MMN). The data presented are average ratio of expression ($N = 3$). Four different types of organic substrates were used: forest litter extracted with hot water (FH), maize compost extracted with hot water (MH), maize compost extracted with cold water (MC), and carboxymethyl cellulose (CMC). Isotigs and isogroups refer to transcripts and genes, respectively. In *gray boxes* are four isotigs that were also identified in a (TAST) screening for secreted proteins. (**b**) Comparison of the transcriptional response of *P. placenta*, *P. chrysosporium*, and *P. involutus* when growing on a cellulose medium as compared to a medium containing glucose as the carbon source. The number of genes that were upregulated at least twofold (in average of three replicates) and those with annotations consistent with a potential role in organic matter degradation are shown. Reprinted from Rineau et al. (2012) with permission

involved in the degradation of organic matter in white-rot and brown-rot fungi. In total, 44 of these transcripts were significantly upregulated during the conversion of organic material. Notably, the set of genes was similar to those expressed by the brown-rot fungus *Postia placenta* when grown on cellulose medium (Fig. 8.4). When in contact with organic matter, *P. involutus* overexpressed a number of transcripts of oxidases like laccases, catechol dioxygenase, heme peroxidase, tyrosinases, and cytochrome p450 monooxygenases that have also been shown to be produced by the brown-rot fungus *P. placenta* when grown on wood or cellulose media (Martinez et al. 2009; Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2010). No transcripts encoding class II peroxidases (Mn or lignin peroxidases) that are signatures for a white-rot mechanism were detected in the transcriptome of *P. involutus*.

However, considering the expression of genes encoding carbohydrate-active enzymes (CAZymes) involved in the degradation of the plant cell wall, there were large differences between the symbiotic *P. involutus* and saprophytic *P. placenta*. Although, none of them expressed genes coding for enzymes of the canonical crystalline cellulose decomposition system (Lynd et al. 2002), the transcriptional profile of *P. placenta* employs an array of CAZymes like endoglucanases, β-glucosidases, and hemicellulase when it is grown on cellulose or aspen (Martinez et al. 2009; Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2010). Except for endoglucanase (GH9), no glycosyl hydrolases were induced in *P. involutus* during growth on plant litter or cellulose. In addition to the GH9, a member of the GH61 family was significantly upregulated in *P. involutus*. GH61 is the most abundant CAZyme family acting on the plant cell wall in the genome of *L. bicolor* (Martin et al. 2008). Recently, it has been reported that GH61 can depolymerize cellulose oxidatively in cooperation with cellobiose dehydrogenase or low-molecular-weight reducing agents (Langston et al. 2011; Quinlan et al. 2011). Hence, GH61 could be an important component of the radical-based cellulose-degrading mechanism of ECM fungi.

The lack of transcription of extracellular CAZymes needed for metabolizing C released by the Fenton reaction could be expected in *P. involutus* considering the fact that many of these enzymes are lacking in the genome of *P. involutus* (A. Tunlid, F. Martin et al. unpublished data). This observation implies that the decomposing mechanism has been tuned for assimilating organic N rather than C from the SOM and that the ability to assimilate the released C has been lost as an adaptation to growth on the host photosynthate (Rineau et al. 2012).

8.3.4 Ecological Implications of a Trimmed Saprophytic Activity

The C and nutrients released during the radical-based decomposition of SOM by fungi may become available for further degradation and assimilation by saprotrophic microorganisms. Several studies have shown that the mycelia of ECM fungi are surrounded by distinct communities of saprophytic bacteria and fungi (De Boer et al. 2005; Izumi and Finlay 2011). Most likely, some of these microorganisms are commensals that grow on the C resources that become available during the radical-based degradation. Other microorganisms may be competitors that strive for the same nutrient resources as the ECM fungi. Thus, it can be expected that ECM fungi have evolved mechanisms that could control the activity of saprophytic microorganisms. The first evidence for such a mechanism was reported already in 1971, when it was demonstrated that the presence of mycelium of ECM fungi suppressed litter decomposition (Gadgil and Gadgil 1971). More recently, studies in soil microcosms have shown that the ECM mycelium of *P. involutus* can reduce the activity of saprophytic bacteria (Olsson

et al. 1996). The mechanism of the "Gadgil effect" is not clear; proposed explanations are the production of toxic metabolites and the removal of nutrients or water by the ECM mycelium (Bending 2003).

8.4 Regulation of the Decomposing Activities in ECM Fungi by Carbon and Nitrogen

8.4.1 Carbon Availability Triggers SOM Decomposition

The finding that *P. involutus* does not express the hydrolases needed for metabolizing the released C fragments suggests that the decomposing activity is dependent on sugars from the host plant. Assuming that glucose is the main form of plant C supplied to the ECM fungus (Nehls et al. 2010), we have recently examined the decomposition of litter material regulated by glucose (Rineau et al. 2013). Spectroscopic analyses revealed that degradation of SOM did only occur when glucose was added to the extracts. Hence, glucose triggered the decomposition of the litter material. Concomitantly, the expression of genes encoding enzymes involved in oxidative degradation of polysaccharides and polyphenols (i.e., Fenton chemistry) was upregulated. Addition of glucose also stimulated the assimilation of N and the expression of genes encoding enzymes and transporters of all the major steps of organic N assimilation of ECM fungi (Rineau et al. 2013). This involved the degradation of proteins, uptake of released amino acids and peptides, and internal transformation of amino acids. Taken together, data supports the hypothesis that the SOM-degrading activity and assimilation of N by *P. involutus* is dependent on sugars from the host plant.

The physiological mechanism providing the stimulating effects of glucose is not known. Adding glucose to the extracts of SOM significantly stimulates the expression of metabolic pathways involved in energy generation (glycolysis, pyruvate metabolism, and the TCA cycle). Transcripts encoding enzymes mediating the oxidative parts of the pentose phosphate pathway are also upregulated. Thus, apart from generating energy, the added glucose most likely stimulates the production of reducing power (NADPH) needed for biosynthetic reactions. Another possibility is that the added glucose triggers the activity of extracellular enzymes involved in the oxidation of the SOM. Such mechanisms have been proposed to explain the so-called priming effects, i.e., the stimulation of SOM turnover caused by the addition of easily available organic C or N sources (Bengtson et al. 2012).

The above findings suggest that the regulation of the plant cell wall-decomposing machinery may differ significantly between saprophytic and ECM fungi. In saprophytic fungi, the expression of plant cell wall-degrading enzymes including cellulases, hemicellulases, ligninases, and pectinases is commonly repressed in the presence of glucose (Aro et al. 2005). Furthermore, several studies of the brown-rot fungus *P. placenta* have shown that the oxidative degradation of

cellulose and wood substrates can occur without adding glucose to the medium (Martinez et al. 2009; Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2010). Accordingly, both a reduction in gene content of plant cell wall-degrading enzymes and mutations affecting the transcriptional regulation have contributed to the symbiotic adaptations of the decomposing mechanism in ECM fungi in the Boletales.

8.4.2 Ammonium Has Relatively Minor Effects on the Decomposing Activities

The fact that the decomposition of SOM by *P. involutus* is linked to the degradation of organic N suggests that the degradation activity should be controlled by environmental factors known to regulate the activity of enzymes involved in the breakdown of soil organic N sources such as proteins. In many filamentous fungi including the ECM fungus *Hebeloma crustuliniforme*, the expression of proteolytic activity is repressed in the presence of the favorable (or primary) N source like ammonium (Marzluf 1996; Zhu et al. 1994). Moreover, studies in saprophytic fungi have shown that N availability may also affect the expression levels of lignocellulolytic enzymes including cellulases, peroxidases, and laccases (Aro et al. 2005; Fenn and Kirk 1981; Chen et al. 2003; Edwards et al. 2011). However, the addition of ammonium—which is the most abundant form of inorganic N in boreal forest soils—had relatively minor effects on both the transcription and the decomposition of litter material by *P. involutus* and only occurring when glucose was present (Rineau et al. 2013).

8.4.3 Interactions Between C and N

ECM fungi assimilate nutrients including N from soil and exchange them for photosynthetically fixed C. The mechanism that regulates this exchange is not known, but it has been proposed that the plant host reduces the C supply to the fungus if it fails to supply adequate amount of nutrients (Nehls et al. 2007). Recent studies on the arbuscular mycorrhizal (AM) symbiosis have demonstrated that the symbiosis is stabilized by reciprocal rewarding of nutrients and C resources according with the nutritional benefit provided by the other partner (Kiers et al. 2011). Experiments using AM mycorrhizal root organ cultures have also shown that the C availability of the plant triggers the uptake and transport of N uptake by the AM fungus (Fellbaum et al. 2012). The finding that *P. involutus* does not degrade litter material without glucose suggests that the C flux from the host plant can control the assimilation of organic N in ECM fungi. Studies of ECM fungi in association with a host plant will be needed to verify this hypothesis.

Moreover, regulation of the decomposing activities of ECM fungi by the plant photosynthate needs to be considered for the understanding of environmental factors that control the C cycles in forest ecosystem. Talbot et al. (2008) proposed three hypotheses for mechanisms by which mycorrhizal fungi act as decomposers. The first hypothesis ("Plan B") is that mycorrhizal fungi metabolize significant quantities of SOM when the supplies of plant photosynthate are low. The second hypothesis ("Coincidental Decomposer" hypothesis) is that mycorrhizal fungi decompose soil C as a consequence of mining SOM for organic nutrients. The third hypothesis ("Priming Effects" hypothesis) is that mycorrhizal fungi decompose SOM when allocation of plant C to mycorrhizal roots is high. Data from the study by Rineau et al. (2013) provides support for both the "Priming Effect" and "Coincidental Decomposer" hypotheses, but not for the "Plan B" hypothesis.

8.5 Molecular Components of the Protein Degradation Pathways in ECM Fungi

Proteins contribute to major part of the organic N in forest soils (Nannipieri and Eldor 2009). The assimilation of N from proteins involves several steps including the degradation of organic N polymers, assimilation of released mono- and oligomers, internal metabolism, and transfer to the host plant (Chalot and Brun 1998; Talbot and Treseder 2010). Proteases are key enzymes involved in the extracellular degradation of proteins by fungi, and experiments have shown abilities of *P. involutus* to capture N from plant-litter material associated with increased protease activities in colonized material (Bending and Read 1995). Furthermore, studies in pure culture systems using protein as a sole N source have shown that abilities to produce extracellular proteases are common among ECM fungi (Ramstedt and Söderhäll 1983; Zhu et al. 1990; Nehls et al. 2001; Nygren et al. 2007). The proteolytic activity is typically expressed at an acidic pH (<5.0) and is mainly inhibited by compounds active against aspartic proteases. Characterizations of the extracellular proteolytic activity in *Hebeloma crustuliniforme* and *Amanita muscaria* have shown that this is due to aspartic proteases (Zhu et al. 1990; Nehls et al. 2001). More recently, analysis of the genome and transcriptomes of *L. bicolor* reveals that ECM fungi can express a large number of proteases and peptidases, not only including aspartic proteases but also members of the serine, metallo, and cysteine classes of peptidases (Martin et al. 2008). Furthermore, studies on amino acid and peptide transporters suggest that ECM fungi have a large capacity to assimilate the catabolites of extracellular proteases. Although only few transporters have fully been characterized (Nehls et al. 1999; Wipf et al. 2002; Benjdia et al. 2006), in silico analysis of the *L. bicolor* genome revealed that ECM fungi have a large gene repertoire of amino acid and oligopeptide transporters (Lucic et al. 2008).

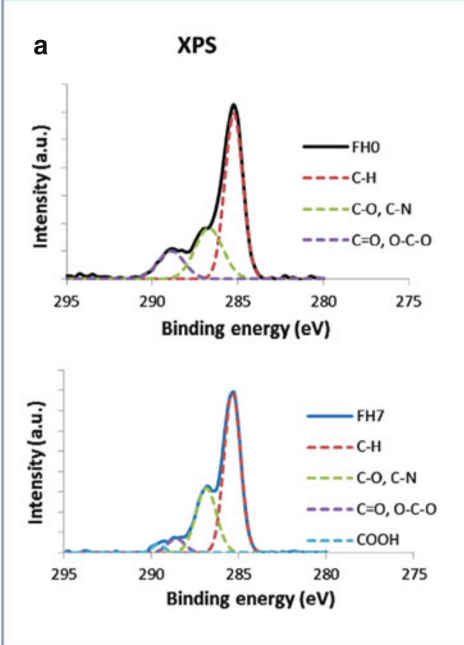
We have recently examined the proteolytic machinery expressed by *P. involutus* during the assimilation of N from various protein sources and extracts of organic matter (Shah et al. 2013). All substrates induced a similar proteolytic activity that was almost completely suppressed by the aspartic peptidase inhibitor pepstatin. However, a transcriptome analysis showed that the fungus expressed a large diversity of extracellular endo- and exopeptidases. The expression levels of these peptidases were regulated in concert with N transporters and enzymes involved in the assimilation and metabolism of the liberated peptides and amino acids.

8.6 Challenges and Future Prospects

8.6.1 Novel Spectroscopic Methods

In recent publications we have shown that infrared (IR) spectroscopy is an excellent tool to qualitatively trace the oxidative degradation of SOM induced by ECM fungi and Fenton mechanisms (Rineau et al. 2012; Rineau et al. 2013). However, from these data it is difficult to exactly pinpoint the nature of the functional groups consumed and produced during the degradation processes as well as to quantitatively estimate the extent of the oxidative reaction. These possibilities are offered by synchrotron-based techniques such as X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy (XPS) and near-edge X-ray absorption spectroscopy (NEXAFS) as indicated by new but unpublished results from our group. For instance, the high spectral resolution of synchrotron C 1s XPS data resolves classes of SOM functional groups (Fig. 8.5a), and the individual peak areas in these spectra can be used as a relative measure of the quantitative changes of SOM, which directly indicate the extent of oxidative processes. The example provided in Fig. 8.5 shows that 7 days of incubation with *P. involutus* results in a substantial increase of oxidized carbon in the form of carboxyl groups.

We also know from recent progress in soil science that molecular structure alone does not control SOM stability. Instead, the persistence of SOM arises from complex interactions between SOM and the biological and physicochemical environment (Schmidt et al. 2011). Furthermore, SOM itself is a complex mixture consisting of relatively small molecules that associate with each other in supramolecular aggregates. These aggregates are stabilized by hydrophobic interactions and hydrogen (H) bonding, and their properties are determined by all of the constituents and their associations. It follows that to understand SOM degradation by unifying the gene expression information of the fungi with information about the molecular structure and properties of the SOM, spectroscopic probes are needed to determine SOM properties at high spatial resolution and under in situ conditions. More specifically, techniques are required that will allow, at high spatial resolution (from micrometers to nanometers), to follow molecular-scale changes in SOM in terms of chemical states and relative abundances of atomic species and to precisely



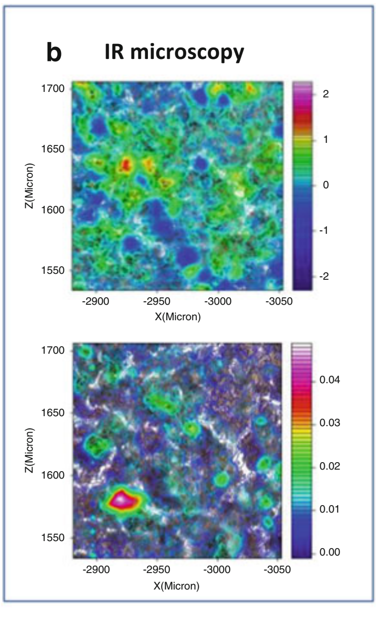


Fig. 8.5 Synchrotron- and IR-based methods for characterizing SOM (C. Nicolas, A. Tunlid and P. Persson, unpublished results). (**a**) Carbon (1 s) spectra obtained by XPS analysis of organic matter extracts of forest litter before (FH0) and after 7 days of incubation with *P. involutus* (FH7). Measured data (*full line*) were fitted by Gaussian curves (*dashed line*). (**b**) IR microscopy images of a thin layer of SOM, obtained by plotting the intensity of second derivative peaks representing carbohydrates (*top*) and carbonyl groups (*bottom*). The images indicate a physical separation between regions rich in carbohydrate and carbonyl, respectively

identify the reaction pathways of the degradation process. Such possibilities are now emerging primarily due to development of spectroscopic imaging techniques at synchrotron radiation sources but also by the use of conventional light sources; an example of IR imaging of SOM using conventional IR light is shown in Fig. 8.5b. Some studies have already demonstrated the importance and potential of analyzing the chemical structures of intact SOM at high sensitivity and spatial resolution using synchrotron methods (Lehmann et al. 2008). Further developments that allow dynamic processes to be assessed are likely to revolutionize the understanding of the molecular interactions between SOM, mineral particles, and microorganisms in the soil and how these interactions affect the stabilization of soil C. In addition to XPS, NEXAFS, and IR spectroscopy already mentioned, scanning transmission X-ray microscopy (STXM) and Raman spectroscopy will play important roles in this area. Finally, the continued development of synchrotron sources with increasing brilliance and coherence will certainly make important contributions to the understanding of SOM degradation and stabilization.

8.6.2 Development of Novel Biomarkers

There is accumulating evidences that mycorrhizal fungi have a key role in important ecosystem processes such as C cycling and nutrient mobilization. However, there is a lack of methods that can measure the functional activities of these organisms in the field. The current biomarkers include hydrolytic and oxidative enzymes (Pritsch and Garbaye 2011), yet the understanding of the involvement of such enzymes in decomposing and nutrient cycling processes is limited. For example, several of these enzymes are not expressed during the decomposition of litter material by ECM fungi (Rineau et al. 2012). Moreover many of the commercial substrates used are not relevant for inferring the decomposition of the complex C sources and nutrients that are present in SOM. The decomposing activity of soil fungi is also analyzed on the basis of transcriptional gene expression (Kellner et al. 2010). A major challenge of using such markers is that many of them belong to large gene families, and only a few of their members may have a role in the decomposition of SOM (Rineau et al. 2012).

The combination of spectroscopic methods and transcriptomic analyses offers new possibilities to identify specific genes or chemical signatures that can be used as biomarkers for probing the decomposing activity of microorganisms in soils. Statistical methods can be used to correlate gene expression levels with modifications in the substrate. Recently, such an approach was used to show that in *P. involutus* the expression levels of specific sets of genes encoding lignocellulose and protein-degrading enzymes can be correlated with specific modifications of the plant-litter material (Rineau et al. 2013). A similar experimental system can be used for analyzing the decomposing activities in a wide range of mycorrhizal and saprophytic litter fungi. Through systems biology approaches, the changes in spectra—and thus in the chemical modifications of the SOM—can be correlated with changes in gene expression. In the long run, it should be possible to generate models that will predict how a given change in transcriptional levels of a smaller set of biomarkers would change the chemical composition of the substrate. A challenge in analyzing such biomarkers in the field is to identify the relative contribution of saprotrophic mycelium *vs* the symbiotic one. An approach to tackle this issue is the use of ingrowth mesh bags that are either accessible or inaccessible to ECM fungi, using cylinders to block the connection between tree roots and fungi colonizing the mesh bags (Wallander et al. 2011). The contribution of ECM mycelium can then be deduced by subtracting the activity within the cylinder to the activity in other mesh bags. The mesh bags can be amended with plant-litter material or specific litter material. The decomposition of this material can be followed by measuring either the expression levels of specific transcripts or chemical modifications of the substrate that are proxys for free radical production.

The use of high-throughput sequencing and the next-generation molecular tools will provide ecologists with unprecedentedly large datasets describing the diversity and composition of microbial and fungal communities. Associating genes to function is of major importance for translating the growing sequence data into

ecologically meaningful traits including nutrient cycling and decomposition of organic material. Studies in model systems with reduced complexity that is amenable to integrate genomic and functional analysis offer unparalleled opportunities to dissect such associations. The increasing availability of sequenced fungal genomes will make it possible to identify which taxa have the genetic potential to produce the key enzymes or metabolic machinery that contribute to the ecological process. Then the genetic potential for enzyme production could be linked to phylogeny. Such information will be important for predicting how microbial community composition will relate to ecosystem functioning (Martiny et al. 2013; Zimmerman et al. 2013).

Acknowledgements The work has been supported by grants from the Swedish Research Council (VR), the strategic research program Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services in a Changing Climate (BECC) and the Danish Agency for Science and Technology, and the Research Foundation—Flanders (FWO). The genome and transcriptome sequencing of *Paxillus involutus* was funded by grants from the U.S. Department of Energy.

References

Abuzinadah RA, Finlay BJ, Read DJ (1986) The role of proteins in the nitrogen nutrition of ectomycorrhizal plants. II. Utilizations of proteins by mycorrhizal plants of *Pinus contorta*. New Phytol 103:495–506

Agerer R (2001) Exploration types of ectomycorrhizae. A proposal to classify ectomycorrhizal systems according to their patterns of differentiation and putative ecological importance. Mycorrhiza 11:107–114

Aro N, Pakula T, Penttila M (2005) Transcriptional regulation of plant cell wall degradation by filamentous fungi. FEMS Microbiol Rev 29:719–739

Baldrian P (2009) Ectomycorrhizal fungi and their enzymes in soils: is there enough evidence for their role as facultative soil saprotrophs? Oecologia 161:657–660

Bending GD (2003) Litter decomposition, ectomycorrhizal roots and the 'Gadgil' effect. New Phytol 158:227–238

Bending GD, Read DJ (1995) The structure and the function of the vegetative mycelium of ectomycorrhizal plants. VI. Activities of nutrient mobilizing enzymes in birch litter colonized by *Paxillus involutus* (Fr.) Fr. New Phytol 130:411–417

Bending GD, Read DJ (1996) Nitrogen mobilization from protein-polyphenol complexes by ericoid and ectomycorrhizal fungi. Soil Biol Biochem 28:1603–1612

Bengtson P, Barker J, Grayston SJ (2012) Evidence of a strong coupling between root exudation, C and N availability, and stimulated SOM decomposition caused by rhizosphere priming effects. Ecol Evol 2:1843–1852

Benjdia M, Rikirsch E, Muller T, Morel M, Corratge C, Zimmermann SD (2006) Peptide uptake in the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Hebeloma cylindrosporum*: characterization of two di- and tripeptide transporters (HcPTR2A and B). New Phytol 170:401–410

Cairney JWG, Burke RM (1996) Physiological heterogeneity within fungal mycelia: an important concept for a functional understanding of the ectomycorrhizal symbiosis. New Phytol 134:685–695

Chalot M, Brun A (1998) Physiology of organic nitrogen acquisition by ectomycorrhizal fungi and ectomycorrhizas. FEMS Microbiol Rev 22:21–44

Chen DM, Bastias BA, Taylor AFS, Cairney JWG (2003) Identification of laccase-like genes in basidiomycetes and transcriptional regulation by nitrogen in *Piloderma byssinum*. New Phytol 157:547–554

Clemmensen KE, Bahr A, Ovaskainen O, Dahlberg A, Ekblad A, Wallander H et al (2013) Roots and associated fungi drive long-term carbon sequestration in boreal forest. Science 339:1615–1618

Courty PE, Pritsch K, Schloter M, Hartmann A, Garbaye J (2005) Activity profiling of ectomycorrhiza communities in two forest soils using multiple enzymatic tests. New Phytol 167:309–319

Courty PE, Bréda N, Garbaye J (2007) Relation between oak tree phenology and the secretion of organic matter degrading enzymes by *Lactarius quietus* ectomycorrhizas before and during bud break. Soil Biol Biochem 39:1655–1663

Cullings K, Ishkhanova G, Henson J (2008) Defoliation effects on enzyme activities of the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Suillus granulatus* in a *Pinus contorta* (lodgepole pine) stand in Yellowstone National Park. Oecologia 158:77–83

De Boer W, Folman LB, Summerbell RC, Boddy L (2005) Living in a fungal world: impact of fungi on soil bacterial niche development. FEMS Microbiol Rev 29:795–811

Eastwood DC, Floudas D, Binder M, Majcherczyk A, Schneider P, Aerts A et al (2011) The plant cell wall-decomposing machinery underlies the functional diversity of forest fungi. Science 333:762–765

Edwards IP, Zak DR, Kellner H, Eisenlord SD, Pregitzer KS (2011) Simulated atmospheric N deposition alters fungal community composition and suppresses ligninolytic gene expression in a northern hardwood forest. PLoS One 6:e20421

Fellbaum CR, Gachomo EW, Beesetty Y, Choudhari S, Strahan GD, Pfeffer PE et al (2012) Carbon availability triggers fungal nitrogen uptake and transport in arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109:2666–2671

Fenn P, Kirk TK (1981) Relationship of nitrogen to the onset and suppression of ligninolytic activity and secondary metabolism in *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Arch Microbiol 130:59–65

Frank AB (1894) Die Bedeutung der Mykorrhizapilze für die Gemeine Kiefer. Fortstwissenschaftliche Centralblat 16:1852–1890

Gadgil RL, Gadgil PD (1971) Mycorrhiza and litter decomposition. Nature 233:133

Haselwandter K, Bobleter O, Read DJ (1990) Degradation of 14C-labelled lignin and dehydropolymer of coniferyl alcohol by ericoid and ectomycorrhizal fungi. Arch Microbiol 153:352–354

Hatakka A, Hammel KE (2010) Fungal biodegradation of lignocellulose. In: Hofrichter M (ed) The mycota X. Industrial applications. Springer, Berlin

Izumi H, Finlay RD (2011) Ectomycorrhizal roots select distinctive bacterial and ascomycete communities in Swedish subarctic forests. Environ Microbiol 13:819–830

Kellner H, Zak DR, Vandenbol M (2010) Fungi unearthed: transcripts encoding lignocellulolytic and chitinolytic enzymes in forest soil. PLoS One 5:e10971

Kiers ET, Duhamel M, Beesetty Y, Mensah JA, Franken O, Verbruggen E et al (2011) Reciprocal rewards stabilize cooperation in the mycorrhizal symbiosis. Science 333:880–882

Langston JA, Shaghasi T, Abbate E, Xu F, Vlasenko E, Sweeney MD (2011) Oxidoreductive cellulose depolymerization by the enzymes cellobiose dehydrogenase and glycoside hydrolase 61. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:7007–7015

Leake JR, Donnelly DP, Saunders EM, Boddy L, Read DJ (2001) Rates and quantities of carbon flux to ectomycorrhizal mycelium following 14C pulse labeling of *Pinus sylvestris* seedlings: effects of litter patches and interaction with a wood-decomposer fungus. Tree Physiol 21:71–82

Lehmann J, Solomon D, Kinyangi J, Wirick S, Jacobsen C (2008) Spatial complexity of soil organic matter forms at nanometre scales. Nat Geosci 1:238–242

Lindahl BD, Ihrmark K, Boberg J, Trumbore SE, Högberg P, Stenlid J, Finlay RD (2007) Spatial separation of litter decomposition and mycorrhizal nitrogen uptake in a boreal forest. New Phytol 173:611–620

Lucic E, Fourrey C, Kohler A, Martin F, Chalot M, Brun-Jacob A (2008) A gene repertoire for nitrogen transporters in *Laccaria bicolor*. New Phytol 180:343–364

Lynd LR, Weimer PJ, van Zyl WH, Pretorius IS (2002) Microbial cellulose utilization: fundamentals and biotechnology. Microbiol Mol Biol Rev 66:506–577

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahren D, Brun A, Danchin EG, Duchaussoy F et al (2008) The genome of *Laccaria bicolor* provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martinez D, Challacombe J, Morgenstern I, Hibbett D, Schmoll M, Kubicek CP et al (2009) Genome, transcriptome, and secretome analysis of wood decay fungus *Postia placenta* supports unique mechanisms of lignocellulose conversion. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 106:1954–1959

Martinez AT, Rencoret J, Nieto L, Jimenez-Barbero J, Gutierrez A, del Rio JC (2011) Selective lignin and polysaccharide removal in natural fungal decay of wood as evidenced by in situ structural analyses. Environ Microbiol 13:96–107

Martiny AC, Treseder K, Pusch G (2013) Phylogenetic conservatism of functional traits in microorganisms. ISME J 7:830–838

Marzluf GA (1996) Regulation of nitrogen metabolism in mycelial fungi. In: Brambl B, Marzluf GA (eds) The mycota III. Biochemistry and molecular biology. Springer, Berlin

Morin E, Kohler A, Baker AR, Foulongne-Oriol M, Lombard V, Nagy LG et al (2012) Genome sequence of the button mushroom *Agaricus bisporus* reveals mechanisms governing adaptation to a humic-rich ecological niche. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109:17501–17506

Nagendran S, Hallen-Adams HE, Paper JM, Aslam N, Walton JD (2009) Reduced genomic potential for secreted plant cell-wall-degrading enzymes in the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Amanita bisporigera*, based on the secretome of *Trichoderma reesei*. Fungal Genet Biol 46:427–435

Nannipieri N, Eldor P (2009) The chemical and functional characterization of soil N and its biotic components. Soil Biol Biochem 41:2357–2369

Näsholm T, Kielland K, Ganeteg U (2009) Uptake of organic nitrogen by plants. New Phytol 182:31–48

Nehls U, Kleber R, Wiese J, Hampp R (1999) Isolation and characterization of an general amino acid permease from the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Amanita muscaria*. New Phytol 142:331–341

Nehls U, Bock A, Einig W, Hampp R (2001) Excretion of two proteases by the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Amanita muscaria*. Plant Cell Environ 24:741–747

Nehls U, Grunze N, Willmann M, Reich M, Kuster H (2007) Sugar for my honey: carbohydrate partitioning in ectomycorrhizal symbiosis. Phytochemistry 68:82–91

Nehls U, Gohringer F, Wittulsky S, Dietz S (2010) Fungal carbohydrate support in the ectomycorrhizal symbiosis: a review. Plant Biol 12:292–301

Norkrans B (1950) Studies in growth and cellulolytic enzymes of *Tricholoma*. Symbolae Botanicae Upsaliensis 11:1–126

Nygren CJM, Edqvist J, Elfstrand M, Heller G, Taylor AFS (2007) Detection of extracellular protease activity in different species and genera of ectomycorrhizal fungi. Mycorrhiza 17:241–248

Olsson PA, Chalot M, Bååth E, Finlay RD, Söderström B (1996) Ectomycorrhizal mycelia reduce bacterial activity in a sandy soil. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 21:77–86

Piccolo A (2001) The supramolecular structure of humic substances. Soil Sci 166:810–832

Pritsch K, Garbaye J (2011) Enzyme secretion by ECM fungi and exploitation of mineral nutrients from soil organic matter. Ann Forest Sci 68:25–32

Quinlan RJ, Sweeney MD, Lo LL, Otten H, Poulsen JC, Johansen KS et al (2011) Insights into the oxidative degradation of cellulose by a copper metalloenzyme that exploits biomass components. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 108:15079–15084

Ralph J, Lundquidt K, Brunow G, Lu F, Kim H, Schatz PF et al (2004) Lignins: natural polymers from oxidative coupling of 4-hydroxyphenyl- propanoids. Phytochem Rev 3:29–60

Ramstedt M, Söderhäll K (1983) Protease, phenoloxidase and pectinase activities in mycorrhizal fungi. Trans Br Mycol Soc 81:157–161

Read DJ, Perez-Moreno J (2003) Mycorrhizas and nutrient cycling in ecosystems – a journey towards relevance? New Phytol 157:475–492

Read DJ, Perez-Moreno J (2004) Mycorrhizal fungi as drivers of ecosystem processes in heathland and boreal forest biomes. Can J Bot 82:1243–1263

Rineau F, Roth D, Shah F, Smits M, Johansson T, Canback B et al (2012) The ectomycorrhizal fungus *Paxillus involutus* converts organic matter in plant litter using a trimmed brown-rot mechanism involving Fenton chemistry. Environ Microbiol 14:1477–1487

Rineau F, Shah F, Smits MM, Persson P, Johansson T, Carleer R et al (2013) Carbon availability triggers the decomposition of plant litter and assimilation of nitrogen by an ectomycorrhizal fungus. ISME J (in press). doi: 10.1038/ismej.2013.91

Schimel JP, Bennett J (2004) Nitrogen mineralization: challenges of a changing paradigm. Ecology 85:591–602

Schmidt MW, Torn MS, Abiven S, Dittmar T, Guggenberger G, Janssens IA et al (2011) Persistence of soil organic matter as an ecosystem property. Nature 478:49–56

Senesi N, Miano TM, Provenzano MR, Brunetti G (1991) Characterization, differentiation, and classification of humic substances by fluorescence spectroscopy. Soil Sci 152:259–271

Shah F, Rineau F, Canbäck B, Johansson T, Tunlid A (2013) The molecular components of the extracellular protein-degradation pathways of the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Paxillus involutus*. New Phytol (in press)

Smith SE, Read DJ (1997) Mycorrhizal symbiosis. Academic, San Diego

Sutton R, Sposito G (2005) Molecular structure in soil humic substances: the new view. Environ Sci Technol 39:9009–9015

Talbot JM, Treseder KK (2010) Controls over mycorrhizal uptake of organic nitrogen. Pedobiologia 53:169–179

Talbot JM, Allison SD, Treseder KK (2008) Decomposer ín disguise: mycorrhizal fungi as regulators of soil C dynamics in ecosystems under global change. Func Ecol 22:955–963

Trappe JM (2005) A.B.. Frank and mycorrhizae: the challenge to evolutionary and ecological theory. Mycorrhiza 15:277–281

Trojanowski J, Haider K, Huttermann A (1984) Decomposition of ^{14}C labelled lignin, holocellulose and lignocellulose by mycorrhizal fungi. Arch Microbiol 139:202–206

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Gaskell J, Mozuch M, Sabat G, Ralph J, Skyba O et al (2010) Comparative transcriptome and secretome analysis of wood decay fungi *Postia placenta* and *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:3599–3610

Wallander H, Söderström B (1999) Paxillus. In: Cairney JWG, Chambers SM (eds) Ectomycorrhizal fungi: key genera in profile. Springer, Berlin

Wallander H, Ekblad A, Bergh J (2011) Growth and carbon sequestration by ectomycorrhizal fungi in intensively fertilized Norway spruce forests. Forest Ecol Manage 262:999–1007

Wipf D, Benjdia M, Tegeder M, Frommer WB (2002) Characterization of a general amino acid permease from *Hebeloma cylindrosporum*. FEBS Lett 528:119–124

Wright DP, Johansson T, Le Quéré A, Söderström B, Tunlid A (2005) Spatial patterns of gene expression in the extramatrical mycelium and mycorrhizal root tips formed by the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Paxillus involutus* in association with birch (*Betula pendula* Roth.) seedlings in soil microcosms. New Phytol 167:579–596

Wu T, Sharda JN, Koide RT (2003) Exploring interactions between saprotrophic microbes and ectomycorrhizal fungi using protein-tannin complex as an N source by red pine (*Pinus resinosa*). New Phytol 159:131–139

Yelle DJ, Wei D, Ralph J, Hammel KE (2011) Multidimensional NMR analysis reveals truncated lignin structures in wood decayed by the brown rot basidiomycete *Postia placenta*. Environ Microbiol 13:1091–1100

Zhu H, Guo DC, Dancik BP (1990) Purification and characterization of an extracellular acid proteinase from the ectomycorrhizal fungus *Hebeloma crustuliniforme*. Appl Environ Microbiol 56:837–843

Zhu H, Dancik BP, Higginbotham KO (1994) Regulation of extracellular proteinase production in an ectomycorrhizal fungus *Hebeloma crustuliniforme*. Mycologia 86:227–234

Zimmerman AE, Martiny AC, Allison SD (2013) Microdiversity of extracellular enzyme genes among sequenced prokaryotic genomes. ISME J 7:1187–1199

Chapter 9
Cochliobolus heterostrophus: A Dothideomycete Pathogen of Maize

Benjamin A. Horwitz, Bradford J. Condon, and B. Gillian Turgeon

9.1 Biology and Plant Pathology

9.1.1 Cochliobolus heterostrophus *and Southern Corn Leaf Blight*

Cochliobolus heterostrophus, a pathogen of maize, belongs to the Dothideomycetes, a large and ecologically diverse class within the Ascomycota. The biology of *C. heterostrophus* and its history as a plant pathogen and genetic model system have been reviewed recently (Turgeon and Baker 2007); a brief summary is given here. The Dothideomycete class currently consists of 12 orders. *C. heterostrophus* is a member of the Pleosporales, which includes aggressive pathogens of both monocots and dicots, as well as saprobes. Among pathogenic *Cochliobolus* spp. are several species that are exquisitely specific to cereal hosts, and their tight phylogenetic relationship suggests that diversification happened quite recently, i.e., <17MYA (Ohm et al. 2012) (Fig. 9.1). Seven *Cochliobolus* sequences, representing six species, are available through the Joint Genome Institute's (JGI) portal (Grigoriev et al. 2012), and several were included in a large comparative study of Dothideomycete genomes (Fig. 9.1) (Ohm et al. 2012).

C. heterostrophus, found as two races (O and T), causes Southern Corn Leaf Blight (SCLB) (Yoder 1988; Turgeon and Yoder 2000; Turgeon and Baker 2007). *C. heterostrophus* race T produces the host-specific polyketide, T-toxin, which in combination with URF13, a mitochondrial protein found in Texas male-sterile

B.A. Horwitz (✉)
Department of Biology, Technion – Israel Institute of Technology, Haifa 32000, Israel
e-mail: horwitz@tx.technion.ac.il

B.J. Condon • B.G. Turgeon
Department of Plant Pathology and Plant-Microbe Biology, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, USA
e-mail: bjc225@cornell.edu; bgt1@cornell.edu

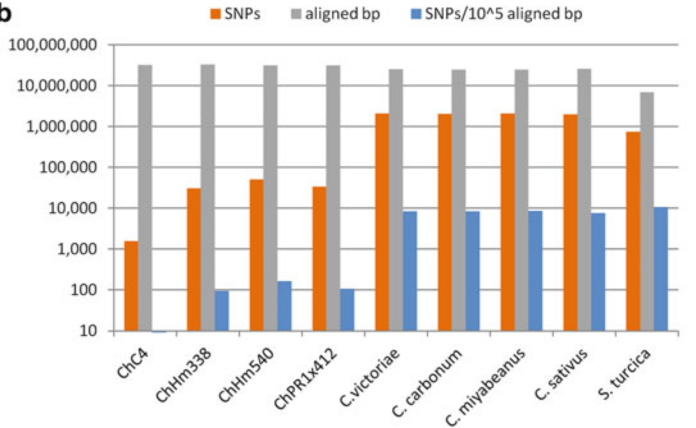
B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*,
Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_9,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

a

Cochliobolus heterostrophus
Cochliobolus heterostrophus
Cochliobolus sativus
Setosphaeria turcica
Alternaria alternata
Alternaria brassicicola
Pyrenophora tritici-repentis
Pyrenophora tritici-repentis
Pyrenophora teres
Leptosphaeria maculans
Leptosphaeria maculans
Phaeosphaeria nodorum/Stagonospora nodorum
Phoma herbarum
Ascochyta pisi
Didymella exigua
Corynespora cassiicola
Ascocratera manglicola
Aigialus grandis
Mytilinidion scolecosporum
Mytilinidion mytilinellum
Cenococcum geophilum
Cenococcum geophilum
Rhytidhysteron rufulum
Rhytidhysteron rufulum
Hysterium angustatum
Hysterium pulicare
Aliquandostipite khaoyaiensis
Botryosphaeria dothidea
Macrophomina phaseolina
Guignardia bidwellii
Coniosporium apollinis
Coniosporium apollinis
Hysteropatella clavispora
Patellaria atrata
Mycosphaerella populorum
Mycosphaerella populicola
Cercospora zeae-maydis
Mycosphaerella fijiensis
Passalora fulva/Cladosporium fulvum
Mycosphaerella pini/Dothistroma septosporum
Zymoseptoria tritici/Mycosphaerella graminicola
Zymoseptoria tritici
Mycosphaerella punctiformis
Baudoinia compniacensis
Teratosphaeria jonkershoekensis
Hortaea werneckii
Cladosporium herbarum
Cladosporium cladosporioides
Scorias spongiosa
Capnodium coffeae
Dothidea sambuci
Aureobasidium pullulans
Elsinoë centrolobi
Elsinoë phaseoli
Myriangium duriaei
Trypethelium nitidiusculum
Astrothelium cinnamomeum
Venturia inaequalis
Apiosporina collinsii
Tyrannosorus pinicola
Phaeotrichum benjaminii
Trichodelitschia bisporula
Microthyrium microscopicum
Tubeufia paludosa
Tubeufia cerea
Opegrapha dolomitica
Simonyella variegata

Pleosporaceae
Pleosporineae
Pleosporales
Mytilinidiales
Pleosporomycetidae
Hysteriales
Jahnulales
Botryosphaeriales
Patellariales
Mycosphaerellaceae
Dothideomycetes
Capnodiales
Dothideomycetidae
Dothideales
Myriangiales
Myriangiales
Trypetheliales
Venturiales
Arthoniales

425 400 375 350 325 300 275 250 225 200 175 150 125 100 75 50 25 0
Dothideomycetes & Arthoniomycetes
Capnodiales
Pleosporales
Mycosphaerellaceae
Pleosporineae
Pleosporaceae
Time (MYA)



maize (Dewey et al. 1988), results in toxin-associated chlorosis around necrotic lesions, followed by severe wilting and often death of the entire leaf. T-cytoplasm maize was used because its male sterility facilitates easy cross hybridization; its mitochondria, however, are sensitive to T-toxin (Lim and Hooker 1971; Dewey et al. 1988; Turgeon and Baker 2007). SCLB is not usually a very destructive disease, causing lesions on the leaves like those shown in a laboratory experiment (Fig. 9.2). In 1970, however, a severe epidemic began in Florida and spread throughout the eastern USA and as far west as Nebraska and eastern Texas and north to Canada. The severe disease coincided with the emergence of toxin-producing race T of the SCLB pathogen. Farmers no longer grow T-cytoplasm maize, and other male-sterile genetic backgrounds are now used to produce maize hybrids (Ullstrup 1972; Levings 1993; Weider et al. 2009). Three race T and two race O strains, including highly inbred as well as field isolates, have been sequenced (Condon et al. 2013). *C. heterostrophus* represents the Dothideomycetes in this volume for several reasons. It was one of the very first filamentous ascomycete plant pathogens sequenced, in the early 2000s by Celera Genomics for the Torrey Mesa Research Institute (TMRI)/Syngenta (Kroken et al. 2003). Moreover, it is a good genetic model. Not being a devastating plant pathogen, *C. heterostrophus* has an advantage for basic research: standardizing molecular genetic work on brown spot of rice, for example, would entail obvious difficulties in sharing material. A high frequency of homologous recombination and the development of tools for molecular and classical genetics (Turgeon et al. 1985, 2008; Catlett et al. 2003; Debuchy and Turgeon 2006) make this an attractive system. The following discussion in this section follows the life cycle and the disease cycle, beginning with sporulation.

9.1.2 Asexual and Sexual Sporulation

Asexually produced *C. heterostrophus* spores (conidia) are the main type of propagule infecting plants and are spread by wind and rain. *C. heterostrophus* conidiates on the plant, allowing re-dispersal. In the laboratory, colonies produce few or no spores when grown in total darkness. In continuous light conidiation is profuse, and under light/dark cycles rings of conidia are produced, and melanin production is also periodic (Wu et al. 2012) (Fig. 9.2). It is not yet clear whether an endogenous circadian rhythm underlies this periodic development. In the field, under conditions favorable to the pathogen, the disease cycle from germination to conidiation can be completed in a week.

Fig. 9.1 Sequenced genomes of *Cochliobolus* and other Dothideomycetes. (**a**) Phylogeny and estimated divergence of the Dothideomycetes. From Ohm et al. (2012); sequenced species (end 2012) are indicated by an *asterisk*. (**b**) SNPs relative to the reference genome C5, in *C. heterostrophus,* other *Cochliobolus* species, and *S. turcica*. Data are plotted from Table 3A of Condon et al. (2013)

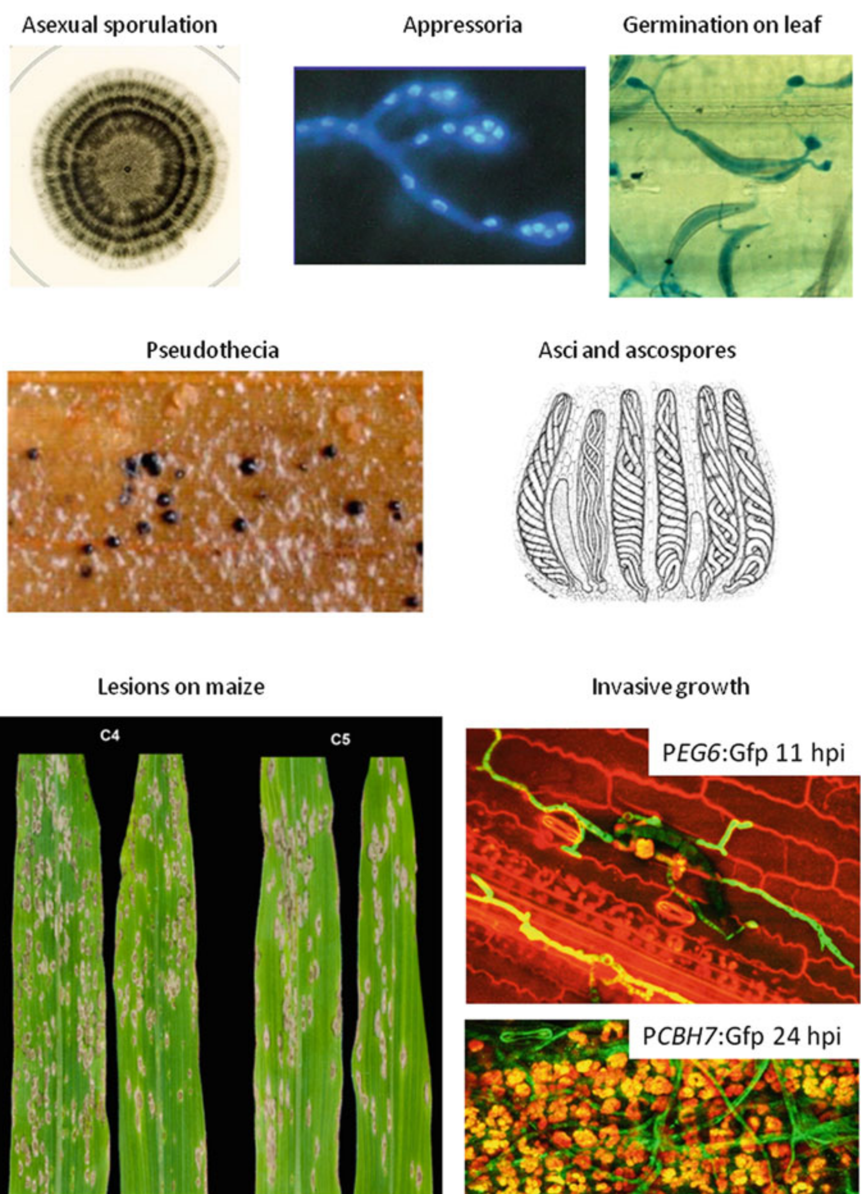


Fig. 9.2 Biology and pathogenicity of *C. heterostrophus*. *Left to right* and *top to bottom*: Asexual sporulation and melanin production result in *dark rings* on a colony growing under 8 h *light*, 16 h *dark cycles* (photo: Kent Loeffler and B.A.H.). This species forms small appressoria when conidia are germinated on a glass slide; nuclei in hyphae and the appressoria formed at their tips are visualized here by DAPI staining and fluorescence microscopy (photo: Sophie Lev). Conidia germinating on a maize leaf were stained with *lactophenol blue*; note bipolar germination and formation of appressoria on the leaf surface (photo: Sophie Lev). Pseudothecia (the filamentous hyphal network enclosing the developing asci is formed from vegetative, haploid mycelium of the "female" parent) developed on a senescent maize leaf on which an albino strain (*MAT1-1*) met a wild-type strain (*MAT1-2*); note *white* (albino) and *black* (WT melanized) pseudothecia. Asci and

C. heterostrophus is heterothallic, with mating type defined by the *MAT1* locus which exists in one of two alternate forms (idiomorphs) known as *MAT1-1* and *MAT1-2* (Turgeon et al. 1993). Mating is apparently rare in the field, but profuse formation of pseudothecia can be observed easily in the lab. To obtain the sexual stage, two strains of opposite mating type are allowed to meet on the surface of an autoclaved senescent maize leaf (Fig. 9.2). The developmental program leading to pseudothecia, meiosis, and formation of ascospores depends on the *MAT1* transcription factors (Debuchy and Turgeon 2006; Martin et al. 2010). The signaling hierarchy acting upstream of the transcription factors remains to be elucidated. It is clear that heterotrimeric G proteins, MAPK (Fig. 9.3) and two-component sensor kinases, and response regulators participate at several stages. Many signaling mutants are female-sterile but are competent as males and can still be crossed to a female-fertile partner of opposite mating type (Horwitz et al. 1999; Lev et al. 1999; Igbaria et al. 2008; Oide et al. 2010).

9.1.3 Germination of Conidia and Initial Development

Moisture activates a very rapid adhesion mechanism. Extracellular matrix secreted from the tips of the conidia allows them to stick tightly to the surface of maize leaves. This adhesion can be demonstrated in vitro: by 20 min after placing a spore suspension on a glass slide, they can no longer be easily washed off (Braun and Howard 1994). The large, multicellular conidia germinate on the leaf within about 4 h, usually from both ends. The strict polarity that is a hallmark of filamentous growth is lost, and some of the germinating hyphal tips differentiate into small appressoria (Fig. 9.2, top right). The bipolar germination pattern is reflected in one of the earlier names of the anamorph, *Bipolaris maydis*. Mutants in the MAPK gene, *CHK1*, fail to produce conidia (Lev et al. 1999), while loss of the cell-integrity MAPK *MPS1* prevents conidiation, yet the hyphal tips form appressoria on a glass or plastic surface (Igbaria et al. 2008). Nevertheless, the two signaling pathways defined by these kinases share some co-regulated target genes (Igbaria et al. 2008), suggesting further, genome-wide, experiments to find more such targets of combined regulation by the Chk1 and Mps1 MAPK pathways. Mutants in one of

Fig. 9.2 (continued) ascospores, as drawn by Drechsler (1925): note the elongated, filamentous ascospores within the asci. Symptoms, on *N*-cytoplasm maize line W64AN, caused by spraying a conidial suspension of each of the two isogenic, sequenced laboratory strains (Fig. 9.1) C4 and C5 onto 3-week-old maize plants, followed by overnight incubation in a mist chamber (photos: 5 dpi, Dongliang Wu and Kent Loeffler). Invasive growth visualized by confocal fluorescence microscopy of transgenic strains, in which Gfp expression was driven by the promoters of two cellulase genes, *EG6* and *CBH7* (Lev and Horwitz 2003); in the *upper panel* (11 h hpi), strong background fluorescence (*red channel*) is mainly from the underlying chloroplast-containing mesophyll layers, while in the *lower panel* (24 hpi), *green fluorescent* mycelia are seen between mesophyll cells, in which chlorophyll fluorescence has faded as necrosis progressed (images: Sophie Lev)

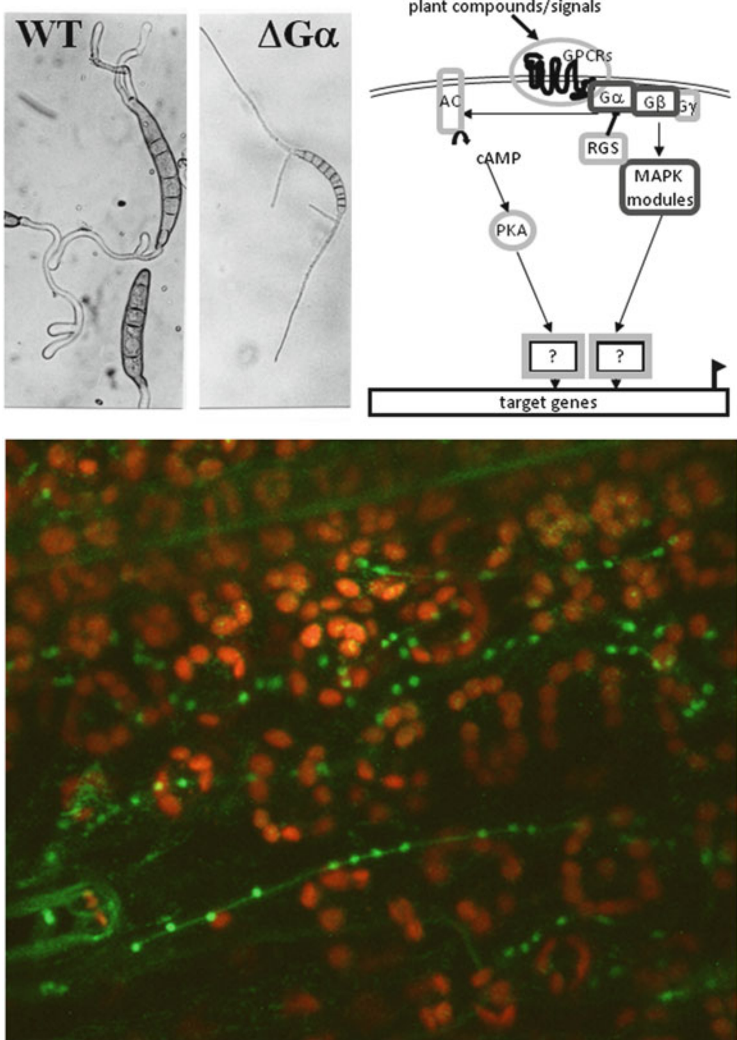


Fig. 9.3 Signal transduction. Top, scheme of a part of the signaling network. Existing mutants are shown in *darker frames*. *Left*, development on a glass slide of WT (strain C4) or a loss of function mutant in the G protein Gα subunit gene *CGA1* (Horwitz et al. 1999); note formation of appressoria by the WT and straight polar growth of the mutant (photos: B.A.H.). *Bottom*, visualization of the activation of one of the transcription factors involved in processing signals from the environment in *C. heterostrophus*. The redox-sensitive transcription factor ChAp1 is retained in the nuclei of hyphae growing within a maize leaf, as detected by Gfp::ChAp1 fluorescence, in response to oxidant or other plant signals (Lev et al. 2005). *Red autofluorescent ellipsoids* are mesophyll chloroplasts; part of a pair of stomatal guard cells is also visible at the *lower left* (*green autofluorescence*). Imaged at 12 hpi (M. Ronen, B.A.H. and Maayan Duvshani-Eshet)

the three G protein alpha subunit genes, *CGA1*, conidiate normally but upon germination show a clear phenotype: instead of forming appressoria, hyphae continue to grow in a straight path, apparently oblivious to the presence of a hard surface (Fig. 9.3). Surprisingly, *cga1* mutants are able to infect maize (Horwitz et al. 1999), though the mutant phenotype depends on the host leaf age (Degani et al. 2004).

9.1.4 Entry into the Leaf

Appressoria are not necessary for penetration into the leaf (Horwitz et al. 1999). Entry occurs with the help of enzymes that break down the cuticle and cell walls, or via the stomatal pores. *C. heterostrophus* thus enters the leaf using a strategy that is different from some other foliar pathogens like rice blast (Chap. 4). Although appressorial turgor pressure generation does not seem to be important, *C. heterostrophus* appressoria detect the plant surface. An endoglucanase promoter drives strong expression of a Gfp reporter gene already at the appressorial stage and during invasive growth (Lev and Horwitz 2003) (Fig. 9.2). This suggests that the appressorium could have an exploratory, signaling role rather than directly "breaking in" through the epidermis. Loss of polar tip growth occurs on plastic or glass. The plant likely supplies a variety of additional signals, but it is not clear at what stage they act or through what mechanism. The redox-sensing transcription factor ChAp1 (ortholog of yeast YAP1) becomes localized to nuclei upon exposure to oxidative stress in *C. heterostrophus* and other plant pathogens (Lev et al. 2005; Molina and Kahmann 2007; Kim et al. 2009; Temme and Tudzynski 2009; Huang et al. 2011). *C. heterostrophus* appressoria formed in water on a glass surface do not activate ChAp1, but Gfp::ChAp1 localizes to the nucleus when conidia germinate on the leaf surface. Plant extracts, even if treated with catalase to remove H_2O_2, are able to activate *ChAP1* (Lev et al. 2005). Phenolic compounds, ubiquitous in plants and encountered early on by the invading pathogen, promote nuclearization of ChAp1, but cannot induce its antioxidant target genes (Shanmugam et al. 2010; Shalaby et al. 2012). Nevertheless, plant extract has both activities, suggesting that more active plant molecules need to be isolated.

9.1.5 Invasion and Virulence

Once inside the leaf, the fungus grows between the mesophyll cells which at first appear to remain viable (Figs. 9.2 and 9.3), but cell death can be observed as early as 6 hpi. *C. heterostrophus* is thus considered a necrotroph with no (hemi) biotrophic stage, though a necrotrophic lifestyle cannot always be sharply delineated from a hemibiotrophic one (Oliver and Solomon 2010). The hyphae initially tend to run parallel to the vascular bundles but later branch and invade

tissue in all directions (Lev and Horwitz 2003) (Fig. 9.2). By 12 h, the fungus produces visible lesions. Some of the same signaling pathways needed for development (Fig. 9.3) also participate in attack on the plant: these include MAPK (Lev et al. 1999; Igbaria et al. 2008), G protein (Ganem et al. 2004), and two-component signaling pathways (Oide et al. 2010). The developmental regulators ChLae1 and ChVel1 (Wu et al. 2012), like their *Aspergillus* orthologs (Chap. 5), modulate secondary metabolite biosynthesis and development in response to darkness or light. Loss of these regulators also affects sexual and asexual sporulation (Wu et al. 2012).

The infection court presents an unfriendly environment to the invading pathogen. Plants fight infection with an oxidative burst. Nevertheless, necrotrophs actually thrive in an oxidant environment, as shown first for *Botrytis cinerea* (Govrin and Levine 2000; Heller and Tudzynski 2011). This may explain the apparent paradox that ChAp1 is retained in the nucleus during invasive growth (Fig. 9.3) yet is nonessential for virulence, at least on the maize cultivar studied by Lev et al. (2005). The *Botrytis cinerea* YAP1 ortholog is essential for oxidative stress response in vitro, yet does not induce its antioxidant targets during infection (Temme and Tudzynski 2009). This suggests some very special regulatory circuits used by necrotrophs in their adaptation to the host environment. Induction of ChAp1 targets has not yet been followed *in planta* in *C. heterostrophus*. Stress response machinery other than ChAp1 is, however, required for virulence. Loss of the *C. heterostrophus* gene encoding the stress-activated MAPK (Hog1) or its upstream two-component signal receiver (response regulator Ssk1) decreases virulence (Oide et al. 2010) (Fig. 9.3). The transcriptional regulators ChLae1 and ChVel1 are needed to tolerate oxidative stress and are required for full virulence (Wu et al. 2012).

9.2 Genome

9.2.1 Statistics and SNPs

The Joint Genome Institute (JGI, CA) has sequenced two inbred laboratory strains and three field isolates, as well as one strain each of five more species of the genus, *C. victoriae, C. carbonum, C. miyabeanus, C. lunatus,* two strains of *C. sativus*, and one member of the closely related genus Setosphaeria, *S. turcica* (http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/programs/fungi/index.jsf). For a complete discussion, see Condon et al. (2013). The laboratory race O strain C5, inbred by six backcrosses (Leach et al. 1982), is the reference strain to which the other members of the genus are compared. With only 68 scaffolds, the C5 assembly is most resolved. The *Cochliobolus* genome sizes of 32–38 Mb are typical for Ascomycetes and do not suggest any duplications of large regions. The numbers of gene models, 11,700–13,200, are also typical of these fungi. The *S. turcica* genome, 43 Mb, is a little larger than the six

representatives of *Cochliobolus*, but the predicted transcriptome is encoded by 11,700 genes. Single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) provide a good indication of the extent to which closely related genomes differ. Software (Kurtz et al. 2004) is available to call (identify) SNPs. The two inbred laboratory strains, C4 and C5, are an obvious case in point: they differ at the *Tox1* locus (loci, actually, see discussion below) and at the *MAT1* locus where C5 has the *MAT1-1* idiomorph and C4 the *MAT1-2* idiomorph. Other than these two major differences, C4 and C5 are nearly isogenic, confirming the assumption that guided work on these strains over the years: only 1,584 SNPs differentiate C4 from the reference C5 (Fig. 9.1). Looking outside *Cochliobolus*, only 16 % of the *S. turcica* genome could be aligned to the *C. heterostrophus* reference strain C5. The aligned regions, nevertheless, contain fewer SNPs than some of the other species within *Cochliobolus* (Fig. 9.1). All three *C. heterostrophus* field isolates differed from C5 by an order of magnitude more SNPs than the inbred C4 (Fig. 9.1). The race O field strain has more SNPs than the two race T strains, in agreement with RFLP data implying that race T arose from race O (Yang 1995; Yang et al. 1996; Kodama et al. 1999). Looking at other members of *Cochliobolus*, the alignment of reads to C5 remains high considering that they are distinct species, but the numbers of SNPs are in the millions (Fig. 9.1).

The phylogeny and evolutionary view (Fig. 9.1) provide the starting point for detailed investigation of classes of genes that could provide some understanding of why one species is a pathogen and another a saprobe, has a narrow or wider host range, or particular developmental patterns. This is no easier for *Cochliobolus* than for other fungi, but extensive previous work suggested, as a first choice, for necrotrophs secondary metabolite biosynthesis genes and small secreted cysteine-rich proteins (SSCPs) for hemibiotrophs (Condon et al. 2013). We know from previous work on *C. heterostrophus* that secondary metabolites are important for virulence and stress resistance [e.g., T-toxin, a family of polyketides biosynthesized by polyketide synthases (Turgeon and Baker 2007), and siderophores, biosynthesized by nonribosomal peptide synthetases (Oide et al. 2006, 2007)]. We also know from classic (Doubly et al. 1960; Joosten and de Wit 1999) and recent studies on "avirulence" genes, now referred to as pathogen effectors [see Win et al. (2012)], that SSCPs are key words (or weapons) in the pathogen-host molecular dialog. The possibilities for bioinformatic study beyond these two groups are very large. Having focused, though, on these two groups, we proceed to discuss them briefly, along the lines described in the *Cochliobolus* genome paper (Condon et al. 2013).

9.2.2 Secondary Metabolites

9.2.2.1 Nonribosomal Peptide Synthases

These multimodular enzymes produce an amazing variety of peptide secondary metabolites. Some have conserved functions. Acquisition of iron, for example, is a

common need for all microorganisms. Mutants deleted for all genes encoding Nonribosomal Peptide Synthases (NRPS) (*NPS*) in *C. heterostrophus* were constructed by introducing a selectable marker in place of each gene, by homologous integration (Lee et al. 2005; Bushley and Turgeon 2010). Only one, *NPS6*, resulted in a virulence phenotype when compared to wild type (Lee et al. 2005; Oide et al. 2006). Identification of the product as the extracellular siderophore coprogen linked siderophore-mediated iron uptake to virulence in *C. heterostrophus* and other plant pathogens, including the wheat pathogen *Fusarium graminearum* and the Arabidopsis pathogen *Alternaria brassicicola* (Oide et al. 2006). The evolutionary relationships of NRPS in *Cochliobolus* species and *S. turcica* were studied using the fungal AMP-binding (AMP) domain hidden Markov model (HMM) developed by Bushley and Turgeon (2010). Phylogenetic trees were built based on a comparative NRPS AMP domain inventory. Within Cochliobolus, conservation of NRPSs is almost complete, while at the genus level, only seven of the 14 NRPS in *C. heterostrophus* reference strain C5 were conserved. When the related maize pathogen *S. turcica* was added to the comparison, this number dropped to six of the 14. The conservation within species, and its loss when looking outward at the species and genus levels, suggests that NRPSs and consequently the peptide metabolites have diversified rapidly, along with the choice of host and niche (Condon et al. 2013).

9.2.2.2 Polyketide Synthases

Polyketide synthases (PKSs) are responsible for the biosynthesis of secondary metabolites, including some host-specific toxins. Like NRPS, PKSs are large, multidomain enzymes. 23 and 25 *PKS* genes are annotated in the C5 and C4 genomes, respectively (Kroken et al. 2003; Condon et al. 2013). Using the PFAM ketosynthase domain (KS) HMM as a query to search for orthologs, it was found that most of the PKSs annotated in the reference genome are conserved across all *C. heterostrophus* strains (Condon et al. 2013). There are some exceptions: field strain Hm338 lacks PKS16, PKS25 is missing from strain Hm540, and PKS13, a pseudogene, is found only in strains C5 and C4. *PKS1* and *PKS2,* genes required for biosynthesis of T-toxin, are present in, and only in, T-toxin producing *C. heterostrophus* race T strains.

As mentioned above, the polyketide T-toxin is responsible for the supervirulence of race T against T-cytoplasm maize. Production of T-toxin requires two unlinked loci, *Tox1A* and *Tox1B*, which have been mapped to the breakpoints of a reciprocal translocation of two race T chromosomes (12;6, 6;12) relative to their counterparts in race O. *Tox1A* and *Tox1B* belong to 1.2 Mb of DNA that is absent from T-toxin nonproducers. Loss of either *PKS1* or *PKS2* eliminates the production of T-toxin (Baker et al. 2006; Inderbitzin et al. 2010). Known *Tox1* genes, such as *PKS1*, are located on very small scaffolds (~25 kb) in race T strains C4, Hm338, and PR1x412. These small scaffolds could not be further assembled due to the repetitive and AT-rich nature of the *Tox1* locus (Condon et al. 2013).

As with the NRPSs discussed in the preceding section, conservation of *PKS* genes is not as high across *Cochliobolus* species as between *C. heterostrophus* strains and still less when *S. turcica* is added to the phylogeny. Seven PKSs out of the 23 in reference strain C5 are conserved in all *Cochliobolus* species and *S. turcica*. Of these, the only one responsible for a known metabolite is PKS18, which starts the biosynthesis of DHN melanin. Thus, there are conserved PKSs that are likely to synthesize unknown, but important, products.

9.2.3 Small Secreted Cysteine-Rich Proteins

The gene model catalogs for each species were filtered for small size (<200 amino acids), at least 2 % cysteine residues, secretion signal, and lack of transmembrane domains (Condon et al. 2013). The number of SSCPs identified in this way was 141–289. The numbers would change, of course, depending on the bioinformatic cutoff criteria used, but it is clear that each strain and species has unique SSCPs. Only 1–21 were unique to a particular *C. heterostrophus* strain, providing interesting candidates for functional analyses. The highest number of unique SSCPs, 191 and 167, respectively, was found in *C. sativus* and *S. turcica*; it might not be coincidental that both these species are hemibiotrophs, perhaps needing more effectors to set up the complex initial interaction with living host cells (Condon et al. 2013). Of the 180 SSCPs in the reference *C. heterostrophus* C5 genome, 72 have no EST support. The genome thus seems to be a reservoir of "virtual" effector genes that are not expressed under conditions tested so far; *in planta* expression experiments need to be done. It is important to keep in mind that any such analysis rests on the quality of the gene models. There is no evidence for clustering of SSCP genes in the genomes as in *Leptosphaeria maculans* (Rouxel et al. 2011) or *Ustilago maydis* (Schirawski et al. 2010). They are, however, often located in proximity to or within regions identified as *C. heterostrophus* species unique (Condon et al. 2013).

9.3 Dothideomycete Soil Biology

In the field, *C. heterostrophus* overwinters in crop debris and soil, but is not really a member of the rhizosphere or soil community. Some other Dothideomycetes have closer ties to the soil. The closely related *C. sativus* causes leaf spot blotch of wheat and other cereals, and also crown (location where the stems of grasses emerge from the soil) and root rot (Kumar et al. 2002). *C. victoriae* is a crown pathogen of oats and wheat. *Setosphaeria pedicellata* is noted (http://www.cabi.org) as a root pathogen (though apparently not a serious one). *Cenococcum*, an ectomycorrhizal fungus with a wide distribution, is now firmly classified in the Dothideomycetes based on multigene phylogenetic evidence (Spatafora et al. 2012). The genus *Cenococcum* is

Fig. 9.4 Infection of maize roots by *C. heterostrophus*. *Top* (N), *C. heterostrophus* WT strain C4 is not able to infect the root of corn cv. W64-A with *N*-cytoplasm successfully. Plant roots challenged by strain C4 (WT) are shown. Image was taken 10 days after inoculation. Mock-inoculated control is shown on *right*. Inoculation of corn roots with *C. heterostrophus* was carried out as described by Dufresne and Osbourn (2001) on inoculation of rice roots with *Magnaporthe oryzae*. No clear difference was observed between the plants challenged by C4 and mock-inoculated plants, indicating that *C. heterostrophus* strain C4 is not able to infect the roots of maize cv. W64A with N-cytoplasm. *Bottom*, *C. heterostrophus* strain C4 infects the roots of maize cv. W64A with Tcms (T) successfully. Roots of corn cv. W64-A with Tcms challenged by *C. heterostrophus* strain C4 (WT). Images were taken 10 days after inoculation. Mock-inoculated controls are shown on *right*. Development of roots and shoots was severely attenuated in the plants infected by WT strain (K. Oide and B.G.T, unpublished; photos: K. Oide and Kent Loeffler)

closely related to the Pleosporales (Ohm et al. 2012) (Fig. 9.1). Thus, a mutualistic species keeps bad company (phylogenetically) with some destructive pathogens of plants. *Cenococcum geophilum* is currently being sequenced at the JGI. Comparison with related pathogens (Fig. 9.1) may shed light on what makes a symbiont different from a pathogen. From the physiological side, a first experiment has been done, along the lines that led to the discovery that rice blast can infect rice roots (Dufresne and Osbourn 2001; Sesma and Osbourn 2004) (Chap. 4) and that *Colletotrichum graminicola* can infect maize roots (Sukno et al. 2008). *C. heterostrophus* can indeed infect roots, intriguingly, only when the interaction is between race T of the pathogen and T-cytoplasm maize, where T-toxin is a virulence factor (Fig. 9.4).

9.4 Conclusions

C. heterostrophus has been a useful model to study how development, secondary metabolites, stress physiology, and signaling pathways are involved in virulence. Among the questions to be addressed in this and other systems are as follows: why a particular species can infect roots or shoots, the molecular basis of host range, and what makes the difference between a pathogen and a symbiont. The genus *Cochliobolus* and Dothideomycetes in general have been the focus of an unusually intense genomic sequencing effort. This raises the exciting possibility that these often destructive pathogens may be among the first to yield the answers to some of the most challenging questions in plant pathology.

Acknowledgements Research in our laboratories, including unpublished data shown in this chapter, was funded in part by USDA, BARD, and ISF. We thank Kent Loeffler (Cornell University) for superb photography and Maayan Duvshani-Eshet (Technion) for her assistance with confocal microscopy.

References

Baker SE, Kroken S, Inderbitzin P et al. (2006) Two polyketide synthase-encoding genes are required for biosynthesis of the polyketide virulence factor, T-toxin, by *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19:139–149

Braun EJ, Howard RJ (1994) Adhesion of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* conidia and germlings to leaves and artificial surfaces. Exp Mycol 18:211–220

Bushley KE, Turgeon BG (2010) Phylogenomics reveals subfamilies of fungal nonribosomal peptide synthetases and their evolutionary relationships. BMC Evol Biol 10:26

Catlett NL, Lee B-N, Yoder O, Turgeon B (2003) Split-marker recombination for efficient targeted deletion of fungal genes. Fungal Genet Newsl 50:9–11

Condon B, Leng Y, Wu D et al. (2013) Comparative genome structure, secondary metabolite and effector coding capacity across *Cochliobolus* pathogens. PLoS Genet 9(1):e1003233

Debuchy R, Turgeon B (2006) Mating-type structure, evolution and function in euascomycetes. In: Kües U, Fischer R (eds) The mycota, vol I. Springer, Berlin, pp 293–323

Degani O, Maor R, Hadar R, Sharon A, Horwitz BA (2004) Host physiology and pathogenic variation of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* strains with mutations in the G protein alpha subunit, CGA1. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:5005–5009

Dewey RE, Siedow JN, Timothy DH, Levings CS 3rd (1988) A 13-kilodalton maize mitochondrial protein in *E. coli* confers sensitivity to *Bipolaris maydis* toxin. Science 239:293–295

Doubly JA, Flor HH, Clagett CO (1960) Relation of antigens of *Melampsora lini* and *Linum usitatissimum* to resistance and susceptibility. Science 131:229

Drechsler C (1925) Leafspot of maize caused by *Ophiobolus heterostrophus*, n. sp., the ascigerous stage of a helminthosporium exhibiting bipolar germination. J Agric Res 31:701–726

Dufresne M, Osbourn AE (2001) Definition of tissue-specific and general requirements for plant infection in a phytopathogenic fungus. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 14:300–307

Ganem S, Lu SW, Lee BN, Chou DY, Hadar R, Turgeon BG, Horwitz BA (2004) G-protein beta subunit of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* involved in virulence, asexual and sexual reproductive ability, and morphogenesis. Eukaryot Cell 3:1653–1663

Govrin EM, Levine A (2000) The hypersensitive response facilitates plant infection by the necrotrophic pathogen *Botrytis cinerea*. Curr Biol 10:751–757

Grigoriev IV, Nordberg H, Shabalov I et al. (2012) The genome portal of the Department of Energy Joint Genome Institute. Nucleic Acids Res 40:D26–D32

Heller J, Tudzynski P (2011) Reactive oxygen species in phytopathogenic fungi: signaling, development, and disease. Annu Rev Phytopathol 49:369–390

Horwitz BA, Sharon A, Lu SW, Ritter V, Sandrock TM, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (1999) A G protein alpha subunit from *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* involved in mating and appressorium formation. Fungal Genet Biol 26:19–32

Huang K, Czymmek KJ, Caplan JL, Sweigard JA, Donofrio NM (2011) *HYR1*-mediated detoxification of reactive oxygen species is required for full virulence in the rice blast fungus. PLoS Pathog 7:e1001335

Igbaria A, Lev S, Rose MS, Lee BN, Hadar R, Degani O, Horwitz BA (2008) Distinct and combined roles of the MAP kinases of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* in virulence and stress responses. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 21:769–780

Inderbitzin P, Asvarak T, Turgeon B (2010) Six new genes required for production of Ttoxin, a polyketide determinant of high virulence of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* to maize. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 23:458–472

Joosten M, de Wit P (1999) The tomato-*Cladosporium fulvum* interaction: a versatile experimental system to study plant-pathogen interactions. Annu Rev Phytopathol 37:335–367

Kim KH, Willger SD, Park SW et al. (2009) TmpL, a transmembrane protein required for intracellular redox homeostasis and virulence in a plant and an animal fungal pathogen. PLoS Pathog 5:e1000653

Kodama M, Rose MS, Yang G, Yun SH, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (1999) The translocation-associated *tox1* locus of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* is two genetic elements on two different chromosomes. Genetics 151:585–596

Kroken S, Glass NL, Taylor JW, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (2003) Phylogenomic analysis of type I polyketide synthase genes in pathogenic and saprobic ascomycetes. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 100:15670–15675

Kumar J, Schaefer P, Hueckelhoven R et al. (2002) *Bipolaris sorokiniana*, a cereal pathogen of global concern: cytological and molecular approaches towards better control. Mol Plant Pathol 3:185–195

Kurtz S, Phillippy A, Delcher AL, Smoot M, Shumway M, Antonescu C, Salzberg SL (2004) Versatile and open software for comparing large genomes. Genome Biol 5:R12

Leach J, Lang B, Yoder OC (1982) Methods for selection of mutants and in vitro culture of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. J Gen Microbiol 128:1719–1729

Lee BN, Kroken S, Chou DY, Robbertse B, Yoder OC, Turgeon BG (2005) Functional analysis of all nonribosomal peptide synthetases in *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* reveals a factor, *NPS6*, involved in virulence and resistance to oxidative stress. Eukaryot Cell 4:545–555

Lev S, Horwitz BA (2003) A mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway modulates the expression of two cellulase genes in *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* during plant infection. Plant Cell 15:835–844

Lev S, Sharon A, Hadar R, Ma H, Horwitz BA (1999) A mitogen-activated protein kinase of the corn leaf pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* is involved in conidiation, appressorium formation, and pathogenicity: diverse roles for mitogen-activated protein kinase homologs in foliar pathogens. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 96:13542–13547

Lev S, Hadar R, Amedeo P, Baker SE, Yoder OC, Horwitz BA (2005) Activation of an AP1-like transcription factor of the maize pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* in response to oxidative stress and plant signals. Eukaryot Cell 4:443–454

Levings CS 3rd (1993) Thoughts on cytoplasmic male sterility in cms-T maize. Plant Cell 5:1285–1290

Lim SM, Hooker AL (1971) Southern corn leaf blight: genetic control of pathogenicity and toxin production in race T and race O of *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. Genetics 69:115–117

Martin T, Lu SW, van Tilbeurgh H, Ripoll DR, Dixelius C, Turgeon BG, Debuchy R (2010) Tracing the origin of the fungal alpha1 domain places its ancestor in the HMG-box superfamily: implication for fungal mating-type evolution. PLoS One 5:e15199

Molina L, Kahmann R (2007) An *Ustilago maydis* gene involved in H2O2 detoxification is required for virulence. Plant Cell 19:2293–2309

Ohm RA, Feau N, Henrissat B et al. (2012) Diverse lifestyles and strategies of plant pathogenesis encoded in the genomes of eighteen dothideomycetes fungi. PLoS Pathog 8:e1003037

Oide S, Moeder W, Krasnoff S, Gibson D, Haas H, Yoshioka K, Turgeon BG (2006) NPS6, encoding a nonribosomal peptide synthetase involved in siderophore-mediated iron metabolism, is a conserved virulence determinant of plant pathogenic ascomycetes. Plant Cell 18:2836–2853

Oide S, Krasnoff SB, Gibson DM, Turgeon BG (2007) Intracellular siderophores are essential for ascomycete sexual development in heterothallic *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* and homothallic *Gibberella zeae*. Eukaryot Cell 6:1339–1353

Oide S, Liu J, Yun SH et al. (2010) Histidine kinase two-component response regulator proteins regulate reproductive development, virulence, and stress responses of the fungal cereal pathogens *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* and *Gibberella zeae*. Eukaryot Cell 9:1867–1880

Oliver RP, Solomon PS (2010) New developments in pathogenicity and virulence of necrotrophs. Curr Opin Plant Biol 13(4):415–419

Rouxel T, Grandaubert J, Hane JK et al. (2011) Effector diversification within compartments of the *Leptosphaeria maculans* genome affected by Repeat-Induced Point mutations. Nat Commun 2:202

Schirawski J, Mannhaupt G, Munch K et al. (2010) Pathogenicity determinants in smut fungi revealed by genome comparison. Science 330:1546–1548

Sesma A, Osbourn AE (2004) The rice leaf blast pathogen undergoes developmental processes typical of root-infecting fungi. Nature 431:582–586

Shalaby S, Horwitz BA, Larkov O (2012) Structure-activity relationships delineate how the maize pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* uses aromatic compounds as signals and metabolites. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 25:931–940

Shanmugam V, Ronen M, Shalaby S et al. (2010) The fungal pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* responds to maize phenolics: novel small molecule signals in a plant-fungal interaction. Cell Microbiol 12:1421–1434

Spatafora JW, Owensby CA, Douhan GW, Boehm EW, Schoch CL (2012) Phylogenetic placement of the ectomycorrhizal genus Cenococcum in Gloniaceae (Dothideomycetes). Mycologia 104:758–765

Sukno SA, Garcia VM, Shaw BD, Thon MR (2008) Root infection and systemic colonization of maize by *Colletotrichum graminicola*. Appl Environ Microbiol 74:823–832

Temme N, Tudzynski P (2009) Does *Botrytis cinerea* ignore H_2O_2-induced oxidative stress during infection? Characterization of *Botrytis activator protein 1*. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 22:987–998

Turgeon BG, Baker SE (2007) Genetic and genomic dissection of the *Cochliobolus heterostrophus Tox1* locus controlling biosynthesis of the polyketide virulence factor T-toxin. Adv Genet 57:219–261

Turgeon BG, Yoder OC (2000) Proposed nomenclature for mating type genes of filamentous ascomycetes. Fungal Genet Biol 31:1–5

Turgeon BG, Garber RC, Yoder OC (1985) Transformation of the fungal maize pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* using the *Aspergillus nidulans amdS* gene. Mol Gen Genet 201:450–453

Turgeon BG, Bohlmann H, Ciuffetti LM, Christiansen SK, Yang G, Schafer W, Yoder OC (1993) Cloning and analysis of the mating type genes from *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. Mol Gen Genet 238:270–284

Turgeon BG, Oide S, Bushley K (2008) Creating and screening *Cochliobolus heterostrophus* non-ribosomal peptide synthetase mutants. Mycol Res 112:200–206

Ullstrup A (1972) The impacts of the Southern corn leaf blight epidemics of 1970–1971. Annu Rev Phytopathol 10:37–50

Weider C, Stamp P, Christov N, Hüsken A, Foueillassar X, Camp K, Munsch M (2009) Stability of cytoplasmic male sterility in maize under different environmental conditions. Crop Sci 49:77–84

Win J, Chaparro-Garcia A, Belhaj K, et al. (2012) Effector biology of plant-associated organisms: concepts and perspectives. Cold Spring Harb Symp Quant Biol 77:235–247

Wu D, Oide S, Zhang N, Choi MY, Turgeon BG (2012) *ChLae1* and *ChVel1* regulate T-toxin production, virulence, oxidative stress response, and development of the maize pathogen *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. PLoS Pathog 8:e1002542

Yang G (1995) The molecular genetics of T-toxin biosynthesis by *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*. Ph.D. thesis, Cornell University Thesis.

Yang G, Rose MS, Turgeon BG, Yoder OC (1996) A polyketide synthase is required for fungal virulence and production of the polyketide T-toxin. Plant Cell 8:2139–2150

Yoder OC (1988) *Cochliobolus heterostrophus*, cause of southern corn leaf blight. Adv Plant Pathol 6:93–112

Chapter 10
Penicillium chrysogenum: Genomics of an Antibiotics Producer

Marco A. van den Berg

10.1 Introduction

The species *Penicillium chrysogenum*[1] was originally described by Thom (1910). The conidiophore of the fungus resembles a paintbrush; hence, the genus name *Penicillium* is derived from penicillus, the Latin word for paintbrush. The species identification *chrysogenum* comes from the yellow pigment chrysogenin produced by the natural isolates. *Penicillium* has long been considered to be a member of the deuteromycetes, fungi with no known sexual state. Still, various studies identified several remnants of sexual activity in the past (Braumann et al. 2008; Hoff et al. 2008; Henk et al. 2011; Böhm et al. 2013).

Through history the fungus has also been known as *P. notatum* being documented as the source for the discovery of penicillin (Fleming 1929). Penicillin is active against gram-positive bacteria (i.e., Staphylococcus and Pneumococcus) by disrupting bacterial cell wall synthesis, i.e., by inhibition of the transpeptidase required for cross-linking of the peptidoglycan polymers. This leads to weakened cell walls and uptake of excess water, which causes cell burst. Moreover, peptidoglycan precursors accumulate due to the inhibition of transpeptidase, which in turn induces autolytic hydrolases that will digest existing peptidoglycan (Moreillon et al. 1990) without the production of new peptidoglycan. This enhances the bactericidal action of penicillin.

[1] Although Houbraken et al. (2011) demonstrated that both Fleming's isolate and the Wisconsin 54–1,255 strain are not *P. chrysogenum* but *P. rubens*, the name *P. chrysogenum* will be used throughout this chapter to avoid confusion as the *P. rubens* name is not yet used in databases, culture collections, and literature.

M.A. van den Berg (✉)
Applied Biochemistry Department (699-0310), DSM Biotechnology Center, Delft 2613 AX, The Netherlands
e-mail: Marco.berg-van-den@dsm.com

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*,
Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_10,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

The ability to produce penicillin, as well as a range of other metabolites (Table 10.1), has evolved over millions of years and is shared with several other related fungi[2] (Fig. 10.1). Producing this array of compounds is believed to give the fungus a selective advantage during competition for carbon and nitrogen. Natural isolates with the capability to grow submerged while producing penicillin were the founding strains of all current industrial derivatives. These industrial strains can produce enormous amounts of penicillins under harsh conditions in 100–200 m^3 fermenters. The penicillin biosynthetic genes, *pcbAB*, *pcbC*, and *penDE*, are physically linked, forming a cluster that is amplified in industrial production strains.

10.2 Origin and Evolution

With the long industrial use of *P. chrysogenum*, there has been an equally long debate on the evolutionary benefit of penicillin production as well as the natural habitat of this fungus. Genome sequencing makes it possible to understand genetic changes in the lineage leading to the current strains.

10.2.1 Natural Habitats

Often, *P. chrysogenum* is described as an "airborne fungus," a term that is used to describe that its conidia are spread through air towards various new habitats which the fungus can colonize. In fact, it is a quite common fungus that can be found almost anywhere in temperate, tropical as well as arctic locations (Ismail 2001; Bancerz et al. 2005; Henk et al. 2011). Fleming's isolate (1929) was obtained in the classical way: spores transported through the air in St. Mary's hospital, whereas the ancestral strain of the current production strains—NREL1951—was isolated from rotting fruit (Raper et al. 1944). Other isolates are from a range of habitats: salted food products (Samson et al. 2010), indoor environments such as archives (Roussel et al. 2012), compost heaps (Adeleye et al. 2004), and damp buildings (Andersen et al. 2011).

All *P. chrysogenum* isolates are capable of secreting a versatile range of enzymes and metabolites. In soil, fungi have to work under the most complex conditions with limited free nutrition, limited oxygen, and many competitors. Like most soil fungi, *Penicillium* can secrete various factors to liberate complexated minerals [like phosphorus by producing phosphatases, chelating compounds, and organic anions (Richardson et al. 2011)] and metals [like iron by producing a range

[2] In total 8 species of Penicillium are reported to produce penicillin in culture: *P. allii-sativi*, *P. chrysogenum*, *P. dipodomyis*, *P. flavigenum*, *P. nalgiovense*, *P. rubens*, *P. tardochrysogenum* and *P. vanluykii* (Houbraken et al. 2012).

Table 10.1 Secondary metabolites produced by *P. chrysogenum* Legend

Compound	Molecular structure	Compound class	Mode of action	Active against	Production level	Biosynthetic genes	References
PenicillinG		β-lactam antibiotic	Inhibits the formation of peptidoglycan cross-links	Both gram-positive and gram-negative organisms	~20 mg/g	Pc21g21370–Pc21g21390	García-Rico et al. (2008), van den Berg et al. (2008)
Roquefortine C		Diketopiperazine alkaloid	Cytochrome P450 inhibitor	Gram-positives	~3 μg/g	Pc21g15430–Pc21g15480	Frisvad et al. (2004), García-Estrada et al. (2011)
Meleagrin		Diketopiperazine alkaloid	Cytochrome P450 inhibitor	Gram-positives	~0.3 μg/g	Pc21g15420–Pc21g15480	Frisvad et al. (2004), García-Estrada et al. (2011), Ali et al. (2013)
Chrysogenin		(Yellow) pigment	n.a.	n.a.	~600 μg/g	n.k.	Frisvad et al. (2004), García-Rico et al. (2008)
Xanthocillins		Isocyanide derived from shikimic acid pathway	Evaluated as thrombopoietic drug	Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria	~100 μg/g	n.k.	Sakai et al. (2005), de la Campa et al. (2007)
Secalonic acids		Ergochrome (polyketide)	Phosphorylation in signal transduction pathway	Antifungal	n.k.	n.k.	Frisvad et al. (2004), Houbraken et al. (2011)
Questiomycin		Polycyclic iminoquinone	DNA intercalation	Gram-positive and -negative bacteria and yeasts	n.k.	n.k.	Frisvad et al. (2004)

(continued)

Table 10.1 (continued)

Compound	Molecular structure	Compound class	Mode of action	Active against	Production level	Biosynthetic genes	References
Sorbicillin/ sorbicillactone A		Alkaloid	Radical Scavenging and inhibition of lipopolysaccharide induced Production (TNF α) in human monocytes	Antibacterial; antifungal; cytotoxic	~4 mg/l	Pc21g05050–Pc21g05110	Cram (1948), Bringmann et al. (2003, 2007), Avramović (2011)
PR-toxin		Terpene (derived from Aristolochene)	Inhibits RNA and protein synthesis; DNA polymerase	Antifungal; lethal to rats, mice and cats	n.k.	Possibly Pc12g06310–Pc12g06370	Dai et al. (1993), Harris et al. (2009a)
Andrastin A, B		Meroterpenoid (mixed polyketide-terpenoids).	Protein farnesyl transferase inhibitors	Inhibiting efflux of anticancer drugs from multidrug-resistant cancer cells	n.k.	n.k.[a]	Houbraken et al. (2011)
Citrinin		Quinone methide	DNA damage via hydroxyl radicals	Bacteriocidal, antifungal and antiprotozoal mycotoxic nephropathy in livestock	530 mg/l	n.k.[b]	Devi et al. (2009)
Fungisporin		Peptide cyclo (L-phenylalanyl-D-valyl-L-valyl-D-phenylalanyl)	Inhibits metabolism	Antibacterial	n.k.	Pc13g14330 or Pc16g04690	Frisvad et al. (2004), van den Berg et al. (2008)

Production is giving either per gram of mycelial dry weight or per liter culture broth

n.a. not applicable, *n.k.* not known

[a] Andrastin building block 3,5-dimethylorsellinic acid (Geris and Simpson 2009) is produced by *Aspergillus nidulans* AusA (Ahuja et al. 2012), and the closest homologue is Pc21g05070 (32 % identity), involved in the biosynthesis of sorbicillin and derived products

[b] Closest homologue to *Monascus purpureus* PKS (Shimizu et al. 2005) is Pc21g05070 (43 % identity)

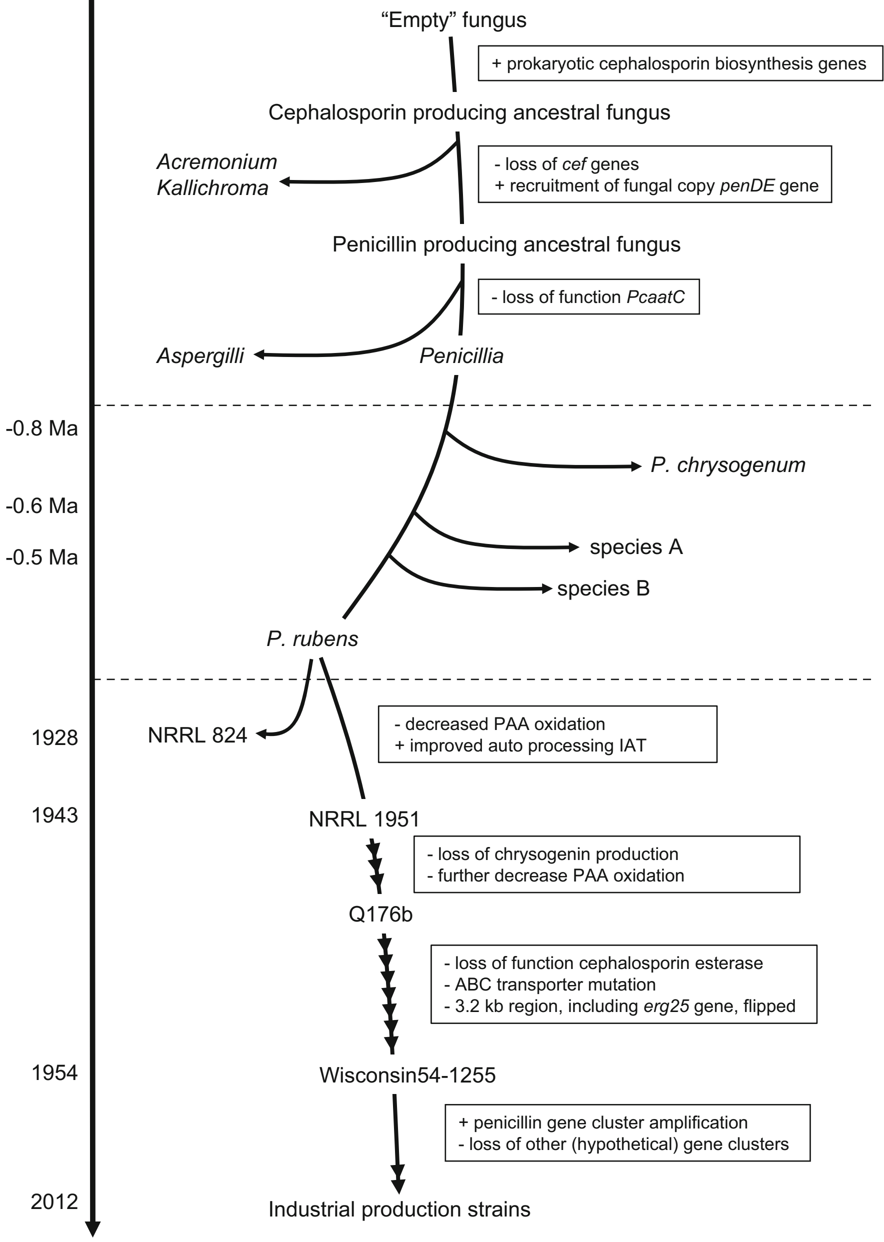


Fig. 10.1 Schematic overview of the evolutionary path of penicillin production by *Penicillium*. NRRL 824 (Fleming 1929), Fleming's isolate; NRRL 1951, first isolate for submerged growth (Raper et al. 1944); Q176b, first isolate with decreased chrysogenin (Anderson et al. 1953); Wisconsin54-1255, international laboratory strain standard (Elander 2002)

of siderophores as trihydroxymates, coprogen, and ferricrocin (Hördt et al. 2000)]. Esterases hydrolyze the iron-containing siderophores into hydroxamates to make the metal available for absorption. Also under laboratory culture conditions, this iron scavenging machinery is used in order to acquire sufficient iron for growth and penicillin production (Charlang et al. 1981; Leiter et al. 2001), as one of the key biosynthetic enzymes—isopenicillin N synthase—is dependent on iron (Burzlaff et al. 1999). Some of the siderophore synthetase genes—Pc13g05250 for ferrichrome and Pc16g03850 for triacetyl fusarinine—were readily identified from the genome (van den Berg et al. 2008). Transcription analysis using Affymetrix GeneChips suggests that the former is more important than the latter under laboratory conditions (data not shown), which corroborates earlier findings (Charlang et al. 1981).

Indirectly, fungi associated with plant roots can trigger responses in the plants' defense system, amongst others leading to a so-called state of induced systemic resistance, wherein the plant expresses several defense proteins leading to improved seed germination and growth (Chen et al. 2006; Murali et al. 2012). In fact, aqueous extracts prepared from dried commercial *P. chrysogenum* mycelium can be used as a spray or soil additive to enhance crop yield. Detailed studies showed that the extract itself did not have any antimicrobial activity and low molecular weight molecules—below 2,000 Da—are necessary to induce the defense mechanism in plants (Thuerig et al. 2006).

10.2.2 Antimicrobial Compounds

In order to eliminate competing microbes for available nutrients in the same niche, *P. chrysogenum* produces a range of secondary metabolites (Table 10.1), of which the antibacterial β-lactams are studied most extensively. However, compared to the production levels of current industrial strains, natural isolates produce only a minute amount of β-lactam antibiotics under laboratory conditions [reviewed in van den Berg (2011)]. Only a limited number of studies attempted to describe production of antimicrobial metabolites in its natural habitats as the levels are difficult to quantify. Hill (1972) clearly demonstrated penicillin production in soil and on seeds, while being counteracted by *Bacillus* species producing β-lactamases. Besides β-lactam antibiotics, *P. chrysogenum* is able to produce a range of other secondary metabolites including antifungal, antibacterial, and cytotoxic compounds (Table 10.1). For some products, the biosynthetic gene clusters have been identified. Interestingly, in the penicillin production strains, these other secondary metabolite gene clusters seem to be downregulated. Gene transcription of at least three clusters is induced under non-penicillin-producing conditions (Table 10.2).

The genome also contains remnants of other secondary metabolites, not reported to be produced by *P. chrysogenum*. The gene clusters for viridicatumtoxin and griseofulvin were most likely lost during evolution while being retained in

Table 10.2 Secondary metabolite gene clusters induced under non-penicillin-producing conditions (Harris et al. 2009a; Veiga et al. 2012a)

Contig	Gene ID's	Gene number	Putative function
Pc06	Pc06g02040–Pc06g02100	7	Unknown
Pc12	Pc12g06310–Pc12g06400	11	Involved in aristolochene biosynthesis
Pc21	Pc21g05060–Pc21g05110	6	Involved in the biosynthesis of sorbicillins and derivatives

P. aethiopicum (Chooi et al. 2010). The genes for melanin are dispersed over the genome (Pc21g16000, Pc21g16380-Pc21g16440, and Pc06g01310), while in black fungi, they are clustered and functional (Woo et al. 2010). Interestingly, the main PKS-encoding gene (*alb1* in *P. marneffei*; Woo et al. 2010) lost a copy during strain improvement: 2 gene copies can be found in Wisconsin54-1255 but only one in DS17690 (van den berg et al. 2008). Moreover, expression of the putative scytalone dehydratase (*arp1* in *P. marneffei*; Woo et al. 2010) was lost during strain improvement (Jami et al. 2009b). Both observations could explain why spores of the industrial strains are less intense green than the Wisconsin54-1255 strain.

In contrast to what has been reported, *P. chrysogenum* does not produce the carcinogenic mycotoxin sterigmatocystin (Rank et al. 2011). Furthermore, it has been suggested that some isolates produce fumigaclavine (Kozlovsky et al. 1998; Zhelifonova et al. 2010) and ochratoxin A (Gherbawy et al. 2012). However, this is not in line with detailed studies by Frisvad et al. (2004). Still, the genome might encode enzymes that could have played a role in synthesizing these compounds: the *P. chrysogenum* homologue of 6-methylsalicylic acid synthase, Pc22g08170, is 60 % identical to the PKS of P. *nordicum* involved in ochratoxin A biosynthesis (otapksPN; Karolewiez and Geisen 2005). Fumigaclavine is an ergot alkaloid, which biosynthesis starts with dimethylallyltryptophan synthase (dmaW) as reported for P. commune [reviewed in Wallwey and Li (2011)]; the *P. chrysogenum* homologue is Pc21g15430. Therefore, it could very well be that specific isolates from specific niches could produce these compounds.

In addition to metabolites, Penicillia produce a range of antimicrobial proteins, which can induce apoptosis-like cell death in sensitive fungi (Leiter et al. 2005). The most studied example is PAF (Pc24g00380), a cysteine- and lysine-rich antifungal protein (Marx et al. 1995). This small (6.25 kDa) protein is highly stable through a broad range of pH (1.5–11), heat (60 min, 80 °C), and proteases. Interestingly, PAF-producer *P. chrysogenum* is resistant through an unknown mechanism, but closely related fungi as *Aspergillus* are sensitive. Metabolically active cells take up the protein via an endocytosis-like process which triggers a very extensive signaling pathway negatively influencing several elements in sensitive cells [reviewed in Hegedus et al. (2011)]. The genome encodes more putative small antifungal proteins. One of them (Pc21g12970) is homologous to the bubble protein (BP) of *P. brevicompactum*, the mycophenolate-producing fungus, which inhibits *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* in a dose-dependent manner (Seibold et al. 2011). However, under laboratory conditions, this gene is not transcribed (van den Berg et al. 2008). A third

ORF, Pc12g08290, is closely related to the PAF protein. Interestingly, expression of both PAF and Pc12g08290 is repressed under penicillin-production conditions when the phenylacetic acid side-chain precursor is present (van den Berg et al. 2008), whereas this repression does not occur in strains lacking the whole penicillin biosynthetic cluster (Harris et al. 2009a).

Fungi also have to protect themselves against the molecules produced by other microbes. Most likely, many of the 830 putative transporters of *P. chrysogenum* (van den Berg et al. 2008) will have a crucial role in this, although reported examples are limited to fluconazole and cycloheximide resistance proteins, induced by glucose (Castillo et al. 2005).

10.2.3 Biochemical Arsenal

As many saprophytic fungi, *P. chrysogenum* is able to grow on lignocellulosic material (Mishra et al. 1979; Rodríguez et al. 1994) via a wide range of secreted enzymes. In addition, proteome studies confirm the presence of the biochemical weaponry, including proteases, phosphatases, and oxidases, required for plant biomass degradation (Jami et al. 2009a). Besides enabling growth on plant material, many of these enzymes are useful in industrial applications as food processing and biofuel production. The *P. chrysogenum* genome harbors 174 ORF's encoding putative enzymes involved in plant polysaccharide degradation (van den Brink and de Vries 2011), allowing the fungus to grow on hemicellulosic, cellulosic, as well as on lignin-containing materials. Several of these have been purified and characterized from a sugar-beet pulp isolate (Sakamoto et al. 2011, 2012, 2013a, b). Besides all major glycosyl hydrolase classes, four genes encoding the polysaccharide monooxygenases of the GH61 family have also been identified in the *P. chrysogenum* genome (Gusakov and Sinitsyn 2012). This class was recently identified as crucial for cost-efficient biomass hydrolysis for biofuel production (Langston et al. 2011).

Some of this biochemical arsenal is also used in order to compete out other fungi. An antifungal chitosanase PgChP (Pc12g07820) produced by an isolate from dry-cured ham was described by Rodríguez-Martín et al. (2010). Under laboratory conditions, transcription of this gene was very low in low-penicillin-producing strains such as NRRL1951 and Wisconsin54-1255 and, quite unexpected, much higher in production strains (MA van den Berg, IS Snoek et al. unpublished results). This is opposite for enzymes related to plant pathogenesis and infection, which are downregulated in the high production strains (Jami et al. 2009b), as these functions became redundant under laboratory and industrial conditions.

10.2.4 Taxonomy

Several species of the genus *Penicillium* do produce penicillins (Frisvad et al. 2004): *P. chrysogenum*, *P. dipodomyis*, *P. flavigenum*, *P. griseofulvum*, and *P. nalgiovense*. Fleming (1929) identified his fungus originally as *P. rubrum* and later re-identified it as *P. notatum*. However, morphological, extrolite, and molecular studies re-identified not only Fleming's isolate but also the NRRL1951 isolate as well as the sequenced strain Wisconsin54-1255 as *P. rubens* strains (Houbraken et al. 2011). *P. chrysogenum* is a highly related species but retained as a separate clade due to significant interspecific inhibition (Henk et al. 2011) as well as two other clades of *Penicillium* (species A and B in Fig. 10.1).

10.2.5 Evolutionary Path

Production of β-lactam antibiotics is not limited to saprophytic fungi as *Acremonium*, *Aspergillus*, and *Penicillium*; also some dermatophytic fungi from the genus *Trichophyton* (Hammadi et al. 2007) can produce β-lactam structures and do contain the respective biosynthetic genes. As two of the three penicillin biosynthetic genes (*pcbAb* and *pcbC*) are from bacterial origin (see, e.g., van den Berg et al. 2008) and the clustering of genes is well preserved among both cephalosporin- and penicillin-producing fungi (van den Berg et al. 2007), it is most likely that a full β-lactam biosynthetic pathway was acquired from prokaryotes producing cephalosporin (Fig. 10.1). From this ancestral β-lactam-producing fungus, a long evolutionary tract was initiated. The so-called expandase activity was lost, leading to a divergent class of fungi only producing penicillins. Next, a fungal gene encoding acyltransferase activity was "recruited" by the penicillin machinery, enabling more efficient penicillin production via hydrophobic side chains. The gene was duplicated and physically linked to the other penicillin biosynthetic genes (Spröte et al. 2008). Furthermore, the copied gene—*penDE* in *P.* chrysogenum—acquired via evolution a C-terminal targeting signal sorting the enzyme to the peroxisome where also CoA ligases are present (van den Berg et al. 2008; Kiel et al. 2009) that activate natural side chains enabling efficient production (Fig. 10.2). Further selection pressure made the original acyltransferase copy in Penicillia redundant and inactive, while in Aspergilli, it remained active (Spröte et al. 2008; García-Estrada et al. 2009; van den Berg et al. 2010). Interestingly, comparable evolutionary events took place in *P. brevicompactum*, producer of mycophenolate (MPA). One of the genes now present in the gene cluster, IMP dehydrogenase mediating MPA resistance, was duplicated before it was recruited to the MPA gene cluster. In this case, this duplication event took place before *P. chrysogenum* diverged from *P. brevicompactum*, but also before the MPA cluster was acquired (Hansen et al. 2012). The enzymes of *P. chrysogenum* have no clear function and are not very active.

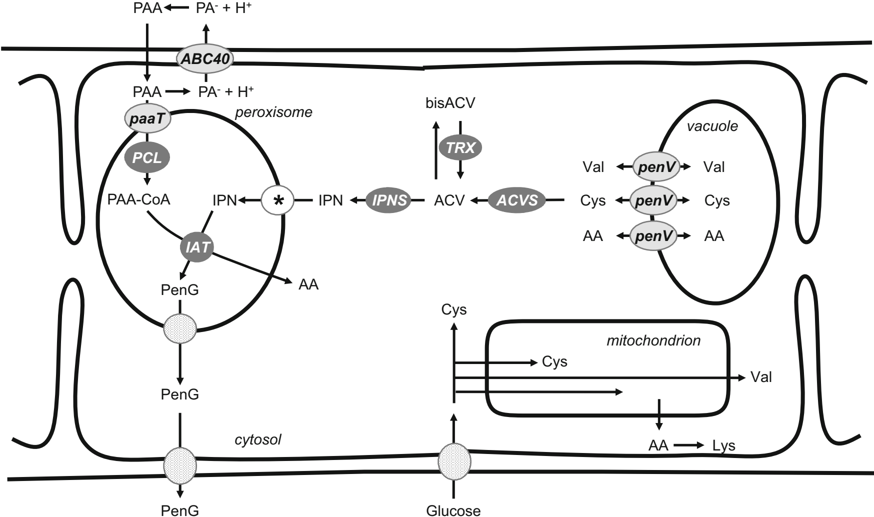


Fig. 10.2 Schematic overview of penicillin biosynthesis by *P. chrysogenum*. *Cys* cysteine, *AA* aminoadipate, *Lys* lysine, *Val* valine, *ACV* L-δ-(α-aminoadipoyl)-L-cysteinyl-D-valine, *bisACV* oxidized dimer of ACV, *IPN* isopenicillin *N*, *PAA* phenylacetic acid, *PA* phenyl acetate, *PAA-CoA* phenylacetyl-Coenzyme A, *PenG* penicillin, *ACVS* ACV synthetase, *TRX* thioredoxin reductase (Cohen et al. 1994), *IPNS* IPN synthase, *PCL* PA-CoA ligase, *IAT* isopenicillin *N*: acetyltransferase, *penV* vacuolar amino acid MFS transporter (Pc22g22150; Fernández-Aguado et al. 2013a), *ABC40* ABC transporter for PA secretion (Pc22g17530; Weber et al. 2012a), *paaT* peroxisomal MFS transporter for PAA (Pc21g01300; Fernández-Aguado et al. 2013b), asterisk, peroxisomal MFS transporter for IPN (most likely Pc22g22150, homologue of cefP; Ullán et al. 2010)

With the isolation of strain NRRL1951 from an infected cantaloupe bought on the local market in Peoria (Raper et al. 1944), submerged cultivation of *P. chrysogenum* became possible, with concomitant increased penicillin production. The concurrent need for antibiotics due to WWII spurred the development of an industrial production process. Classical strain improvement programs [reviewed by Lein (1986)] by several multinationals lead to the parallel development of the current industrial production strains producing several dozens of grams per liter, a staggering 20.000-fold higher than Fleming's isolate. This enormous improvement has been facilitated by many adaptations in fungal metabolism [reviewed in van den Berg (2011)]. The most prominent changes are the following:

- Elimination of side-chain (phenylacetic acid, PAA) catabolism
- Increased level of biosynthetic enzymes (via amplification of the gene cluster)
- Increased carbon flux towards the amino acid building blocks (aminoadipate, cysteine, and valine)

10.3 Penicillin Biosynthesis

Genetic analysis of mutants producing significantly reduced levels has provided the initial information for understanding the basics of penicillin biosynthesis (Queener et al. 1978; Cantoral et al. 1993; Fierro et al. 1995). The *P. chrysogenum* genome sequence (van den Berg et al. 2008) allows a more directed approach towards full understanding. Still, after more than 80 years and its genome displayed, penicillin production is not fully understood and opportunities for further improvement are identified.

10.3.1 Biosynthetic Pathway

The biosynthesis of all naturally occurring penicillins and cephalosporins starts with the condensation of three amino acids (Fig. 10.2): α-aminoadipic acid (AAA), L-cysteine, and L-valine into the tripeptide L-δ-(α-aminoadipoyl)-L-cysteinyl-D-valine (ACV). A large, non-ribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS) ACV synthetase (ACVS) catalyzes as a single multifunctional enzyme the activation, fusion, and—in the case of valine—the epimerization (Wu et al. 2012) of the three amino acids. The enzyme sometimes makes "mistakes" and incorporates other amino acids, or the reaction is aborted too early (van den Berg et al. 1999), which is considered to be a potential energy drain during industrial production (van Gulik et al. 2000).

Secondly, the first β-lactam molecule is formed after oxidation and ring closure of ACV by the enzyme isopenicillin *N* (IPN) synthase (IPNS). IPN contains the characteristic β-lactam ring as well as the five-membered thiazolidine ring. Both ACVS and IPNS are cytosolic enzymes. In contrast, the two final steps of penicillin biosynthesis are located in a specialized organelle, the peroxisome (Fig. 10.2; see also next section). Here, the AAA moiety is exchanged for a novel side chain: phenylacetic acid (PAA) for penicillinG (PenG) or phenoxyacetic acid (POA) for penicillinV (PenV). Isopenicillin *N*-acyltransferase (IAT) first hydrolyses IPN into 6-aminopenicillinic acid (6-APA) and AAA, followed by the coupling of the activated side chain (PAA-CoA or POA-CoA). This latter activation is done by the peroxisomal enzyme phenylacetyl-CoA ligase, PCL (Lamas-Maceiras et al. 2006).

10.3.2 Compartmentalization

Penicillin biosynthesis is highly compartmentalized (Fig. 10.2). The synthesis of the amino acid precursors follows classical biochemical pathways via cytosol and mitochondria [reviewed by Evers et al. (2004)], the surplus being stored for later use in the vacuole (Affenzeller and Kubicek 1991). L-cysteine can be produced via

two different pathways in β-lactam-producing fungi: the transsulfuration and the sulfhydrylation pathway (Pieniazek et al. 1973). Theoretically, the yield of penicillin on glucose is higher when L-cysteine is synthesized via the direct sulfhydrylation pathway (Jørgensen et al. 1995). Here, cysteine synthesis is initiated through direct acetylation of L-serine by the cytosolic O-acetyl-L-serine sulfhydrylase (OASS). *P. chrysogenum* mutants lacking the direct sulfhydrylation pathway are disturbed in growth, suggesting it has another role than penicillin biosynthesis (Evers et al. 2004). The transsulfuration pathway on the other hand is located in the cytosol, where the cysteine is directly available for the cytosolic ACVS and IPNS (van der Lende et al. 2002). Moreover, transcriptome analysis of various strains of the *Penicillium* lineage shows that Pc12g05420 (encoding OAHS) was more induced than Pc21g14890 (encoding OASS) in higher producing strains, confirming the hypothesis that the transsulfuration pathway provides the cysteine for β-lactam production. The surplus of amino acids is stored in the vacuole and transported back into the cytosol by a MFS transporter named PenV (Pc22g22150; Fernández-Aguado et al. 2013a). Intriguingly, the transcript level of this gene is throughout all strains and conditions rather low and constant (MA van den Berg, IS Snoek et al. unpublished results), suggesting that the enzyme is always present at a basal level making sure that there is no limitation in the availability of amino acids.

Because of the compartmentalization, both IPN and the PAA side chain have to be transported into peroxisomes for further processing. Currently, it is still unclear how IPN and the final penicillin product(s) are transported across the peroxisomal membrane. Overexpression of pex11 led to a massive proliferation of peroxisomes (Fig. 10.3c, d) with a concurrent twofold increase in penicillin titers, while the levels of IAT and PCL remained constant (Kiel et al. 2005), suggesting that transport over the membrane was limiting penicillin synthesis. Two MFS transporters are involved in the translocation of biosynthetic intermediates essential for cephalosporin production by *Acremonium* over the peroxisomal membrane (Teijeira et al. 2009; Ullán et al. 2010). The closest *P. chrysogenum* homologue of the penN transporter cefM, Pc21g09220, is highly induced under penicillin-producing conditions in all strains tested (MA van den Berg, IS Snoek et al. unpublished results), suggesting its protein product has a role in penicillin biosynthesis. Unfortunately, the putative proteins from both species have no clear peroxisomal targeting sequence, and therefore, no solid conclusions can be drawn. IPN import into the peroxisomes is done by cefP; the closest *P. chrysogenum* homologue, Pc22g22150, is constitutively transcribed at low levels independent of penicillin production (MA van den Berg, IS Snoek et al. unpublished results).

A third MFS transporter, Pc21g01300, is off under nonproducing conditions and has a high transcript level under producing conditions with PAA in the medium (van den Berg et al. 2008). The enzyme encoded by the gene, aka paaT (Fernández-Aguado et al. 2013b), is located in the peroxisomal membrane and essential for import of PAA into the peroxisome.

The last barrier to be tackled is the cell membrane; the side-chain precursor has to be imported and penicillin has to be exported. PAA is imported by passive diffusion (Hillenga et al. 1995), but being a weak acid, it causes acidification of the

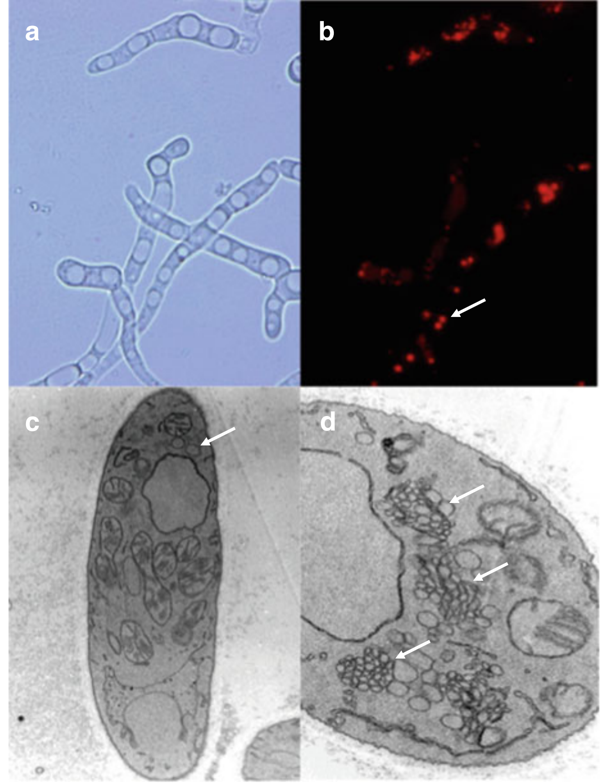


Fig. 10.3 Peroxisomes in *P*. *chrysogenum*. (**a**, **b**) High-producing strain DS17690 with DsRed-SKL under the control of P*pcbC* (Kiel et al. 2009). (**c**) Wisconsin54-1255; D, Wisconsin54-1255 with Pex11 overexpressed under the control of P*pcbC* (Kiel et al. 2005). Peroxisomes are indicated by the *arrows*

cytosol, and at high concentrations, it can become toxic to the cell (White et al. 1999). Therefore, while being imported, it is at the same time actively excreted by an ATP-binding cassette transporter (Pc22g17530 or ABC40; Weber et al. 2012a), leading to a futile cycle dissipating energy (Douma et al. 2012). The export of penicillin is dependent on ATP (van den Berg et al. 2001) and therefore most likely mediated by an ABC transporter, similarly to *A. nidulans* (Andrade et al. 2000). However, the closest homologue to this *A. nidulans atrD* is Pc20g01220, which is downregulated under (higher) penicillin-production conditions and therefore not the most likely candidate (MA van den Berg, IS Snoek et al. unpublished results). Several studies have attempted to identify the penicillin exporter through comparative and knockout studies but so far without any result (van den Berg et al. 2001, 2008; Weber et al. 2012c).

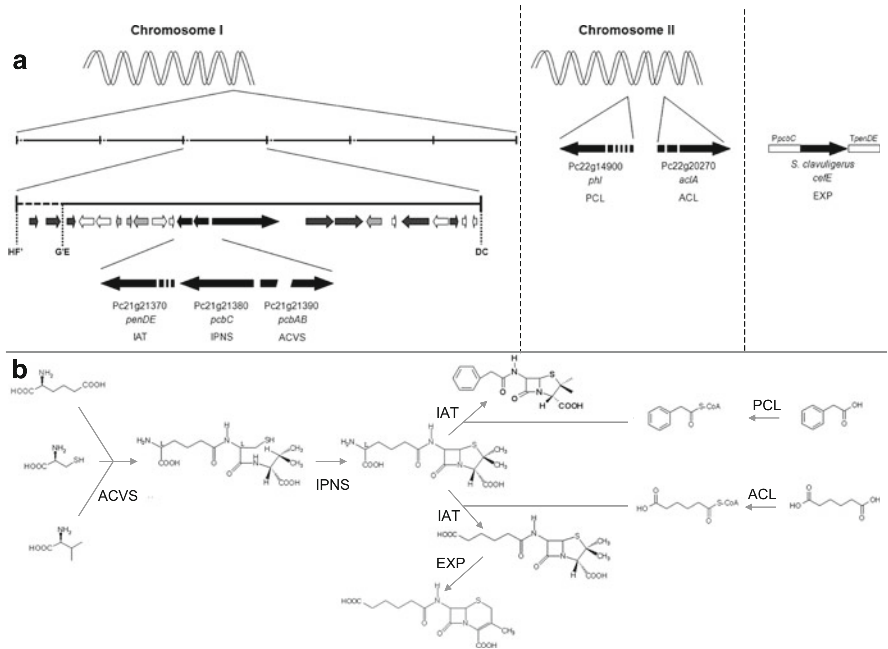


Fig. 10.4 Genome organization and metabolic pathway of β-lactam biosynthesis. (**a**) Genomic organization. The penicillin cluster is located on chromosome I and, as part of a larger region, amplified as tandem repeats in high-producing strains. The genes encoding the CoA ligases for the PAA and adipate side-chain precursors are both located on chromosome II as one gene copy. The expression construct encoding expandase, needed to produce adipoyl-7ADCA, under control of the *pcbC* promoter and *penDE* terminator, is integrated randomly in the genome. (**b**) Metabolic pathway. The three amino acid precursor aminoadipate, cysteine, and valine are fused together to form L-δ-(α-aminoadipoyl)-L-cysteinyl-D-valine (ACV) by ACVS. IPNS catalyzes the oxidative ring closure to form isopenicillin *N*. The PAA and adipate side-chain precursors are activated by their respective CoA ligases, PCL (Lamas-Maceiras et al. 2006) and ACL (Koetsier et al. 2010). IAT catalyzes the exchange of the aminoadipate module with the activated side chain to form penicillinG and adipoyl-6APA, respectively. Expandase (EXP) transforms the latter molecule into adipoyl-7ADCA

10.3.3 Penicillin Gene Cluster

Production of secondary metabolites is highly regulated, often by means of a clustered gene set, including specific transcription factors and/or transporter(s). And while the genes (*pcbAB*, *pcbC*, and *penDE*) encoding the three penicillin biosynthetic enzymes (ACVS, IPNS, and IAT, respectively) are clustered on the genome (Fierro et al. 1995), neither specific regulators nor transporter genes can be identified (van den Berg et al. 2007) (Fig. 10.4).

Although *pcbAB* and *pcbC* are recruited via horizontal gene transfer from prokaryotes, the penicillin genes are positively controlled via a range of general

filamentous fungal transcriptional regulatory mechanisms [summarized in van den Berg et al. (2008)] including pH control (through PacC), carbon derepression (through the CCAAT-complex), nitrogen regulation (through Nre), and chromatin remodeling (through LaeA/VeA). Although no specific regulator was identified in the cluster, two specific transcriptional activators are known: Pta1 (Kosalková et al. 2007) and Rfx1 (Domínguez-Santos et al. 2012). Carbon catabolite repression is mediated by CreA and can be relieved by deleting the binding sites in the biosynthetic gene promoters (van den Berg 2011). Deletion of the *creA* gene led to unstable or cripple isolates, suggesting an essential role for CreA next to its role in controlling penicillin biosynthesis (van den Berg 2011).

10.3.4 Genome Insights

The 32 Mb genome of *P. chrysogenum* (van den Berg et al. 2008) revealed two remarkable secrets. First and most surprising, several ORFs encoding a range of putative β-lactam modifying enzymes were identified [see supplementary Table 6 in van den Berg et al. (2008)]. Laboratory *P. chrysogenum* strains cannot produce any cephalosporin and are dependent on the introduction of functional variants of IPN epimerase, expandase/hydroxylase, and deacetylcephalosporin C acetyltransferase in order to produce deacetylcephalosporin C and cephalosporin C (Ullán et al. 2008). Therefore, the identification of an isopenicillin *N* epimerase homologue (Pc12g11540) is unexpected, especially while it is actively transcribed and increased in higher producing strains (van den Berg et al. 2008). It is tempting to speculate this being a remnant of the original cephalosporin pathway in the ancestral fungus (Fig. 10.1), but this cannot be substantiated. Preliminary deletion studies suggest a minor role in penicillin biosynthesis (van den Berg et al. 2008); possibly it encodes an active competing enzyme. Other competing enzymes could be encoded by one or more of the hypothetical β-lactamases (3) or cephalosporin esterases (3). The presence of cephalosporin esterases hydrolyzing β-lactams has been reported counterintuitively for the cephalosporin producer *A. chrysogenum* (Velasco et al. 2001). Although *P. chrysogenum* does not produce cephalosporin C, these esterases are rather promiscuous and can hydrolyze a range of substrates. The transcript level of all six *P. chrysogenum* genes is rather low (van den Berg et al. 2008). Still, one of them (Pc12g13400, a cephalosporin esterase) is translated into protein, as it was identified during proteome analyses (Jami et al. 2009a). A mutation was introduced by classical strain improvement in a second putative cephalosporin esterase gene which will have hampered its function (van den Berg 2010). Ongoing functional studies have to resolve their role in β-lactam biosynthesis.

Secondly, comparative DNA analyses of different strains revealed changes in copy numbers of large clusters of genes. Six considerably large regions with different copy numbers between the sequenced strain and a high-producing strain were found [see supplementary Table 19 in van den Berg et al. (2008)]. As for the penicillin gene cluster, most of these regions are flanked by one or more

transposable elements, which may have played a role in the duplication or deletion of DNA. Two gene clusters with over 50 hypothetical genes, which were mostly low or not transcribed, are completely deleted from the genome of DS17690, the high-producing strain (van den Berg et al. 2008). Three clusters of genes have been amplified, including the penicillin biosynthetic gene cluster. The latter is present in 6–7 copies in DS17690.

10.4 Industrial Production

Classical strain and process improvements have led to a staggering annual β-lactam production of 65,000 metric tons (Lowe 2001) in large fermenters of 100–200 m^3. Moreover, metabolic engineering is applied to develop a direct fermentation route for cephalosporins (Cantwell et al. 1990), which is since the early 2000s performed at industrial scale at DSM in Delft, the Netherlands (Xie et al. 2001).

10.4.1 Classical Strain Improvement

The isolation of the NRRL1951 strain, which could produce penicillin during submerged fermentation (Raper et al. 1944), was the start of an unprecedented sequence of strain (and process) improvement leading to the current, highly optimized industrial *P. chrysogenum* strains (Fig. 10.1). Mutagens like UV-radiation, X-ray, or DNA-alkylating agents introduced the random DNA variations necessary to isolate improved mutants. Next to increased titers, one of the first targets was the reduction of the yellow chrysogenin pigment (Backus and Stauffer 1955). The later derived Wisconsin54-1255 strain isolated at the University of Wisconsin became the world laboratory standard (Elander 2002). This strain is the basis of most industrial strain lineages, and its DNA was used to determine the genome sequence for *P. chrysogenum* (van den Berg et al. 2008).

Besides the reduction in chrysogenin production, the many rounds of mutagenesis introduced a vast array of modifications in the genome; however, only two direct gene mutation-penicillin phenotype relations are known:

- pahA: The homogentisate pathway (phenylacetic acid catabolism) is largely inactivated in Wisconsin54-1255 and derived strains (Rodríguez-Sáiz et al. 2001), leading to an increased availability of side chain and thus increase in penicillin.
- *pcbAB-pcbC-penDE*: The penicillin gene cluster is amplified several times in production strains (Fierro et al. 1995; van den Berg et al. 2007).

A few other seemingly relevant mutations are known, for which the annotation or the physical location suggest a correlation with penicillin synthesis or secretion, but the direct relation with β-lactam biosynthesis was not shown:

- *erg25*: Encoding C4-setrol methyl oxidase, of which the orientation was reverted in Wisconsin54-1255 on the outer edge of the amplified region in production strains (van den Berg et al. 2007), possibly effecting the ergosterol content of the membranes.
- Pc12g04030: Encoding a putative cephalosporin esterase, of which the ORF was disturbed due to a 14 bp repeat, possibly decreasing β-lactam hydrolysis (van den Berg 2010).
- Pc12g00440: encoding a ABC transporter, which acquired a mutation during strain improvement, suggesting an effect in β-lactam transport (van den Berg 2010).

Some other obvious modifications to the fungal metabolism do contribute significantly to the improved penicillin titers, but the underlying mutations are not yet identified:

- Enhanced penicillin production rates correlate with increasing peroxisomal volumes (van den Berg et al. 2008; Meijer et al. 2010); this seems associated by the increase in transcript levels of 27 genes encoding peroxisome associated proteins (van den Berg et al. 2008).
- Expression of virulence factors, useful for natural isolates, is decreased in higher producing strains (Barreiro et al. 2012).
- NADPH generation is increased in higher producing strains (Barreiro et al. 2012).
- Transcript levels of amino acid biosynthesis genes and amino acid levels are increased in higher producing strains (van den Berg et al. 2008; van den Berg 2011).
- Morphological changes are associated with high-producing strains (Pócsi et al. 2007).
- High penicillin producer strains seem to have lost the ability to utilize cellulose, sorbitol, and other carbon sources (Jami et al. 2009b).

10.4.2 Genomics-Based Strain Improvement

The availability of the genome sequence stimulated the application of "omics" analyses in order to identify new leads for further improvement of the penicillin titers. The leads can be classified as follows: increase flux through primary metabolism, increase flux through biosynthetic pathway, improve energy balance, decrease side-chain catabolism, and improve organelle homeostasis (Table 10.3). The latter class is specifically oriented at the peroxisome, which after the recruitment of IAT became a very important compartment for high penicillin production in *P. chrysogenum*. Meijer et al. (2010) showed that there is a direct correlation between the number of peroxisomes and penicillin titer, which was extrapolated by either increasing peroxisome proliferation (Kiel et al. 2005) or preventing peroxisome autophagy by the vacuole (Bartoszewska et al. 2011), both modifications

Table 10.3 Gene modification leading to increased penicillin production (rates) in *P. chrysogenum*

Modification	Enzyme	Gene	Fold improvement	References
Deletion	Serine-threonine kinase[a]	Pc18g03490	1,37[b]	Bartoszewska et al. (2011)
	Acyl-oxidase[c]	Pc20g01800	1,6[d]	Veiga et al. (2012b)
	Acyl-CoA dehydrogenase[c]	Pc20g07920	3,7[d]	Veiga et al. (2012b)
	Oxalate hydrolase[e]	Pc22g24830	1,36[d]	Gombert et al. (2011)
	L-aminoadipate-semialdehyde dehydrogenase[f]	Pc22g06310	2[g]	Casqueiro et al. (1999)
Overexpression	IAT	Pc21g21370	1,6[b]	Weber et al. (2012b)
	PEX11[h]	Pc12g09400	2[b]	Kiel et al. (2005)
	pptA	Pc13g04050	1,3[g]	García-Estrada et al. (2008)
	PCL	Pc22g14900	1,35[g]	Lamas-Maceiras et al. (2006)

[a]Involved in autophagy (peroxisome sequestration by vacuoles)
[b]Based on penicillinV titer
[c]Involved in β-oxidation
[d]Based on adipoyl-6APA production rate
[e]Formation of oxalate (precipitates with calcium)
[f]lysine and amino acetate pathway
[g]Based on penicillinG titer
[h]Peroxisome proliferation factor

leading to a further increase in peroxisome number and penicillin titer. This latter finding is corroborated by the opposite experiment by Xu et al. (2012) where deletion of pcvA (Pc21g07250), encoding Rab GTPase, increased vesicle-vacuolar fusion and result in a decrease of penicillin titer.

10.4.3 Other β-Lactam Molecules

Classically, *P. chrysogenum* is used for producing penicillins, like penicillinV and penicillinG. The latter molecule was used for chemical modification towards the cephalosporin intermediate 7-aminodesacetoxycephalosporanic acid (7-ADCA, see Skatrud 1992), which is used a building block for semisynthetic cephalosporins such as cephalexin and cefadroxil. With the identification of the expandase enzyme in Streptomycetes and the subsequent introduction of the *cefE* gene in P. chrysogenum, an adipoylated version of the 7-ADCA molecule could be fermented (Cantwell et al. 1990; Skatrud 1992; Robin et al 2003). The adipoyl side chain can be easily removed by a specific acylase (Sio et al. 2002), and specific

side chains can be coupled either chemically or enzymatically in order to form the active pharmaceutical ingredient (API). Further fermentative modification of the adipoyl 7-ADCA into hydroxylated, acetylated, and/or carbamoylated versions is also possible in order to reduce even more additional chemical steps towards API's as cefuroxime (Harris et al. 2009b).

10.5 Conclusion

Eighty years after Fleming's discovery, penicillin production by *P. chrysogenum* is still the basis of one of the world's leading antibiotics. The genome sequence has shed new light on questions like why fungi are producing β-lactam antibiotics and why this particular fungus has become such a good producer. Continuous mutation and selection, both in nature and in the laboratory, has changed the blueprint of *P. chrysogenum* into a very efficient machinery, wherein several genes and enzymes needed to survive in nature have become obsolete and dysfunctional. Interestingly, some of these functions (i.e., synthesis of other secondary metabolites) are just suppressed by the penicillin production; when production is halted, the repression on these genes is relieved and synthesis might start. With respect to penicillin biosynthesis, new functionalities have been acquired, adapted, and duplicated in order to sustain the high flux from carbon source to the final product in the industrial production strains.

References

Adeleye IA, Eruba S, Ezeani CJ (2004) Isolation and characterization of antibiotic producing microorganisms in composted Nigerian soil. J Environ Biol 25:313–315

Affenzeller K, Kubicek CP (1991) Evidence for a compartmentation of penicillin biosynthesis in a high- and a low-producing strain of Penicillium chrysogenum. J Gen Microbiol 137: 1653–1660

Ahuja M, Chiang YM, Chang SL, Praseuth MB, Entwistle R, Sanchez JF, Lo HC, Yeh HH, Oakley BR, Wang CC (2012) Illuminating the diversity of aromatic polyketide synthases in Aspergillus nidulans. J Am Chem Soc 134:8212–8221

Ali H, Ries MI, Nijland JG, Lankhorst PP, Hankemeier T, Bovenberg RA, Vreeken RJ, Driessen AJ (2013) A branched biosynthetic pathway is involved in production of roquefortine and related compounds in Penicillium chrysogenum. PLoS One 8:e65328

Andersen B, Frisvad JC, Søndergaard I, Rasmussen IS, Larsen LS (2011) Associations between fungal species and water-damaged building materials. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:4180–4188

Anderson RF, Whitmore LM, Brown WE, Peterson WH, Churchill BW, Roegner FR, Campbell TH, Backus MP, Stauffer JF (1953) Production of penicillin by some pigmentless mutants of the mold, Penicillium chrysogenum Q176. Ind Eng Chem 45:768–773

Andrade AC, Van Nistelrooy JG, Peery RB, Skatrud PL, De Waard MA (2000) The role of ABC transporters from Aspergillus nidulans in protection against cytotoxic agents and in antibiotic production. Mol Gen Genet 263:966–977

Avramović M (2011) Analysis of the genetic potential of the sponge derived fungus Penicillium chrysogenum E01-10/3 for polyketide production. Ph.D. thesis, Rheinischen Friedrich-Wilhelms-Universität Bonn

Backus MP, Stauffer JF (1955) The production and selection of a family of strains in Penicillium chrysogenum. Mycologia 47:429–463

Bancerz R, Ginalska G, Fiedurek J, Gromada A (2005) Cultivation conditions and properties of extracellular crude lipase from the psychrotrophic fungus Penicillium chrysogenum 9′. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 32:253–260

Barreiro C, Martín JF, García-Estrada C (2012) Proteomics shows new faces for the old penicillin producer Penicillium chrysogenum. J Biomed Biotechnol 2012:105109

Bartoszewska M, Kiel JA, Bovenberg RA, Veenhuis M, van der Klei IJ (2011) Autophagy deficiency promotes beta-lactam production in Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:1413–1422

Böhm J, Hoff B, O'Gorman CM, Wolfers S, Klix V, Binger D, Zadra I, Kürnsteiner H, Pöggeler S, Dyer PS, Kück U (2013) Sexual reproduction and mating-type-mediated strain development in the penicillin-producing fungus Penicillium chrysogenum. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 110: 1476–1481

Braumann I, van den Berg M, Kempken F (2008) Repeat induced point mutation in two asexual fungi, Aspergillus niger and Penicillium chrysogenum. Curr Genet 53:287–297

Bringmann G, Lang G, Mühlbacher J, Schaumann K, Steffens S, Rytik PG, Hentschel U, Morschhäuser J, Müller WE (2003) Sorbicillactone A: a structurally unprecedented bioactive novel-type alkaloid from a sponge-derived fungus. Prog Mol Subcell Biol 37:231–253

Bringmann G, Gulder TA, Lang G, Schmitt S, Stöhr R, Wiese J, Nagel K, Imhoff JF (2007) Large-scale biotechnological production of the antileukemic marine natural product sorbicillactone A. Mar Drugs 5:23–30

Burzlaff NI, Rutledge PJ, Clifton IJ, Hensgens CM, Pickford M, Adlington RM, Roach PL, Baldwin JE (1999) The reaction cycle of isopenicillin N synthase observed by X-ray diffraction. Nature 401:721–724

Cantoral JM, Gutiérrez S, Fierro F, Gil-Espinosa S, van Liempt H, Martín JF (1993) Biochemical characterization and molecular genetics of nine mutants of Penicillium chrysogenum impaired in penicillin biosynthesis. J Biol Chem 268:737–744

Cantwell CA, Beckmann RJ, Dotzlaf JE, Fisher DL, Skatrud PL, Yeh WK, Queener SW (1990) Cloning and expression of a hybrid Streptomyces clavuligerus cefE gene in Penicillium chrysogenum. Curr Genet 17:213–221

Casqueiro J, Gutiérrez S, Bañuelos O, Hijarrubia MJ, Martín JF (1999) Gene targeting in Penicillium chrysogenum: disruption of the lys2 gene leads to penicillin overproduction. J Bacteriol 181:1181–1188

Castillo NI, Fierro F, Gutiérrez S, Martín JF (2005) Genome-wide analysis of differentially expressed genes from Penicillium chrysogenum grown with a repressing or a non-repressing carbon source. Curr Genet 49:85–96

Charlang G, Ng B, Horowitz NH, Horowitz RM (1981) Cellular and extracellular siderophores of Aspergillus nidulans and Penicillium chrysogenum. Mol Cell Biol 1:94–100

Chen S, Dong H, Fan Y, Li W, Cohen Y (2006) Dry mycelium of Penicillium chrysogenum induces expression of pathogenesis-related protein genes and resistance against wilt diseases in Bt transgenic cotton. Biol Control 39:460–464

Chooi YH, Cacho R, Tang Y (2010) Identification of the viridicatumtoxin and griseofulvin gene clusters from Penicillium aethiopicum. Chem Biol 17:483–494

Cohen G, Argaman A, Schreiber R, Mislovati M, Aharonowitz Y (1994) The thioredoxin system of Penicillium chrysogenum and its possible role in penicillin biosynthesis. J Bacteriol 176: 973–984

Cram DJ (1948) Mold metabolites; the structure of sorbicillin, a pigment produced by the mold Penicillium notatum. J Am Chem Soc 70:4240–4243

Dai MC, Tabacchi R, Saturnin C (1993) Nitrogen-containing aromatic compound from the culture of Penicillium chrysogenum Thom. Chimia 47:226–229

de la Campa R, Seifert K, Miller JD (2007) Toxins from strains of Penicillium chrysogenum isolated from buildings and other sources. Mycopathologia 163:161–168

Devi P, D'Souza L, Kamat T, Rodrigues C, Naik CG (2009) Batch culture fermentation of Penicillium chrysogenum and a report on the isolation, purification, identification and antibiotic activity of citrinin. Indian J Mar Sci 38:38–44

Domínguez-Santos R, Martín JF, Kosalková K, Prieto C, Ullán RV, García-Estrada C (2012) The regulatory factor PcRFX1 controls the expression of the three genes of β-lactam biosynthesis in Penicillium chrysogenum. Fungal Genet Biol 49:866–881

Douma RD, Deshmukh AT, de Jonge LP, de Jong BW, Seifar RM, Heijnen JJ, van Gulik WM (2012) Novel insights in transport mechanisms and kinetics of phenylacetic acid and penicillin-G in Penicillium chrysogenum. Biotechnol Prog 28:337–348

Elander RP (2002) University of Wisconsin contributions to the early development of penicillin and cephalosporin antibiotics. SIM News 52:270–278

Evers ME, Trip H, van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, Driessen AJ (2004) Compartmentalization and transport in beta-lactam antibiotics biosynthesis. Adv Biochem Eng Biotechnol 88:111–135

Fernández-Aguado M, Teijeira F, Martín JF, Ullán RV (2013a) A vacuolar membrane protein affects drastically the biosynthesis of the ACV tripeptide and the beta-lactam pathway of Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:795–808

Fernández-Aguado M, Ullán RV, Teijeira F, Rodríguez-Castro R, Martín JF (2013b) The transport of phenylacetic acid across the peroxisomal membrane is mediated by the PaaT protein in Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97:3073–3084

Fierro F, Barredo JL, Díez B, Gutierrez S, Fernández FJ, Martín JF (1995) The penicillin gene cluster is amplified in tandem repeats linked by conserved hexanucleotide sequences. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 92:6200–6204

Fleming A (1929) On the antibacterial action of cultures of Penicillium, with special reference to their use in the isolation of B. influenzae. Br J Exp Pathol 10:226–236

Frisvad JC, Smedsgaard J, Larsen TO, Samson RA (2004) Mycotoxins, drugs and other extrolites produced by species in Penicillium subgenus Penicillium. Stud Mycol 49:201–242

García-Estrada C, Ullán RV, Velasco-Conde T, Godio RP, Teijeira F, Vaca I, Feltrer R, Kosalková K, Mauriz E, Martín JF (2008) Post-translational enzyme modification by the phosphopantetheinyl transferase is required for lysine and penicillin biosynthesis but not for roquefortine or fatty acid formation in Penicillium chrysogenum. Biochem J 415:317–324

García-Estrada C, Vaca I, Ullán RV, van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, Martín JF (2009) Molecular characterization of a fungal gene paralogue of the penicillin penDE gene of Penicillium chrysogenum. BMC Microbiol 9:104

García-Estrada C, Ullán RV, Albillos SM, Fernández-Bodega M, Durek P, von Döhren H, Martín JF (2011) A single cluster of coregulated genes encodes the biosynthesis of the mycotoxins roquefortine C and meleagrin in Penicillium chrysogenum. Chem Biol 18:1499–1512

García-Rico RO, Fierro F, Mauriz E, Gómez A, Fernández-Bodega MA, Martín JF (2008) The heterotrimeric Galpha protein pga1 regulates biosynthesis of penicillin, chrysogenin and roquefortine in Penicillium chrysogenum. Microbiology 154:3567–3578

Geris R, Simpson TJ (2009) Meroterpenoids produced by fungi. Nat Prod Rep 26:1063–1094

Gherbawy YA, Elhariry HM, Bahobial AA (2012) Mycobiota and mycotoxins (aflatoxins and ochratoxin) associated with some Saudi date palm fruits. Foodborne Pathog Dis 9:561–567

Gombert AK, Veiga T, Puig-Martinez M, Lamboo F, Nijland JG, Driessen AJ, Pronk JT, Daran JM (2011) Functional characterization of the oxaloacetase encoding gene and elimination of oxalate formation in the β-lactam producer Penicillium chrysogenum. Fungal Genet Biol 48: 831–839

Gusakov AV, Sinitsyn AP (2012) Cellulases from Penicillium species for producing fuels from biomass. Biofuels 3:463–477

Hammadi DK, Selselet GA, Bensoultane SA (2007) Antibiotic like-substances produced by some trichophytic dermatophytes. Afr J Biotechnol 6:1788–1790

Hansen BG, Sun XE, Genee HJ, Kaas CS, Nielsen JB, Mortensen UH, Frisvad JC, Hedstrom L (2012) Adaptive evolution of drug targets in producer and non-producer organisms. Biochem J 441:219–226

Harris DM, van der Krogt ZA, Klaassen P, Raamsdonk LM, Hage S, van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, Pronk JT, Daran JM (2009a) Exploring and dissecting genome-wide gene expression responses of Penicillium chrysogenum to phenylacetic acid consumption and penicillinG production. BMC Genomics 10:75

Harris DM, Westerlaken I, Schipper D, van der Krogt ZA, Gombert AK, Sutherland J, Raamsdonk LM, van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, Pronk JT, Daran JM (2009b) Engineering of Penicillium chrysogenum for fermentative production of a novel carbamoylated cephem antibiotic precursor. Metab Eng 11:125–137

Hegedus N, Leiter E, Kovács B, Tomori V, Kwon NJ, Emri T, Marx F, Batta G, Csernoch L, Haas H, Yu JH, Pócsi I (2011) The small molecular mass antifungal protein of Penicillium chrysogenum–a mechanism of action oriented review. J Basic Microbiol 51:561–571

Henk DA, Eagle CE, Brown K, van den Berg MA, Dyer PS, Peterson SW, Fisher MC (2011) Speciation despite globally overlapping distributions in Penicillium chrysogenum: the population genetics of Alexander Fleming's lucky fungus. Mol Ecol 20:4288–4301

Hill P (1972) The production of penicillins in soils and seeds by penicillium chrysogenum and the role of penicillin -lactamase in the ecology of soil bacillus. J Gen Microbiol 70:243–252

Hillenga DJ, Versantvoort H, van der Molen S, Driessen A, Konings WN (1995) Penicillium chrysogenum takes up the penicillin G precursor phenylacetic acid by passive diffusion. Appl Environ Microbiol 61:2589–2595

Hoff B, Pöggeler S, Kück U (2008) Eighty years after its discovery, Fleming's Penicillium strain discloses the secret of its sex. Eukaryot Cell 7:465–470

Hördt W, Römheld V, Winkelmann G (2000) Fusarinines and dimerum acid, mono- and dihydroxamate siderophores from Penicillium chrysogenum, improve iron utilization by strategy I and strategy II plants. Biometals 13:37–46

Houbraken J, Frisvad JC, Samson RA (2011) Fleming's penicillin producing strain is not Penicillium chrysogenum but P. rubens. IMA Fungus 2:87–95

Houbraken J, Frisvad JC, Seifert KA, Overy DP, Tuthill DM, Valdez JG, Samson RA (2012) New penicillin-producing Penicillium species and an overview of section Chrysogena. Persoonia 29:78–100

Ismail MA (2001) Deterioration and spoilage of peanuts and desiccated coconuts from two sub-Saharan tropical East African countries due to the associated mycobiota and their degradative enzymes. Mycopathologia 150:67–84

Jami MS, García-Estrada C, Barreiro C, Cuadrado AA, Salehi-Najafabadi Z, Martín JF (2009a) The Penicillium chrysogenum extracellular proteome. Conversion from a food-rotting strain to a versatile cell factory for white biotechnology. Mol Cell Proteomics 9:2729–2744

Jami MS, Barreiro C, García-Estrada C, Martín JF (2009b) Proteome analysis of the penicillin producer Penicillium chrysogenum: characterization of protein changes during the industrial strain improvement. Mol Cell Proteomics 9:1182–1198

Jørgensen H, Nielsen J, Villadsen J, Møllgaard H (1995) Metabolic flux distributions in Penicillium chrysogenum during fed-batch cultivations. Biotechnol Bioeng 46:117–131

Karolewiez A, Geisen R (2005) Cloning a part of the ochratoxin A biosynthetic gene cluster of Penicillium nordicum and characterization of the ochratoxin polyketide synthase gene. Syst Appl Microbiol 28:588–595

Kiel JA, van der Klei IJ, van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, Veenhuis M (2005) Overproduction of a single protein, Pc-Pex11p, results in 2-fold enhanced penicillin production by Penicillium chrysogenum. Fungal Genet Biol 42:154–164

Kiel JA, van den Berg MA, Fusetti F, Poolman B, Bovenberg RA, Veenhuis M, van der Klei IJ (2009) Matching the proteome to the genome: the microbody of penicillin-producing Penicillium chrysogenum cells. Funct Integr Genomics 9:167–184

Koetsier MJ, Gombert AK, Fekken S, Bovenberg RA, van den Berg MA, Kiel JA, Jekel PA, Janssen DB, Pronk JT, van der Klei IJ, Daran JM (2010) The Penicillium chrysogenum aclA gene encodes a broad-substrate-specificity acyl-coenzyme A ligase involved in activation of adipic acid, a side-chain precursor for cephem antibiotics. Fungal Genet Biol 47:33–42

Kosalková K, Rodríguez-Sáiz M, Barredo JL, Martín JF (2007) Binding of the PTA1 transcriptional activator to the divergent promoter region of the first two genes of the penicillin pathway in different Penicillium species. Curr Genet 52:229–237

Kozlovsky AG, Vinokurova NG, Ozerskaya SM (1998) Peculiarities of alkaloid formation in Penicillium chrysogenum strains isolated from soils of different climatic zones. Microbiology (Moscow) 67:397–400

Lamas-Maceiras M, Vaca I, Rodriguez E, Casqueiro J, Martin JF (2006) Amplification and disruption of the phenylacetyl-CoA ligase gene of Penicillium chrysogenum encoding an aryl-capping enzyme that supplies phenylacetic acid to the isopenicillin N-acyltransferase. Biochem J 395:147–155

Langston JA, Shaghasi T, Abbate E, Xu F, Vlasenko E, Sweeney MD (2011) Oxidoreductive cellulose depolymerization by the enzymes cellobiose dehydrogenase and glycoside hydrolase 61. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:7007–7015

Lein J (1986) The Panlabs penicillin strain improvement program. Butterworth, Boston

Leiter E, Emri T, Gyémánt G, Nagy I, Pócsi I, Winkelmann G, Pócsi I (2001) Penicillin V production by Penicillium chrysogenum in the presence of Fe3+ and in low-iron culture medium. Folia Microbiol (Praha) 46:127–132

Leiter E, Szappanos H, Oberparleiter C, Kaiserer L, Csernoch L, Pusztahelyi T, Emri T, Pócsi I, Salvenmoser W, Marx F (2005) Antifungal protein PAF severely affects the integrity of the plasma membrane of Aspergillus nidulans and induces an apoptosis-like phenotype. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 49:2445–2453

Lowe DA (2001) Antibiotics. In: Ratledge C, Kristiansen B (eds) Basic biotechnology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, pp 349–375

Marx F, Haas H, Reindl M, Stöffler G, Lottspeich F, Redl B (1995) Cloning, structural organization and regulation of expression of the Penicillium chrysogenum paf gene encoding an abundantly secreted protein with antifungal activity. Gene 167:167–171

Meijer WH, Gidijala L, Fekken S, Kiel JA, van den Berg MA, Lascaris R, Bovenberg RA, van der Klei IJ (2010) Peroxisomes are required for efficient penicillin biosynthesis in Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:5702–5709

Mishra MM, Singh CP, Kapoor KK, Jain MK (1979) Degradation of lignocellulosic material and humus formation by fungi. Ann Microbiol (Paris) 130 A(4):481–486

Moreillon P, Markiewicz Z, Nachman S, Tomasz A (1990) Two bactericidal targets for penicillin in pneumococci: autolysis-dependent and autolysis-independent killing mechanisms. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 34:33–39

Murali M, Sudisha J, Amruthesh KN, Ito SL, Shetty HS (2012) Rhizosphere fungus Penicillium chrysogenum promotes growth and induces defence-related genes and downy mildew disease resistance in pearl millet. Plant Biol (Stuttg) 15(1):111–118. doi:10.1111/j.1438-8677.2012.00617.x

Pieniazek N, Stepień PP, Paszewski A (1973) An Aspergillus nidulans mutant lacking cystathionine -synthase: identity of L-serine sulfhydrylase with cystathionine -synthase and its distinctness from O-acetyl-L-serine sulfhydrylase. Biochim Biophys Acta 297:37–47

Pócsi I, Molnár Z, Pusztahelyi T, Varecza Z, Emri T (2007) Yeast-like cell formation and glutathione metabolism in autolysing cultures of Penicillium chrysogenum. Acta Biol Hung 58:431–440

Queener SW, Sebek OK, Vezina C (1978) Mutants blocked in antibiotic synthesis. Annu Rev Microbiol 32:593–636

Rank C, Nielsen KF, Larsen TO, Varga J, Samson RA, Frisvad JC (2011) Distribution of sterigmatocystin in filamentous fungi. Fungal Biol 115:406–420
Raper KB, Alexander DR, Coghill RD (1944) Penicillin II. Natural variation and penicillin production in Penicillium notatum and allied species. J Bacteriol 48:639–659
Richardson AE, Lynch JP, Ryan PR, Delhaize E, Smith FA, Smith SE, Harvey PR, Ryan MH, Veneklaas EJ, Lambers H, Oberson A, Culvenor RA, Simpson RJ (2011) Plant and microbial strategies to improve the phosphorus efficiency of agriculture. Plant and Soil 349:121–156
Robin J, Bonneau S, Schipper D, Noorman H, Nielsen J (2003) Influence of the adipate and dissolved oxygen concentrations on the beta-lactam production during continuous cultivations of a Penicillium chrysogenum strain expressing the expandase gene from Streptomyces clavuligerus. Metab Eng 5:42–48
Rodríguez A, Carnicero A, Perestelo F, de la Fuente G, Milstein O, Falcón MA (1994) Effect of Penicillium chrysogenum on Lignin Transformation. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:2971–2976
Rodríguez-Martín A, Acosta R, Liddell S, Núñez F, Benito MJ, Asensio MA (2010) Characterization of the novel antifungal chitosanase PgChP and the encoding gene from Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 88:519–528
Rodríguez-Sáiz M, Barredo JL, Moreno MA, Fernández-Cañón JM, Peñalva MA, Díez B (2001) Reduced function of a phenylacetate-oxidizing cytochrome p450 caused strong genetic improvement in early phylogeny of penicillin-producing strains. J Bacteriol 183:5465–5471
Roussel S, Reboux G, Millon L, Parchas MD, Boudih S, Skana F, Delaforge M, Rakotonirainy MS (2012) Microbiological evaluation of ten French archives and link to occupational symptoms. Indoor Air 22:514–522
Sakai R, Nakamura T, Nishino T, Yamamoto M, Miyamura A, Miyamoto H, Ishiwata N, Komatsu N, Kamiya H, Tsuruzoe N (2005) Xanthocillins as thrombopoietin mimetic small molecules. Bioorg Med Chem 13:6388–6393
Sakamoto T, Ogura A, Inui M, Tokuda S, Hosokawa S, Ihara H, Kasai N (2011) Identification of a GH62 α-L-arabinofuranosidase specific for arabinoxylan produced by Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 90:137–146
Sakamoto T, Inui M, Yasui K, Tokuda S, Akiyoshi M, Kobori Y, Nakaniwa T, Tada T (2012) Biochemical characterization and gene expression of two endo-arabinanases from Penicillium chrysogenum 31B. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93:1087–1096
Sakamoto T, Nishimura Y, Makino Y, Sunagawa Y, Harada N (2013a) Biochemical characterization of a GH53 endo-β-1,4-galactanase and a GH35 exo-β-1,4-galactanase from Penicillium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(7):2895–2906
Sakamoto T, Inui M, Yasui K, Hosokawa S, Ihara H (2013b) Substrate specificity and gene expression of two Penicillium chrysogenum α-L: -arabinofuranosidases (AFQ1 and AFS1) belonging to glycoside hydrolase families 51 and 54. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(3): 1121–1130
Samson RA, Houbraken J, Thrane U, Frisvad JC, Andersen B (2010) Food and Indoor Fungi. CBS-KNAW- Fungal Biodiversity Centre, Utrecht, pp 1–398
Seibold M, Wolschann P, Bodevin S, Olsen O (2011) Properties of the bubble protein, a defensin and an abundant component of a fungal exudate. Peptides 32:1989–1995
Shimizu T, Kinoshita H, Ishihara S, Sakai K, Nagai S, Nihira T (2005) Polyketide synthase gene responsible for citrinin biosynthesis in Monascus purpureus. Appl Environ Microbiol 71:3453–3457
Sio CF, Riemens AM, van der Laan JM, Verhaert RM, Quax WJ (2002) Directed evolution of a glutaryl acylase into an adipyl acylase. Eur J Biochem 269:4495–4504
Skatrud PL (1992) Genetic engineering of β-lactam antibiotic biosynthetic pathways in filamentous fungi. Trends Biotechnol 10:324–329
Spröte P, Hynes MJ, Hortschansky P, Shelest E, Scharf DH, Wolke SM, Brakhage AA (2008) Identification of the novel penicillin biosynthesis gene aatB of Aspergillus nidulans and its putative evolutionary relationship to this fungal secondary metabolism gene cluster. Mol Microbiol 70:445–461

Teijeira F, Ullán RV, Guerra SM, García-Estrada C, Vaca I, Martín JF (2009) The transporter CefM involved in translocation of biosynthetic intermediates is essential for cephalosporin production. Biochem J 418:113–124

Thom C (1910) Cultural studies of species of Penicillium. Bull Bur Anim Ind, USDA 118:1–109

Thuerig B, Binder A, Boller T, Guyer U, Jiménez S, Rentsch C, Tamm L (2006) An aqueous extract of the dry mycelium of Penicillium chrysogenum induces resistance in several crops under controlled and field conditions. Eur J Plant Pathol 114:185–197

Ullán RV, Campoy S, Casqueiro J, Fernández FJ, Martín JF (2008) Deacetylcephalosporin C production in Penicillium chrysogenum by expression of the isopenicillin N epimerization, ring expansion, and acetylation genes. Chem Biol 14:329–339

Ullán RV, Teijeira F, Guerra SM, Vaca I, Martín JF (2010) Characterization of a novel peroxisome membrane protein essential for conversion of isopenicillin N into cephalosporin C. Biochem J 432:227–236

Van den Berg MA (2010) Functional characterisation of penicillin production strains. Fungal Biol Rev 24:73–78

van den Berg MA (2011) Impact of the Penicillium chrysogenum genome on industrial production of metabolites. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 92:45–53

van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RA, de Laat WT, van Velzen AG (1999) Engineering aspects of beta-lactam biosynthesis. Antonie Van Leeuwenhoek 75:155–161

Van den Berg MA, Bovenberg RAL, Driessen AJM, Konings WN, Schuurs TA, Nieboer M, Westerlaken I (2001) Method for enhancing secretion of beta-lactam transport. PCT patent WO 2001/32904

Van den Berg MA, Westerlaken I, Leeflang C, Kerkman R, Bovenberg RAL (2007) Functional characterization of the penicillin biosynthetic gene cluster of Penicillium chrysogenum Wisconsin54–1255. Fungal Genet Biol 44:830–844

Van den Berg MA, Albang R, Albermann K, Badger JH, Daran JM, Driessen AJ, Garcia-Estrada C, Fedorova ND, Harris DM, Heijne WH, Joardar V, Kiel JA, Kovalchuk A, Martín JF, Nierman WC, Nijland JG, Pronk JT, Roubos JA, der Kleij V, van Peij NN, Veenhuis M, von Döhren H, Wagner C, Wortman J, Bovenberg RA (2008) Genome sequencing and analysis of the filamentous fungus Penicillium chrysogenum. Nat Biotechnol 26:1161–1168

van den Berg MA, Gidijala L, Kiel J, Bovenberg R, van der Kleij I (2010) Biosynthesis of active pharmaceuticals: β-lactam biosynthesis in filamentous fungi. Biotechnol Genet Eng Rev 27: 1–32

van den Brink J, de Vries RP (2011) Fungal enzyme sets for plant polysaccharide degradation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 91:1477–1492

van der Lende TR, van de Kamp M, Berg M, Sjollema K, Bovenberg RA, Veenhuis M, Konings WN, Driessen AJ (2002) delta-(L-alpha-Aminoadipyl)-L-cysteinyl-D-valine synthetase, that mediates the first committed step in penicillin biosynthesis, is a cytosolic enzyme. Fungal Genet Biol 37: 49–55

van Gulik WM, de Laat WT, Vinke JL, Heijnen JJ (2000) Application of metabolic flux analysis for the identification of metabolic bottlenecks in the biosynthesis of penicillin-G. Biotechnol Bioeng 68:602–618

Veiga T, Nijland JG, Driessen AJ, Bovenberg RA, Touw H, van den Berg MA, Pronk JT, Daran JM (2012a) Impact of velvet complex on transcriptome and penicillin G production in glucose-limited chemostat cultures of a β-lactam high-producing Penicillium chrysogenum strain. OMICS 16:320–333

Veiga T, Gombert AK, Landes N, Verhoeven MD, Kiel JA, Krikken AM, Nijland JG, Touw H, Luttik MA, van der Toorn JC, Driessen AJ, Bovenberg RA, van den Berg MA, van der Klei IJ, Pronk JT, Daran JM (2012b) Metabolic engineering of β-oxidation in Penicillium chrysogenum for improved semi-synthetic cephalosporin biosynthesis. Metab Eng 14:437–448

Velasco J, Gutiérrez S, Casqueiro J, Fierro F, Campoy S, Martín JF (2001) Cloning and characterization of the gene cahB encoding a cephalosporin C acetylhydrolase from Acremonium chrysogenum. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 57:350–356

Wallwey C, Li SM (2011) Ergot alkaloids: structure diversity, biosynthetic gene clusters and functional proof of biosynthetic genes. Nat Prod Rep 28:496–510

Weber SS, Kovalchuk A, Bovenberg RA, Driessen AJ (2012a) The ABC transporter ABC40 encodes a phenylacetic acid export system in Penicillium chrysogenum. Fungal Genet Biol 49:915–921

Weber SS, Polli F, Boer R, Bovenberg RA, Driessen AJ (2012b) Increased penicillin production in Penicillium chrysogenum production strains via balanced overexpression of isopenicillin N acyltransferase. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:7107–7113

Weber SS, Olejníčková K, Nijland JG, Kovalchuk A, Daran J, Pronk JT, Bovenberg RAL, Driessen AJM (2012c) Genome wide analysis of the β-lactam associated transportome in Penicillium chrysogenum. Ph.D. thesis, Groningen University. Chapter 5

White S, Berry DR, McNeil B (1999) Effect of phenylacetic acid feeding on the process of cellular autolysis in submerged batch cultures of Penicillium chrysogenum. J Biotechnol 75:173–185

Woo PC, Tam EW, Chong KT, Cai JJ, Tung ET, Ngan AH, Lau SK, Yuen KY (2010) High diversity of polyketide synthase genes and the melanin biosynthesis gene cluster in Penicillium marneffei. FEBS J 277:3750–3758

Wu X, García-Estrada C, Vaca I, Martín JF (2012) Motifs in the C-terminal region of the Penicillium chrysogenum ACV synthetase are essential for valine epimerization and processivity of tripeptide formation. Biochimie 94:354–364

Xie Y, van de Sandt E, de Weerd T, Wang NL (2001) Purification of adipoyl-7-amino-3-deacetoxycephalosporanic acid from fermentation broth using stepwise elution with a synergistically adsorbed modulator. J Chromatogr A 908:273–291

Xu X, Yang J, An Y, Pan Y, Liu G (2012) Over-expression of pcvA involved in vesicle-vacuolar fusion affects the conidiation and penicillin production in Penicillium chrysogenum. Biotechnol Lett 34:519–526

Zhelifonova VP, Antipova TV, Kozlovsky AG (2010) Secondary metabolites in taxonomy of the penicillium fungi. Microbiology 79:277–286

Chapter 11
Rhizopus oryzae: Genetic Secrets of an Emerging Human Pathogen

Brian L. Wickes

11.1 Introduction

Rhizopus oryzae, sometimes referred to as a synonym of *Rhizopus arrhizus*, is a filamentous fungus that grows exclusively as a mold and is the most frequent cause of human mucormycosis (Ibrahim et al. 2012). Agents of mucormycosis include members of the family Mucoraceae (sometimes referred to as "pin molds" after the pin-like appearance of the sporangiophore and sporangia) and include fungi in the genus *Rhizopus*, *Absidia*, *Rhizomucor*, and *Apophysomyces*. Fungi in these genera, as well as the other families in the Mucorales order (Cunninghamellaceae, Mortierellaceae, Saksenaceae, Syncephalastraceae, Thamnidiaceae) combined with the order Entomophthorales, comprise a large group of fungi formerly classified as the zygomycetes (derived from the phylum Zygomycota). Clinical infections caused by these fungi are typically described as zygomycotic infections or zygomycosis, which are general terms suggestive of an infection caused by a member of the Mucorales or Entomophthorales (Kwon-Chung and Bennett 1992). However, there have been recent taxonomic changes to the phylum Zygomycota, which have led to a reclassification of the fungi in this phylum. Unfortunately, these changes have complicated the clinical study of *Rhizopus oryzae* and other members of the Zygomycota because the field of medical mycology encompasses both mycologists and clinicians, for whom taxonomy has a slightly different function. Clinicians typically must have a basic knowledge of all infectious diseases. Although many do specialize in medical mycology, it is difficult for clinicians to keep up with changes in taxonomy, particularly in the molecular era where revision of taxonomy often occurs as new technologies are applied to a given field. Basic researchers, on the other hand, need a naming system that is always current and

B.L. Wickes (✉)
Department of Microbiology and Immunology, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, Mail Code 7758, Room 5.027V, 7703 Floyd Curl Dr, San Antonio, TX 78229-3900, USA
e-mail: wickes@uthscsa.edu

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_11,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

clearly categorizes the similarities and differences between members of the fungal kingdom due to a need to understand relationships among organisms. Consequently, with regard to this chapter, although the current taxonomy will be covered, the older classifications and names will be employed (Zygomycota, zygomycetes, Mucorales, etc.).

R. oryzae is arguably one of the best models of the pathogenic zygomycetes. This fungus causes ~70 % of the infections in humans (Roden et al. 2005) and exhibits typical zygomycetous phenotypes that include rapid growth rates, aseptate hyphae, wide distribution, and a saprobic lifestyle. These fungi are found throughout the world and are often associated with decaying vegetable matter including food, such as fruit, nuts, and cereal grains (Ribes et al. 2000). It is also one of the few zygomycetes in which a genome sequence has been completed and annotated (Ma et al. 2009). A transformation system exists and there are animal models of infection. Consequently, understanding *R. oryzae* at the genetic and molecular levels is an important strategy for understanding other zygomycetes, many of which are becoming increasingly important as pathogens.

11.2 Phylogeny

The phylogeny of *R. oryzae* has recently undergone some modifications. In medical mycology, new species are constantly discovered and changes in phylogenetic classification and nomenclature regularly occur. However, a recent driver of phylogeny has been the application of molecular biology to issues of phylogeny, taxonomy, and nomenclature. In many instances, molecular methods of phylogeny are quantitative and allow firmer species boundaries to be established, versus the descriptive nature of morphology, which can often be variable or insensitive. In fact, the phylum Zygomycota has undergone a large phylogenetic change in addition to the changes at the species level of *R. oryzae*.

11.2.1 Description of the Species

The names *R. oryzae* and its synonym *R. arrhizus* continue to be used interchangeably, including the research literature published as recently as 2012. This disagreement is not easily resolved as the discrepancy arises from differences in how to apply the rules of fungal nomenclature. *R. oryzae* was first described by Went and Geerling in 1895, while *R. arrhizus* was first described 3 years earlier by Fischer (Kwon-Chung and Bennett 1992). The *arrhizus* species epithet, therefore, has preference over the *oryzae* species epithet. However, there is some evidence that the original *R. arrhizus* isolate was an atypical form of *R. oryzae* (Scholer et al. 1983); thus, it was argued that *R. oryzae* is the proper name (Ellis 1998; Schipper 1984). This discrepancy is illustrative of the problems in fungal

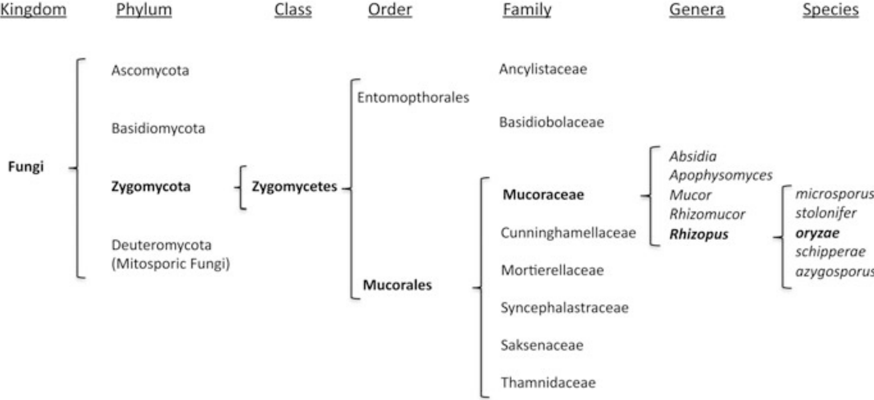


Fig. 11.1 *Rhizopus oryzae* taxonomy. *R. oryzae* is a zygomycetes found in the phylum Zygomycota. Importantly, the class Mucorales contains many, but not all, of the human pathogenic zygomycetes. The *Rhizopus* genus contains five pathogenic members, although other pathogenic species may be rarely isolated. *R. microsporus* can be further subdivided into three varieties, *oligosporus*, *microsporus*, and *rhizopodiformis*. Adapted from Ribes et al. (2000)

nomenclature, which adversely impact medical mycology. Unfortunately, resolution of the discrepancy would require material from the original isolate, which is not available. Because this chapter is research oriented, *R. oryzae* will be used as the species name, which also is the name attached to the isolate from which the genome sequence was derived. This sequenced isolate will be the strain used for any molecular references (genome information, genes, etc.) in this chapter as well.

The genus *Rhizopus* consists of approximately 8–13 species (Abe et al. 2006, 2010), depending on classification method (morphological vs. molecular) with five species being clinically significant: *R. oryzae*, *R. microsporus*, *R. schipperae*, *R. azygosporus*, and *R. stolonifer*. *R. microsporus* is further subdivided into three varieties (var. *microsporus*, var. *oligosporus*, var. *rhizopodiformis*) (Fig. 11.1). These species can be difficult to routinely discriminate in a clinical microbiology laboratory due to the rarity of isolation and, consequently, unfamiliarity with distinguishing features. However, molecular methods such as sequence-based identification can be straightforward in separating the five species. For the purposes of discriminating the different species of *Rhizopus*, the actin (act-1) and translation elongation factor 1 alpha (EF1α) genes have the most unique species GenBank entries. Sequences derived from these genes can be searched using the BLASTn algorithm at the NCBI GenBank website http://blast.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/Blast.cgi. The three *R. microsporus* varieties, on the other hand, cannot be reliably discriminated based on sequence analysis or other molecular methods and can only be distinguished morphologically by the most experienced mycologists. Pathological specimens cannot be accurately identified to either the genus or species level; instead, they are generally just diagnosed as a zygomycotic infection.

11.2.2 Rhizopus oryzae *vs.* Rhizopus delemar

The genus *Rhizopus* is subdivided into three groups, the *stolonifer* group, the *oryzae* group, and the *microsporus* group, with the groupings based on morphologic characteristics such as size of the sporangia and sporangiophore, and rhizoid branching (Schipper and Stalpers 1984). Current methods utilizing sequence-based classification to establish phylogenetic relationships continue to support the initial morphologic grouping scheme (Abe et al. 2006). Subsequent phylogenetic investigations of *R. oryzae* arose, in part, due to its commercial importance as an organic acid producer. Use of *R. oryzae* in silage production requires strains that produce lactic acid; consequently, it is economical to use a strain that produces the optimal amount under the appropriate conditions. Variation in lactic acid production, specifically the existence of *R. oryzae* strains that either could or could not produce lactic acid, was already known (Oda et al. 2002). In an effort to efficiently screen strains for lactic acid producers, Abe et al. found a molecular method that utilized the rDNA sequence of the ITS region to devise a simple PCR-based method for identifying lactic acid-producing strains (Abe et al. 2003). This finding was extended by analyzing the sequences and gene organization of two genes required for lactic acid production, *ldhA* and *ldhB*, which had previously been cloned and characterized by Skory (2000). It was found that *R. oryzae* strains that possessed both an *ldhA* and *ldhB* gene formed one group within this species, which was called the lactic acid group, while strains that contained only the *ldhB* gene clustered as a separate group and were able to produce fumaric and malic acid, but not lactic acid (Oda et al. 2003; Saito et al. 2004). This group was called the fumaric–malic acid group.

Strong evidence for organic acid production serving as a basis for taxonomic discrimination was provided by Abe et al. (2007) who used extensive sequence analysis of multiple loci, as well as a genome sampling method called Amplified-Fragment Length Polymorphism (AFLP), to analyze these two groups to determine if the phenotypic differences had a phylogenetic basis. In this study, the sequences of a region within the ribosomal genes (ITS region), actin (act-1), translation elongation factor alpha (EF-1α), and the lactate dehydrogenase B gene (*ldhB*), as well as AFLP, were used to test the two organic acid clusters to determine if the same clustering was observed using molecular methods. The sample set was chosen from an earlier report using morphology for classifying the genus, which was the basis for the current *Rhizopus* classification scheme (Schipper and Stalpers 1984). The results of the molecular studies supported dividing the two organic acid clusters into distinct species. The cluster that produced fumaric and malic acid (FMA) was proposed to be renamed *Rhizopus delemar* (*Rhizopus delemar* (Boidin) Wehmer & Hanzawa), and the cluster that produced lactic acid (LA) was proposed to retain the *Rhizopus oryzae* name (*Rhizopus oryzae* Went & Prinsen Geerligs). Importantly, in addition to the molecular and phenotypic data being consistent with this classification, in the original study that was used to form the three groups, Schipper and Stalpers observed that mating studies of the FMA and LA groups revealed that only

strains originally classified in the LA group were fertile, which provided genetic evidence for the two observed clusters (Schipper and Stalpers 1984). In spite of some disagreement and lack of common use in clinical disciplines, there is strong support for the *R. delemar*–*R. oryzae* distinction.

11.3 Mycology

Medical interest in *R. oryzae* has recently been increasing due to the more frequent identification of the zygomycetes from patients. However, in spite of the importance of *R. oryzae* and other zygomycetes, the field has not reached critical mass in terms of investigators making new observations about these fungi. They can be harder to identify than other fungi and their overall rarity in clinical specimens means microbiologists are less familiar with them when they do arrive in the laboratory. However, completed genome sequences will encourage new investigations into *R. oryzae* and other zygomycetes, which should yield both commercial and medical benefits.

11.3.1 Growth and Identification

Morphologically, *R. oryzae* is typical of many of the zygomycetes in that it exhibits extremely rapid growth rates, quickly spreading horizontally and vertically on a petri dish, often reaching the side borders and the lid within a matter of days. If grown on slants, hyphae can fill the whole tube (Fig. 11.2). There is abundant growth at 25–37 °C, good growth at 40 °C, and no growth at 45 °C. Younger cultures are whitish but become brownish gray to darker gray with a wooly texture. Mature sporangia can appear as black spots on the colony and tend to be on the edges or in the center. Sporangiophores can reach a length of 1,500 μm long × 18 μm wide and may be simple or branched, smooth-walled, and nonseptate (coenocytic) and are opposite rhizoids that are usually produced in groups of three or more (Fig. 11.3) (Ellis 1998). Sporangia are grayish black, globose, with diameters of up to 175 μm, and contain sporangiospores that are usually rhomboid or lemon-shaped and striated (Kwon-Chung and Bennett 1992). Most isolates will grow on standard mycological media such as potato dextrose or Sabouraud's, or a defined glucose-salts basal medium, depending on what is being studied. Identification of *R. oryzae* and other members of the genus is done mainly through morphology, although other methods, which are based primarily on DNA sequence of a variety of genes, is gaining prominence (Balajee et al. 2009). In fact, sequence-based diagnostic methods can often discriminate at the species and sometimes the subspecies (i.e., varietal) level, depending on the target locus or loci.

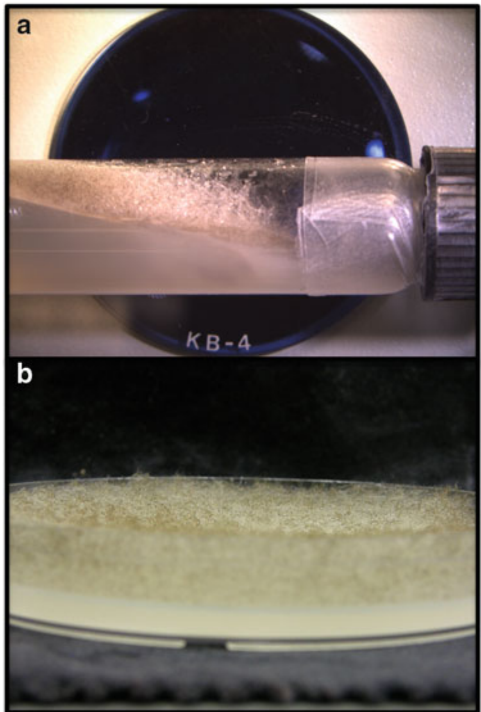


Fig. 11.2 *Rhizopus oryzae* growth rate. Growth rate of *R*. *oryzae*. (**a**) Growth on a 16 × 100 mm screw cap potato dextrose agar slant incubated at 37 °C for 72 h. Slant was photographed with an Olympus SZX12 microscope at ×5 power. (**b**) Growth on a 100 × 15 mm potato dextrose agar petri dish incubated at 37 °C for 72 h. Lids were elevated above the lip of the dish and then fixed in place with tape. The lid was then sealed with parafilm that was punctured to allow air circulation. Note sporangiophores that have grown above the top edge of the petri dish. Plate was photographed with an Olympus SP-560UZ optical zoom camera

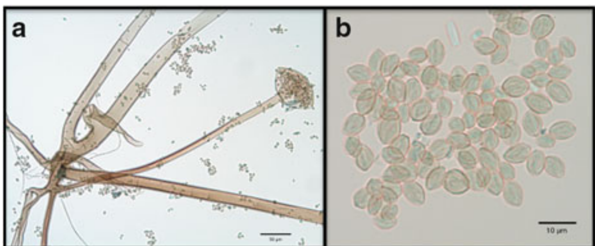


Fig. 11.3 *Rhizopus oryzae* microscopy. Microscopic slide cultures produced on potato flakes agar. (**a**) Slide showing a collapsed sporangium, sporangiospores, sporangiophore, and the rhizoids. Stolons are hyaline to *brown*. Sporangiophore is unbranched. (**b**) Slide showing sporangiospores, which are lemon-shaped and striated. Pictures courtesy of Deanna Sutton, Department of Pathology, Fungus Testing Laboratory, The University of Texas Health Science Center at San Antonio, San Antonio, TX, USA

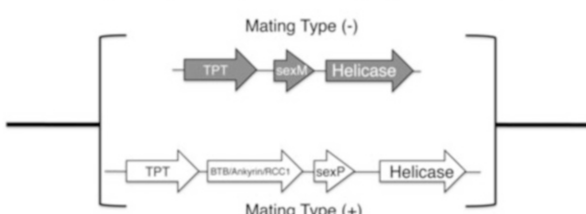


Fig. 11.4 *Rhizopus oryzae* mating locus. Organization of the *R. oryzae* mating-type locus showing genes found in the (−) and (+) mating type. The mating-type-specific information of either locus is shown within the *brackets*, which delineates the boundaries of the two loci. The *darker lines* on either side of the *brackets* show common regions of the mating-type chromosome, which flanks the locus

11.3.2 Sexual Cycle

R. oryzae is heterothallic with a bipolar mating system containing two mating types, (+) and (−) (Schipper 1984). Mating in *R. oryzae* is seldom observed under any conditions, and in spite of the production of zygospores from paired matings, germination is rare and the demonstration of recombinant progeny under laboratory conditions has been difficult (Gryganskyi et al. 2010). Consequently, the utility of a sexual phase as a research tool in *R. oryzae* has not been demonstrated. Crosses involving tester strains to confirm species identity are not useful in *R. oryzae* diagnostic studies because not all strains are fertile, and induction of the sexual state can occur across species (Schipper 1984; Gryganskyi et al. 2010). Nevertheless, Schipper was able to use this characteristic to assign mating types to multiple culture collection isolates by crossing a mating-type (−) *R. microsporus* strain with a number of *R. oryzae* strains to induce zygospore production and assign mating type, of which both (−) and (+) were observed. However, none of the zygospores were fertile in these crosses, demonstrating the difficulty of using the mating reaction as a molecular tool, such as for crossing out undesirable characteristics or for following inheritance of genetic markers.

The only molecular study of the *R. oryzae* mating-type locus was conducted by Grygansky et al. (2010). In their study of the *R. oryzae* complex, they used knowledge of the genes within the mating loci of *Phycomyces blakesleeanus* and *Mucor circinelloides* (Idnurm et al. 2008; Lee et al. 2008) to identify the genes within the *R. oryzae* locus and how they were organized. Consistent with earlier studies using tester strains, it was observed that only two molecular types were found within a collection of *R. oryzae* isolates, with each strain displaying an organization that allowed it to be classified as either (+) or (−) (Fig. 11.4). The (−) mating-type allele contained the *Phycomyces blakesleeanus* and *Mucor circinelloides* homologs, TPT (triose phosphate transporter), SexP, and an RNA helicase. The (+) allele was also syntenic with *Phycomyces blakesleeanus* and *Mucor circinelloides* and had homologs of TPT, SexP, and an RNA helicase. The

(+) allele, in addition, had a chimeric section containing three parts, BTB/Ankryn/RCC1, based on comparison to the *R. oryzae* genome sequence annotation. This region lies between the TPT and SexP genes; however, its function is unclear. In addition to a potential functional role, it may also serve to block recombination within the mating loci due to absence of homology with the (−) locus, thus contributing to keeping the locus intact. Similarly, the roles of the common helicase and TPT genes are unclear; however, one or both may insure the inheritance of the locus by being essential for viability.

Although obtaining recombinant progeny in the laboratory via the production of zygospores has been difficult to demonstrate in *R. oryzae*, it appears that mating may be an important part of the life cycle and might actually occur quite frequently. Gryganskyi et al. (2010) actually found zygospore production to be quite frequent in their sample collection, with sporogenesis occurring in about 33 % of their isolates. Schipper (1984) also found many *R. oryzae* isolates capable of producing zygospores when crossed with the appropriate tester, so obtaining viable progeny that are truly recombinant may require novel mating conditions in the laboratory or perhaps recovering isolates from a breeding population from a common niche. In fact, the recent description of mating in *Aspergillus fumigatus* reported mating reactions that initially took almost 6 months to produce cleistothecia and ascospores (O'Gorman et al. 2009), but when studies were undertaken to optimize conditions and search for a suitable tester pair, mating efficiency was increased greatly (Sugui et al. 2011). Consequently, further development of mating in *R. oryzae* may yet lead to a powerful and useful genetic tool for future studies.

11.4 Commercial Uses

Most of the early knowledge of *R. oryzae* came from food and commercial interest. In fact, while the medical importance of *R. oryzae* has been recognized for a little over 100 years, its role in food production is centuries old. Ironically, the basic research interest of *R. oryzae* focused mainly on strain characterization and strain improvement.

11.4.1 Tempe

Although *R. oryzae* is an important human fungal pathogen, perhaps its greatest impact on humans is via commercial products produced by the fungus. *R. oryzae* produces an extremely wide variety of commercially useful metabolites, including a number of enzymes, polymers, alcohols, esters, and organic acids (Ghosh and Ray 2011). Interestingly, this metabolic diversity has been confirmed by the number, type, and organization of genes found within the *R. oryzae* genome (Ma et al. 2009).

Among the oldest commercial use of *R. oryzae*, which dates back more than 1,000 years, is in the production of Tempe or Tempeh. Tempe is an important food source for some cultures and is produced by the fermentation of soybeans, which in contrast to fermented beverages, actually incorporates the fungus into the final product such that Tempe consists of the fermented beans bound together with fungal mycelia and flavored with fungal metabolites produced during the fermentation process. Just as for alcoholic beverages, discriminating species and strains of *Rhizopus* is crucial to the qualities of the final product, whether it is food or a *Rhizopus* metabolite. In fact, *R. microsporus var. oligosporus* may be the most common species of *Rhizopus* used to produce Tempe (Hachmeister and Fung 1993). Strain improvement and selection have moved Tempe production from the smaller home-based fermentations to industrial-level production (Steinkraus 1985; Nout and Kiers 2005). As a result, the increased commercial value has generated more interest in improving the fermentation process, which has driven more basic microbiological and genetic studies. These studies have provided a more mechanistic understanding of what genes are responsible for some of the metabolic characteristics that *R. oryzae* is known for (Meussen et al. 2012).

11.4.2 Enzymes

Some of the enzymes produced by *R. oryzae* and other species include cellulases (enzymes useful for biomass degradation, which function by hydrolyzing cellulosic plant material, including cell walls), pectinases (needed for fruit juice and wine processing), tannase (tannic acid decomposition), phytase (releases inositol from plant seeds), amylase (degrades starch), lipase (fat and oil degradation), protease (protein degradation, often used in the food, leather, tanning, and detergent industries), RNASE (ribonuclease, which degrades RNA), urease (urea degradation), and others (Ghosh and Ray 2011). The saprophytic lifestyle of *R. oryzae* undoubtedly played a role in the evolution of numerous enzymes that facilitated the breakdown and metabolism of plant biomass. Additionally, this nutritional versatility also likely has contributed to the success of *R. oryzae* as a pathogen. The production of numerous types of cellulases makes *R. oryzae* a potentially useful microbe in bioengineering since these enzymes can degrade cellulosic or agricultural wastes into products that can be used as fuel or chemicals, depending on downstream processing steps. In some cases, these processes can be coupled, such as during the production of lactic acid, which yields ethanol during the fermentation process (Zheng et al. 2009). Strain modification can be used to enhance or alter these processes in commercially useful ways (Bai et al. 2004).

11.4.3 Organic Acids

R. oryzae is able to produce a number of useful and important organic acids. Among them are lactic acid, fumaric acid, and malic acid. Ethanol can also be produced during this process since the pathways leading to the production of all four products start with pyruvate (Skory and Ibrahim 2007). Organic acid production from *R. oryzae* has been studied for almost 100 years (Ghosh and Ray 2011) with the type of acid produced (lactic or fumaric–malic) being useful for *R. oryzae* strain characterization (see above). While *R. oryzae* can produce other types of organic acids, the production of lactic acid and fumaric acid is the most important and the most studied.

Fumaric and malic acid are Krebs (or TCA) cycle intermediates that are derived from fermentative growth on high carbohydrate substrates to produce pyruvate, which can enter the Krebs cycle through conversion to citrate and then be metabolized to fumarate and malate. These acids are often used as "acidulants," which are food additives that function to lower pH and/or increase tartness (Meussen et al. 2012). Subsequent steps to produce fumarate from succinate, and then malate directly from fumarate, follow the traditional Krebs cycle pathway. However, in *R. oryzae*, experimental evidence suggests that these two organic acids are produced by an alternate pathway of the Krebs cycle starting from pyruvate and proceeding through oxaloacetate to malic acid and finally fumaric acid via the reductive branch of the Krebs cycle (Romano et al. 1967). As noted above (see Sect. 11.2), not all species of *R. oryzae* traditionally were able to produce fumaric acid, which led to an early interest in *R. oryzae* genetics. These studies ultimately identified the genetic basis that determines which organic acids were produced based on the presence or absence of lactate dehydrogenase. *R. delemar* lacks this enzyme and thus produces fumaric and malic acid (Skory and Ibrahim 2007; Skory 2004). The other group, which contains both *ldhA* and *ldhB*, retains the *R. oryzae* name and produces lactic acid from pyruvate.

Lactic acid, or more specifically, L-(+)-lactic acid, is used as a food or feed acidulant, but it can also be used for the production of plastics, solvents, cosmetics, food antimicrobials, or oxygenated chemicals (Ghosh and Ray 2011; Datta and Henry 2006). While bacteria are major sources of commercially produced lactic acid, *R. oryzae* has been increasingly used as a source of this compound, due in part to its ability to produce an optically pure form on defined growth media (Skory 2003). In addition to modifying growth conditions (i.e., temperature, aeration), strain modification, such as using mutagenesis or recombinant DNA methods, has led to increases in the amount of lactic acid that can be produced per gram of substrate (Bai et al. 2004; Skory 2004; Skory et al. 1998).

The focus on the genetics and molecular biology of *R. oryzae* was driven by the potential commercial applications of the fungus. However, this interest also facilitated new avenues of investigation into *R. oryzae*, which eventually led to a genome sequence project. Analysis of the genome sequence has yielded extensive

information related to commercial applications of *R. oryzae*. However, the main justification of sequencing this fungus arose from its role as the most frequent pathogen in mucormycosis.

11.5 Pathogenicity

In general, infections caused by the zygomycetes are rare compared to other medically important fungi. Within the phylum, genera within the order Mucorales are the most frequent cause of disease, with *R. oryzae* being the most common of all the zygomycetes (Roden et al. 2005). Importantly, zygomycotic infections are often referred to as mucormycosis or zygomycosis. Mucormycosis refers to pathogenic members of the Mucorales; however, there are other non-Mucorales genera that can be human pathogens. These non-Mucorales zygomycotic pathogens are typically members of the Entomophthorales, such as *Basidiobolus* sp., but are very rarely recovered. Nonetheless, the term zygomycosis is a catch-all term to indicate that the fungus is a member of the phylum Zygomycota. Mucormycosis simply reflects more specific taxonomic information in that the identity of the isolate has been narrowed down to the order Mucorales. From a clinical perspective, both terms are used and combined with the recent recommendations for changes in taxonomy due to the emergence of the *R. delemar* species epithet reflect the ongoing confusion of naming and categorizing these fungi.

11.5.1 Host Status

In spite of being a generally rare infection, mucormycosis is typically an aggressive one, reflecting, in part, the rapid growth rate of these fungi. The aggressive nature of these infections has lead to mortality rates of approximately 45–80 %, with underlying disease affecting the rate (Lanternier et al. 2012). When dissemination to other sites in the body occurs, mortality rates can approach 100 % (Eucker et al. 2001). Risk factors for infection by *R. oryzae* and for most zygomycotic agents in general include diabetes, certain types of cancers, immunosuppression, particularly in organ transplantation, diseases, and therapies that affect iron homeostasis, drug abuse, and trauma that includes traumatic implantation of environmental material (dirt, debris, plant material) (Ibrahim et al. 2012; Ribes et al. 2000; Lanternier et al. 2012; Eucker et al. 2001). AIDS in and of itself is not a risk factor for infection; however, underlying factors such as drug abuse or neutropenia have resulted in mucormycosis appearing in this patient population with increasing frequency (Van den Saffele and Boelaert 1996). In general, most patients that are infected with *R. oryzae* or other mucormycotic agents will have some underlying immunosuppressive condition that predisposes to opportunistic mycosis. The exception is trauma, which can lead to infection in two ways. In the first way,

although initially healthy, trauma patients can become susceptible to infection due to trauma-induced immunosuppression. An example would be burns, which result in substantial alteration of host stasis as well as allowing access to external pathogens due to breach of skin. Secondly, trauma can lead to skin breaches that allow aerosolized fungal spores to cross the skin barrier by entering a wound, or fungal elements in the form of spores and/or hyphae can cross the skin barrier by direct inoculation via impacted trauma debris that carries fungal elements. Spores can then germinate, or hyphal elements can colonize tissue. If the host response cannot control the colonizing fungus, tissue invasion can follow, which can lead to necrosis, angioinvasion, dissemination, and ultimately death.

11.5.2 Clinical Manifestations and Infection Sites

For *R. oryzae* infections, one of the most common risk factors is diabetes with accompanying ketoacidosis. The most common sites of infection tend to be the skin, lung, gastrointestinal tract, and paranasal sinus (Kwon-Chung and Bennett 1992; Hagensee et al. 1994; Record and Ginder 1976; Rammaert et al. 2012). Sinus infections that initially manifest or progress to rhinocerebral infections are overwhelmingly caused by *R. oryzae* (~90 %) (Scholer et al. 1983). Infections typically are caused by inhalation of spores, which can germinate in the sinus or reach the lung alveoli where they germinate, colonize, and then invade tissue, often with a tropism for blood vessels from which dissemination can occur, depending on the host status. Rhinocerebral infections progress rapidly and are life threatening due to proximity to the brain. These infections must be diagnosed quickly and are usually treated with extensive surgical debridement, antifungal therapy, and reversal of underlying immunosuppressive conditions if possible. However, even with aggressive treatment, rhinocerebral infections still usually have poor outcomes (Rinaldi 1989). Pulmonary infections can mimic infections caused by *Aspergillus* sp. and may need live culture or histopathology for proper identification due to nonspecific symptoms that can appear with imaging or other diagnostic methods (Fig. 11.5). Unfortunately, in the absence of live culture or molecular-based methods, species determination is almost impossible, and in many cases, obtaining specimens for live culture is not possible. Cutaneous infections can arise from the insertion of intravenous lines that carry contaminating fungal elements from the skin or from direct inoculation of fungal elements into the skin. The infection site can undergo necrosis with the formation of black eschar if the fungus successfully invades the surrounding tissue (Eucker et al. 2001). Gastrointestinal infections also can occur and probably reflect oral transmission due to consumption of contaminated material (Neame and Rayner 1960). However, the disease can occur in premature babies with or without skin lesions and obviously in the absence of any contaminated food consumption, suggesting an unknown origin (Zaoutis et al. 2007).

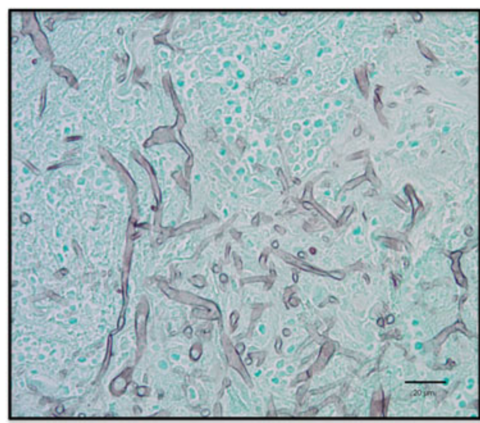


Fig. 11.5 *Rhizopus oryzae* histopathology. Gomori methenamine silver (GMS) stain of infected tissue. Hyphae are coenocytic, flattened, and ribbon-shaped with irregular branching

11.5.3 Virulence Factors

Factors that affect and enhance virulence in *R. oryzae* are coincident with the phenotypes most important for survival in the natural niche as *R. oryzae* infections are opportunistic in nature. *R. oryzae* is not a commensal of humans or animals, nor is it shed during infection; therefore, mammalian or other animal immune systems have not played a role in the evolution of genes that could make the organism pathogenic. Instead, the genes or phenotypes that *R. oryzae* displays that enhance virulence reflect the normal ecosystems in which *R. oryzae* lives. However, in spite of the saprophytic lifestyle of *R. oryzae*, a number of phenotypes have been identified that play a role in virulence, and in a few instances, the corresponding genes that influence these phenotypes have been identified. Unfortunately, the majority of what is known about the repertoire of virulence factors that *R. oryzae* possesses has been deduced from studies of other specific Mucorales. These are, therefore, possible virulence factors of *R. oryzae* suggested by taxonomic relationships, but their function remains to be proven.

The role of iron in fungal pathogenesis, including the major systemic fungal pathogens, is well known (Hilty et al. 2011; Haas 2012; Jung and Kronstad 2008; Chen et al. 2011). *R. oryzae* is no exception with regard to the importance of iron in virulence. Numerous studies of *R. oryzae* virulence have identified a major virulence factor, which involves how the fungus acquires iron in vivo and how host iron availability influences the probability of being infected by *R. oryzae*. Much of the host–pathogen relationship, however, seems to revolve around iron availability during *R. oryzae* infection. This dynamic makes iron acquisition, and how the host tries to deny access to iron, the most studied of the *R. oryzae* virulence factors (Nairz et al. 2010). Non-trauma *R. oryzae* infections often involve some aspect of iron availability, specifically levels of unbound iron in the serum that are accessible to the fungus (Howard 1999). Mammals use multiple methods to sequester iron, such as the carrier proteins ferritin, lactoferrin, and transferrin, which keep free iron away

from pathogens, while reducing potential toxicity. *R. oryzae* grows poorly in serum, unless exogenous iron is added (Artis et al. 1982). However, there is a second component to iron acquisition by *R. oryzae*, which involves pH. Because diabetes is a risk factor for mucormycosis, much of what is known about how *R. oryzae* uses iron in vivo comes from these patients. Diabetics who are in ketoacidosis due to their disease have elevated levels of iron in their serum. It is the combination of free iron and the acidotic state of these patients that makes iron available to the fungus since adding free iron to serum does not stimulate fungal growth unless the serum is acidic (7.3–6.88) (Artis et al. 1982). Furthermore, using diabetic mice, Ibrahim et al. provided further proof of this mechanism by showing that chelation of iron can be used therapeutically to keep iron away from *R. oryzae*, even in the conditions (diabetic ketoacidosis) that would make it available (Ibrahim et al. 2006; Ibrahim et al. 2007). In fact, *R. oryzae* is genetically primed to grab iron any way it can. Indeed, patients who are treated with deferoxamine, a bacterial siderophore, are at elevated risk for infection because *R. oryzae* recognizes this compound as a xenosiderophore, which will strip iron from transferrin and then, in turn, allow it to be bound by *R. oryzae* (Boelaert et al. 1993). Using traditional molecular methods for studying genes involved in pathogenesis, Ibrahim et al. demonstrated the role of *FTR1*, an *R. oryzae* permease, in iron uptake by disrupting the gene and using an anti-Ftr1 antibody to show that elimination of the Ftr1 function reduces virulence (Ibrahim et al. 2010). Finally, the genome sequence project has revealed the presence of heme oxygenase homologs, which may function in allowing the fungus to obtain iron from host hemoglobin, perhaps suggesting in part, the tropism for blood vessels during infection (Ibrahim et al. 2012; Ma et al. 2009).

In addition to obtaining iron from the host, another key phenotype that is almost always required for a pathogen to be virulent is the ability to adhere to host tissue. Adherence is generally going to precede invasion, and in the case of *R. oryzae* pathogenesis, invasion of tissue and blood vessels is a key component of tissue damage, which is a hallmark of infection. *R. oryzae* has been shown experimentally to adhere to, and damage, endothelial cells in a specific manner since adherence to nonliving tissue, such as plastic, is not observed (Ibrahim et al. 2005). The process requires direct contact but can be blocked by the addition of iron chelators, again, showing the importance of iron to pathogenesis (Ibrahim et al. 2005). Interestingly, there is some suggestion of the role of a toxin in this process. *R. oryzae* produces a toxin (agroclavin) and other members of the genus have also been shown to produce toxins (Ribes et al. 2000). Furthermore, endothelial killing can be brought about by dead cells, suggesting that this killing may be mediated by a factor that could be a toxin or toxin like (Ibrahim 2011).

Virtually all microbial pathogens need the ability to grow at host ambient temperature, which is 37 °C for humans. Although this temperature is a given for pathogens, most fungi cannot grow at this temperature, let alone deal with the multiple aspects of host defenses, both active and passive. *R. oryzae* grows well at this temperature and is, therefore, not inhibited in normal hosts nor by elevation of body temperature through fever. In fact, since most infections likely begin via introduction of spore aerosols, evidence of *R. oryzae* growing satisfactorily at this

temperature comes from animal models in which inocula are introduced as a spore suspension, which ultimately results in the hyphal morphology in tissue as the spores germinate and invade tissue (Ibrahim et al. 2010).

11.5.4 Treatment

Treatment of *R. oryzae* infection, as well as many mucormycotic infections, must consider the aggressive nature of these infections and how rapidly they can progress. Consequently, a strong index of suspicion is needed so that treatment is not delayed, something that is often not possible due to the large number of other factors, many more common, which could be mimicking symptoms of an *R. oryzae* infection. Two other factors are crucial to infection management, surgical debridement and antifungal therapy (Arnaiz-Garcia et al. 2009), although even with surgical intervention, mortality can be as high as 60 % (Rabie and Althaqafi 2012). Unfortunately, the Mucorales are a diverse collection of zygomycetes that display various phenotypes, including selective resistance to antifungals, further demonstrating the necessity of identifying these fungi correctly. Vitale et al. (2012) published an extensive study on antifungal susceptibility of the Mucorales. *R. oryzae* was resistant to terbinafine, 5-FC, caspofungin, micafungin, voriconazole, and fluconazole, but was sensitive to posaconazole, itraconazole (less susceptible than most zygomycetes), and amphotericin B (although somewhat reduced susceptibility). However, for disseminated infections, *R. oryzae* can be refractive to most antifungal agents.

11.6 Genome Sequence

The genome sequence for *R. oryzae* was completed at the Broad Institute http://www.broadinstitute.org/annotation/genome/rhizopus_oryzae/MultiHome.html and reported in 2009 (Ma et al. 2009).One of the major arguments for sequencing this fungus was that the sequence would represent the first sequence obtained from an early lineage of the fungal phylogenetic tree. Based on the distinguishing characteristics of *R. delemar* and *R. oryzae*, the isolate that was sequenced, 99–880, was actually phenotypically *R. delemar*. Nonetheless, a substantial amount of information was obtained from the annotation of the genome, including some of the genetic foundations for pathogenesis. The major findings of the genome sequence centered around evidence of a whole-genome duplication followed by subsequent duplications of selected gene families. Analysis of the genome focused on developing a better understanding of the genetic basis of pathogenesis.

11.6.1 Genome Annotation

Final assembly of the sequence data revealed 15 linkage groups, which was supported by combining sequence data with optical mapping data (Ma et al. 2009). Putative telomeric sequences were identified $(CCACAA)_n$ with the help of the optical maps. The total number of predicted protein coding genes was 17,467 with most genes having introns (avg 2.32 introns/gene) that averaged 79 bases in length (Ma et al. 2009). The two most significant observations from the assembled sequence were the existence within the genome of an enormous amount of repetitive sequences and evidence that the genome had undergone a whole-genome duplication.

The number of repetitive elements consumed more than 9 Mb of the genome (approximately 20 %) and was made up mostly of transposable elements and their remnants. The most abundant type of element was Ty3/gypsy like. The transposons could be divided into two classes: Class I, which were the retrotransposons, and Class II, which were the DNA transposons (Ma et al. 2009). Insertion sites showed a bias, with many localizing close to tRNA genes. Some of the elements were active as they were detected in expressed sequence tags.

The second major observation from the genome sequence assembly was the existence of an apparent genome duplication. Initial evidence that the genome was duplicated came from the detection of a paralog for almost half of the genes in the genome. The duplicated sequences cover the entire genome and consist of 648 gene pairs that appear in duplicated sections, which contain 3–9 duplicated genes per section (Ma et al. 2009). Much of the evidence for concluding that a genome duplication occurred was derived from the conservation of the order and orientation in which the paralogs appeared. After the genome was duplicated, genes were gradually lost, yielding the "modern" *R. oryzae* genome, which retained roughly 650 of the original duplicates. Importantly, the study by Ma et al. (2009) allowed these investigators to use the sequence to make certain inferences about the phenotypes that *R. oryzae* exhibits both as a saprophyte and a pathogen. These inferences related the observation of gene families that were created from the whole-genome duplication to the specific phenotypes that *R. oryzae* exhibits, which could be attributed to the genes that constitute each family.

11.6.2 Duplicated Protein Complexes

The lifestyle of *R. oryzae* is consistent with an organism that has an extensive genetic reserve to draw upon depending on the local environment. This flexibility is consistent with the commercial utility of the fungus in which its fermentative and degradative abilities have been exploited. Conversely, the organism can also be an aggressive pathogen that is characterized by rapid growth once an infection is established and the organism begins to invade tissue. In fact, the rapidly invasive

phenotype is a hallmark of *Rhizopus* infections. A crucial requirement for the nutritional flexibility and rapid growth of *R. oryzae* is the need to generate energy for these metabolic processes. The protein complexes that are duplicated in the genome fit this requirement and include proteins that constitute the electron transport chain, the V-ATPase complex, and the ubiquitin–proteasome systems (Ma et al. 2009). For each system, the core subunit is duplicated.

Electron transport proteins mediate the flow of electrons to oxygen while generating ATP during the process. The electron transport complexes that were predicted to be duplicated in *R. oryzae* include complex I (NADH–ubiquinone oxidoreductase), which accepts electrons from NADH; complex II (succinate dehydrogenase–CoQ oxoreductase), which accepts electrons from succinate; complex III (cytochrome reductase), which accepts electrons from coenzyme Q; and complex IV (cytochrome oxidase), which accepts electrons from cytochrome C. The duplication of these complexes may enhance the metabolic flexibility of *R. oryzae* while also contributing to the rapid growth rate of this fungus.

V-ATPases are proton pumps that require ATP and are found in intracellular compartments as well as the plasma membrane. They are important for acidification of intracellular compartments, membrane trafficking, protein degradation, and coupled transport (Forgac 1998). Individual V-ATPase components have not been studied in detail in *R. oryzae*; however, they have been studied in other fungi, including fungi pathogenic for humans. In *Histoplasma capsulatum*, the V-ATPase catalytic subunit A, *VMA1*, was found to be required for dimorphism, iron acquisition, and virulence (Hilty et al. 2008). Similarly, the *Cryptococcus neoformans VPH1* gene was found to negatively affect melanin production, capsule production, and growth at 37 °C, all of which are required for virulence (Erickson et al. 2001). Finally, the *Candida albicans VMA7* gene, a V-ATPase subunit, was shown by Polterman et al. (2005) to be required for vacuolar acidification, growth at alkaline pH, metal ion homeostasis, dimorphism, and virulence.

Most of what is known about the ubiquitin–proteasome pathway in pathogenic fungi comes from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* and to a lesser degree *Candida albicans*. None of the individual components of this pathway have been studied in *R. oryzae*; however, homologs of other fungal proteasome subunits have been identified in the *R. oryzae* genome sequence including homologs of the *PRE*, *PUP*, *RPT*, and *RPN* proteins, which make up the central component. In eukaryotes, the pathway's main function is the degradation of proteins, particularly short-lived proteins that often have regulatory functions, which likely makes the pathway crucial to phenotypes that reflect the diverse niches that *R. oryzae* is found in. Similar to the other two complexes, the ubiquitin–proteasome pathway contains a major complex (proteasome), which together with related genes, constitutes a large number of interacting proteins such that random duplications of individual components could lead to an imbalance of function and ultimately a deleterious outcome. Therefore, Ma et al. argue that in *R. oryzae*, the fact that roughly 80 % of the individual members of the three complexes were retained as duplicates implies whole-genome duplication as the best explanation for the multiple copies of each gene (Ma et al. 2009).

11.6.3 Expanded Gene Families

In addition to the duplication of the large protein complexes described above, a number of gene families appear to have also been expanded in the *R. oryzae* genome, with the affected phenotypes again related to cell growth (Ma et al. 2009). These families include the P-loop GTPases, which regulate basic cellular processes and include homologs of RAS, RHO, CDC, ARF, YPT, as well as other genes that often function as molecular switches that can rapidly coordinate gene expression with varied environmental conditions. A second expanded family is the proteases, which contain the aspartic proteases, subtilisins, caspases, and aminopeptidases among others. These enzymes enhance degradation of organic matter and perhaps most importantly, contain members that are proven virulence factors in other fungi [secreted aspartic proteases, subtilisins (Magee et al. 1993; Monod et al. 2002)]. A third expanded family consists of cell wall biosynthetic genes, in particular the chitin synthases and chitin deacetylases, which is consistent with the high percentage of chitin and chitosan in the cell wall of *R. oryzae* (Ma et al. 2009). The ability to grow rapidly in response to a changing or rich environment requires the fungus to be able to rapidly synthesize new hyphae, which requires substantial amounts of chitin and chitosan, which are encoded by the chitin biosynthetic genes. Finally, in conjunction with cell wall growth, hyphae also need to synthesize the plasma membrane at a rate that keeps up with new cell wall synthesis. Sterols are a major component of cell membranes, and in fungi, the major sterol is ergosterol. The *R. oryzae* genome sequence shows that this fungus, like virtually all fungi, contains all of the components of the highly conserved ergosterol pathway (Ma et al. 2009). Importantly, some of the genes in the pathway, including the major azole target (lanosterol 14α-demethylase), are present in multiple copies, which may affect response to the azole antifungals.

11.7 Genetics and Molecular Biology

Because of the commercial and medical importance of *R. oryzae*, there has been, and continues to be, an interest in the development of the molecular biology and genetics of this fungus. Unfortunately, for the major fungal pathogens that have developed molecular and genetic tools, *R. oryzae* arguably possesses the most problematic aspects of each of the major fungi, with the possible exception of it being dangerous to work with. Since *R. oryzae* is a filamentous mold, a spore preparation must be made, which is more cumbersome than growing yeast cells. Additionally, since numerous genes of the genome have been duplicated, depending on the target, multiple disruptions may be needed, which is cumbersome since there are few markers for this fungus. The transformation systems utilize either biolistics, which requires expensive instrumentation, or spheroplasting, which requires protoplasting enzymes that can be hard to obtain, and a laborious

protocol. There are few genetic markers and the fate of transforming DNA, depending on the input molecule, often is a large multimeric plasmid or concatenated molecules that may or may not be rearranged, both of which have a high tendency to remain episomal. Homologous integration is possible, but of low frequency. However, in spite of numerous inefficiencies of the "molecular toolbox," most of the common molecular and genetic manipulations used in a laboratory are possible with *R. oryzae*, but need to be improved. Importantly, virtually all of the major human fungal pathogens (i.e., *Candida albicans*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, *Histoplasma capsulatum*, *Aspergillus fumigatus*, *Coccidioides immitis*) presented large challenges that needed to be overcome before a working molecular system could be developed. But for each of these fungi, once a critical mass of researchers was established, the major hurdles were rapidly overcome.

11.7.1 Transformation

Transformation of *R. oryzae* is possible and has been reported to be successful using the biolistic method, $CaCl_2$/PEG, and *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* (Skory 2002; Michielse et al. 2004). Skory used a uracil auxotroph that was a *pyrG* (orotidine monophosphate (OMP) decarboxylase) mutant as a host for transforming DNA, which consisted of the wild-type *pyrG* gene released from a plasmid by restriction enzyme digestion (Skory 2002). The transformation frequency was low, from 1 to 50 transformants per μg of DNA; however, this number is high enough to perform some basic molecular manipulations and can probably be increased by multiple transformation events. The transformation host in Skory's study was germinated spores, as is typical for filamentous fungi. However, a clear problem with this system is the lack of general integration and as a result, a lack of homologous integration. This problem is not unheard of in fungal pathogens. Both *Cryptococcus neoformans* and *Histoplasma capsulatum* have similar problems since transforming DNA tends to remain episomal but is able to replicate without a clearly defined ARS-like or 2 μm-like origin of replication. For both fungi, incoming DNA is telomerized; however, it is unknown whether or not this is the fate of transforming DNA in *R. oryzae*.

Transformation with circular plasmids was found to rarely lead to integration; however, homologous integration can occur, which is Type I in nature (Hinnen et al. 1978). Interestingly, for non-integrated DNA, circular plasmids are maintained intact and can be recovered in *E. coli* without any apparent rearrangements, suggesting that the original native plasmid was replicated as a circle, although these molecules may be multimeric. Linearized plasmid DNA usually resulted in large multimers of concatenated molecules, which had been repaired by the host cell. When the *R. oryzae pyrG* gene was released from the vector with restriction enzymes that only cut within the vector, homologous integration was the primary outcome, suggesting that the transformation system can be improved. For example, in *C. neoformans*, which tends to maintain transforming

molecules episomally after telomerization, integration can be forced to occur at a higher frequency by using variations of transforming constructs such as a PCR-generated split marker (Fu et al. 2006).

In addition to biolistic transformation, Michielse et al. were able to successfully employ $CaCl_2$/PEG-mediated transformation of spheroplasted spores and a heterologous uracil marker derived from *Aspergillus nidulans* to recover recombinants (Michielse et al. 2004). Importantly, in this same study, they were able to adapt a dominant marker as a transformation system. The dominant marker was the *Aspergillus nidulans* acetamidase gene, *amdS*, which allows transformants to grow on acetamide, providing selection if the recipient strain does not carry a homolog of the gene (Kelly and Hynes 1985). The outcome of transformation with either marker and with the $CaCl_2$/PEG-mediated transformation approach again was to yield primarily episomal transformants. Although the tendency to remain episomal can result in a reduced frequency of homologous integration, this inefficiency is preferable to a high frequency of ectopic integration. Consequently, although the transformation frequency per μg of DNA is somewhat low, there are avenues for improvement that should be achievable using other fungal transformation strategies.

11.7.2 Mutagenesis

One of the most important steps in developing an efficient molecular toolbox is the ability to create and select for mutants. A number of methods have been described for *R. oryzae*. Skory described the use of the chemical mutagen, NNG (1-methyl-3-nitro-1-nitrosoguanidine), as a way to enhance lactic acid production in *R. oryzae* (Skory et al. 1998), while Purohit et al. used NTG (3-nitro,5-methylguanidine) mutagenesis to recover a mutant enhanced for tannase production (Purohit et al. 2006). Bai et al. used diethyl sulfate (DES) to recover mutants that overproduced lactic acid (Bai et al. 2004). Chemical mutagenesis is among the oldest methods for creating useful mutants in virtually any microbe studied in the laboratory. However, there are two concerns when using chemical mutagens. First, the mutagenic nature of the chemical itself can make it hazardous to work with. Second, chemical mutagenesis is random and can lead to a second unlinked mutation elsewhere in the genome that may be undetected, but still exert a phenotype. Having a working genetic system that allows for backcrossing to a wild-type strain in order to reduce the likelihood of the strain of interest carrying a second mutation is helpful. This method would be possible with *R. oryzae* since sexual reproduction has been known to occur; unfortunately, good tester strains that are easy to work with and yield progeny spores at high frequency are not yet available.

An alternate method that is less hazardous but still is a random mutagenic method utilizes UV radiation to create mutants. UV light can be employed in safely enclosed containers to avoid laboratory exposure. Once a kill curve is established, mutagenesis then can be performed on however many colony-forming units are

plated. UV mutagenesis has been used to recover mutants enhanced for tannase (Purohit et al. 2006), lactic acid (Bai et al. 2004), glucoamylase (Suntornsuk and Hang 2008), and fumarate production (Huang et al. 2010). Importantly, for UV mutagenesis and, in general, for any random mutagenesis, it is important to have a good screening technique that can be used to discriminate a desired mutant from a background of nonmutants and non-desired mutants with high efficiency.

11.7.3 Markers, Reporters, and Inducible Promoters

Once a transformation system has been developed for any model organism, useful molecular reagents must follow that expand what is possible to study at the molecular level. These reagents typically include vectors that have regulatable promoters, additional markers that confer transformation flexibility, including the ability to complement disrupted genes, and reporters that allow investigators to measure or locate gene expression or protein function. The molecular toolbox of *R. oryzae* has most of these characteristics, with new reagents continually expanding this versatility.

In many fungi, an early tool is development of markers that are useful for transformation or genetics but also have counterselection capabilities. Arguably the most common of these markers are two mutations in the uracil biosynthetic pathway: orotate phosphoribosyltransferase and orotidine 5′-phosphate decarboxylase (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae URA3* and *URA5* genes, respectively). The value of these genes as markers lies in their ability to be selected for by growing on media containing the toxic analog 5-fluoroorotic acid (5-FOA). Wild-type enzymes of orotate phosphoribosyltransferase and orotidine 5′-phosphate decarboxylase incorporate 5-FOA into pathway intermediates and are killed (Boeke et al. 1984). Both the orotate phosphoribosyltransferase (*pyrF*) and orotidine 5′-phosphate decarboxylase (*pyrG*) have been cloned in *R. oryzae* (Skory and Ibrahim 2007; Skory 2002). Importantly, because of the counterselectability of 5-FOA against functional *pyrF* and *pyrG* genes, it is possible to recycle either mutation in a host strain by selection for loss of the transforming selectable marker if it is *pyrF* or *pyrG* because cells that have the marker are killed by the compound. In the case of *R. oryzae*, which has a tendency to maintain transforming DNA as episomally replicating molecules at high frequency, loss of the transforming construct and marker can be selected for very fast as the construct can be easily lost from the cell because it is not integrated. Similar to this system is the *amdS* system, which uses the compound acetamide, the gene *amdS*, and the toxic analog fluoroacetamide to function as a selection–counterselection system (Debets et al. 1990). The *amdS* gene has been shown to work as a selectable marker in *R. oryzae*, although counterselection with fluoroacetamide has not been reported (Michielse et al. 2004). Another advantage of the *amdS* gene is that it is a heterologous dominant marker, with no *R. oryzae* homolog, which can function to reduce integration in the genome due to the absence of homology.

A third marker that has been reported for *R. oryzae* is a homolog of the *S. cerevisiae his3*, although it has not been characterized (Ibrahim et al. 2010).

Following the development of a transformation system, secondary tools usually follow and enable a deeper investigation of gene function. These secondary tools typically consist of reporter genes and vectors that have regulatable or inducible promoters (Mertens et al. 2006). In *R. oryzae*, multiple promoters have been described, and one reporter gene has been shown to function by Mertens et al. (2006). In this study, they used a vector containing the *R. oryzae* pyruvate decarboxylase (*pdcA*) promoter and terminator, the *R. oryzae pyrG* gene as selectable marker, and pBluescript II KS- as the plasmid backbone. Two additional promoters were tested, *pgk1*, from the phosphoglycerate kinase 1 gene, and *amyA*, from the glucoamylase A gene, by swapping them into the vector in place of the *pdcA* promoter. The three promoters were selected to test different types of regulation using GFP as a reporter; the *pgk1* promoter is constitutive, *pdcA* promoter is inducible by glucose, and *amyA* is highly inducible by starch or cellobiose. All three promoters were found to be functional as evidenced by observation of GFP fluorescence, with expression levels being the highest in *pdcA* and lowest in *pgk1*.

11.7.4 Agrobacterium tumefaciens-*Mediated Transformation*

Agrobacterium transformation is becoming an increasingly powerful tool in mycology, with virtually every fungus in which it has been tried being transformable (McClelland and Wickes 2009). The major significance of this bacterium in fungal molecular biology is that it is a transkingdom pathogen that can move DNA into cells with very little specificity. The system works by simply taking the *A. tumefaciens* native Ti plasmid, inserting a selectable marker, and then transforming the plasmid back into the *A. tumefaciens* host. The plasmid still maintains its infectivity and can be transferred into the target host by appropriate co-culture conditions in which the bacterium is mixed with the fungal host under conditions that induce plasmid mobilization. After allowing time for the plasmid DNA to be inserted into the host fungal cells, the bacterial–fungal mixture is harvested and then replated under conditions that include an antibiotic to kill residual *A. tumefaciens* and an antibiotic (in the case of the marker being drug resistance) or minimal medium (in case the marker complements an auxotrophy) to select for transformed fungi. The outcome of this infection is predominantly integrated transformants, usually in single copy, which makes this method of transformation extremely powerful for fungi that have inefficient or difficult transformation systems.

In an effort to overcome the tendency of transforming DNA in *R. oryzae* to remain episomal, Michielse et al. (2004) developed an *Agrobacterium*-mediated transformation system for *R. oryzae*. Their reason for exploring

Agrobacterium-mediated transformation centered around developing a transformation method that resulted in stable transformants, which typically occurs after integration of transforming DNA. They used a $CaCl_2$/PEG method for comparison of transformation fates. They found, using the *Agrobacterium*-mediated method, that integration of transforming DNA occurred 100 % of the time whereas the $CaCl_2$/PEG method using linear or circular molecules resulted in a <5 % integration frequency regardless of selectable marker. Further investigation concluded that the transforming DNA integrated at a hotspot; however, they were unable to identify the locus. Importantly, experiments were not performed to see if this method could be used for gene disruption, which would be the real value of an *Agrobacterium*-mediated method since it appears that this method solves the problem of episomal maintenance of transforming DNA.

11.7.5 Gene Disruption

Much of the investigation into transformation systems is needed in order to obtain gene disruptions at high efficiency, or at least at a level where a disruptant can be detected after a simple PCR screen of multiple colonies. Screening 10 or 20 colonies after a transformation is not hard, but as this number gets to be 50, 100, or higher, obtaining a disruptant becomes laborious, and it becomes further complicated because one can never be sure they are not dealing with an essential gene that cannot be disrupted.

A major issue that affects disruption frequency is the fate of transforming DNA. If it is difficult to get DNA to integrate, this problem is the most important hurdle to overcome. Presently, integration frequency is a challenge for *R. oryzae* transformation. A second major issue is homologous integration frequency. If integration frequency at the target locus is very low, screening for disruptants again becomes laborious, which becomes grossly inefficient if integration frequency is low to begin with. These are current challenges in *R. oryzae* molecular biology; however, there have been some successes. Ibrahim et al. were able to disrupt the *R. oryzae FTR1* gene by using a simple transformation construct in which the marker gene, *pyrF*, was flanked with *FTR1* sequences that lie outside the *FTR1* coding region, thereby targeting the disruption cassette to the *FTR1* locus due to flanking sequence homology (Ibrahim et al. 2010). This technique worked, as a clean replacement of the *FTR1* coding sequence occurred. However, another problem with *R. oryzae* transformation was revealed. Almost all zygomycetes are coenocytic, which means that there are no septa in the hyphae. Consequently, all of the transformation host cells are multinucleate. Since the transforming DNA is only going to enter a single nucleus, and the probability is likely low that all of the nuclei of the same cell will be transformed, transformed cells must undergo posttransformation manipulation, usually in the form of subculturing, in order to recover a homokaryon. In the case of *FTR1*, creating a homokaryon was not successful.

Given the ever-present problem of dealing with heterokaryons and essential genes, another method to study gene function is needed. Based on results from the genome sequence, it was predicted that *R. oryzae* contains the genes that would allow RNAi to work as a gene disruption method. The genome is predicted to contain two copies of Argonaut, one Dicer homolog, and five RNA-dependent polymerases (RdRP) (Ma et al. 2009; Meussen et al. 2012). This information was used to develop an RNAi construct, which was successfully used to knockdown *FTR1* expression (Ibrahim et al. 2010), therefore adding an important tool to the molecular biology of *R. oryzae*.

11.8 Conclusions

R. oryzae is currently the model fungus for the study of the pathogenic zygomycetes. The present genetic and molecular system is clearly in its infancy and currently seems laborious and inefficient. However, the molecular biology of all the major human fungal pathogens started off in the same way, and some still have residual problems that have remained after more than 20 years of investigation. However, knowledge from these systems can be applied to new model fungi to help establish working models. Continued investigation then ultimately leads to improvements until virtually all required manipulations become possible. In the case of *R. oryzae*, this fungus is becoming increasingly important as a pathogen and remains an important commercial and food industry organism. All of these areas require continued advancement of what we know about this fungus, which will attract more investigators into the field who will collectively be able to solve current and future problems associated with the study of *R. oryzae*.

References

Abe A, Sone T, Sujaya IN, Saito K, Oda Y et al (2003) rDNA ITS sequence of *Rhizopus oryzae*: its application to classification and identification of lactic acid producers. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 67:1725–1731

Abe A, Oda Y, Asano K, Sone T (2006) The molecular phylogeny of the genus *Rhizopus* based on rDNA sequences. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 70:2387–2393

Abe A, Oda Y, Asano K, Sone T (2007) *Rhizopus delemar* is the proper name for *Rhizopus oryzae* fumaric-malic acid producers. Mycologia 99:714–722

Abe A, Asano K, Sone T (2010) A molecular phylogeny-based taxonomy of the genus *Rhizopus*. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 74:1325–1331

Arnaiz-Garcia ME, Alonso-Pena D, Gonzalez-Vela Mdel C, Garcia-Palomo JD, Sanz-Gimenez-Rico JR et al (2009) Cutaneous mucormycosis: report of five cases and review of the literature. J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg 62:e434–e441

Artis WM, Fountain JA, Delcher HK, Jones HE (1982) A mechanism of susceptibility to mucormycosis in diabetic ketoacidosis: transferrin and iron availability. Diabetes 31:1109–1114

Bai DM, Zhao XM, Li XG, Xu SM (2004) Strain improvement of *Rhizopus oryzae* for over-production of (+)-lactic acid and metabolic flux analysis of mutants. Biochem Eng J 18:41–48
Balajee SA, Borman AM, Brandt ME, Cano J, Cuenca-Estrella M et al (2009) Sequence-based identification of *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, and mucorales species in the clinical mycology laboratory: where are we and where should we go from here? J Clin Microbiol 47:877–884
Boeke JD, LaCroute F, Fink GR (1984) A positive selection for mutants lacking orotidine-5′-phosphate decarboxylase activity in yeast: 5-fluoro-orotic acid resistance. Mol Gen Genet 197:345–346
Boelaert JR, de Locht M, Van Cutsem J, Kerrels V, Cantinieaux B et al (1993) Mucormycosis during deferoxamine therapy is a siderophore-mediated infection. In vitro and in vivo animal studies. J Clin Invest 91:1979–1986
Chen C, Pande K, French SD, Tuch BB, Noble SM (2011) An iron homeostasis regulatory circuit with reciprocal roles in *Candida albicans* commensalism and pathogenesis. Cell Host Microbe 10:118–135
Datta R, Henry M (2006) Lactic acid: recent advances in products, processes and technologies—a review. J Chem Technol Biotechnol 81:1119–1129
Debets AJ, Swart K, Holub EF, Goosen T, Bos CJ (1990) Genetic analysis of *amdS* transformants of *Aspergillus niger* and their use in chromosome mapping. Mol Gen Genet 222:284–290
Ellis DH (1998) The zygomycetes. In: Ajello L, Hay RJ (eds) Medical mycology, 9th edn. Arnold, London, 711 pp
Erickson T, Liu L, Gueyikian A, Zhu X, Gibbons J et al (2001) Multiple virulence factors of *Cryptococcus neoformans* are dependent on *VPH1*. Mol Microbiol 42:1121–1131
Eucker J, Sezer O, Graf B, Possinger K (2001) Mucormycoses. Mycoses 44:253–260
Forgac M (1998) Structure, function and regulation of the vacuolar (H+)-ATPases. FEBS Lett 440:258–263
Fu J, Hettler E, Wickes BL (2006) Split marker transformation increases homologous integration frequency in *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Fungal Genet Biol 43:200–212
Ghosh B, Ray RR (2011) Current commercial perspective of *Rhizopus oryzae*: a review. J Appl Sci 11:2470–2486
Gryganskyi AP, Lee SC, Litvintseva AP, Smith ME, Bonito G et al (2010) Structure, function, and phylogeny of the mating locus in the *Rhizopus oryzae* complex. PLoS One 5:e15273
Haas H (2012) Iron – a key nexus in the virulence of *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Front Microbiol 3:28
Hachmeister KA, Fung DY (1993) Tempeh: a mold-modified indigenous fermented food made from soybeans and/or cereal grains. Crit Rev Microbiol 19:137–188
Hagensee ME, Bauwens JE, Kjos B, Bowden RA (1994) Brain abscess following marrow transplantation: experience at the Fred Hutchinson Cancer Research Center, 1984–1992. Clin Infect Dis 19:402–408
Hilty J, Smulian AG, Newman SL (2008) The *Histoplasma capsulatum* vacuolar ATPase is required for iron homeostasis, intracellular replication in macrophages and virulence in a murine model of histoplasmosis. Mol Microbiol 70:127–139
Hilty J, George Smulian A, Newman SL (2011) *Histoplasma capsulatum* utilizes siderophores for intracellular iron acquisition in macrophages. Med Mycol 49:633–642
Hinnen A, Hicks JB, Fink GR (1978) Transformation of yeast. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 75:1929–1933
Howard DH (1999) Acquisition, transport, and storage of iron by pathogenic fungi. Clin Microbiol Rev 12:394–404
Huang L, Wei P, Zang R, Xu Z, Cen P (2010) High-throughput screening of high-yield colonies of *Rhizopus oryzae* for enhanced production of fumaric acid. Ann Microbiol 60:287–292
Ibrahim AS (2011) Host cell invasion in mucormycosis: role of iron. Curr Opin Microbiol 14:406–411
Ibrahim AS, Spellberg B, Avanessian V, Fu Y, Edwards JE Jr (2005) *Rhizopus oryzae* adheres to, is phagocytosed by, and damages endothelial cells in vitro. Infect Immun 73:778–783

Ibrahim AS, Edwards JE Jr, Fu Y, Spellberg B (2006) Deferiprone iron chelation as a novel therapy for experimental mucormycosis. J Antimicrob Chemother 58:1070–1073

Ibrahim AS, Gebermariam T, Fu Y, Lin L, Husseiny MI et al (2007) The iron chelator deferasirox protects mice from mucormycosis through iron starvation. J Clin Invest 117:2649–2657

Ibrahim AS, Gebremariam T, Lin L, Luo G, Husseiny MI et al (2010) The high affinity iron permease is a key virulence factor required for *Rhizopus oryzae* pathogenesis. Mol Microbiol 77:587–604

Ibrahim AS, Spellberg B, Walsh TJ, Kontoyiannis DP (2012) Pathogenesis of mucormycosis. Clin Infect Dis 54(Suppl 1):S16–S22

Idnurm A, Walton FJ, Floyd A, Heitman J (2008) Identification of the sex genes in an early diverged fungus. Nature 451:193–196

Jung WH, Kronstad JW (2008) Iron and fungal pathogenesis: a case study with *Cryptococcus neoformans*. Cell Microbiol 10:277–284

Kelly JM, Hynes MJ (1985) Transformation of *Aspergillus niger* by the *amdS* gene of *Aspergillus nidulans*. EMBO J 4:475–479

Kwon-Chung KJ, Bennett JE (1992) Medical mycology. Lea and Febiger, Philadelphia, PA, 866 pp

Lanternier F, Dannaoui E, Morizot G, Elie C, Garcia-Hermoso D et al (2012) A global analysis of mucormycosis in France: the RetroZygo Study (2005–2007). Clin Infect Dis 54(Suppl 1): S35–S43

Lee SC, Corradi N, Byrnes EJ III, Torres-Martinez S, Dietrich FS et al (2008) Microsporidia evolved from ancestral sexual fungi. Curr Biol 18:1675–1679

Ma LJ, Ibrahim AS, Skory C, Grabherr MG, Burger G et al (2009) Genomic analysis of the basal lineage fungus *Rhizopus oryzae* reveals a whole-genome duplication. PLoS Genet 5:e1000549

Magee BB, Hube B, Wright RJ, Sullivan PJ, Magee PT (1993) The genes encoding the secreted aspartyl proteinases of *Candida albicans* constitute a family with at least three members. Infect Immun 61:3240–3243

McClelland CM, Wickes BL (2009) *Agrobacterium tumefaciens* as a molecular tool for the study of fungal pathogens. In: Rai M, Bridge PD (eds) Applied mycology. CAB International, Oxon, pp 239–257

Mertens JA, Skory CD, Ibrahim AS (2006) Plasmids for expression of heterologous proteins in Rhizopus oryzae. Arch Microbiol 186:41–50

Meussen BJ, de Graaff LH, Sanders JP, Weusthuis RA (2012) Metabolic engineering of *Rhizopus oryzae* for the production of platform chemicals. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 94:875–886

Michielse CB, Salim K, Ragas P, Ram AF, Kudla B et al (2004) Development of a system for integrative and stable transformation of the zygomycete *Rhizopus oryzae* by *Agrobacterium*-mediated DNA transfer. Mol Genet Genomics 271:499–510

Monod M, Capoccia S, Lechenne B, Zaugg C, Holdom M et al (2002) Secreted proteases from pathogenic fungi. Int J Med Microbiol 292:405–419

Nairz M, Schroll A, Sonnweber T, Weiss G (2010) The struggle for iron – a metal at the host-pathogen interface. Cell Microbiol 12:1691–1702

Neame P, Rayner D (1960) Mucormycosis. A report on twenty-two cases. Arch Pathol 70:261–268

Nout MJ, Kiers JL (2005) Tempe fermentation, innovation and functionality: update into the third millenium. J Appl Microbiol 98:789–805

Oda Y, Saito K, Yamauchi H, Mori M (2002) Lactic acid fermentation of potato pulp by the fungus *Rhizopus oryzae*. Curr Microbiol 45:1–4

Oda Y, Yajima Y, Kinoshita M, Ohnishi M (2003) Differences of *Rhizopus oryzae* strain in organic synthesis and fatty acid composition. Food Microbiol 20:371–375

O'Gorman CM, Fuller HT, Dyer PS (2009) Discovery of a sexual cycle in the opportunistic fungal pathogen *Aspergillus fumigatus*. Nature 457:471–474

Poltermann S, Nguyen M, Gunther J, Wendland J, Hartl A et al (2005) The putative vacuolar ATPase subunit Vma7p of *Candida albicans* is involved in vacuole acidification, hyphal development and virulence. Microbiology 151:1645–1655

Purohit JS, Dutta JR, Nanda RK, Banerjee R (2006) Strain improvement for tannase production from co-culture of *Aspergillus foetidus* and *Rhizopus oryzae*. Bioresour Technol 97:795–801
Rabie NB, Althaqafi AO (2012) *Rhizopus*-associated soft tissue infection in an immunocompetent air-conditioning technician after a road traffic accident: a case report and review of the literature. J Infect Public Health 5:109–111
Rammaert B, Lanternier F, Zahar JR, Dannaoui E, Bougnoux ME et al (2012) Healthcare-associated mucormycosis. Clin Infect Dis 54(Suppl 1):S44–S54
Record NB Jr, Ginder DR (1976) Pulmonary phycomycosis without obvious predisposing factors. JAMA 235:1256–1257
Ribes JA, Vanover-Sams CL, Baker DJ (2000) Zygomycetes in human disease. Clin Microbiol Rev 13:236–301
Rinaldi MG (1989) Zygomycosis. Infect Dis Clin North Am 3:19–41
Roden MM, Zaoutis TE, Buchanan WL, Knudsen TA, Sarkisova TA et al (2005) Epidemiology and outcome of zygomycosis: a review of 929 reported cases. Clin Infect Dis 41:634–653
Romano AH, Bright MM, Scott WE (1967) Mechanism of fumaric acid accumulation in *Rhizopus nigricans*. J Bacteriol 93:600–604
Saito K, Saito A, Ohnishi M, Oda Y (2004) Genetic diversity in *Rhizopus oryzae* strains as revealed by the sequence of lactate dehydrogenase genes. Arch Microbiol 182:30–36
Schipper MAA (1984) A revision of the genus *Rhizopus* I: the *Rhizopus stolonifer*-group and *Rhizopus oryzae*. Stud Mycol 25:1–19
Schipper MAA, Stalpers JA (1984) A revision of the genus *Rhizopus*. Stud Mycol 25:1–34
Scholer HJ, Muller E, Schipper MAA (1983) Mucorales. In: Howard DH (ed) Fungi pathogenic for humans and animals. Marcel Dekker, New York
Skory CD (2000) Isolation and expression of lactate dehydrogenase genes from *Rhizopus oryzae*. Appl Environ Microbiol 66:2343–2348
Skory CD (2002) Homologous recombination and double-strand break repair in the transformation of *Rhizopus oryzae*. Mol Genet Genomics 268:397–406
Skory CD (2003) Induction of *Rhizopus oryzae* pyruvate decarboxylase genes. Curr Microbiol 47:59–64
Skory CD (2004) Lactic acid production by *Rhizopus oryzae* transformants with modified lactate dehydrogenase activity. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 64:237–242
Skory CD, Ibrahim AS (2007) Native and modified lactate dehydrogenase expression in a fumaric acid producing isolate *Rhizopus oryzae* 99-880. Curr Genet 52:23–33
Skory CD, Freer SN, Bothast RJ (1998) Production of L-lactic acid by *Rhizopus oryzae* under oxygen limiting conditions. Biotechnol Lett 20:191–194
Steinkraus KH (1985) Indigenous fermented-food technologies for small-scale industries. Food Nutr Bull 7:21–27
Sugui JA, Losada L, Wang W, Varga J, Ngamskulrungroj P et al (2011) Identification and characterization of an *Aspergillus fumigatus* "supermater" pair. MBio 2:e00234-11
Suntornsuk W, Hang YD (2008) Strain improvement of *Rhizopus oryzae* for production of l(+)-lactic acid and glucoamylase. Lett Appl Microbiol 19:249–252
Van den Saffele JK, Boelaert JR (1996) Zygomycosis in HIV-positive patients: a review of the literature. Mycoses 39:77–84
Vitale RG, de Hoog GS, Schwarz P, Dannaoui E, Deng S et al (2012) Antifungal susceptibility and phylogeny of opportunistic members of the order mucorales. J Clin Microbiol 50:66–75
Zaoutis TE, Roilides E, Chiou CC, Buchanan WL, Knudsen TA et al (2007) Zygomycosis in children: a systematic review and analysis of reported cases. Pediatr Infect Dis J 26:723–727
Zheng Z, Luo SZ, Li XJ, Wu XF, Pan LJ et al (2009) Screening of allyl alcohol resistant mutant of *Rhizopus oryzae* and its fermentation characterization. Afr J Biotechnol 8:280–284

Chapter 12
Podospora anserina: From Laboratory to Biotechnology

Philippe Silar

12.1 Introduction

In a typical grassland or savannah, a large part of the plant biomass ends up in the digestive tracks of animals such as herbivorous mammals or birds. However, these animals are able to retrieve only part of the nutrients present in their food and release in the form of dung, a ready-to-use meal already invaded when deposited on the ground by many fungi, the coprophilous fungi. These are usually present in form of spores in the plant diet, germinate while passing through the digestive track and, after growth, have evolved special designs to disperse their spores, so as to maximise the chances that they are ingested by another herbivore. Apart from the chytrids, species from all major fungal taxa may grow and fruit on dung. Usually, they appear in a succession that somewhat reflects the evolution of terrestrial Eumycota fungi, starting with Mucoromycotina (e.g. Mucor, Phycomyces and Pilobolus) followed by basal Pezizomycotina such as Orbiliomycetes and Pezizomycetes, then supposedly more advanced ones such as Dothideomycetes, Eurotiomycetes, Leotiomycetes and Sordariomycetes. The sequence finishes with some Basidiomycota belonging to the Agaricomycetes. The succession likely reflects a combination of choices in life strategies and enzymatic equipments selected during evolution, whereby the first to appear have very little competitive ability and are able to use moderately complex carbohydrates polymers but grow and fruit fast, while the later ones use more complex food sources, i.e. lignocellulose, and have antagonistic abilities enabling them to grow and fruit slower in dung. Overall, these fungi are part of a food chain that enables materials

P. Silar (✉)
Institut des Energies de Demain, Sorbonne Paris Cité, Univ Paris Diderot, 75205 Paris Cedex 13, France

Institut de Génétique et Microbiologie, CNRS UMR 8621, Univ Paris-Sud, 91405 Orsay Cedex, France
e-mail: philippe.silar@igmors.u-psud.fr

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_12,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

contained in droppings to go back to the soils, rendering them fertile. Indeed, what better fertiliser than manure?

Among the 2–3,000 fungal species that inhabit dung obligatorily or facultatively, a few of them have been used as model organisms to study various phenomena ranging from isolation of fungal compounds and meiotic recombination to ageing and cell differentiation. However, three species have mostly been used for these studies: *Podospora anserina*, *Sordaria macrospora* and *Ascobolus immersus*. Table 12.1 presents some of their characteristics in comparison to those of the two most popular fungal models *Aspergillus nidulans* and *Neurospora crassa*. The most salient feature, especially for *P. anserina* and *S. macrospora*, is the shortness of their generation time: it is 2–3 times shorter than that of *A. nidulans* and *N. crassa*, making them excellent tools to rapidly obtain mutants. Yet, they lack conidia, which may impair some studies. However, the development of machines, such as "FastPrep", or efficient protoplast formation enabling fragmentation of mycelia into uninucleated cells makes the lack of conidia a less important drawback than before.

The three coprophilous species have now their whole genome sequence publicly available. *A. immersus* is part of the "1000 fungal genomes" project from JGI (http://1000.fungalgenomes.org/home/). *S. macrospora* has its genome published (Nowrousian et al. 2010) and is mostly utilised to study meiosis (Espagne et al. 2011; Storlazzi et al. 2010) and fruiting body development (Engh et al. 2010). *P. anserina* (Fig. 12.1) is used in a wider array of studies dealing with ageing, sexual development, prions and other non-conventional hereditary units, signal transduction and differentiation, plant biomass degradation, cell fusion and vegetative incompatibility, interactions with other fungi, mitochondrial physiology, translation, secondary metabolism, etc. Moreover, the availability of its genome sequence has enabled the development of several tools, as well as its utilisation in some biotechnology applications. The purpose of this chapter is to review the biology of *P. anserina* and to what extent the availability of genomic and postgenomic tools has furthered the research with this organism.

12.2 The Pre-genome Era

12.2.1 Early History of the Research on P. anserina

Because of the ease of its manipulation, *P. anserina* was chosen very early on as a model, first to study ascospore formation (Wolf 1912) and hyphal fusion (Buller 1933). Later, Georges Rizet worked out the complex genetic analysis resulting from the atypical ascus development linked to pseudohomothallism (Fig. 12.2; Rizet 1939, 1941) and initiated a French school of geneticists that worked with filamentous fungi (mostly *P. anserina* and *A. immersus*). The visit of Karl Esser in Rizet's laboratory (Esser 1954; Rizet and Esser 1953) further fuelled research in Germany, especially with the addition of biochemical studies (Esser 1963). This opened an era

Table 12.1 Main features of popular and not so popular fungal saprobes

	Taxonomy	Lifestyle	Growth speed	Senescence	Asexual spores	Mating system	Generation time	Fruit body type
Podospora anserina	Sordariales Lasiosphaeriaceae	Coprophilous (=fimicolous)	7 mm/day	Early onset	None	Pseudohomothallic	7 days	Perithecium
Sordaria macrospora	Sordariales Sordariaceae	Coprophilous (=fimicolous)	3 cm/day	Late onset	None	Homothallic	7 days	Perithecium
Ascobolus immersus	Pezizales Ascobolaceae	Coprophilous (=fimicolous)	3 cm/day	Unknown	None	Heterothallic	10–15 days	Apothecium
Neurospora crassa	Sordariales Sordariaceae	Carbonicolous (pyrophilous)	7 cm/day	Only in few strains	Micro- and macroconidia	Heterothallic	2–3 weeks	Perithecium
Aspergillus nidulans	Eurotiales Trichocomaceae	Soil and litter saprobe	8 mm/day	Unknown	Conidia	Homothallic	2–3 weeks	Cleistothecium

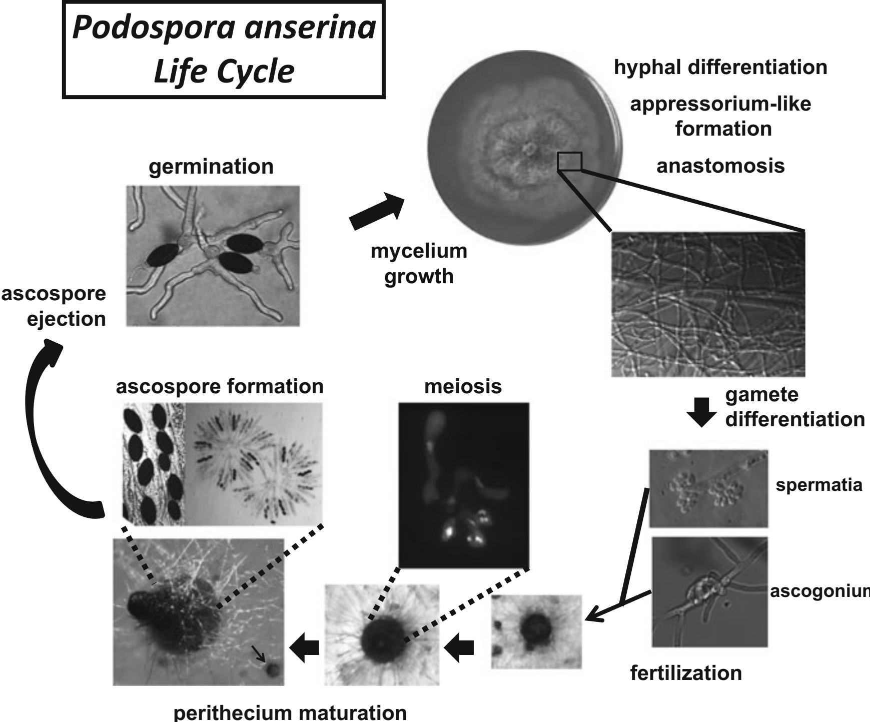


Fig. 12.1 *Podospora anserina* life cycle. See text for details

when several important biological phenomena were discovered and their genetic determinants elucidated.

The "barrage" phenomenon lead to the study of vegetative (heterokaryon) incompatibility and to the discovery of an unusual form of inheritance (Beisson-Schecroun 1962; Rizet 1952; Rizet and Delannoy 1950), which is now known to be due to a prion (Coustou et al. 1997; Maddelein et al. 2002; Ritter et al. 2005; see Sect. 4.2). The discovery that *P. anserina* cannot be cultivated infinitely permitted studies on senescence (Marcou 1961; Rizet 1953) and mitochondrial physiology (Cummings et al. 1978; Jamet-Vierny et al. 1980; Tudzynski and Esser 1977). Note that Rizet published his study 12 years before the seminal paper of Leonard Hayflick disproving immortality of human cells (Hayflick 1965). Among the other topics studied are the first fungal meiotic drive (now known as spore killer; Padieu and Bernet 1967), translation accuracy (Coppin-Raynal et al. 1988; Picard 1973), rhythmic growth (Chevaugeon and van Nguyen 1969; Esser 1969) and fruiting body formation (Esser and Graw 1980; Labarere and Bernet 1979; Lysek 1976). In parallel, field studies of coprophilous fungi showed that *P. anserina* was frequently recovered from dung (Furuya and Udagawa 1972; Lundqvist 1972). At the end of these early studies, the ecology and the life cycle were fully known, sexual reproduction was mastered in the lab on fully defined media, genetic analysis

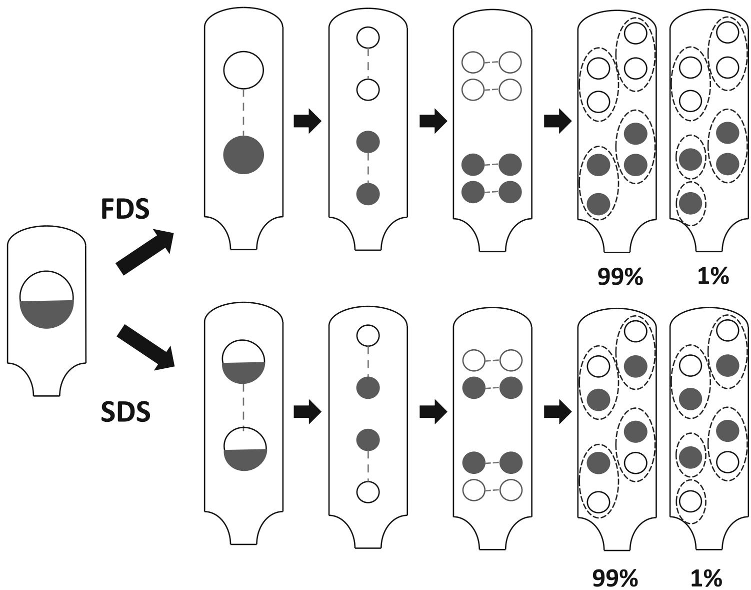


Fig. 12.2 *Podospora anserina* ascus structure. Most asci contain four binucleated ascospores. In a few (~1 %) asci, a "binucleated" (or big) spore is replaced by two "uninucleated" (or small) ones. In Fig. 12.1, enlargement shows a typical 4-spored ascus along with a 5-spored one. FDS asci originate from meiosis in which no crossing over occurs between the marker and its centromere. Each half of the ascus is genetically homogeneous. In SDS asci, one crossing over between the marker and its centromere yields asci having four ascospores heterokaryotic for the marker. FDS to SDS ratio depends upon the position of the marker with respect to its centromere. Centromere-linked marker have a 100 % FDS, while telomere linked may reach almost 100 % SDS (instead of 66 % due to multiple crossing overs), thanks to a crossing-over interference which limit crossing to one in some regions

used routinely (Marcou et al. 1982) and a genetic transformation system was available (Begueret et al. 1984; Brygoo and Debuchy 1985).

12.2.2 Ecology and Life Cycle of P. anserina

Podospora anserina (Ces.) Niessl, also known as *Pleurage anserina* (Ces.) Kuntze or *Podospora pauciseta* (Ces.) Traverso, appears to grow exclusively on dung, although there is one report indicating that it may also live as a plant endophyte (Matasyoh et al. 2011). However, the strain isolated by Matasyoh et al. is not available for crossing, rendering final attribution to the *P. anserina* species difficult. *P. anserina* has been found in many regions, including northern and southern Europe, Brazil, New Zealand, Kenya, etc., on droppings from a large array of herbivore species, suggesting that this species is now cosmopolitan. This lifestyle has two important consequences on *P. anserina* life cycle. Firstly, its reproduction

is purely sexual, which may result from the necessity of actively dispersing its spores away from its dung substrate (herbivores tend not to eat their faeces), a feature easily achieved by perithecia, but not so much by conidiophores. Secondly, its restricted biotope is likely responsible for development of senescence, a feature shared by other coprophilous fungi (Geydan et al. 2012), as in nature *P. anserina* likely never grows enough to actually present senescence. Finally, *P. anserina* is one of the fungi that fruits late in the succession on dung. This is correlated with an enzymatic repertoire that enables it to degrade lignin to access cellulose (Espagne et al. 2008) and a defence mechanism, called Hyphal Interference, which likely permits *P. anserina* to eliminate some competing fungi (Silar 2012).

P. anserina is very easy to grow, and the complete cycle (Fig. 12.1) can be mastered by using two media. The standard growth and crossing medium (M2 or SU) contains dextrin as the carbon source and urea as the nitrogen source. The pH is maintained at 7 by a phosphate buffer and minerals as well as biotin and thiamine are added as traces. On this medium the fungus grows at a rate of 7 mm/day and starts to differentiate male (spermatia) and female (ascogonia) gametes after 3 days. Spermatia are not conidia and they are unable to germinate, although previous reports suggest they may do so in some conditions (Beisson-Schecroun 1962; Esser and Prillinger 1972). Alternatively, hyphal fragment can act as male gamete. If gametes compatible for mating are present, fertilisation ensues and the fruiting body matures in 4 days, yielding a progeny of hundreds of ascospores that are continuously expelled for up to 5 more days. *P. anserina* is pseudohomothallic, meaning that it is formally a heterothallic fungus with two mating types (*mat*+ and *mat*−) and fertilisation is possible only between *mat*+ and *mat*− gametes; however, ascospores are binucleated and nuclei usually contain alternative versions of the mating type. Hence, the mycelium germinating from *P. anserina* ascospores is normally heterokaryotic and self-fertile. This facilitates genetic analysis, because *mat*+ and *mat*− wild-type strains differ only by a small region around the mating-type locus. On standard medium, ascospore germination occurs with a very low efficiency (about 0.01 % if the ascospores are not collected and about 1 % if they are collected on a needle). This is likely due to the fact that in nature, ascospores are triggered to germinate by passage through the digestive tract of an herbivore. This can easily be recreated in the lab, by incubating the ascospores on a medium containing ammonium acetate and Bacto Peptone. Ascospores transferred one by one at the tip of a needle on this medium germinate at nearly 100 % efficiency. All protocols to work with *P. anserina* are currently available at http://podospora.igmors.u-psud.fr/. This site also hosts the latest version of the *P. anserina* genome as well as information and bibliography on this organism.

12.2.3 Doing Genetic Analysis with **P. anserina**

The early studies identified many mutants, obtained spontaneously or induced by UV or chemical treatments, and segregation analyses resulted in a genetic map with

nearly 150 markers located on seven nuclear linkage groups (Marcou et al. 1982) and a mitochondrial chromosome (Belcour et al. 1978), which was in line with the seven chromosomes observed during meiosis (Beckett and Wilson 1968; Franke 1962).

Although in decline during the 1980s and 1990s, identification of mutants affected in various processes is still going on (Haedens et al. 2005; P. Silar, unpublished data) and, thanks to the new "next-generation sequencing" (NGS) technologies, may regain favour. To this end, UV mutagenesis procedures are now improved, owing to easier protoplast recovery and new tools for mycelium fragmentation. Indeed, protoplasting (Belcour 1976) results in formation of ~5 μm roundish cells, many of which appear uninucleated. Typically, 10^4 protoplasts are spread delicately onto a Petri plate containing M2 medium osmostabilised with 200 g/L of sucrose, irradiated with by 200–300 J/m^2 of UV at 254 nm (such as those produced in cross-linkers for DNA) and left in the dark overnight. Typically, around 100 thalli regenerate after 1 or 2 days from such plates and can be replica plated individually to screen mutants as desired. Alternatively, for direct screens, such as those of suppressors of mutants affected in sexual reproduction, mycelium can be fragmented in a "FastPrep" or similar machine, spread onto M2 plates and regenerated overnight. This yields plates finely covered with a mycelium veil that can then be irradiated as above. Note that additional methods of mutagenesis may be used depending on the mutants desired.

The next step of mutant analysis is mapping, which thanks to *P. anserina* ascus structure (Fig. 12.2) is quite simple: ordered tetrad analysis can be made from unordered asci! A cross with wild type enables to check if the mutant phenotype is caused by a single mutation by observing 2:2 segregation on small ascospores or five-spored asci. First-division segregation (FDS) and second-division segregation (SDS) analysis from the same cross permits a first rough mapping of the mutation with respect to the centromere, and analysis of the phenotypes of strains issued from SDS asci gives some clue as to whether the mutation is dominant or recessive. Moreover, heterokaryon formation is very straightforward and rapid in this species: mixing of mycelium fragments results in a heterokaryotic culture overnight, which facilitates dominance/recessivity and "complementation" tests. To locate mutations more precisely, the genetic map of *P. anserina* (Fig. 12.3) is now replete with markers, often generated by gene replacement with a dominant resistance marker to antifungal substances (see next section). Alternatively, we now have the complete genome sequence of the distantly related "T" strain available (P. Silar et al. unpublished data). This strain presents numerous polymorphisms with the S ("big S") and s ("small s") strains that are typically used to screen for mutants, the S strain being the first one sequenced (Espagne et al. 2008). Analysis of polymorphic markers in a S $\times$ T cross has confirmed and refined the assembly of the genome of the S strain (Espagne et al. 2008), and similar analysis has been used to identify mutations through positional cloning (Adam et al. 2012; Espagne et al. 2011; Sellem et al. 2009). New-generation sequencing techniques now allow for more rapid identification of the mutant genes (see Sect. 4.1).

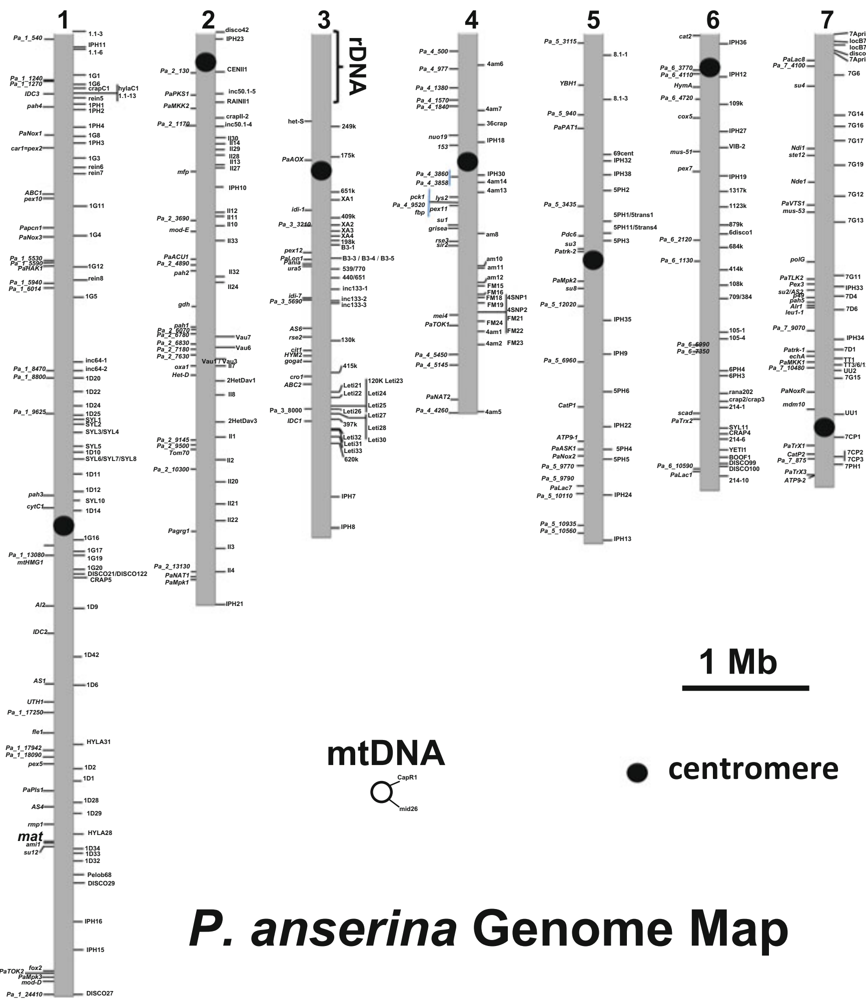


Fig. 12.3 *Podospora anserina* genome map. On this map of strain S genome, which is in scale with the sequence and not the genetic distances, classical genetic markers are on the *left* and polymorphisms (mostly microsatellites and indels) with strain T on the *right*

Mutants obtained through genetic screens are stored easily at −80 °C, simply by adding small 2 mm × 2 mm × 2 mm mycelium explants to 1 ml of RG medium, which is M2 medium supplemented with 200 g/L of sucrose. In such conditions, wild type and mutants can be frozen and thawed several times without loss of vigour. This method may be of widespread utilisation as in our hands all Eumycota (alas not Oomycetes) can be safely stored for an extended period of time (our oldest strains have been stored for now nearly 20 years).

12.2.4 Genetic Transformation of P. anserina

Early studies also yielded an efficient transformation system. It is based on the transformation of protoplasts with the help of PEG. It does not require complex centrifugation steps in sucrose or KCl gradients for protoplast purification, and those can been stored for an extended period of time before utilisation. The first description of transformation was made with a plasmid, which lacked a dominant marker (Stahl et al. 1982). Then, systems using either uracil auxotrophy (Begueret et al. 1984) or suppressor tRNAs correcting leucine auxotrophy (Brygoo and Debuchy 1985) were developed. Now, dominant makers conferring resistance to drugs are usually used. Four are routinely used in our lab, resistance to hygromycin B, phleomycin, nourseothricin and geneticin, and special vectors have been designed for easy cloning, firstly with hygromycin B and phleomycin (Silar 1995) and now with nourseothricin and geneticin (H. Lalucque and P. Silar, unpublished data). Further improvements on this transformation system have been made to delete or replace genes since the availability of the genome sequence [(El-Khoury et al. 2008) and see Sect. 3.3].

12.3 The Genome of *P. anserina*

12.3.1 The Roadmap Towards the Genome Sequence

With the release of the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* genome sequence and the proposals for sequencing other genetic models (*Escherichia coli*, Drosophila, Arabidopsis, etc.), the French Podospora community decided very early on (in 1999) to sequence the *P. anserina* genome in order to access new tools that would facilitate research with this model. A sequence of the complete mitochondrial genome was already available since 1990 (Cummings et al. 1990), and for a long time it was the longest contig present in the GenBank database! The first pilot project aimed at sequencing the region surrounding the centromere of chromosome 5 was proposed in 1999 and accepted in September 2000 by Genoscope, the French sequencing agency. Five bacterial artificial chromosomes covering 500 kb around the centromere were completely sequenced and manually annotated (Silar et al. 2003). These first results showed that the *P. anserina* was likely to be poor in repeated sequences and introns and defined consensus for intron splicing and translation start sites.

The pilot study was then followed with acceptance by Genoscope in 2002 of a 0.5-fold coverage of the genome (at that time the *N. crassa* genome became available and could be used to help with assembly) and in 2003 of the complete sequence with a 10-fold coverage. The project was also proposed by the Broad Institute (at that time the Whitehead Institute) in its “October 10, 2003, White Paper” of the Fungal Genome Initiative, and after agreement between the two

agencies, Genoscope proceeded with sequencing and assembly. 33 large scaffolds comprising 1,196 contigs were obtained along with a few more small ones devoid of unique regions. To help annotation, about 50,000 cDNA were also sequenced from both ends. Annotation was custom-made with a mixture of comparative predictions, using the *N. crassa*, Swiss-Prot and GenBank data, mapping to the sequenced ESTs and de novo prediction, as, at that time, purely de novo prediction programmes did not perform very well. The genome sequence and its analysis were published in 2008 (Espagne et al. 2008). Since then Genoscope has generated sequences with the 454 technology and over 20-fold coverage, and we have generated over 100× coverage of the genome with the Illumina technology. This has enabled us to correct numerous sequencing errors (P. Silar et al. unpublished data). A few remaining gaps located in unique sequences were manually filled by PCR amplification and sequencing of the recovered products. Today, the genome is thus assembled into seven large scaffolds corresponding to the seven nuclear chromosomes and a small one corresponding to the mitochondrial genome (Fig. 12.3). All scaffolds are free of gaps in the unique regions (but unfortunately not in repeated ones!), and resequencing shows that they contain minimal amounts of sequence errors (some regions rich in similar bases may still contain a few errors). Manual examination of the annotation has also enabled us to correct mistakes, to reclassify some predicted CDS as pseudogenes and also to create new CDS. Although not yet perfect, the community has now at its disposal a very good quality annotated sequence. All data are available at http://podospora.igmors.u-psud.fr and are updated frequently.

12.3.2 Main Features of the Genome Sequence

The *P. anserina* genome has a size of about 35.5 Mb, which is similar to that of related species, and a GC content of about 50 %. Presently, it contains 10,635 CDS, most of which are only “predicted” and not fully ascertained by any other means afforded by the gene-by-gene analysis. However, microarray analysis evidenced expression for most of them (see Sect. 3.3). Such number is typical for filamentous fungi. Comparisons show that *N. crassa* and *P. anserina* share about 6,800 genes with an average of 60 % identities in orthologous CDS. Each species has thus nearly 3–4,000 CDS, which are not present in the other species (Espagne et al. 2008). Actually, *P. anserina* and *N. crassa* genetic divergence is more pronounced than that of mammals and fishes! This is also reflected by the overall lack of gene synteny between the two species, most genes being on the same chromosomes but in different positions and orders: the largest synteny block is 37 genes surrounding the mating type, in a region devoid of recombination during meiosis in *P. anserina* and *N. crassa* (Espagne et al. 2008). Despite the widespread belief that *P. anserina* is a facsimile of *N. crassa*, the genome data clearly show that it is not the case, which reflects their completely different lifestyles (Table 12.1). Like the genes of the other Pezizomycotina, *P. anserina* genes are tightly packed with often less than

1 kb between consecutive genes. They contain few introns (frequently none or a single one) of short sizes (~50–60 nucleotides), and some alternative splicing, antisense RNA and "non-coding" transcription units have been evidenced (Espagne et al. 2008).

The total amount of the repeated regions is unknown because telomeres, centromeres and the rDNA are poorly assembled and a few short scaffolds comprising only repeated regions are not yet incorporated into the assembly. Several class I and class II transposons are present, often in clusters associated with segmental duplication, and represent about 3.5 % of the genome. Lack of obvious mutations in the CDS of the transposases and the reverse transcriptases in some copies suggests that some are still functional. Confirming this, the de novo insertion of a "rainette" DNA transposon has recently been detected (M. Dequard-Chablat, personal communication). Segmental duplications represent about 1.5 % of the genome and are nearly always close to transposons, suggesting that they are likely associated with incorrect transposition events. Most repeated sequences have traces of repeat-induced point mutations (RIP) showing that in the long term this phenomenon is indeed able to inactivate potentially harmful sequences, although in *P. anserina* this phenomenon is much less efficient than that in *N. crassa* (Bouhouche et al. 2004; Coppin and Silar 2007; Graïa et al. 2001). This lesser efficiency is correlated with the presence in the genome of a few multigenic families, including the Het genes involved in vegetative/heterokaryon incompatibility, whose evolution may even be fuelled by RIP (Paoletti et al. 2007). Finally, a few repeated sequences of unknown affinities have been discovered, some of which could code for RNAs with various functions (Espagne et al. 2008).

Overall, the genome of *P. anserina* does not present any obvious structural features that would make it different from those of the other Pezizomycotina. In this sense, *N. crassa* with its strong RIP may be less typical than *P. anserina* (Galagan et al. 2003). With respect to its coding content, *P. anserina* appears to possess classic amounts of genes for primary and secondary metabolism (see Sect. 4.3), transporters, signalling, cytoskeleton, basic molecular biology processes as well as a large proportion of CDS with unknown functions that await characterisation.

12.3.3 Tools Created by the Genome Project

In addition to providing important information on the biology of *P. anserina*, the genome project has also generated a set of tools accelerating research with this organism. Firstly, an interactive website dedicated to the fungus (http://podospora.igmors.u-psud.fr) was set up. On this site, information on *P. anserina* is available, and BLAST analyses against the genome, the predicted CDS, the EST dataset and the raw sequence traces can be performed. Chromatograms are available at the NCBI Trace Archive if needed. Moreover, the *P. anserina* genome data have been

integrated to the FUNGIpath resource (Grossetete et al. 2010), which enables rapid location of metabolic pathways of *P. anserina* and orthologous gene in other fungi.

All DNA banks generated by the project, including 3-kb, 12 kb, BAC and cosmids are available for research purposes and are used, for example, in transformation experiments. cDNAs of the EST project are also available. Some are cloned into a yeast expression vector under the control of the strong PGK promoter and may be directly transformed into *S. cerevisiae* for transgenic expression (Espagne et al. 2008).

The genome assembly also required verification, which was done by establishing a new genetic map with more than 120 polymorphic markers (Espagne et al. 2008). These markers, along with some older ones (Coppin and Silar 2007; Dequard-Chablat and Silar 2006) and numerous new ones discovered since (Fig. 12.3), are now available for mapping genes during positional cloning (Adam et al. 2012; Espagne et al. 2011; Sellem et al. 2009) and also for locating crossing overs (Espagne et al. 2011).

12.4 After the Genome: New Tools for Fundamental and Applied Research

12.4.1 New Tools Created After the Genome Project

Since the release of the genome sequence, additional tools have been developed. Firstly, strains devoid of their *mus51* gene involved in non-homologous recombination were constructed by replacing the *mus51* coding sequence with a phleomycin resistance marker (El-Khoury et al. 2008) or the *su8-1* suppressor tRNA (Lambou et al. 2008). As described earlier in *N. crassa* (Ninomiya et al. 2004), recombination proceeds almost exclusively between homologous regions in these strains, which facilitates gene inactivation. Without *mus51* inactivation, plasmid transformation could be messy with tandem insertions of several copies often truncated (Razanamparany and Bégueret 1988; Rossignol and Silar 1996). Nevertheless, cosmids containing 40 kb of genomic DNA often integrate through homologous recombination in wild type (Picard et al. 1987). However, these integrations are unstable and excise during meiosis by a single crossing over event (Coppin-Raynal et al. 1989; Picard et al. 1987). For gene deletion, many strategies may be followed, including one similar to the high-throughput method used for inactivating the whole set of *N. crassa* genes (Bidard et al. 2011; Colot et al. 2006). In our lab, the strategy that we found most effective is the "split marker" described in Fig. 12.4. This method requires two successive PCR reaction sets and the co-transformation of two DNA fragments carrying part of the deletion cassette. *P. anserina* finishes the job by making three homologous recombination events. In a typical experiment, 5–50 transformants may be recovered, over 80 % of them being correctly inactivated, as judged by Southern blot analysis. Because the

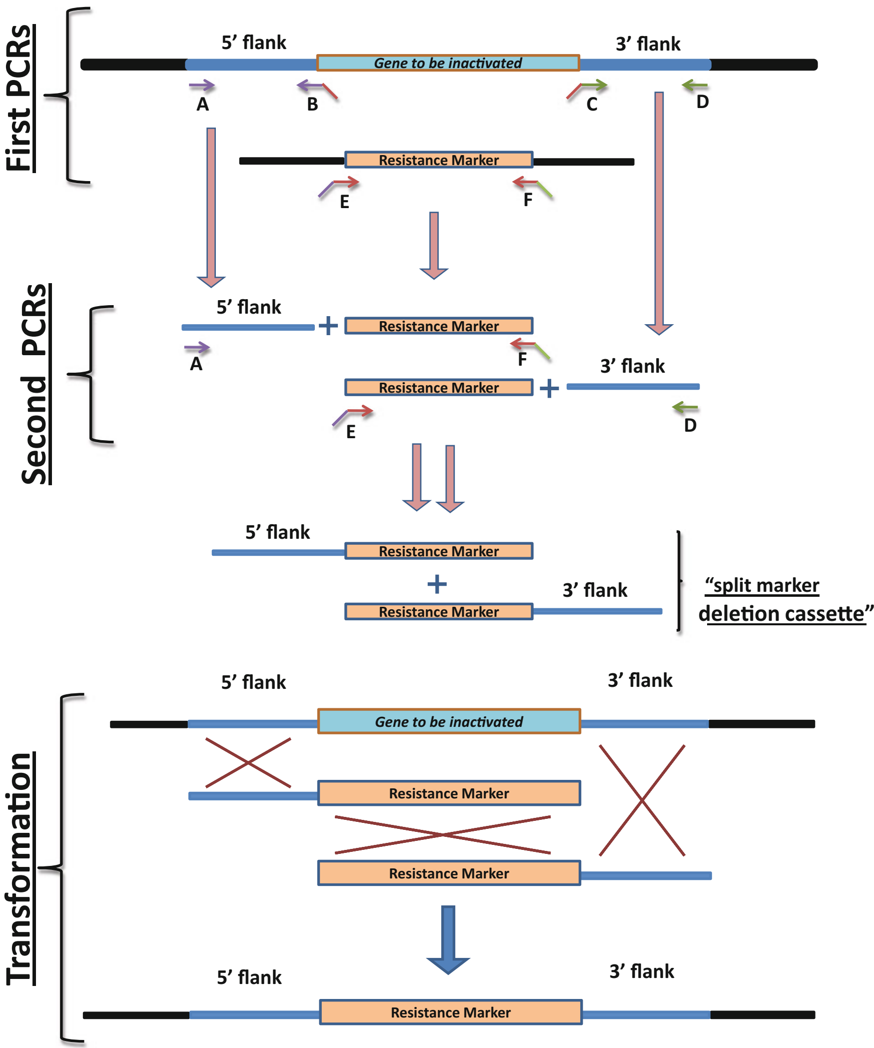


Fig. 12.4 Gene inactivation with the "split marker" method. In the first step, two PCR reactions amplify the 5′ and 3′ flanking regions of the gene to be deleted using primer couples (A, B) and (C, D) respectively; a third PCR reaction amplifies the resistance marker using primers E and F. To enable fusions, primers B and C and primers E and F contain complementary sequences. In the second step, two separate PCR reactions fuse the 5′ flanking fragment with the resistance marker and the other the 3′ flanking fragment with the resistance marker using primer couples (A, F) and (E, D), respectively. A 2-piece deletion cassette is obtained with the resistance marker with either one of the flanking region: the split marker deletion cassette. The two fragments are introduced together by transformation into *P. anserina*. Thanks to three recombination events (*red crosses*), the gene is then deleted and replaced by the resistance marker

sexual cycle is so easy to undergo, the primary transformants are backcrossed to the wild type, and "clean" homokaryotic strains inactivated for the gene and devoid of the *mus51* inactivated allele are recovered in the progeny.

Using the *mus51*-deleted strains, green fluorescent protein (GFP) tags may also be added through a single recombination event at the end of any gene enabling to localise the protein through GFP fluorescence (Malagnac et al. 2013). Interestingly, in this case the tagged protein is expressed thanks to the natural promoter of the gene, which remains in its proper chromosomal location. In addition, two vectors that target the integration of exogenous DNA at two defined loci in single copies have been created to use with *mus51* deletion (Déquard-Chablat et al. 2012). They should permit to better monitor construct expression and make, for example, comparison between alleles more straightforward.

Down to single nucleotide, changes within the *P. anserina* genome may also be introduced using the *mus51*-inactivated strains (El-Khoury et al. 2008). A strain carrying both mating-type loci in tandem has been created this way (E. Coppin and R. Debuchy, personal communication). In this strain, the *mat*+ idiomorph was introduced, without additional sequences, upstream of the mat− idiomorph, recreating a composite mating-type locus resembling that of the homothallic *S. macrospora* (Poggeler et al. 1997). This PM154 strain is self-fertile as a homokaryon and can also fertilise mat+ and mat− strains: however, meiosis and spore formation are not as efficient as in a *mat*+ × *mat*− crosses (likely because haploid nuclei engage in meiosis and abort). It is presently used to select for recessive mutations affecting fruiting body formation (P. Silar, unpublished data).

Agilent microarrays have also been designed and optimised for the 10,556 CDS defined by the genome project (Bidard et al. 2010). These are able to probe with high statistical significance the transcriptional expression of more than 10,000 genes (Bidard et al. 2012). They have been used to detect genes differently transcribed between the *mat*+ and *mat*− strains (Bidard et al. 2011), during mycelium growth (Bidard et al. 2012), perithecium development (V. Berteaux-Lecellier and F. Bidard, personal communication) and ascospore germination (M. Dequard-Chablat, personal communication). We thus now have an overview of the transcriptomes of *P. anserina* during its major developmental stages in laboratory conditions.

With the advances of the new sequencing technology (Next Generation Sequencing or NGS), resequencing genomes is affordable and turns out to be the cheapest way to identify mutations. To this end, UV-induced mutants are backcrossed five times with the wild type to eliminate spurious mutations. Genomic DNA is then sequenced in multiplex (e.g. a single Illumina lane can be used to sequence the genome of three strains with coverage of more than 40-fold, which is more than enough to detect mutations). Moreover, strains carrying two different mutations to be identified may be constructed, which permits to cut costs even more. Analysis with the SAMtools package (Li et al. 2009) efficiently identifies the mutated sequence in the generated sequences. If several candidate mutations are detected, genetic mapping analysis may help to narrow the search for the true culprit (see Sect. 2.3). Final identification can be made using the molecular tools

already available for *P. anserina*; especially, transformation with a DNA fragment encompassing the actual mutation should restore a wild-type phenotype (if the mutation is recessive!). Papers in which mutations are identified this way should be published shortly (P. Silar et al. unpublished data). In comparison, the sib selection (e.g. Berteaux-Lecellier et al. 1995; Turcq et al. 1990) and positional cloning methods (Adam et al. 2012; Espagne et al. 2011; Sellem et al. 2009) used previously are more time consuming and expensive. This should foster the utilisation of forward genetics, instead of reverse genetics, to gain insight into the mechanisms of many biological processes as presented in the next section.

12.4.2 *The Main Areas that Benefit from the Research with* P. anserina

With nearly 600 publications indexed in “PubMed”, including nearly 250 from the last 10 years, research with *P. anserina* is fairly active. It is thus impossible in the scope of this chapter to present a comprehensive review. Only active fields of research with the most relevant references will be briefly presented.

The first major field of research, both historically and in terms of publication, is senescence. The early works (Marcou 1961) suggested that this phenomenon is triggered by the appearance and subsequent exponential amplification of a cytoplasmic and infectious “determinant”, whose nature is at the present time still unknown (Jamet-Vierny et al. 1999). However, cytosolic translation (Belcour et al. 1991; Silar et al. 2001) and especially mitochondria (Cummings et al. 1979; Jamet-Vierny et al. 1980; Tudzynski and Esser 1977) have been implicated as major factors. This has led to numerous studies that connect mitochondrial physiology, including its role in apoptosis, with longevity control and abnormal mitochondrial DNA molecule accumulation (e.g. Adam et al. 2012; El-Khoury and Sainsard-Chanet 2010; Rexroth et al. 2012; Scheckhuber et al. 2011; Sellem et al. 2009; van Diepeningen et al. 2010). Respiration is likely one of the key factors for senescence, as diminution of the respiratory activity leads to increased lifespan (Dufour et al. 2000; Sellem et al. 2007) and restoration of the electron flow by an alternative oxidase restored senescence (Lorin et al. 2001). Most research is relevant to general ageing as the factors discovered in *P. anserina* are likely to be conserved in human (Fischer et al. 2013; Osiewacz et al. 2010; Scheckhuber et al. 2007; Scheckhuber and Osiewacz 2008; van Diepeningen et al. 2010).

The second active line or research is that of prion biology. Indeed, an unusual case of inheritance discovered 70 years ago (Beisson-Schecroun 1962; Rizet and Delannoy 1950) is now demonstrated to be due to the prion properties of the Het-s protein involved in vegetative incompatibility (Coustou et al. 1997; Maddelein et al. 2002; Seuring et al. 2012). Because the Het-s proved to be more tractable than the other prion proteins, it has been used to decipher the structural determinants of prion formation (Greenwald et al. 2010; Ritter et al. 2005; Wasmer et al. 2008). It

has also enabled to clarify the role of prions. On the one hand, the Het-s prion acts as a detrimental selfish element during meiosis (Dalstra et al. 2003), and on the other hand, it is involved in the incompatibility reaction which prevents the spreading of deleterious genetic elements and is thus maintained at a balanced level in natural populations (Debets et al. 2012).

Third, developmental processes accompanying the life cycle, including ascospore ejection (Yafetto et al. 2008) and germination (Lambou et al. 2008; Malagnac et al. 2004), hypha differentiation (Brun et al. 2009) and fruiting body formation (Coppin et al. 2012; Espagne et al. 2011; Grognet et al. 2012; Jamet-Vierny et al. 2007; Malagnac et al. 2004; Peraza-Reyes et al. 2011; Silar 2011) are intensely studied in *P. anserina*. More integrated behaviours of the mycelium are also under investigation. These include the mechanisms of cell death during the vegetative incompatibility reaction (Pinan-Lucarre et al. 2007; Seuring et al. 2012) and crippled growth, an epigenetic cell degeneration caused by a non-conventional hereditary unit based on MAP kinases (Haedens et al. 2005; Kicka et al. 2006; Lalucque et al. 2012; Silar et al. 1999). The recognition phenomena that accompany these mechanisms are also under scrutiny: gamete recognition during fertilisation (Bidard et al. 2011; Coppin et al. 2005; Turgeon and Debuchy 2007), self-versus-non-self recognition during vegetative incompatibility (Chevanne et al. 2009, 2010; Paoletti et al. 2007) or interspecies recognition during Hyphal Interference (Paoletti and Saupe 2009; Silar 2005, 2012).

Although most of the phenomena presented above may appear restricted to *P. anserina* and closely related fungi, they are in fact archetypes of larger classes of processes that are universally present in all domains of life: How cells recognise each other? How cells die and how cells transmit information not directly encoded in their DNA to their daughter cells (epigenetic phenomenon)? How are the regulatory networks that regulate cell growth and differentiation wired? etc. There is no doubt that *P. anserina* still has much to offer as a convenient experimental model for research conducted on such topics. Moreover, because it is related to *N. crassa*, yet often presents contrasting characteristics, comparison between the two species is fruitful, especially if one seeks to encompass the behavioural diversity of fungi.

12.4.3 **P. anserina***: Its Gene Repertoire and Its Application in Biotechnology*

The *P. anserina* genome sequence has uncovered a plethora of genes encoding enzymes that in nature help the fungus to successfully invade its growth substrate and leave an abundant progeny, and some interestingly may have potential application in biotechnology.

Analysis of the CAZy repertoire showed that *P. anserina* has a large repertoire of enzymes involved in cellulose and xylan hydrolysis, but a smaller one for pectin

degradation (Espagne et al. 2008). *P. anserina* also lacks invertase and other GH32 enzymes and is unable to use saccharose or inulin as carbon source. This is in line with the fact that this fungus is rather late in the succession of fungi fruiting on dung: easy to digest carbon sources, such as saccharose, inulin and pectin, are likely no longer available, and *P. anserina* must be able to scavenge those that remain, i.e. xylan and cellulose. More unexpected was the discovery of many genes involved in lignin breakdown including 10 laccases/copper radical oxidases, 29 glucose/methanol/choline (GMC) oxidoreductases, 2 cellobiose dehydrogenases, 1 pyranose, 1 quinone, 1 copper radical and 1 galactose oxidase, 1 versatile peroxidase and 4 vanillyl-alcohol oxidases (Espagne et al. 2008; Poggeler 2011; P. Silar unpublished data). While the final proof of actual ligninolytic activity in *P. anserina* awaits the demonstration of mineralisation of lignin by chemical analysis, several arguments suggest that *P. anserina* is able to degrade lignin. Firstly, most of the enzymes harbour a secretion signal, suggesting that they act outside the cells. Secondly and interestingly, *P. anserina* is able to grow better on medium containing lignin as sole carbon source than on water agar (Espagne et al. 2008). Possibly, *P. anserina* is able to scavenge some usable carbon from lignin. Thirdly, it can complete its cycle on wood-derived materials, such as wood shavings or toothpicks! It is therefore able to efficiently degrade such food sources, possibly by partially removing lignin to gain access to the cellulose fibres. Other ascomycetes have demonstrated ligninolytic activities, including *P. chrysogenum* (Rodriguez et al. 1996), *Fusaria* (Lozovaya et al. 2006; Regalado et al. 1997) and especially many Xylariaceae, Sordariomycetes related to *P. anserina* common in decaying wood, which have a demonstrated brown rot ability (Pointing et al. 2003). It was recently established that brown rot (partial degradation of lignin) has evolved after white rot (complete degradation of lignin) in the Agaricomycetes (Floudas et al. 2012). The former rot being less energy consumptive than the latter is likely a more evolved strategy. Conceivably, coprophilous ascomycetes like *P. anserina* have evolved directly some rot akin to brown rot, as no ascomycete white rot is presently known.

In addition to producing enzymes, *P. anserina* differentiate dedicated hyphae resembling appressorium-like hyphae to penetrate the biomass (Brun et al. 2009), and the underlying signalling pathways are being explored (Lalucque et al. 2012). This permits a digestion from inside the material, which greatly accelerates the process (Brun et al. 2009) and likely increases recovery of energetic compounds to fuel reproduction (Malagnac et al. 2008). The availability of an efficient genetic analysis now permits to better define the modalities of biomass degradation in a model fungus, a feat not so easy to perform in Basidiomycetes in which gene inactivation is often not straightforward. For example, we recently genetically demonstrated the necessity of catalase for efficient lignin, but not cellulose, breakdown (Bourdais et al. 2012), likely to protect from the reactive oxygen species (ROS) associated with lignin depolymerisation. Intriguingly, inactivation of some catalase genes appears to increase the ability of the fungus to scavenge nutrient from wood, showing that a delicate balance in ROS production and elimination must be achieved to permit both efficient degradation and healthy growth and

reproduction. *P. anserina*, like *N. crassa* (Coradetti et al. 2012; Tian et al. 2009), is thus a good model to genetically study lignocellulose breakdown (Bey et al. 2013), especially with respect to the developmental processes involved in biomass penetration (Brun et al. 2009), which will have to be mastered if filamentous fungi are to be used in the future to directly transform waste products into valuable compounds. Moreover, its genes have been used to improve biomass saccharification by *Trichoderma* (Couturier et al. 2011; Turbe-Doan et al. 2012) and to produce vanillin (Hansen et al. 2009) or muconic acid (Curran et al. 2013), already showing exploitation in the bioenergy and food industries.

Another area in which *P. anserina* enzymes may be valuable is the remediation of polluted soils. Indeed, fungi with their peculiar lifestyle and their non-specific enzymes acting on plant biomass are likely in the future to be major organisms in pollution removal strategies (Harms et al. 2011; Silar et al. 2011). Often targeted fungi are basidiomycetes, because their enzymatic machinery appears more effective, or common soil ascomycetes such as Fusaria and to a lesser extent *Trichoderma*, as these seem to persist in soils (unlike the basidiomycetes). Preliminary experiments on the remediation of soils containing the toxic arylamine 3,4 dichloroaniline (DCA) indicate that *P. anserina* may efficiently inactivate this highly toxic pollutant by acetylation (Martins et al. 2009). It does so thanks to two acetyl transferases PaNat1 and PaNat2. PaNat2 appears to be the most important and is presently the enzyme that most efficiently acetylates DCA. Cosmopolitan coprophilous fungi may thus offer additional candidates for efficient removal of pollutants. What spectrum of molecules they are able to remove is yet unknown. However, the plethora of cytochrome P450 and oxidases encoded in the genome of *P. anserina* suggest that they may be able to detoxify a large spectrum of compounds. This is not unexpected as in their dung biotope they must be able to remove noxious metabolites secreted by competing bacteria and fungi, as well as those that may remain in the plant debris. Interestingly, these fungi are not known to generate disease in plant, animal or human and may be competitive in soils. They also often lack conidia and have short lifespans, which may prove valuable to limit spreading of the cleaning organism beyond the contaminated area.

The genome sequence revealed that *P. anserina* has the ability to produce many secondary metabolites. Indeed, it contains 18 polyketide synthases (PKS), 8 non-ribosomal peptide synthase (NRPS) and 3 enzymes with dual PKS/NRPS activity. It also has 2 terpene cyclases, 107 cytochromes P450 enzymes and a large array of oxidases acting on various putative substrates (Espagne et al. 2008). Among these, only the *PKS1* gene has been characterised (Coppin and Silar 2007). It is involved in the production of melanin, and its inactivation causes lack of pigment production at all stages of the life cycle. As in other fungi, these enzymes are encoded by gene clusters, one of which results from a horizontal transfer, likely from some *Aspergillus* (Slot and Rokas 2011). This cluster should confer the ability to produce sterigmatocystin. What metabolites are produced by these clusters is presently unknown, nor are the conditions for their expression. However, molecules with larvicidal activity against mosquito larvae, including sterigmatocystin, secosterigmatocystin and 13-hydroxyversicolorin, were purified

from an endophytic *Podospora sp.* closely related, if not identical, to *P. anserina* (Matasyoh et al. 2011). The role of these secondary metabolites in the physiology of the fungus is unknown. However, it is acknowledged that dung is a highly competitive biotope. Possibly, secondary metabolites are part of the repertoire that enables *P. anserina* to fight against other microorganisms for its place in the dung or to repel small animals such as nematodes, mites and collembola that may feed on it. Note that our *P. anserina* cultures are seldom attacked by mites, whereas we frequently find them on our plate cultures for other species, suggesting that *P. anserina* mycelium may not be very palatable!

Secondary metabolites are not the only tools that *P. anserina* uses to win competition. Indeed, it is able to kill other fungi by simple contact, a phenomenon called Hyphal Interference [see Silar (2012), for a review]. In addition to directly eliminating the competition, Hyphal Interference may also provide nitrogen, as dead hyphae contain chitin, a nitrogen-rich polymer. Intriguingly, *P. anserina* possesses an above average number of chitinases that could do the job (Espagne et al. 2008). The way Hyphal Interference operates is not clear and the potential fungicidal compounds are unknown. Interestingly, a MAP kinase pathway and an NADPH oxidase are crucial for this phenomenon, which involves a self-versus-non-self discrimination as observed in the immune systems of both plants and animals. Is it an ancient phenomenon already present in the ancestral eukaryotes or the result of some more recent convergent evolution? Only further studies in *P. anserina* and the other fungi exerting Hyphal Interference will tell. These researches may also end up with new sources of potent and safe antifungal compounds.

The final aspect for which *P. anserina* may be interesting is as a model to study appressorium biology. Indeed, not only does *P. anserina* differentiate some appressorium-like structures as stated above, but the germination of its ascospore appears to use the same machinery as the one used by true appressoria to penetrate living plants (Lambou et al. 2008). *P. anserina* thus offers an alternative to study this developmental process, especially to define the genes involved. Mutations affecting the germination have already been selected, and determination of the affected genes is underway (P. Silar et al. unpublished data).

12.5 Perspectives

With efficient systems for forward and reverse genetics in hand, development should now focus on establishing convenient tools for cytology and biochemical analyses. We have at our disposal strains with various organelles tagged with GFP: ribosomes (Lalucque and Silar 2000), peroxisomes (Ruprich-Robert et al. 2002), vacuoles (Pinan-Lucarre et al. 2005) and mitochondria (Sellem et al. 2007). New strains with nuclei, endoplasmic reticulum and cytoskeletal elements tagged with various fluorescent proteins are currently being constructed. Proteomic analysis has identified protein changes during senescence (Groebe et al. 2007). Similar

technology should be applied to identify changes during the various stages of the life cycle, which would complement the microarray data for the transcriptome. An inducible promoter, in addition to the strong promoters already available, may also come in handy, as at the present time none is available. The problem appears to be to find one that is truly off, as in our hands we always observed some leakiness of the promoters.

With the genome sequence and the new resulting tools, research with *P. anserina* appears still competitive. The size of the community working with this model is still small, so tools developed for more popular models, such as the complete deletion collection available for *N. crassa*, remain a long way ahead. Nevertheless, *P. anserina* may be considered as a "niche" fungus, in which peculiar and interesting phenomena with potential broad implication can be studied conveniently.

Acknowledgement I would like to thank all members of the Podospora community, especially from the Parisian area, for freely sharing information.

References

Adam C, Picard M, Déquard-Chablat M, Sellem CH, Denmat SH-L, Contamine V (2012) Biological roles of the *Podospora anserina* mitochondrial lon protease and the importance of its N-domain. PLoS One 7:e38138

Beckett A, Wilson IM (1968) Ascus cytology of *Podospora anserina*. J Gen Microbiol 53:81

Begueret J, Razanamparany V, Perrot M, Barreau C (1984) Cloning gene *ura5* for the orotidylic acid pyrophosphorylase of the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*: transformation of protoplasts. Gene 32:487

Beisson-Schecroun J (1962) Incompatibilité cellulaire et interactions nucléocytoplasmiques dans les phénomènes de "barrage" chez le *Podospora anserina*. Ann Genet 4:4

Belcour L (1976) Loss of a cytoplasmic determinant through formation of protoplasts in Podospora. Neurospora Newsl 23:26

Belcour L, Begel O, Duchiron F, Lecomte P (1978) Four mitochondrial loci in *Podospora anserina*. Neurospora Newsl 25:26

Belcour L, Begel O, Picard M (1991) A site-specific deletion in mitochondrial DNA of *Podospora* is under the control of nuclear genes. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 88:3579

Berteaux-Lecellier V, Picard M, Thompson-Coffe C, Zickler D, Panvier-Adoutte A, Simonet JM (1995) A nonmammalian homolog of the *PAF1* gene (Zellweger syndrome) discovered as a gene involved in caryogamy in the fungus *Podospora anserina*. Cell 81:1043

Bey M, Zhou S, Poidevin L, Henrissat B, Coutinho PM, Berrin JG, Sigoillot JC (2013) Cello-oligosaccharide oxidation reveals differences between two lytic polysaccharide monooxygenases (family GH61) from Podospora anserina. Appl Environ Microbiol 79:488

Bidard F, Imbeaud S, Reymond N, Lespinet O, Silar P, Clave C, Delacroix H, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Debuchy R (2010) A general framework for optimization of probes for gene expression microarray and its application to the fungus *Podospora anserina*. BMC Res Notes 3:171

Bidard F, Ait Benkhali J, Coppin E, Imbeaud S, Grognet P, Delacroix H, Debuchy R (2011) Genome-wide gene expression profiling of fertilization competent mycelium in opposite mating types in the heterothallic fungus *Podospora anserina*. PLoS One 6:e21476

Bidard F, Coppin E, Silar P (2012) The transcriptional response to the inactivation of the PaMpk1 and PaMpk2 MAP kinase pathways in Podospora anserina. Fungal Genet Biol 49:643

Bouhouche K, Zickler D, Debuchy R, Arnaise S (2004) Altering a gene involved in nuclear distribution increases the repeat-induced point mutation process in the fungus *Podospora anserina*. Genetics 167:151

Bourdais A, Bidard F, Zickler D, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Silar P, Espagne E (2012) Wood utilization is dependent on catalase activities in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. PLoS One 7:e29820

Brun S, Malagnac F, Bidard F, Lalucque H, Silar P (2009) Functions and regulation of the Nox family in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*: a new role in cellulose degradation. Mol Microbiol 74:480

Brygoo Y, Debuchy R (1985) Transformation by integration in *Podospora anserina*. I. Methodology and phenomenology. Mol Gen Genet 200:128

Buller AHR (1933) The formation of hyphal fusions in the mycelium of the higher fungi. In: Researches on fungi. Longmans Green, London, pp 1–74

Chevanne D, Bastiaans E, Debets A, Saupe SJ, Clave C, Paoletti M (2009) Identification of the het-r vegetative incompatibility gene of *Podospora anserina* as a member of the fast evolving HNWD gene family. Curr Genet 55:93

Chevanne D, Saupe SJ, Clave C, Paoletti M (2010) WD-repeat instability and diversification of the *Podospora anserina* hnwd non-self recognition gene family. BMC Evol Biol 10:134

Chevaugeon J, van Nguyen H (1969) Internal determinism of hyphal growth rhythms. Trans Br Mycol Soc 53:1

Colot HV, Park G, Turner GE, Ringelberg C, Crew CM, Litvinkova L, Weiss RL, Borkovich KA, Dunlap JC (2006) A high-throughput gene knockout procedure for Neurospora reveals functions for multiple transcription factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:10352

Coppin E, Silar P (2007) Identification of PaPKS1, a polyketide synthase involved in melanin formation and its use as a genetic tool in *Podospora anserina*. Mycol Res 111:901

Coppin E, de Renty C, Debuchy R (2005) The function of the coding sequences for the putative pheromone precursors in *Podospora anserina* is restricted to fertilization. Eukaryot Cell 4:407

Coppin E, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Bidard F, Brun S, Ruprich-Robert G, Espagne E, Ait-Benkhali J, Goarin A, Nesseir A, Planamente S, Debuchy R, Silar P (2012) Systematic deletion of homeobox genes in *Podospora anserina* uncovers their roles in shaping the fruiting body. PLoS One 7:e37488

Coppin-Raynal E, Dequard-Chablat M, Picard M (1988) Genetics of ribosomes and translational accuracy in *Podospora anserina*. In: Tuite M, Picard M, Bolotin-Fukuhara M (eds) Genetics of translation: new approaches. Springer, Berlin, pp 431–442

Coppin-Raynal E, Picard M, Arnaise S (1989) Transformation by integration in *Podospora anserina*. III. Replacement of a chromosome segment by a two-step process. Mol Gen Genet 219:270

Coradetti ST, Craig JP, Xiong Y, Shock T, Tian C, Glass NL (2012) Conserved and essential transcription factors for cellulase gene expression in ascomycete fungi. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:7397

Coustou V, Deleu C, Saupe S, Bégueret J (1997) The protein product of the *het-s* heterokaryon incompatibility gene of the fungus *Podospora anserina* behaves as a prion analog. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 94:9773

Couturier M, Haon M, Coutinho PM, Henrissat B, Lesage-Meessen L, Berrin JG (2011) *Podospora anserina* hemicellulases potentiate the *Trichoderma reesei* secretome for saccharification of lignocellulosic biomass. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:237

Cummings DJ, Belcour L, Grandchamp C (1978) Etude au microscope électronique du DNA mitochondrial de *Podospora anserina* et présence d'une série multimérique de molécules circulaires de DNA dans des cultures sénescentes. C R Acad Sci Paris 287:157

Cummings DJ, Belcour L, Grandchamp C (1979) Mitochondrial DNA from *Podospora anserina*. II. Properties of mutant DNA and multimeric circular DNA from senescent cultures. Mol Gen Genet 171:239

Cummings DJ, McNally KL, Domenico JM, Matsuura ET (1990) The complete DNA sequence of the mitochondrial genome of *Podospora anserina*. Curr Genet 17:375

Curran KA, Leavitt JM, Karim AS, Alper HS (2013) Metabolic engineering of muconic acid production in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*. Metab Eng 15:55

Dalstra HJP, Swart K, Debets AJM, Saupe SJ, Hoekstra RF (2003) Sexual transmission of the [Het-s] prion leads to meiotic drive in *Podospora anserina*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 100:6616

Debets AJ, Dalstra HJ, Slakhorst M, Koopmanschap B, Hoekstra RF, Saupe SJ (2012) High natural prevalence of a fungal prion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:10432

Dequard-Chablat M, Silar P (2006) *Podospora anserina AS6* gene encodes the cytosolic ribosomal protein of the E. coli S12 family. Fungal Genet Newsl 53:26

Déquard-Chablat M, Nguyen TT, Contamine V, Hermann-Le Denmat S, Malagnac F (2012) Efficient tools to target DNA to *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Genet Rep 59:21

Dufour E, Boulay J, Rincheval V, Sainsard-Chanet A (2000) A causal link between respiration and senescence in *Podospora anserina*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 97:4138

El-Khoury R, Sainsard-Chanet A (2010) Deletion of the mitochondrial NADH kinase increases mitochondrial DNA stability and life span in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Exp Gerontol 45:543

El-Khoury R, Sellem CH, Coppin E, Boivin A, Maas MF, Debuchy R, Sainsard-Chanet A (2008) Gene deletion and allelic replacement in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Curr Genet 53:249

Engh I, Nowrousian M, Kuck U (2010) *Sordaria macrospora*, a model organism to study fungal cellular development. Eur J Cell Biol 89:864

Espagne E, Lespinet O, Malagnac F, Da Silva C, Jaillon O, Porcel BM, Couloux A, Aury JM, Segurens B, Poulain J, Anthouard V, Grossetete S, Khalili H, Coppin E, Dequard-Chablat M, Picard M, Contamine V, Arnaise S, Bourdais A, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Gautheret D, de Vries RP, Battaglia E, Coutinho PM, Danchin EG, Henrissat B, Khoury RE, Sainsard-Chanet A, Boivin A, Pinan-Lucarre B, Sellem CH, Debuchy R, Wincker P, Weissenbach J, Silar P (2008) The genome sequence of the model ascomycete fungus *Podospora anserina*. Genome Biol 9: R77

Espagne E, Vasnier C, Storlazzi A, Kleckner NE, Silar P, Zickler D, Malagnac F (2011) Sme4 coiled-coil protein mediates synaptonemal complex assembly, recombinosome relocalization, and spindle pole body morphogenesis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:10614

Esser K (1954) Sur le déterminisme génétique d'un nouveau type d'incompatibilité chez Podospora. C R Acad Sci Paris 238:1731

Esser K (1963) Die Wirkungsweise von Antiseren auf die Phenoloxydasen von *Podospora anserina*. Naturwissenschaften 50:576

Esser K (1969) The influence of pH on rhytmic mycelial growth in *Podospora anserina*. Mycologia 61:1008

Esser K, Graw D (1980) Homokaryotic fruiting in the bipolar-incompatible ascomycete *Podospora anserina*. Mycologia 72:534

Esser K, Prillinger H (1972) A new technique to use spermatia for the production of mutants in Podospora. Mutat Res 16:417

Fischer F, Weil A, Hamann A, Osiewacz HD (2013) Human CLPP reverts the longevity phenotype of a fungal ClpP deletion strain. Nat Commun 4:1397

Floudas D, Binder M, Riley R, Barry K, Blanchette RA, Henrissat B, Martinez AT, Otillar R, Spatafora JW, Yadav JS, Aerts A, Benoit I, Boyd A, Carlson A, Copeland A, Coutinho PM, de Vries RP, Ferreira P, Findley K, Foster B, Gaskell J, Glotzer D, Gorecki P, Heitman J, Hesse C, Hori C, Igarashi K, Jurgens JA, Kallen N, Kersten P, Kohler A, Kues U, Kumar TK, Kuo A, LaButti K, Larrondo LF, Lindquist E, Ling A, Lombard V, Lucas S, Lundell T, Martin R, McLaughlin DJ, Morgenstern I, Morin E, Murat C, Nagy LG, Nolan M, Ohm RA,

Patyshakuliyeva A, Rokas A, Ruiz-Duenas FJ, Sabat G, Salamov A, Samejima M, Schmutz J, Slot JC, St John F, Stenlid J, Sun H, Sun S, Syed K, Tsang A, Wiebenga A, Young D, Pisabarro A, Eastwood DC, Martin F, Cullen D, Grigoriev IV, Hibbett DS (2012) The Paleozoic origin of enzymatic lignin decomposition reconstructed from 31 fungal genomes. Science 336:1715

Franke G (1962) Versuche zur Genomverdoppelung des Ascomyceten *Podospora anserina*. Z Vererbungsl 93:109

Furuya K, Udagawa SI (1972) Coprophilous pyrenomycetes from Japan I. J Gen Appl Microbiol 18:433

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Borkovich KA, Selker EU, Read ND, Jaffe D, FitzHugh W, Ma LJ, Smirnov S, Purcell S, Rehman B, Elkins T, Engels R, Wang S, Nielsen CB, Butler J, Endrizzi M, Qui D, Ianakiev P, Bell-Pedersen D, Nelson MA, Werner-Washburne M, Selitrennikoff CP, Kinsey JA, Braun EL, Zelter A, Schulte U, Kothe GO, Jedd G, Mewes W, Staben C, Marcotte E, Greenberg D, Roy A, Foley K, Naylor J, Stange-Thomann N, Barrett R, Gnerre S, Kamal M, Kamvysselis M, Mauceli E, Bielke C, Rudd S, Frishman D, Krystofova S, Rasmussen C, Metzenberg RL, Perkins DD, Kroken S, Cogoni C, Macino G, Catcheside D, Li W, Pratt RJ, Osmani SA, DeSouza CP, Glass L, Orbach MJ, Berglund JA, Voelker R, Yarden O, Plamann M, Seiler S, Dunlap J, Radford A, Aramayo R, Natvig DO, Alex LA, Mannhaupt G, Ebbole DJ, Freitag M, Paulsen I, Sachs MS, Lander ES, Nusbaum C, Birren B (2003) The genome sequence of the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Nature 422:859

Geydan TD, Debets AJ, Verkley GJ, van Diepeningen AD (2012) Correlated evolution of senescence and ephemeral substrate use in the Sordariomycetes. Mol Ecol 21:2816

Graïa F, Lespinet O, Rimbault B, Dequard-Chablat M, Coppin E, Picard M (2001) Genome quality control: RIP (repeat-induced point mutation) comes to Podospora. Mol Microbiol 40:586

Greenwald J, Buhtz C, Ritter C, Kwiatkowski W, Choe S, Maddelein ML, Ness F, Cescau S, Soragni A, Leitz D, Saupe SJ, Riek R (2010) The mechanism of prion inhibition by HET-S. Mol Cell 38:889

Groebe K, Krause F, Kunstmann B, Unterluggauer H, Reifschneider NH, Scheckhuber CQ, Sastri C, Stegmann W, Wozny W, Schwall GP, Poznanovic S, Dencher NA, Jansen-Durr P, Osiewacz HD, Schrattenholz A (2007) Differential proteomic profiling of mitochondria from *Podospora anserina*, rat and human reveals distinct patterns of age-related oxidative changes. Exp Gerontol 42:887

Grognet P, Lalucque H, Silar P (2012) The PaAlr1 magnesium transporter is required for ascospore development in Podospora anserina. Fungal Biol 116:1111

Grossetete S, Labedan B, Lespinet O (2010) FUNGIpath: a tool to assess fungal metabolic pathways predicted by orthology. BMC Genomics 11:81

Haedens V, Malagnac F, Silar P (2005) Genetic control of an epigenetic cell degeneration syndrome in *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Genet Biol 42:564

Hansen EH, Moller BL, Kock GR, Bunner CM, Kristensen C, Jensen OR, Okkels FT, Olsen CE, Motawia MS, Hansen J (2009) *De novo* biosynthesis of vanillin in fission yeast (*Schizosaccharomyces pombe*) and baker's yeast (*Saccharomyces cerevisiae*). Appl Environ Microbiol 75:2765

Harms H, Schlosser D, Wick LY (2011) Untapped potential: exploiting fungi in bioremediation of hazardous chemicals. Nat Rev Microbiol 9:177

Hayflick L (1965) The limited in vitro lifetime of human diploid cell strains. Exp Cell Res 37:614

Jamet-Vierny C, Begel O, Belcour L (1980) Senescence in *Podospora anserina*: amplification of a mitochondrial DNA sequence. Cell 21:189

Jamet-Vierny C, Rossignol M, Haedens V, Silar P (1999) What triggers senescence in *Podospora anserina*? Fungal Genet Biol 27:26

Jamet-Vierny C, Debuchy R, Prigent M, Silar P (2007) IDC1, a Pezizomycotina-specific gene that belongs to the PaMpk1 MAP kinase transduction cascade of the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:1219

Kicka S, Bonnet C, Sobering AK, Ganesan LP, Silar P (2006) A mitotically inheritable unit containing a MAP kinase module. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103:13445

Labarere J, Bernet J (1979) A pleiotropic mutation affecting protoperithecium formation and ascospore outgrowth in *Podospora anserina*. J Gen Microbiol 113:19

Lalucque H, Silar P (2000) In vivo labelling of functional ribosomes reveals spatial regulation during starvation in *Podospora anserina*. BMC Genet 1:3

Lalucque H, Malagnac F, Brun S, Kicka S, Silar P (2012) A non-Mendelian MAPK-generated hereditary unit controlled by a second MAPK pathway in *Podospora anserina*. Genetics 191:419

Lambou K, Malagnac F, Barbisan C, Tharreau D, Lebrun MH, Silar P (2008) The crucial role during ascospore germination of the Pls1 tetraspanin in *Podospora anserina* provides an example of the convergent evolution of morphogenetic processes in fungal plant pathogens and saprobes. Eukaryot Cell 7:1809

Li H, Handsaker B, Wysoker A, Fennell T, Ruan J, Homer N, Marth G, Abecasis G, Durbin R (2009) The sequence alignment/map format and SAMtools. Bioinformatics 25:2078

Lorin S, Dufour E, Boulay J, Begel O, Marsy S, Sainsard-Chanet A (2001) Overexpression of the alternative oxidase restores senescence and fertility in a long-lived respiration-deficient mutant of *Podospora anserina*. Mol Microbiol 42:1259

Lozovaya VV, Lygin AV, Zernova OV, Li S, Widholm JM, Hartman GL (2006) Lignin degradation by *Fusarium solani f. sp. glycines*. Plant Dis 90:77

Lundqvist N (1972) Nordic Sordariaceae s. lat. Akademisk avhandling, Uppsala

Lysek G (1976) Formation of perithecia in colonies of *Podospora anserina*. Planta 133:81

Maddelein ML, Dos Reis S, Duvezin-Caubet S, Coulary-Salin B, Saupe SJ (2002) Amyloid aggregates of the HET-s prion protein are infectious. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 99:7402

Malagnac F, Lalucque H, Lepere G, Silar P (2004) Two NADPH oxidase isoforms are required for sexual reproduction and ascospore germination in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Genet Biol 41:982

Malagnac F, Bidard F, Lalucque H, Brun S, Lambou K, Lebrun MH, Silar P (2008) Convergent evolution of morphogenetic processes in fungi: role of tetraspanins and NADPH oxidases 2 in plant pathogens and saprobes. Comm Int Biol 1:181

Malagnac F, Fabret C, Prigent M, Rousset JP, Namy O, Silar P (2013) A Rab-GDI complex dissociation factor expressed through translational frameshifting in filamentous ascomycetes. Plos One (in press)

Marcou D (1961) Notion de longévité et nature cytoplasmique du déterminant de la sénescence chez quelques champignons. Ann Sci Natur Bot Paris Sér 12, 2:653

Marcou D, Picard-Bennoun M, Simonet JM (1982) Genetic map of *Podospora anserina*. In: O'Brien S (ed) Genetic maps. Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor

Martins M, Rodrigues-Lima F, Dairou J, Lamouri A, Malagnac F, Silar P, Dupret JM (2009) An acetyltransferase conferring tolerance to toxic aromatic amine chemicals: molecular and functional studies. J Biol Chem 284:18726

Matasyoh JC, Dittrich B, Schueffler A, Laatsch H (2011) Larvicidal activity of metabolites from the endophytic *Podospora sp.* against the malaria vector *Anopheles gambiae*. Parasitol Res 108:561

Ninomiya Y, Suzuki K, Ishii C, Inoue H (2004) Highly efficient gene replacements in Neurospora strains deficient for nonhomologous end-joining. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 101:12248

Nowrousian M, Stajich JE, Chu M, Engh I, Espagne E, Halliday K, Kamerewerd J, Kempken F, Knab B, Kuo HC, Osiewacz HD, Poggeler S, Read ND, Seiler S, Smith KM, Zickler D, Kuck U, Freitag M (2010) *De novo* assembly of a 40 Mb eukaryotic genome from short sequence reads: *Sordaria macrospora*, a model organism for fungal morphogenesis. PLoS Genet 6:e1000891

Osiewacz HD, Brust D, Hamann A, Kunstmann B, Luce K, Muller-Ohldach M, Scheckhuber CQ, Servos J, Strobel I (2010) Mitochondrial pathways governing stress resistance, life, and death in the fungal aging model *Podospora anserina*. Ann N Y Acad Sci 1197:54

Padieu E, Bernet J (1967) Mode d'action des gènes responsables de l'avortement de certains produits de la méiose chez l'Ascomycète *Podospora anserina*. C R Acad Sci Paris 264:2300
Paoletti M, Saupe SJ (2009) Fungal incompatibility: evolutionary origin in pathogen defense? Bioessays 31:1201
Paoletti M, Saupe SJ, Clave C (2007) Genesis of a fungal non-self recognition repertoire. PLoS One 2:e283
Peraza-Reyes L, Arnaise S, Zickler D, Coppin E, Debuchy R, Berteaux-Lecellier V (2011) The importomer peroxins are differentially required for peroxisome assembly and meiotic development in *Podospora anserina*: insights into a new peroxisome import pathway. Mol Microbiol 82:365
Picard M (1973) Genetic evidence for a polycistronic unit of transcription in the complex locus "14" in *Podospora anserina*. II. Genetic analysis of informational suppressors. Genet Res Camb 21:1
Picard M, Debuchy R, Julien J, Brygoo Y (1987) Transformation by integration in *Podospora anserina*. II. Targeting to the resident locus with cosmids and instability of the transformants. Mol Gen Genet 210:129
Pinan-Lucarre B, Balguerie A, Clave C (2005) Accelerated cell death in podospora autophagy mutants. Eukaryot Cell 4:1765
Pinan-Lucarre B, Paoletti M, Clave C (2007) Cell death by incompatibility in the fungus Podospora. Semin Cancer Biol 17:101
Poggeler S (2011) Evolution of multicopper oxidase genes in coprophilous and non-coprophilous members of the order sordariales. Curr Genomics 12:95
Poggeler S, Risch S, Kuck U, Osiewacz HD (1997) Mating-type genes from the homothallic fungus Sordaria macrospora are functionally expressed in a heterothallic ascomycete. Genetics 147:567
Pointing SB, Parungao MM, Hyde KD (2003) Production of wood-decay enzymes, mass loss and lignin solubilization in wood by tropical Xylariaceae. Mycol Res 107:231
Razanamparany V, Bégueret J (1988) Non-homologous integration of transforming vectors in the fungus *Podospora anserina*: sequences of junctions at the integration sites. Gene 74:399
Regalado V, Rodriguez A, Perestelo F, Carnicero A, De La Fuente G, Falcon MA (1997) Lignin degradation and modification by the soil-inhabiting fungus *Fusarium proliferatum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:3716
Rexroth S, Poetsch A, Rogner M, Hamann A, Werner A, Osiewacz HD, Schafer ER, Seelert H, Dencher NA (2012) Reactive oxygen species target specific tryptophan site in the mitochondrial ATP synthase. Biochim Biophys Acta 1817:381
Ritter C, Maddelein ML, Siemer AB, Luhrs T, Ernst M, Meier BH, Saupe SJ, Riek R (2005) Correlation of structural elements and infectivity of the HET-s prion. Nature 435:844
Rizet G (1939) De l'hérédité du caractère absence de pigment dans le mycélium d'un ascomycète du genre Podospora. C R Acad Sci Paris 209:771
Rizet G (1941) Sur l'analyse génétique des asques du *Podospora anserina*. C R Acad Sci Paris 212:59
Rizet G (1952) Les phénomènes de barrage chez *Podospora anserina*. I. Analyse génétique des barrages entre souches S and s. Rev Cytol Biol Veg 13:51
Rizet G (1953) Sur l'impossibilité d'obtenir la multiplication végétative ininterrompue et illimitée de l'Ascomycète *Podospora anserina*. C R Acad Sci Paris 237:838
Rizet G, Delannoy G (1950) Sur la production par des hétérozygotes monofactoriels de *Podospora anserina* de gamétophytes phénotypiquement différents des gamétophytes parentaux. C R Acad Sci Paris 231:588
Rizet G, Esser K (1953) Sur des phénomènes d'incompatibilité entre souches d'origines différentes chez *Podospora anserina*. C R Acad Sci Paris 237:760
Rodriguez A, Falcon MA, Carcinero A, Perestelo F, De la Fuente G, Trojanowski J (1996) Laccase activities of *Penicillium chrysogenum* in relation to lignin degradation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 45:399

Rossignol M, Silar P (1996) Genes that control longevity in *Podospora anserina*. Mech Ageing Dev 90:183

Ruprich-Robert G, Berteaux-Lecellier V, Zickler D, Panvier-Adoutte A, Picard M (2002) Identification of six loci in which mutations partially restore peroxisome biogenesis and/or alleviate the metabolic defect of pex2 mutants in Podospora. Genetics 161:1089

Scheckhuber CQ, Osiewacz HD (2008) *Podospora anserina*: a model organism to study mechanisms of healthy ageing. Mol Genet Genomics 280:365

Scheckhuber CQ, Erjavec N, Tinazli A, Hamann A, Nystrom T, Osiewacz HD (2007) Reducing mitochondrial fission results in increased life span and fitness of two fungal ageing models. Nat Cell Biol 9:99

Scheckhuber CQ, Houthoofd K, Weil AC, Werner A, De Vreese A, Vanfleteren JR, Osiewacz HD (2011) Alternative oxidase dependent respiration leads to an increased mitochondrial content in two long-lived mutants of the ageing model *Podospora anserina*. PLoS One 6:e16620

Sellem CH, Marsy S, Boivin A, Lemaire C, Sainsard-Chanet A (2007) A mutation in the gene encoding cytochrome c1 leads to a decreased ROS content and to a long-lived phenotype in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:648

Sellem CH, Bovier E, Lorin S, Sainsard-Chanet A (2009) Mutations in two zinc-cluster proteins activate alternative respiratory and gluconeogenic pathways and restore senescence in long-lived respiratory mutants of *Podospora anserina*. Genetics 182:69

Seuring C, Greenwald J, Wasmer C, Wepf R, Saupe SJ, Meier BH, Riek R (2012) The mechanism of toxicity in HET-S/HET-s prion incompatibility. PLoS Biol 10:e1001451

Silar P (1995) Two new easy-to-use vectors for transformations. Fungal Genet Newsl 42:73

Silar P (2005) Peroxide accumulation and cell death in filamentous fungi induced by contact with a contestant. Mycol Res 109:137

Silar P (2011) Grafting as a method for studying development in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Fungal Biol 115:793

Silar P (2012) Hyphal interference: self versus non-self fungal recognition and hyphal death. In: Witzany G (ed) Biocommunication of fungi. Springer, Dordrecht

Silar P, Haedens V, Rossignol M, Lalucque H (1999) Propagation of a novel cytoplasmic, infectious and deleterious determinant is controlled by translational accuracy in *Podospora anserina*. Genetics 151:87

Silar P, Lalucque H, Vierny C (2001) Cell degeneration in the model system *Podospora anserina*. Biogerontology 2:1

Silar P, Barreau C, Debuchy R, Kicka S, Turcq B, Sainsard-Chanet A, Sellem CH, Billault A, Cattolico L, Duprat S, Weissenbach J (2003) Characterization of the genomic organization of the region bordering the centromere of chromosome V of *Podospora anserina* by direct sequencing. Fungal Genet Biol 39:250

Silar P, Dairou J, Cocaign A, Busi F, Rodrigues-Lima F, Dupret JM (2011) Fungi as a promising tool for bioremediation of soils contaminated with aromatic amines, a major class of pollutants. Nat Rev Microbiol 9:477

Slot JC, Rokas A (2011) Horizontal transfer of a large and highly toxic secondary metabolic gene cluster between fungi. Curr Biol 21:134

Stahl U, Tudzynski P, Kuck U, Esser K (1982) Replication and expression of a bacterial–mitochondrial hybrid plasmid in the fungus *Podospora anserina*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 79:3641

Storlazzi A, Gargano S, Ruprich-Robert G, Falque M, David M, Kleckner N, Zickler D (2010) Recombination proteins mediate meiotic spatial chromosome organization and pairing. Cell 141:94

Tian C, Beeson WT, Iavarone AT, Sun J, Marletta MA, Cate JH, Glass NL (2009) Systems analysis of plant cell wall degradation by the model filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:22157

Tudzynski P, Esser K (1977) Inhibitors of mitochondrial function prevent senescence in the ascomycete *Podospora anserina*. Mol Gen Genet 153:111

Turbe-Doan A, Arfi Y, Record E, Estrada-Alvarado I, Levasseur A (2013) Heterologous production of cellobiose dehydrogenases from the basidiomycete Coprinopsis cinerea and the ascomycete Podospora anserina and their effect on saccharification of wheat straw. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(11):4873–1885

Turcq B, Denayrolles M, Bégueret J (1990) Isolation of two allelic incompatibility genes s and S of the fungus *Podospora anserina*. Curr Genet 17:297

Turgeon BG, Debuchy R (2007) Cochliobolus and podospora: mechanisms of sex determination and the evolution of reproductive lifestyle. In: Heitman J et al (eds) Sex in fungi: molecular determination and evolutionary implications. ASM, Washington, DC

van Diepeningen AD, Maas MF, Huberts DH, Goedbloed DJ, Engelmoer DJ, Slakhorst SM, Koopmanschap AB, Krause F, Dencher NA, Sellem CH, Sainsard-Chanet A, Hoekstra RF, Debets AJ (2010) Calorie restriction causes healthy life span extension in the filamentous fungus *Podospora anserina*. Mech Ageing Dev 131:60

Wasmer C, Lange A, Van Melckebeke H, Siemer AB, Riek R, Meier BH (2008) Amyloid fibrils of the HET-s(218-289) prion form a beta solenoid with a triangular hydrophobic core. Science 319:1523

Wolf FA (1912) Spore formation in *Podospora anserina (Rahb.) Winter*. Ann Myc 10:60

Yafetto L, Carroll L, Cui Y, Davis DJ, Fischer MW, Henterly AC, Kessler JD, Kilroy HA, Shidler JB, Stolze-Rybczynski JL, Sugawara Z, Money NP (2008) The fastest flights in nature: high-speed spore discharge mechanisms among fungi. PLoS One 3:e3237

Chapter 13
Recent Advances on the Genomics of Litter- and Soil-Inhabiting Agaricomycetes

Phil Kersten and Dan Cullen

13.1 Introduction

Woody biomass makes up the major portion of terrestrial carbon, and forest ecosystems contain enormous reservoirs of lignocellulose belowground, in dead trees, and litter. Decomposition of this recalcitrant material and mobilization of nutrients are essential for forest health [reviewed by Boddy and Watkinson (1995)]. Although mechanisms are incompletely understood, initial decomposition of lignocellulose is efficiently carried out by certain filamentous fungi, and the genomes of representative species have been recently sequenced. This review covers these genome studies and the insight they provide regarding lignocellulose degradation. Emphasis is placed on extracellular oxidative systems which are widely thought to be involved in lignin degradation but increasingly implicated in the depolymerization of cellulose and hemicellulose. Areas of uncertainty are highlighted. Detailed descriptions of the voluminous literature are not provided. Instead, interested readers are referred to earlier reviews (Cullen and Kersten 2004; Hatakka and Hammel 2010; Kersten and Cullen 2007).

13.2 Microbiology of Woody Litter Decay

Wood cell walls represent a complex and formidable substrate. *Cellulose*, essentially linear chains of β-1,4-linked cellobiose organized into microfibrils, is the major component. Where chains are tightly stacked, the polymer is crystalline and resistant to hydrolysis. Nevertheless, many microbes are capable of cellulose utilization by hydrolyzing the β-1,4 linkages [reviewed by Baldrian and Valaskova

P. Kersten • D. Cullen (✉)
USDA Forest Products Laboratory, One Gifford Pinchot Drive, Madison, WI 53726, USA
e-mail: dcullen@facstaff.wisc.edu

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_13,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

(2008)]. *Hemicellulose* is also widely utilized although a more diverse set of hydrolases are needed to fully degrade the branched polymer [reviewed by van den Brink and de Vries (2011)]. In contrast to cellulose and hemicellulose, *lignin* is a complex phenylpropanoid polymer (Higuchi 1990; Ralph et al. 2004). Few microbes have the capacity to depolymerize lignin, and none have been convincingly shown to utilize native lignin as a sole carbon source (Hatakka and Hammel 2010).

Efficient wood degradation is typically attributed to Agaricomycetes, and two basic forms are recognized: white rot and brown rot. *White rot* fungi depolymerize and mineralize all cell wall components including cellulose, hemicellulose, and the more recalcitrant lignin. Decay patterns vary among fungal species and strains as well as among wood species, morphology, and composition (Blanchette 1991; Daniel 1994; Eriksson et al. 1990; Schwarze 2007). Cell wall erosion by most white rot fungi, including "*Phanerochaete chrysosporium*", involves simultaneous degradation of all three polymers, whereas *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* selectively degrades lignin in advance of cellulose and hemicellulose (Blanchette et al. 1992, 1997; Srebotnik and Messner 1994). In this context, it should be noted that reports of lignin depolymerization should be suspect in the absence of persuasive experimental support such as cleavage of non-phenolic lignin model compounds (below) and the degradation of radiolabeled lignin or synthetic lignins. Experiments relying on commercially available "lignin" should be carefully interpreted as these preparations typically contain contaminants and sulfonated lignin of varying molecular weight.

In contrast to white rot, *brown rot* fungi modify lignin but the polymeric residue remains (Niemenmaa et al. 2007; Yelle et al. 2008, 2011). Also distinctive, brown rot fungi rapidly depolymerize cellulose (Gilbertson 1981; Kirk et al. 1991; Kleman-Leyer et al. 1992; Worrall et al. 1997) in advance of extensive weight loss. This observation, together with microscopic localization of decay and studies of cell wall porosity, strongly argue for the involvement of small molecular weight oxidants diffusing into cell walls (Blanchette et al. 1997; Cowling 1961; Flournoy et al. 1993; Srebotnik and Messner 1991; Srebotnik et al. 1988). Hydroxyl radical has been repeatedly implicated as the diffusible oxidant, and its production attributed to *Fenton* reactions ($H_2O_2 + Fe^{2+} + H^+ \rightarrow H_2O + Fe^{3+} + \cdot OH$) (Arantes et al. 2011; Cohen et al. 2002, 2004; Xu and Goodell 2001). Typically invoked to explain brown rot, such reactive oxygen species may also be operative in white rot as recently suggested (Arantes et al. 2011; Gomez-Toribio et al. 2009). In any case, the role of hydroxyl radical in situ is unresolved, and any reasonable model must accommodate the generation of highly reactive radical at or near the substrate as well as the need for a plausible redox system [reviewed by Arantes et al. (2012) and Goodell (2003)]. The involvement of small molecular weight iron chelators (Xu and Goodell 2001), cellobiose dehydrogenase (Henriksson et al. 2000a, b), and hydroquinone redox cycling (Paszczynski et al. 1999; Suzuki et al. 2006) has been proposed.

Beyond the wood-decay Agaricomycetes, several litter-inhabiting fungi have the capacity to degrade lignin, albeit less efficiently. These include the commercial

button mushroom *Agaricus bisporus* (Durrant et al. 1991), other basidiomycetes and a few higher ascomycetes [reviewed by Eriksson et al. (1990) and Hatakka (2001)]. Certain litter-decomposing fungi likely play a crucial role in the transformation and degradation of humic substances, a major fraction of soil organic matter (Kluczek-Turpeinen et al. 2005; Snajdr et al. 2010; Steffen et al. 2002). Recently, a white rot fungus *Trametes* sp. has been shown to degrade humic substances, and a Fenton-based mechanism implicated (Grinhut et al. 2011a, b).

Unexpectedly, recent studies have also connected hydroxyl radical-based degradation of humic substances by ectomycorrhizal (ECM) fungi. Ectomycorrhiza obtain carbon from plant hosts, but under some conditions, soil organic matter may be at least partially degraded (Baldrian 2009; Cullings and Courty 2009). As described below, scant ECM genome evidence (Martin et al. 2008; Vaario et al. 2012) supports a role for facultative saprotrophy, but transcriptome analyses, together with lignin structure determinations, suggest mechanisms by which soil organic extracts could be degraded by *Paxillus involutus* (Rineau et al. 2012).

13.3 Physiology and Genetics

13.3.1 Peroxidases

Peroxidases catalyze oxidations of diverse substrates with reduction of peroxide, which groups these enzymes under EC 1.11.x [donor: hydrogen peroxide oxidoreductase] in the NC-IUBMB system of nomenclature (Fleischmann et al. 2004). Beyond this description of chemical reaction, the classification of peroxidases based on protein properties is evolving as new enzymes are discovered and structural details are delineated indicating structure–function relationships. Not only may a single peroxidase have diverse substrates, but peroxidases of distinctly different structures may catalyze the same reaction. Furthermore, peroxidases may have different modes of oxidation while catalyzing the same net overall reaction. This presents significant challenges for classification of peroxidases into groups that adequately reflects function, protein structure, and phylogenetic relatedness (Hofrichter et al. 2010).

The first opportunity to classify a selection of secreted fungal peroxidases based on their crystal structure occurred in the early 1990s; *lignin peroxidase* (LiP), *manganese peroxidase* (MnP), and *Coprinus cinereus* peroxidase (CiP) were shown to be sufficiently similar in overall 3D structure and active site to group as Class II peroxidases, distinct from Class I intracellular peroxidases, and Class III secretory plant peroxidases (Welinder 1992). Versatile peroxidase (VP), more recently discovered, shows properties of both LiP and MnP and is likewise a Class II peroxidase. However, other newly discovered heme-thiolate peroxidases (HtPs) and the dye-decolorizing peroxidases (DyPs) are clearly distinct in sequence, protein structure, and catalysis, justifying establishment of HtP-like

and DyP-like peroxidase superfamilies, separate from the Class II peroxidases. These complexities of fungal peroxidases and differences between "new" and "classic" families have been recently reviewed (Hofrichter et al. 2010). Salient properties of peroxidases as they may relate to litter and soil ecosystems are briefly summarized here.

13.3.1.1 High Oxidation Potential Class II Peroxidases (LiP, MnP, and VP)

Three Class II peroxidases, the LiPs (systematic name 1,2-bis (3,4-dimethoxyphenyl)propane-1,3-diol:hydrogen-peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.14), VPs (systematic name reactive-black-5:hydrogen peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.16), and MnPs (systematic name Mn(II):hydrogen peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.13) are able to modify lignin and other recalcitrant aromatic molecules in part due to their high oxidation capacity, in contrast to low redox potential peroxidases (e.g., CiP and NoP, also Class II peroxidases; see following section). LiP and VP are the most powerful of the peroxidases with redox potentials of approximately 1.5 V and able to oxidize non-phenolic lignin model compounds directly by one electron (Kersten et al. 1985; Kirk et al. 1986; Miki et al. 1986). Another feature of both LiP and VP is an enzyme surface tryptophan that mediates oxidation through long-range electron transfer (LRET) enabling oxidation of larger sterically hindered non-phenolic substrates (Choinowski et al. 1999; Doyle et al. 1998).

Unlike LiPs and VPs, the MnPs do not have a conserved Trp at the enzyme surface and are not able to efficiently oxidize non-phenolic aromatics directly. Instead, MnPs have a conserved solvent-exposed Mn-binding site in the vicinity of a heme propionate and therefore are able to catalyze the oxidation of Mn^{2+} to Mn^{3+} in the presence of peroxide and suitable Mn^{3+} chelators (Sundaramoorthy et al. 1994; Wariishi et al. 1992). The VPs similarly have a Mn-binding site and therefore have hybrid characteristics of both LiPs and MnPs (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 2009). A likely physiological Mn^{3+} chelator for the MnP- and VP-catalyzed reactions is oxalate, which is known to be secreted by these fungi (Kuan and Tien 1993). Therefore, one role of MnPs and VPs is thought to be generation of diffusible Mn^{3+} chelates, which can oxidize phenolics directly. A more complex role may also be possible via oxidation of the chelates, thus generating other oxidizing species such as superoxide and perhydroxyl radical, which initiate radical chain reactions (e.g., in the presence of lipids) to generate ligninolytic radicals (Kapich et al. 1999). Phylogenetic analyses show the rise to two groups of MnPs, the so-called long-MnPs and the short-type hybrid MnPs which are more closely related to LiPs and VPs (Lundell et al. 2010).

The oxidizing capacity of these Class II peroxidases is achieved through the classical peroxidative cycle where "resting" enzyme is oxidized with peroxide by two electrons to generate Compound I enzyme intermediate. Compound I oxidizes substrates by one electron to produce oxidized substrate and Compound II enzyme

intermediate. The Compound II also oxidizes substrate, returning the enzyme back to "resting" state. In the case of LiPs and VPs with non-phenolic aromatics, the oxidized substrate are cation radicals and, as demonstrated with various substrates, the fate of the cation radical substrate intermediates is in large part determined by the substrate structure. Importantly, these reactions result in fragmentation of lignin model compounds and lignin (Miki et al. 1986; Tien and Kirk 1983).

Genes encoding Class II peroxidases have been identified in all lignin-degrading fungi, but not in brown rot or ECM. *Trametes versicolor* and *P. chrysosporium* genomes each feature ten LiP genes, but the corresponding proteins were not identified after 5 days growth in media containing ground aspen as sole carbon source (Table 13.1). On the other hand, ground pine wood and nutrient limited defined media support high transcript levels and secretion of several *P. chrysosporium* LiP and MnP isozymes (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2005, 2006b, 2009, 2010, 2011). Relative to LiPs, MnP-encoding genes appear more widely distributed. Sixteen MnP genes were identified in the genome of white rot fungus *Fomitiporia mediterranea*, and the corresponding proteins of seven are secreted in aspen cultures. Two *A. bisporus* MnP genes have been identified, and significant transcript accumulation occurs for one of these in compost (Morin et al. 2012). No Class II peroxidases were detected in the *Schizophyllum commune* genome. Although often classified as a white rot fungus and thereby presumed ligninolytic, the genetic repertoire of *S. commune* is consistent with weak or nonexistent lignin degradation (Boyle et al. 1992; Schmidt and Liese 1980).

Many wood- and litter-inhabiting fungi are clearly able to transform lignin or structurally related components of humic substances, but little is known about the role, if any, of high oxidation potential peroxidases in litter and soils. ^{14}C-labeled lignin and humic acid are degraded by litter decomposers *Gymnopus erythropus* and *Hypholoma fasciculare* when cultured on sterile leaf litter. MnP activity was higher in *G. erythropus* colonized litter, but degradation was less efficient for both species on non-sterile material, presumably due to interspecific competition (Snajdr et al. 2010). Similarly, laboratory experiments demonstrated degradation of ^{14}C-labeled humic acid and production of MnP by the litter decomposer, *Collybia dryophila* (Steffen et al. 2002). Laboratory studies of *P. chrysosporium*-colonized wood chips and soil have quantified transcript levels of specific LiP and MnP genes (Bogan et al. 1996b; Janse et al. 1998), and MnP activity was measured in organopollutant-contaminated soil (Bogan et al. 1996a).

13.3.1.2 Low Oxidation Potential Class II Peroxidases (CiP and NoP)

"*Coprinopsis cinerea* peroxidase" or CiP (systematic name phenolic donor:hydrogen-peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.7) is not able to oxidize non-phenolics such as veratryl alcohol; neither does it have the manganese-binding site of VP or MnP. Rather, CiP very efficiently oxidizes phenolics as a low oxidation peroxidase. As with other Class II peroxidases, CiP is similar in structure with conserved proximal and distal histidines near the heme active site; however, when compared

Table 13.1 Agaricomycete genes potentially involved in lignocellulose degradation: mass spectrometry-identified proteins—gene number

	White rot										Brown rot						Saprotrophs		ECM
Gene	Ad	Cs	Ds	Fm	Ha	Pc	Ps	Sc	Sh	Tv	Cp	Fp	Gt	Pp	Sl	Wc	Ab	Cc	Lb
LiP	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0	0-10	0-0	0	0-0	0-10	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0	0-0
MnP	0-5	2-13	0-9	7-16	8	0-5	1-10	0	0-10	2-13	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	2	0	0-0
VP	0-0	0-2	0-3	0-0	0	0-0	0-0	0	0-0	1-2	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0	0	0-0
HtP	1-16	0-9	0-4	0-4	5	0-3	0-8	3	0-10	0-3	0-2	1-4	0-6	0-5	0-3	0-5	24	8	0-5
DyP	1-11	0-0	1-1	0-3	1	0-0	1-5	0	0-2	1-2	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-2	0-0	0-0	0	4	0-2
Lac	0-7	1-7	3-11	5-10	13	0-0	2-12	2	0-15	4-7	0-6	0-5	4	0-3	1-4	1-5	12	17	0-9
GLX	0-2	0-0	0-5	0-0	0	0-1	1-3	0	0-3	1-5	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	3	0	0-0
Cro1	0-0	0-0	0-1	0-1	1	0-1	0-0	0	0-0	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-1	2	3	1-6
Cro2	2-3	0-2	1-1	0-1	1	0-2	1-3	1	1-3	1-1	3-4	1-1	2-1	0-1	0-1	1-1	2	2	2-2
Cro3/5	1-1	0-1	1-1	0-1	1	0-3	1-1	0	0-1	1-1	0-0	0-1	0-0	1-1	0-1	1-1	1	1	0-2
Cro6	1-2	0-1	0-1	0-1	1	0-1	0-1	1	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-1	0-1	1	1	0-0
CDH	0-1	0-1	1-1	0-1	1	0-1	1-1	1	1-1	1-1	1-1	0-0	0-1	0-0	0-2	0-0	1	1	0-0
GH61	1-19	0-9	3-15	0-13	10	2-15	6-13	22	1-16	1-16	0-10	0-4	1-4	0-2	0-5	0-2	11	35	0-5
GH6	2-2	1-1	1-1	0-2	1	1-1	1-1	1	1-1	1-1	0-2	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-1	0-0	1	5	0-0
GH7	2-6	1-3	1-4	0-2	1	3-6	1-5	2	1-3	1-4	0-2	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	0-0	1	6	0-0
UP	56	98	43	20	NA	27	30	NA	36	44	49	65	53	9	NA	21	NA	NA	NA
TP	151	121	180	85	NA	90	135	NA	208	218	269	253	174	64	NA	171	NA	NA	NA

Hyphenated entries report the number of published proteins identified by mass spectrometry followed by the total number of predicted genes. Citations and abbreviations: (Floudas et al. 2012) Ad, *Auricularia delicata*; Ds, *Dichomitus squalens*; Fm, *Fomitiporia mediterranea*; Ps, *Punctularia strigosozonata*; Sh, *Stereum hirsutum*; Tv, *Trametes versicolor*; Cp, *Coniophora puteana*; Fp, *Fomitopsis pinicola*; Gt, *Gloeophyllum trabeum*; and Sc, *Wolfiporia cocos*. (Fernandez-Fueyo et al. 2012) Cs, *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. (Olson et al. 2012) Ha, *Heterobasidion annosum*. (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2011) Pc, *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. (Ohm et al. 2010) *Sc*, *Schizophyllum commune*. (Martinez et al. 2009) Pp, *Postia placenta*. (Eastwood et al. 2011) Sl, *Serpula lacrymans*. (Morin et al. 2012) Ab, *Agaricus bisporus*. (Stajich et al. 2010) Cc, *Coprinopsis cinereus*. (Vincent et al. 2012) Lb, *Laccaria bicolor*. The total number of proteins identified in aspen-containing medium and those designated as uncharacterized are indicated by TP and UP, respectively. Additional abbreviations include the following: LiP, lignin peroxidase; MnP, manganese peroxidase; VP, versatile peroxidase; HTP, heme-thiol peroxidase; DyP, dye-decolorizing peroxidases; Lac, laccase; GLX, the copper radical oxidase glyoxal oxidase; CROs, copper radical oxidases most closely related to those of *P. chrysosporium* (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2006a); CDH, cellobiose dehydrogenase; and GH61, GH6, and GH7, members of the glycoside hydrolase families 61, 6, and 7, respectively

to LiP, the distal side substrate channel is more open to easily oxidized reducing aromatic substrates (Kunishima et al. 1994; Petersen et al. 1994). However, CiP can be engineered to have activity with veratryl alcohol, the standard high redox potential substrate for LiP, by mutations to introduce the surface Trp and negatively charged microenvironment (Smith et al. 2009). Based on sequence analysis, genes encoding such low oxidation peroxidases have also been identified in brown rot fungi *F. pinicola*, *P. placenta*, and *W. cocos* as well as the white rot fungi *C. subvermispora*, *C. strigosozonata*, *F. mediterranea*, *H. annosum*, *S. hirsutum* (Floudas et al. 2012), and *P. chrysosporium*. Designated NoP, the *P. chrysosporium* structure has been studied in some detail (Larrondo et al. 2005). High transcript levels and secreted proteins have not been observed, and the role of these peroxidases remains uncertain.

13.3.1.3 Heme-thiolate Peroxidases

Heme-thiolate peroxidases (HtPs) comprise a superfamily of secreted fungal peroxidases distinguished from the Class II peroxidases, not only by the proximal cysteine and distal glutamate heme ligands but also by distinctive 3D structure, protein sequence, and remarkable catalytic capacity. HtPs are classified based on dominating reactions that are consistent with *chloroperoxidase* (CPOs; systematic name chloride:hydrogen-peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.10) and aromatic peroxygenase (APOs; systematic name substrate:hydrogen peroxide oxidoreductase (RH-hydroxylating or -epoxidizing); EC 1.11.2.1) activities.

CPO from *Caldariomyces fumago* halogenates suitable organic substrates in the presence of peroxide and halide (Morris and Hager 1966; Shaw and Hager 1959). The primary function of CPO here is oxidization of chloride (Cl^{-}) to hypochlorous acid, which is a strong oxidant and able to chlorinate the organic compounds (Murali Manoj 2006). Bromide and iodide are also oxidized by CPO, but not fluoride. If halide is absent, CPO oxidizes suitably substituted phenols and anilines directly. In the case of chlorinated phenols, oxidations with CPO are much more efficient than with horseradish peroxidase, LiP or VP (Casella et al. 1994; Longoria et al. 2008; Osborne et al. 2007). Besides halogenation and phenol oxidation capability, CPO also has peroxygenase properties, resembling cytochrome P450-dependent monooxygenase (also a heme-thiolate) in catalysis and structure (Manoj and Hager 2008; Sundaramoorthy et al. 1995). CPO is able to epoxidize alkenes and hydroxylates benzylic carbons via a peroxygenase mechanism (Manoj and Hager 2008), but oxygen transfer to less-activated molecules such as alkanes or aromatic rings is not catalyzed. The proposed functional roles of the enzyme are varied, from biosynthesis of chlorinated metabolites (Morris and Hager 1966) to antimicrobial activity, due to the biocidal activity of hypochlorite (Bengtson et al. 2009). A consequence of the nonspecificity of CPOs and the reactive chemical species generated is the chlorination of lignin (Ortiz-Bermúdez et al. 2007).

In contrast to CPO, the fungal *peroxygenases* (APOs) from *Agrocybe aegerita* (AaeAPO; Ullrich et al. 2004), *Coprinellus radians* (CraAPO; Anh et al. 2007;

Aranda et al. 2009), and *Marasmius rotula* (MroAPO; Gröbe et al. 2011) are all able to catalyze oxygen transfer reactions to aromatic rings, in addition to other divers reactions. AaeAPO was first described as a haloperoxidase but with further characterization shown to be a functional hybrid with properties of both a peroxidase and a monooxygenase (Hofrichter et al. 2010). APOs have a wide variety of substrates including polyaromatics (e.g., naphthalene), recalcitrant heterocycles (e.g., pyridine), ethers (with *O*-dealkylation resulting), and alkanes (e.g., propane and hexane). The chemical transformations include hydroxylation, epoxidation, N-oxidation, sulfooxidation, bromination, and one-electron oxidations. However, the array of reactions is not shared by all APOs; the MroAPO of *M. rotula* does not have the brominating activity of AaeAPO and CraAPO (Gröbe et al. 2011).

All sequenced Agaricomycete genomes feature genes encoding HtPs, but their number and expression vary substantially. Peptides were identified in culture filtrates of *A. delicata* and *F. pinicola* (Floudas et al. 2012). LC-MS/MS could not detect HTPs in *P. chrysosporium* or *P. placenta* cultures (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2011), although each species exhibited significant transcript accumulation of two HtP genes in wood-containing cultures relative to glucose medium. More impressive, 24 HtP genes were predicted in the *A. bisporus* genome, and 16 of these were significantly upregulated in compost (Morin et al. 2012). This observation suggests that HtPs may play an important role in metabolism of partially decomposed litter and humic substances. A Dacrymycete classified as a brown rotter, *Dacryopinax* sp., contains six putative HtP-encoding genes, and the corresponding protein has been detected for two of these (Floudas et al. 2012).

13.3.1.4 Dye-Decolorizing Peroxidases

Prototypical DyP was isolated from the Agaricomycete *Bjerkandera adusta* [first reported as *Geotrichum candidum* Dec 1, re-identified as *Thanatephorus cucumeris* Dec 1, and then *B. adusta* (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 2011)] because of its dye-decolorizing activities (Kim and Shoda 1999; Kim et al. 1995; Sugano 2009). Subsequent structural and sequence comparisons indicate that the peroxidase is unlike any previously characterized peroxidase (Sugano et al. 2007; Zubieta et al. 2007). DyPs (systematic name Reactive-Blue-5:hydrogen peroxide oxidoreductase; EC 1.11.1.19) have a proximal histidine, but unlike the Class II and HtP peroxidases, DyPs have a distal Asp. The model substrate, Reactive Blue 5, is converted to products by a combination of oxidation and hydrolytic steps. Other dyes, anthraquinone derivatives and typical peroxidase substrates, are also oxidized. Structural and biochemical characterization of DyP-like peroxidases from bacteria is also reported (Brown et al. 2012; Zubieta et al. 2007). In the case of *Amycolatopsis*, the DyP2 appears multifunctional, showing high peroxidase activity, manganese peroxidase activity, and also a mode of oxidase activity with 4-methoxymandelic acid (Brown et al. 2012). Liers et al. (2013) have recently compared activities of fungal DyP with heme peroxidases, and considering the

complex catalytic properties of the DyPs, the physiological roles are most likely diverse.

The number of DyP-encoding genes varies significantly among Agaricomycetes. Certain efficient lignin degraders such as *P. chrysosporium* and *C. subvermispora* have none, while 11 genes are predicted in the *A. delicata* genome (Table 13.1). Of eight white rot cultures subjected to LC-MS/MS analysis, four contained the corresponding peptides. Five brown rot fungi have no DyP genes. Only one brown rot fungus, *P. placenta*, is predicted to have DyP genes, but the corresponding proteins were not detected in aspen-containing medium (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2011). Significant protein levels occur in ground wood culture filtrates of *T. versicolor*, *D. squalens*, *A. delicata*, and *P. strigozonata* where a single DyP constituted 2.2 %, 1.3 %, 0.1 %, and 0.08 %, respectively, of the total spectra (Floudas et al. 2012).

13.3.2 Extracellular Peroxide Generation

It is readily apparent that extracellular peroxide is a key player in lignocellulose biotransformation in view of the importance of peroxide-dependent peroxidases secreted by fungi (previous section). Even prior to the discovery of these peroxidases, a correlation was observed between peroxide production and the physiology of ligninolysis by *P. chrysosporium* (Faison and Kirk 1983; Forney et al. 1982; Keyser et al. 1978). There appears to be several possible mechanisms for peroxide production, including by MnP with fungal metabolites oxalate and glyoxylate; peroxide is evidently generated as a consequence of reactions of oxygen with carbon-centered radical substrate intermediates (Kuan and Tien 1993; Urzúa et al. 1998). Oxidases that catalyze reduction of oxygen to peroxide, and where evidence indicates an extracellular role in supporting peroxidase activities, are briefly summarized here.

13.3.2.1 Copper Radical Oxidases

Glyoxal oxidase (GLX) was first reported in cultures of *P. chrysosporium* where its activity was correlated with substrates glyoxal and methylglyoxal in culture, and with LiP activity (Kersten and Kirk 1987). Importantly, the activity of GLX was activated by interaction with LiP (Kersten 1990). Sequence comparisons and spectroscopic comparisons indicate that GLX has a similar active site to that of the copper radical oxidase (CRO) galactose oxidase (Kersten and Cullen 1993; Whittaker et al. 1996, 1999). Copper radical oxidases have two one-electron acceptors: a copper (II) metal at the center of the active site and a Cys-Tyr radical forming a metallo-radical complex (Whittaker 2005). Alignment of galactose oxidase with GLX indicates that the catalytic domain of GLX supplies copper ligands Tyr135 Tyr377 and His378 while Cys70 is cross-linked with Tyr135 to

form an internal radical cofactor of the sevenfold β-barrel domain (also described as a super-barrel or β-flower). The C-terminal domain supplies His471 copper ligand on a loop through the center of the catalytic barrel. Analysis of the *P. chrysosporium* genome indicates multiple CROs where predicted mature protein sequences diverge substantially from one another, but the residues coordinating copper and constituting the radical redox site are conserved (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2006a).

More recent analysis of Agaricomycete genomes has revealed widespread distribution of GLX and related *copper radical oxidases* (Table 13.1). GLX homologs are lacking from brown rot fungi, *C. cinereus* and *L. bicolor*, but present in most lignin-degrading fungi. Notable exceptions include *C. subvermispora*, a selective and highly efficient lignin degrader. Possibly, the related copper radical oxidases *cro2*, *cro3*, and *cro6* compensate by oxidizing an array of metabolites unique to *C. subvermispora* decay. Along these lines, elevated transcript levels of the *C. subvermispora cro2* gene were observed in wood-containing medium, and peptides corresponding to CRO5 were detected in medium using microcrystalline cellulose as sole carbon source (Fernandez-Fueyo et al. 2012). Earlier reports showed that the substrate preference of *P. chrysosporium* CRO2 differed sharply from GLX (Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2006a).

13.3.2.2 GMC Oxidoreductases

Another oxidase produced by *P. chrysosporium* and a select number of other white and brown rot fungi is *pyranose 2-oxidase* (P2O), which oxidizes glucose at C-2 to produce D-*arabino*-hexos-2-ulose (glucosone) with reduction of oxygen to peroxide (Baute and Baute 1984; de Koker et al. 2004; Dietrich and Crooks 2009; Giffhorn 2000). The protein is a large homotetrameric flavoprotein with a subunit size of about 70 kDa (Hallberg et al. 2004). It is a member of the glucose-methanol-choline oxidoreductase family (Albrecht and Lengauer 2003), a superfamily of proteins including *Drosophila melanogaster* glucose dehydrogenase, *Aspergillus niger* glucose oxidase, *Hansenula polymorpha* methanol oxidase, and *Escherichia coli* choline dehydrogenase (Cavener 1992). The periplasmic and extracellular distribution of pyranose 2-oxidase in wood decayed by *P. chrysosporium* is consistent with that of MnP, suggesting a role in extracellular peroxide generation (Daniel et al. 1994). An alternative role for pyranose 2-oxidase is the synthesis of the antibiotic cortalcerone (Koths et al. 1992), but many fungi that have pyranose 2-oxidase do not have aldo-2-ulose dehydratase required for cortalcerone synthesis (Baute and Baute 1984). Quinones are alternate electron acceptors in place of oxygen, and therefore, the oxidase may have a role in redox cycling during lignocellulose degradation (Pisanelli et al. 2009). P2O-encoding genes are predicted in the genomes of brown rot fungi *G. trabeum* and *S. lacrymans* as well

as the white rot fungi *A. delicata*, *P. strigosozonata*, *T. versicolor*, and *P. chrysosporium*.

Another GMC oxidoreductase involved in peroxide generation is the extracellular monomeric *aryl-alcohol oxidase* (AAO) [recently reviewed by Hernández-Ortega et al. (2012)]. AAO substrates may be both lignin-derived metabolites, as well as aromatic fungal metabolites synthesized de novo (de Jong et al. 1994; Gutiérrez et al. 1994). The aromatic alcohol substrates are oxidized to the corresponding aldehydes by AAOs, and these aldehydes reduced back to alcohols by intracellular aryl-alcohol dehydrogenases, thus establishing a redox cycle for the generation of extracellular peroxide using reducing equivalents derived from intracellular metabolism. A possible role for AAO in preventing polymerization of lignin fragments by reduction of quinone and phenoxyradicals is also described (Marzullo et al. 1995). The AAO from *P. eryngii* has been heterologously expressed in *E. coli* (Ruiz-Dueñas et al. 2006) and crystal structure determined (Fernandez et al. 2009). The GMC oxidoreductase *methanol oxidase* is also proposed to have a role in peroxide production using methanol released from lignin methoxyls (Nishida and Eriksson 1987). Although a signal peptide is not evident from gene structure, the oxidase appears to have an extracellular role in wood decay with *G. trabeum* (Daniel et al. 2007). Putative methanol oxidase- and AAO-encoding genes have been identified in a wide range of white rot and brown rot fungi (Hernández-Ortega et al. 2012). In *C. subvermispora* and *P. chrysosporium*, the AAO genes show no transcript accumulation in medium containing ground wood relative to glucose-containing media (Fernandez-Fueyo et al. 2012; Vanden Wymelenberg et al. 2011).

A potentially important oxidoreductase, *cellobiose dehydrogenase* (CDH), oxidizes cellodextrins, mannodextrins, and lactose. In addition to the dehydrogenase, the mature protein contains a heme prosthetic group and a cellulose-binding module (Hallberg et al. 2000). Electron acceptors include quinones, phenoxyradicals, and Fe^{3+}, and involvement in hydroxyl radical generation has been proposed. CDH genes are widely distributed (Table 13.1) as are "glycoside hydrolase" family 61 (GH61) genes. Recently shown to act as *copper-dependent monooxygenases* (Quinlan et al. 2011; Westereng et al. 2011), the GH61s can act together with CDHs to boost cellulose depolymerization (Harris et al. 2010; Langston et al. 2011). The precise roles(s) and interaction(s) between these genes remain to be clarified.

While the abovementioned oxidoreductases can be functionally categorized on the basis of sequence conservation, many variants defy simple classification. For example, peptides corresponding to *S. hirsutum* protein model #118344 (http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/Stehi1/Stehi1.home.html) constitute 5.3 % of the total spectra observed in wood-containing medium. The protein features a secretion signal and InterPro domains that point toward a GMC oxidoreductase, but little additional information allows a firm definition.

13.3.3 Laccases

Laccases are diverse in origin (plants, fungi, and bacteria) and properties [see review (Thurston 1994)]. Brief description of fungal laccase is presented here to highlight the essential properties distinguishing it from the enzymes in the foregoing sections. Laccase (systematic name benzenediol:oxygen oxidoreductase; EC 1.10.3.2) catalyzes the four-electron reduction of oxygen to water with the electrons derived by four one-electron oxidations of substrate (typically phenols or aryl amines). The four-electron reduction is achieved with four copper ions at three enzyme sites: the T1 site contains a type 1 copper in tight coordination with cysteine which gives laccase its blue color, the T2 site has a type 2 copper with characteristic EPR signal, and the T3 site has a pair of strongly coupled EPR-silent type 3 coppers (Bertrand et al. 2002). The T1 site mediates oxidations with transfer of electrons to the T2/T3 trinuclear center where electrons are transferred to oxygen. The capacity for single-electron oxidations by laccase from *T. versicolor*, in comparison with LiP and Class III HRP, was demonstrated with 1,2,4,5-tetramethoxybenzene producing the corresponding cation radical as immediate product (Kersten et al. 1990). Although the laccase oxidized this methoxybenzene congener, it did not have the same capacity as the peroxidases to oxidize methoxybenzenes of higher potential. Laccase oxidation of phenols generates intermediates which may undergo further enzyme-catalyzed oxidation (e.g., generating quinones) or the unstable intermediates may undergo nonenzymatic reactions such as polymerizations (Thurston 1994). Laccase genes are widely distributed among fungi (Table 13.1) but not essential for ligninolysis as demonstrated by the lack of the enzyme in *P. chrysosporium* (Martinez et al. 2004). Differential expression among paralogs is commonly observed (see, e.g., Castanera et al. 2012; Floudas et al. 2012), although the role of genetic multiplicity is poorly understood. Excluding *P. chrysosporium*, considerable evidence suggests that laccase may have a role in lignin modification or plant litter decay (Bourbonnais et al. 1997; Kellner et al. 2007).

13.3.4 Hypothetical and Uncharacterized Proteins

A persistent concern has been the incomplete understanding of predicted proteins lacking significant homology to those of known function (herein referred to as "hypothetical"), some of which are translated and secreted (herein referred to as "uncharacterized"). The dimensions of this issue are staggering. For example, 21 % of the 13,761 *C. puteana* protein models showed no significant similarity to NCBI NR database entries (Floudas et al. 2012). Mass spectrometry analysis of filtrates from aspen-containing media identified 269 separate proteins, and 49 of these were designated "uncharacterized" (Table 13.1). High expression levels, conserved domains, and/or structural features are sometimes observed for these

uncharacterized proteins. Thus, *C. puteana* protein #125481(http://genome.jgi.doe.gov/Conpu1/Conpu1.home.html) constitutes 1.9 % of total spectra and has a predicted secretion signal and an InterPro conserved domain of unknown function (DUF 1793).

13.4 Challenges and Future Prospects

The daunting number of hypothetical proteins and the lack of appropriate experimental tools present significant obstacles to progress in this area. Transcript and *secretome* profiles provide clues, but detailed functional analysis requires biochemical characterization of heterologously expressed proteins and/or targeted gene replacement/suppression. The latter goal has been particularly difficult to achieve because genetic transformation of filamentous basidiomycetes has typically involved low rates of homologous recombination. Recently, this obstacle has been overcome by isolating Ku knockouts that impair nonhomologous end joining in *S. commune* (de Jong et al. 2010), *C. cinereus* (Nakazawa et al. 2011), and *P. ostreatus* (Salame et al. 2012). Demonstrating the power of the approach, Salame et al. demonstrated the importance of *P. pleurotus* MnP4 by successfully inactivating the VP gene. Likely, this experimental approach will be applied to additional Agaricomycetes in the future.

Availability of increasing numbers of genome sequences facilitates high-throughput approaches for elucidating community structure and physiological processes in soils. In addition to the widely used ribosomal DNA and/or the internal transcribed spacer region (ITS) (Buee et al. 2009), the distribution of highly conserved genes such as those encoding laccases and cellobiohydrolases gauge fungal diversity in different soils and soil horizons (Baldrian et al. 2012; Luis et al. 2005). When combined with rRNA sequence, a more complete picture of microbial populations and active metabolism emerges. Degenerate primers amplified cDNAs corresponding to basidiomycete laccases, MnPs, and HtPs (Kellner et al. 2010), and more recent "metatranscriptomic" investigations have provided a more global view of transcript levels (Simon and Daniel 2011). Examples include the assessment of soil gene expression in response to phenanthrene contamination (de Menezes et al. 2012) and the measurements of transcript and populations in various forest soils (Damon et al. 2012). Both investigations identified transcripts corresponding to Agaricomycete degradative enzymes, and the latter study also employed 18S rRNA sequencing to assign broad taxonomic affiliations (Damon et al. 2012). *Metatranscriptome* approaches can be enhanced or extended to functional analysis by expression of full-length genes in *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* (Bailly et al. 2007; Damon et al. 2011; Kellner et al. 2011).

Also promising are the prospects for direct detection of fungal proteins and enzyme activities in natural substrates and/or field soils. Immobilization of fluorescent substrates allows visualization of hydrolytic enzymes on decaying litter, leaves, and wood (Baldrian and Vetrovsky 2012). In addition to such localization,

metabolite identification could play a key role in defining the processes involved in decomposition. Thus, NMR and GC/MS of field-collected decayed wood provided evidence for Fenton-based brown rot (Martinez et al. 2011). Fenton chemistry was also implicated in laboratory studies of *P. involutus* cultured on soil extracts using FTIR and GC/MS coupled to enzyme activities and to mRNAseq (Rineau et al. 2012). *Metaproteomics* [reviewed by Hettich et al. (2012)] offer unparalleled opportunities for understanding microbial processes as demonstrated by recent mass spectrometry of soil (Keiblinger et al. 2012) and leaf litter samples (Schneider et al. 2012). Although challenging technical issues remain, these experimental approaches are beginning to shed light on the roles and interactions of fungi in forest soils.

References

Albrecht M, Lengauer T (2003) Pyranose oxidase identified as a member of the GMC oxidoreductase family. Bioinformatics 19:1216–1220

Anh DH, Ullrich R, Benndorf D et al (2007) The coprophilous mushroom *Coprinus radians* secretes a haloperoxidase that catalyzes aromatic peroxygenation. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:5477–5485

Aranda E, Kinne M, Kluge M et al (2009) Conversion of dibenzothiophene by the mushrooms *Agrocybe aegerita* and *Coprinellus radians* and their extracellular peroxygenases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 82:1057–1066

Arantes V, Milagres AM, Filley TR, Goodell B (2011) Lignocellulosic polysaccharides and lignin degradation by wood decay fungi: the relevance of nonenzymatic Fenton-based reactions. J Ind Microbiol Biotechnol 38:541–555

Arantes V, Jellison J, Goodell B (2012) Peculiarities of brown-rot fungi and biochemical Fenton reaction with regard to their potential as a model for bioprocessing biomass. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 94:323–338

Bailly J, Fraissinet-Tachet L, Verner MC et al (2007) Soil eukaryotic functional diversity, a metatranscriptomic approach. ISME J 1:632–642

Baldrian P (2009) Ectomycorrhizal fungi and their enzymes in soils: is there enough evidence for their role as facultative soil saprotrophs? Oecologia 161:657–660

Baldrian P, Valaskova V (2008) Degradation of cellulose by basidiomycetous fungi. FEMS Microbiol Rev 32:501–521

Baldrian P, Vetrovsky T (2012) Scaling down the analysis of environmental processes: monitoring enzyme activity in natural substrates on a millimeter resolution scale. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:3473–3475

Baldrian P, Kolarik M, Stursova M et al (2012) Active and total microbial communities in forest soil are largely different and highly stratified during decomposition. ISME J 6:248–258

Baute M-A, Baute R (1984) Occurrence among macrofungi of the bioconversion of glucosone to cortalcerone. Phytochemistry 23:271–274

Bengtson P, Bastviken D, De Boer W, Öberg G (2009) Possible role of reactive chlorine in microbial antagonism and organic matter chlorination in terrestrial environments. Environ Microbiol 11:1330–1339

Bertrand T, Jolivalt C, Briozzo P et al (2002) Crystal structure of a four-copper laccase complexed with an arylamine: insights into substrate recognition and correlation with kinetics. Biochemistry 41:7325–7333

Blanchette R (1991) Delignification by wood-decay fungi. Ann Rev Phytopathol 29:381–398

Blanchette RA, Burnes TA, Eerdmans MM, Akhtar M (1992) Evaluating isolates of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* for use in biological pulping processes. Holzforschung 46:109–115

Blanchette R, Krueger E, Haight J et al (1997) Cell wall alterations in loblolly pine wood decayed by the white-rot fungus, *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. J Biotechnol 53:203–213

Boddy L, Watkinson SC (1995) Wood decomposition, higher fungi, and their role in nutrient redistribution. Can J Bot 73:S1377–S1883

Bogan B, Schoenike B, Lamar R, Cullen D (1996a) Manganese peroxidase mRNA and enzyme activity levels during bioremediation of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbon-contaminated soil with *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:2381–2386

Bogan B, Schoenike B, Lamar R, Cullen D (1996b) Expression of *lip* genes during growth in soil and oxidation of anthracene by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 62:3697–3703

Bourbonnais R, Paice MG, Freiermuth B et al (1997) Reactivities of various mediators and laccases with kraft pulp and lignin model compounds. Appl Environ Microbiol 63:4627–4632

Boyle CD, Kropp BR, Reid ID (1992) Solubilization and mineralization of lignin by white rot fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:3217–3224

Brown ME, Barros T, Chang MCY (2012) Identification and characterization of a multifunctional dye peroxidase from a lignin-reactive bacterium. ACS Chem Biol 7:2074–2081

Buee M, Reich M, Murat C et al (2009) 454 Pyrosequencing analyses of forest soils reveal an unexpectedly high fungal diversity. New Phytol 184:449–456

Casella L, Gullotti M, Selvaggini C et al (1994) The chloroperoxidase-catalyzed oxidation of phenols. Mechanism, selectivity, and characterization of enzyme-substrate complexes. Biochemistry 33:6377–6386

Castanera R, Perez G, Omarini A et al (2012) Transcriptional and enzymatic profiling of *Pleurotus ostreatus* laccase genes in submerged and solid-state fermentation cultures. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:4037–4045

Cavener DR (1992) GMC oxidoreductases: a newly defined family of homologous proteins with diverse catalytic activities. J Mol Biol 223:811–814

Choinowski T, Blodig W, Winterhalter KH, Piontek K (1999) The crystal structure of lignin peroxidase at 1.70 A resolution reveals a hydroxy group on the cbeta of tryptophan 171: a novel radical site formed during the redox cycle. J Mol Biol 286:809–827

Cohen R, Jensen KA, Houtman CJ, Hammel KE (2002) Significant levels of extracellular reactive oxygen species produced by brown rot basidiomycetes on cellulose. FEBS Lett 531:483–488

Cohen R, Suzuki MR, Hammel KE (2004) Differential stress-induced regulation of two quinone reductases in the brown rot basidiomycete *Gloeophyllum trabeum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:324–331

Cowling EB (1961) Comparative biochemistry of the decay of sweetgum sapwood by white-rot and brown-rot fungi. Technical Bulletin No. 1258, U.S. Department of Agriculture, Washington, DC

Cullen D, Kersten PJ (2004) Enzymology and molecular biology of lignin degradation. In: Brambl R, Marzulf GA (eds) The mycota III biochemistry and molecular biology. Springer, Berlin, pp 249–273

Cullings K, Courty PE (2009) Saprotrophic capabilities as functional traits to study functional diversity and resilience of ectomycorrhizal community. Oecologia 161:661–664

Damon C, Vallon L, Zimmermann S et al (2011) A novel fungal family of oligopeptide transporters identified by functional metatranscriptomics of soil eukaryotes. ISME J 5:1871–1880

Damon C, Lehembre F, Oger-Desfeux C et al (2012) Metatranscriptomics reveals the diversity of genes expressed by eukaryotes in forest soils. PLoS One 7:e28967

Daniel G (1994) Use of electron microscopy for aiding our understanding of wood biodegradation. FEMS Microbiol Rev 13:199–233

Daniel G, Volc J, Kubatova E (1994) Pyranose oxidase, a major source of H2O2 during wood degradation by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*, *Trametes versicolor*, and *Oudemansiella mucida*. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:2524–2532

Daniel G, Volc J, Filonova L et al (2007) Characteristics of *Gloeophyllum trabeum* alcohol oxidase, an extracellular source of H2O2 in brown rot decay of wood. Appl Environ Microbiol 73:6241–6253

de Jong E, Cazemier AE, Field JA, de Bont JAM (1994) Physiological role of chlorinated aryl alcohols biosynthesized de novo by the white rot fungus *Bjerkandera* sp. Strain BOS55. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:271–277

de Jong JF, Ohm RA, de Bekker C et al (2010) Inactivation of ku80 in the mushroom-forming fungus *Schizophyllum commune* increases the relative incidence of homologous recombination. FEMS Microbiol Lett 310:91–95

de Koker TH, Mozuch MD, Cullen D et al (2004) Isolation and purification of pyranose 2-oxidase from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* and characterization of gene structure and regulation. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:5794–5800

de Menezes A, Clipson N, Doyle E (2012) Comparative metatranscriptomics reveals widespread community responses during phenanthrene degradation in soil. Environ Microbiol 14:2577–2588

Dietrich D, Crooks C (2009) Gene cloning and heterologous expression of pyranose 2-oxidase from the brown-rot fungus, *Gloeophyllum trabeum*. Biotechnol Lett 31:1223–1228

Doyle WA, Blodig W, Veitch NC et al (1998) Two substrate interaction sites in lignin peroxidase revealed by site-directed mutagenesis. Biochemistry 37:15097–15105

Durrant AJ, Wood DA, Cain RB (1991) Lignocellulose biodegradation by *Agaricus bisporus* during solid substrate fermentation. J Gen Microbiol 137:751–755

Eastwood DC, Floudas D, Binder M et al (2011) The plant cell wall-decomposing machinery underlies the functional diversity of forest fungi. Science 333:762–765

Eriksson K-EL, Blanchette RA, Ander P (1990) Microbial and enzymatic degradation of wood and wood components. Springer, Berlin

Faison BD, Kirk TK (1983) Relationship between lignin degradation and production of reduced oxygen species by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 46:1140–1145

Fernandez IS, Ruiz-Duenas FJ, Santillana E et al (2009) Novel structural features in the GMC family of oxidoreductases revealed by the crystal structure of fungal aryl-alcohol oxidase. Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr 65:1196–1205

Fernandez-Fueyo E, Ruiz-Duenas FJ, Ferreira P et al (2012) Comparative genomics of *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora* and *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* provide insight into selective ligninolysis. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:5458–5463

Fleischmann A, Darsow M, Degtyarenko K et al (2004) IntEnz, the integrated relational enzyme database. Nucleic Acids Res 32:D434–D437

Floudas D, Binder M, Riley R et al (2012) The Paleozoic origin of enzymatic lignin decomposition reconstructed from 31 fungal genomes. Science 336:1715–1719

Flournoy D, Paul J, Kirk TK, Highley T (1993) Changes in the size and volume of pore in sweet gum wood during simultaneous rot by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Holzforschung 47:297–301

Forney LJ, Reddy CA, Pankratz HS (1982) Ultrastructural localization of hydrogen peroxide production in ligninolytic *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* cells. Appl Environ Microbiol 44:732–736

Giffhorn F (2000) Fungal pyranose oxidases: occurrence, properties and biotechnical applications in carbohydrate chemistry. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 54:727–740

Gilbertson RL (1981) North American wood-rotting fungi that cause brown rots. Mycotaxon 12:372–416

Gomez-Toribio V, Garcia-Martin AB, Martinez MJ et al (2009) Induction of extracellular hydroxyl radical production by white-rot fungi through quinone redox cycling. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:3944–3953

Goodell B (2003) Brown rot fungal degradation of wood: our evolving view. In: Goodell B et al (eds) Wood deterioration and preservation. American Chemical Society, Washington, DC, pp 97–118

Grinhut T, Salame TM, Chen Y, Hadar Y (2011a) Involvement of ligninolytic enzymes and Fenton-like reaction in humic acid degradation by *Trametes* sp. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 91:1131–1140

Grinhut T, Hertkorn N, Schmitt-Kopplin P et al (2011b) Mechanisms of humic acids degradation by white rot fungi explored using 1H NMR spectroscopy and FTICR mass spectrometry. Environ Sci Technol 45:2748–2754

Gröbe G, Ullrich R, Pecyna M et al (2011) High-yield production of aromatic peroxygenase by the agaric fungus *Marasmius rotula*. AMB Express 1:1–11

Gutiérrez A, Caramelo L, Prieto A et al (1994) Anisaldehyde production and aryl-alcohol oxidase and dehydrogenase activities in ligninolytic fungi of the genus *Pleurotus*. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:1783–1788

Hallberg BM, Bergfors T, Backbro K et al (2000) A new scaffold for binding haem in the cytochrome domain of the extracellular flavocytochrome cellobiose dehydrogenase. Structure 8:79–88

Hallberg BM, Leitner C, Haltrich D, Divne C (2004) Crystal structure of the 270 kDa homotetrameric lignin-degrading enzyme pyranose 2-oxidase. J Mol Biol 341:781–796

Harris PV, Welner D, McFarland KC et al (2010) Stimulation of lignocellulosic biomass hydrolysis by proteins of glycoside hydrolase family 61: structure and function of a large, enigmatic family. Biochemistry 49:3305–3316

Hatakka A (2001) Biodegradation of lignin. In: Hofrichter M, Steinbuchel A (eds) Lignin, humic substances and coal. Wiley-VCH, Weingeim, pp 129–180

Hatakka A, Hammel KE (2010) Fungal biodegradation of lignocelluloses. In: Hofrichter M (ed) Industrial applications. Springer, Berlin

Henriksson G, Johansson G, Pettersson G (2000a) A critical review of cellobiose dehydrogenases. J Biotechnol 78:93–113

Henriksson G, Zhang L, Li J et al (2000b) Is cellobiose dehydrogenase from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* a lignin degrading enzyme? Biochim Biophys Acta 1480:83–91

Hernández-Ortega A, Ferreira P, Martínez A (2012) Fungal aryl-alcohol oxidase: a peroxide-producing flavoenzyme involved in lignin degradation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93:1395–1410

Hettich RL, Sharma R, Chourey K, Giannone RJ (2012) Microbial metaproteomics: identifying the repertoire of proteins that microorganisms use to compete and cooperate in complex environmental communities. Curr Opin Microbiol 15:373–380

Higuchi T (1990) Lignin biochemistry: biosynthesis and biodegradation. Wood Sci Technol 24:23–63

Hofrichter M, Ullrich R, Pecyna M et al (2010) New and classic families of secreted fungal heme peroxidases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87:871–897

Janse BJH, Gaskell J, Akhtar M, Cullen D (1998) Expression of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* genes encoding lignin peroxidases, manganese peroxidases, and glyoxal oxidase in wood. Appl Environ Microbiol 64:3536–3538

Kapich AN, Jensen KA, Hammel KE (1999) Peroxyl radicals are potential agents of lignin biodegradation. FEBS Lett 461:115–119

Keiblinger KM, Wilhartitz IC, Schneider T et al (2012) Soil metaproteomics – comparative evaluation of protein extraction protocols. Soil Biol Biochem 54:14–24

Kellner H, Luis P, Buscot F (2007) Diversity of laccase-like multicopper oxidase genes in Morchellaceae: identification of genes potentially involved in extracellular activities related to plant litter decay. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 61:153–163

Kellner H, Zak DR, Vandenbol M (2010) Fungi unearthed: transcripts encoding lignocellulolytic and chitinolytic enzymes in forest soil. PLoS One 5:e10971

Kellner H, Luis P, Portetelle D, Vandenbol M (2011) Screening of a soil metatranscriptomic library by functional complementation of *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* mutants. Microbiol Res 166:360–368

Kersten PJ (1990) Glyoxal oxidase of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*; its characterization and activation by lignin peroxidase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 87:2936–2940

Kersten PJ, Cullen D (1993) Cloning and characterization of a cDNA encoding glyoxal oxidase, a H_2O_2-producing enzyme from the lignin-degrading basidiomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90:7411–7413

Kersten P, Cullen D (2007) Extracellular oxidative systems of the lignin-degrading basidiomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Fungal Genet Biol 44:77–87

Kersten PJ, Kirk TK (1987) Involvement of a new enzyme, glyoxal oxidase, in extracellular H_2O_2 production by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. J Bacteriol 169:2195–2201

Kersten PJ, Tien M, Kalyanaraman B, Kirk TK (1985) The ligninase of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* generates cation radicals from methoxybenzenes. J Biol Chem 260:2609–2612

Kersten PJ, Kalyanaraman B, Hammel KE et al (1990) Comparison of lignin peroxidase, horse-radish peroxidase, and laccase in the oxidation of methoxybenzenes. Biochem J 268:475–480

Keyser P, Kirk TK, Zeikus JG (1978) Ligninolytic enzyme system of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*: synthesized in the absence of lignin in response to nitrogen starvation. J Bacteriol 135:790–797

Kim SJ, Shoda M (1999) Purification and characterization of a novel peroxidase from *Geotrichum candidum* Dec 1 involved in decolorization of dyes. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:1029–1035

Kim SJ, Ishikawa K, Hirai M, Shoda M (1995) Characteristics of a newly isolated fungus, *Geotrichum candidum* Dec 1, which decolorizes various dyes. J Ferment Bioeng 79:601–607

Kirk TK, Tien M, Kersten PJ et al (1986) Ligninase of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Mechanism of its degradation of the non-phenolic arylglycerol beta-aryl ether substructure of lignin. Biochem J 236:279–287

Kirk TK, Ibach R, Mozuch MD et al (1991) Characteristics of cotton cellulose depolymerized by a brown-rot fungus, by acid, or by chemical oxidants. Holzforschung 45:239–244

Kleman-Leyer K, Agosin E, Conner AH, Kirk TK (1992) Changes in molecular size distribution of cellulose during attack by white rot and brown rot fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 58:1266–1270

Kluczek-Turpeinen B, Steffen KT, Tuomela M et al (2005) Modification of humic acids by the compost-dwelling deuteromycete *Paecilomyces inflatus*. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 66:443–449

Koths K, Halenbeck R, Moreland M (1992) Synthesis of the antibiotic cortalcerone from -glucose using pyranose 2-oxidase and a novel fungal enzyme, aldos-2-ulose dehydratase. Carbohydr Res 232:59–75

Kuan IC, Tien M (1993) Stimulation of Mn peroxidase activity: a possible role for oxalate in lignin biodegradation. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 90:1242–1246

Kunishima N, Fukuyama K, Matsubara H et al (1994) Crystal structure of the fungal peroxidase from Arthromyces ramosus at 1·9 Å resolution: structural comparisons with the lignin and cytochrome c peroxidases. J Mol Biol 235:331–344

Langston JA, Shaghasi T, Abbate E et al (2011) Oxidoreductive cellulose depolymerization by the enzymes cellobiose dehydrogenase and glycoside hydrolase 61. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:7007–7015

Larrondo L, Gonzalez A, Perez_Acle T et al (2005) The nop gene from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* encodes a peroxidase with novel structural features. Biophys Chem 116:167–173

Liers C, Pecyna MJ, Kellner H et al (2013) Substrate oxidation by dye-decolorizing peroxidases (DyPs) from wood- and litter-degrading agaricomycetes compared to other fungal and plant heme-peroxidases. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 97(13):5839–5849

Longoria A, Tinoco R, Vázquez-Duhalt R (2008) Chloroperoxidase-mediated transformation of highly halogenated monoaromatic compounds. Chemosphere 72:485–490

Luis P, Kellner H, Zimdars B et al (2005) Patchiness and spatial distribution of laccase genes of ectomycorrhizal, saprotrophic, and unknown basidiomycetes in the upper horizons of a mixed forest cambisol. Microb Ecol 50:570–579

Lundell TK, Mäkelä MR, Hildén K (2010) Lignin-modifying enzymes in filamentous basidiomycetes – ecological, functional and phylogenetic review. J Basic Microbiol 50:5–20

Manoj KM, Hager LP (2008) Chloroperoxidase, a janus enzyme. Biochemistry 47:2997–3003

Martin F, Aerts A, Ahren D et al (2008) The genome of *Laccaria bicolor* provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis. Nature 452:88–92

Martinez D, Larrondo LF, Putnam N et al (2004) Genome sequence of the lignocellulose degrading fungus *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* strain RP78. Nat Biotechnol 22:695–700

Martinez D, Challacombe J, Morgenstern I et al (2009) Genome, transcriptome, and secretome analysis of wood decay fungus *Postia placenta* supports unique mechanisms of lignocellulose conversion. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:1954–1959

Martinez AT, Rencoret J, Nieto L et al (2011) Selective lignin and polysaccharide removal in natural fungal decay of wood as evidenced by in situ structural analyses. Environ Microbiol 13:96–107

Marzullo L, Cannio R, Giardina P et al (1995) Veratryl alcohol oxidase from *Pleurotus ostreatus* participates in lignin biodegradation and prevents polymerization of laccase-oxidized substrates. J Biol Chem 270:3823–3827

Miki K, Renganathan V, Gold MH (1986) Mechanism of beta-aryl ether dimeric lignin model compound oxidation by lignin peroxidase by *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Biochemistry 25:4790–4796

Morin E, Kohler A, Baker AR et al (2012) Genome sequence of the button mushroom *Agaricus bisporus* reveals mechanisms governing adaptation to a humic-rich ecological niche. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 109:17501–17506

Morris DR, Hager LP (1966) Chloroperoxidase: I. Isolation and properties of the crystalline glycoprotein. J Biol Chem 241:1763–1768

Murali Manoj K (2006) Chlorinations catalyzed by chloroperoxidase occur via diffusible intermediate(s) and the reaction components play multiple roles in the overall process. Biochim Biophys Acta 1764:1325–1339

Nakazawa T, Ando Y, Kitaaki K et al (2011) Efficient gene targeting in DeltaCc.ku70 or DeltaCc.lig4 mutants of the agaricomycete *Coprinopsis cinerea*. Fungal Genet Biol 48:939–946

Niemenmaa O, Uusi-Rauva A, Hatakka A (2007) Demethoxylation of [O(14)CH (3)]-labelled lignin model compounds by the brown-rot fungi *Gloeophyllum trabeum* and *Poria (Postia) placenta*. Biodegradation 19:555–565

Nishida A, Eriksson K-E (1987) Formation, purification, and partial characterization of methanol oxidase, a H_2O_2-producing enzyme in *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Biotechnol Appl Biochem 9:325–338

Ohm RA, de Jong JF, Lugones LG et al (2010) Genome sequence of the model mushroom *Schizophyllum commune*. Nat Biotechnol 28:957–963

Olson A, Aerts A, Asiegbu F et al (2012) Insight into trade-off between wood decay and parasitism from the genome of a fungal forest pathogen. New Phytol 194:1001–1013

Ortiz-Bermúdez P, Hirth KC, Srebotnik E, Hammel KE (2007) Chlorination of lignin by ubiquitous fungi has a likely role in global organochlorine production. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 104:3895–3900

Osborne RL, Coggins MK, Terner J, Dawson JH (2007) *Caldariomyces fumago* chloroperoxidase catalyzes the oxidative dehalogenation of chlorophenols by a mechanism involving two one-electron steps. J Am Chem Soc 129:14838–14839

Paszczynski A, Crawford R, Funk D, Goodell B (1999) De novo synthesis of 4,5-dimethoxycatechol and 2,5- dimethoxyhydroquinone by the brown rot fungus *Gloeophyllum trabeum*. Appl Environ Microbiol 65:674–679

Petersen JFW, Kadziola A, Larsen S (1994) Three-dimensional structure of a recombinant peroxidase from Coprinus cinereus at 2.6 Å resolution. FEBS Lett 339:291–296

Pisanelli I, Kujawa M, Spadiut O et al (2009) Pyranose oxidase from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* – expression in *E. coli* and biochemical characterisation. J Biotechnol 142:97–106

Quinlan RJ, Sweeney MD, Lo Leggio L et al (2011) Insights into the oxidative degradation of cellulose by a copper metalloenzyme that exploits biomass components. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 108:15079–15084

Ralph J, Lundquist K, Brunow G et al (2004) Lignins: natural polymers from oxidative coupling of 4-hydroxyphenyl-propanoids. Phytochem Rev 3:29–60

Rineau F, Roth D, Shah F et al (2012) The ectomycorrhizal fungus *Paxillus involutus* converts organic matter in plant litter using a trimmed brown-rot mechanism involving Fenton chemistry. Environ Microbiol 14:1477–1487

Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Ferreira P, Martínez MJ, Martínez AT (2006) In vitro activation, purification, and characterization of *Escherichia coli* expressed aryl-alcohol oxidase, a unique H2O2-producing enzyme. Protein Expr Purif 45:191–199

Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Pogni R, Morales M et al (2009) Protein radicals in fungal versatile peroxidase: catalytic tryptophan radical in both compound I and compound II and studies on W164Y, W164H and W164S variants. J Biol Chem 284:7986–7994

Ruiz-Dueñas FJ, Fernández E, Martínez MJ, Martínez AT (2011) Pleurotus ostreatus heme peroxidases: an in silico analysis from the genome sequence to the enzyme molecular structure. C R Biol 334:795–805

Salame TM, Knop D, Tal D et al (2012) A gene-targeting system for *Pleurotus ostreatus*: demonstrating the predominance of versatile-peroxidase (mnp4) by gene replacement. Appl Environ Microbiol 78:5341–5352

Schmidt O, Liese W (1980) Variability of wood degrading enzymes of *Schizophyllum commune*. Holzforschung 34:67–72

Schneider T, Keiblinger KM, Schmid E et al (2012) Who is who in litter decomposition? Metaproteomics reveals major microbial players and their biogeochemical functions. ISME J 6:1749–1762

Schwarze FW (2007) Wood decay under the microscope. Fungal Biol Rev 21:133–170

Shaw PD, Hager LP (1959) Biological chlorination: III. β-Ketoadipate chlorinase: a soluble enzyme system. J Biol Chem 234:2565–2569

Simon C, Daniel R (2011) Metagenomic analyses: past and future trends. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:1153–1161

Smith AT, Doyle WA, Dorlet P, Ivancich A (2009) Spectroscopic evidence for an engineered, catalytically active Trp radical that creates the unique reactivity of lignin peroxidase. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 106:16084–16089

Snajdr J, Steffen KT, Hofrichter M, Baldrian P (2010) Transformation of 14C-lableled lignin and humic substances in forest soil by the saprobic basidiomycetes *Gymnopus erythropus* and *Hypholoma fasciculare*. Soil Biol Biochem 42:1541–1548

Srebotnik E, Messner KE (1991) Immunoelectron microscopical study of the porosity of brown rot wood. Holzforschung 45:95–101

Srebotnik E, Messner K (1994) A simple method that uses differential staining and light microscopy to assess the selectivity of wood delignification by white rot fungi. Appl Environ Microbiol 60:1383–1386

Srebotnik E, Messner K, Foisner R, Petterson B (1988) Ultrastructural localization of ligninase of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* by immunogold labeling. Curr Microbiol 16:221–227

Stajich JE, Wilke SK, Ahren D et al (2010) Insights into evolution of multicellular fungi from the assembled chromosomes of the mushroom *Coprinopsis cinerea (Coprinus cinereus)*. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 107:11889–11894

Steffen KT, Hatakka A, Hofrichter M (2002) Degradation of humic acids by the litter-decomposing basidiomycete *Collybia dryophila*. Appl Environ Microbiol 68:3442–3448

Sugano Y (2009) DyP-type peroxidases comprise a novel heme peroxidase family. Cell Mol Life Sci 66:1387–1403

Sugano Y, Muramatsu R, Ichiyanagi A et al (2007) DyP, a Unique Dye-decolorizing peroxidase, represents a novel heme peroxidase family: ASP171 replaces the distal histidine of classical peroxidases. J Biol Chem 282:36652–36658

Sundaramoorthy M, Kishi K, Gold MH, Poulos TL (1994) The crystal structure of manganese peroxidase from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* at 2.06-A resolution. J Biol Chem 269:32759–32767

Sundaramoorthy M, Terner J, Poulos TL (1995) The crystal structure of chloroperoxidase: a heme peroxidase–cytochrome P450 functional hybrid. Structure 3:1367–1378

Suzuki MR, Hunt CG, Houtman CJ et al (2006) Fungal hydroquinones contribute to brown rot of wood. Environ Microbiol 8:2214–2223

Thurston CF (1994) The structure and function of fungal laccases. Microbiology 140:19–26

Tien M, Kirk TK (1983) Lignin-degrading enzyme from the hymenomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* Burds. Science 221:661–663

Ullrich R, Nüske J, Scheibner K et al (2004) Novel haloperoxidase from the agaric basidiomycete *Agrocybe aegerita* oxidizes aryl alcohols and aldehydes. Appl Environ Microbiol 70:4575–4581

Urzúa U, Kersten PJ, Vicuña R (1998) Kinetics of Mn^{3+}-oxalate formation and decay in reactions catalyzed by manganese peroxidase of *Ceriporiopsis subvermispora*. Arch Biochem Biophys 360:215–222

Vaario LM, Heinonsalo J, Spetz P et al (2012) The ectomycorrhizal fungus *Tricholoma matsutake* is a facultative saprotroph in vitro. Mycorrhiza 22:409–418

van den Brink J, de Vries RP (2011) Fungal enzyme sets for plant polysaccharide degradation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 91:1477–1492

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Sabat G, Martinez D et al (2005) The *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* secretome: database predictions and initial mass spectrometry peptide identifications in cellulose-grown medium. J Biotechnol 118:17–34

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Sabat G, Mozuch M et al (2006a) Structure, organization, and transcriptional regulation of a family of copper radical oxidase genes in the lignin-degrading basidiomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 72:4871–4877

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Minges P, Sabat G et al (2006b) Computational analysis of the *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* v2.0 genome database and mass spectrometry identification of peptides in ligninolytic cultures reveals complex mixtures of secreted proteins. Fungal Genet Biol 43:343–356

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Gaskell J, Mozuch MD et al (2009) Transcriptome and secretome analysis of *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* reveal complex patterns of gene expression. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:4058–4068

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Gaskell J, Mozuch MD et al (2010) Comparative transcriptome and secretome analysis of wood decay fungi *Postia placenta* and *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:3599–3610

Vanden Wymelenberg A, Gaskell J, Mozuch M et al (2011) Significant alteration of gene expression in wood decay fungi *Postia placenta* and *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* by plant species. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:4499–4507

Vincent D, Kohler A, Claverol S et al (2012) Secretome of the free-living mycelium from the ectomycorrhizal basidiomycete *Laccaria bicolor*. J Proteome Res 11:157–171

Wariishi H, Valli K, Gold MH (1992) Manganese(II) oxidation by manganese peroxidase from the basidiomycete *Phanerochaete chrysosporium*. Kinetic mechanism and role of chelators. J Biol Chem 267:23688–23695

Welinder KG (1992) Superfamily of plant, fungal and bacterial peroxidases. Curr Opin Struct Biol 2:388–393

Westereng B, Ishida T, Vaaje-Kolstad G et al (2011) The putative endoglucanase PcGH61D from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* is a metal-dependent oxidative enzyme that cleaves cellulose. PLoS One 6:e27807

Whittaker JW (2005) The radical chemistry of galactose oxidase. Arch Biochem Biophys 433:227–239

Whittaker MM, Kersten PJ, Nakamura N et al (1996) Glyoxal oxidase from *Phanerochaete chrysosporium* is a new radical-copper oxidase. J Biol Chem 271:681–687

Whittaker MM, Kersten PJ, Cullen D, Whittaker JW (1999) Identification of catalytic residues in glyoxal oxidase by targeted mutagenesis. J Biol Chem 274:36226–36232

Worrall JJ, Anagnost SE, Zabel RA (1997) Comparison of wood decay among diverse lignicolous fungi. Mycologia 89:199–219

Xu G, Goodell B (2001) Mechanisms of wood degradation by brown-rot fungi: chelator-mediated cellulose degradation and binding of iron by cellulose. J Biotechnol 87:43–57

Yelle DJ, Ralph J, Lu F, Hammel KE (2008) Evidence for cleavage of lignin by a brown rot basidiomycete. Environ Microbiol 10:1844–1849

Yelle DJ, Wei D, Ralph J, Hammel KE (2011) Multidimensional NMR analysis reveals truncated lignin structures in wood decayed by the brown rot basidiomycete *Postia placenta*. Environ Microbiol 13:1091–1100

Zubieta C, Joseph R, Sri Krishna S et al (2007) Identification and structural characterization of heme binding in a novel dye-decolorizing peroxidase, TyrA. Protein Struct Func Bioinform 69:234–243

Chapter 14
Archaeorhizomycetes: Patterns of Distribution and Abundance in Soil

Anna Rosling, Ina Timling, and D. Lee Taylor

14.1 Introduction

Archaeorhizomycetes represents one of the most ubiquitous lineages of soil fungi, and its formal description adds a prominent branch to the Taphrinomycotina among the basal Ascomycota (Rosling et al. 2011). Fungi in the class are strongly associated with soil environments containing plant roots. However, experimental analyses suggest that interactions with roots are neither mycorrhizal nor pathogenic. Instead, species in the Archaeorhizomycetes may exist along a continuum from root endophytic to free-living saprophytic life strategies. It is possible that Archaeorhizomycetes are mycoparasitic, but these life strategies have not yet been studied. Among thousands of published environmental sequences belonging to the class, only one was neither from soil nor roots. The sequence (GenBank Acc nr. EF67470) was cloned from samples of particulate organic matter collected in sediment from a freshwater stream (Bärlocher et al. 2008). While this could indicate that Archaeorhizomycetes is not restricted to terrestrial habitats, a more likely explanation is that the sequence originated from terrestrial material, i.e., spores, soil, and organic matter, that were deposited in the stream. Hence, all

A. Rosling (✉)
Department of Ecology and Genetics, EBC, Uppsala University, Uppsala, Sweden
e-mail: Anna.Rosling@ebc.uu.se

I. Timling
Institute of Arctic Biology and Department of Biology and Wildlife, University of Alaska Fairbanks, Fairbanks, AK, USA
e-mail: itimling@alaska.edu

D.L. Taylor
Institute of Arctic Biology and Department of Biology and Wildlife, University of Alaska Fairbanks, Fairbanks, AK, USA

Department of Biology, University of New Mexico, Albuquerque, NM, USA
e-mail: ltaylor@iab.alaska.edu; fflt@unm.edu

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_14,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

available evidence supports the notion that Archaeorhizomycetes is restricted to vegetated terrestrial ecosystems (Porter et al. 2008; Rosling et al. 2011).

Based on similarity to environmental ITS and LSU sequences available in public databases, the class has been estimated to comprise more than 250 putative species (Rosling et al. 2011). Strong biogeographic patterns with significant global association between geographic and phylogenetic distance were detected across the class. Despite these strong biogeographic patterns, a number of putative species, such as *A. finlayi*, have a broad geographic distribution. Habitat specificity towards host species or genus, e.g. Tsuga, Picea, and Pinus, was detected for many putative species, while others have a broader habitat range (Rosling et al. 2011). It is possible that species that show habitat specificity are more closely associated with roots than species with broad distribution. It is important to keep in mind that Archaeorhizomycetes is an ancient class of fungi and may thus encompass diverse life strategies and ecologies.

In this chapter we analyze available ITS, LSU, and SSU sequences and their associated publications to discuss global distribution and abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes. Furthermore we expand our knowledge about Archaeorhizomycetes by analyzing publicly available ITS-LSU sequences from ten studies, seven with sequences in GenBank as well as unpublished sequence data from three studies: the North American Arctic Transect (NAAT) (Timling et al. unpublished), black spruce forest (TKN), and successional gradient in an upland ecosystem (UP) (Taylor et al. 2010).

14.1.1 Global Distribution

Based on new analysis of available environmental sequences of the ITS, LSU, and SSU regions, we demonstrate that species in the class Archaeorhizomycetes occur on all continents, except Antarctica, and in most terrestrial biomes, including tundra, taiga, tropical rainforest, temperate forest, and grasslands (Fig. 14.1). The size of dots in Fig. 14.1 illustrates the number of sites from which sequences of Archaeorhizomycetes have been identified in different regions. The number of observations is strongly biased towards regions where many studies of soil fungal communities are performed using molecular identification methods, i.e., Europe and North America. Ecosystems in these regions are mostly comprised of coniferous forests (Buscardo et al. 2010; Cox et al. 2010; Lindahl et al. 2007; Parrent and Vilgalys 2007; Rincon and Pueyo 2010; Taylor et al. 2008; Urban et al. 2008) and tundra-/shrub-type ecosystems (Bjorbaekmo et al. 2010; Bougoure et al. 2007; Deslippe et al. 2012; Schadt et al. 2003) but also include mixed deciduous forests (Edwards and Zak 2011; Stefani et al. 2009).

Observations of sequences belonging to the Archaeorhizomycetes in the Southern Hemisphere include the following: tropical rain forest in southwestern Costa Rica (Porter et al. 2008); tropical mountain pine forest in North Eastern Australia (Curlevski et al. 2010); dry sclerophyll forest in New South Wales, Australia (Chen

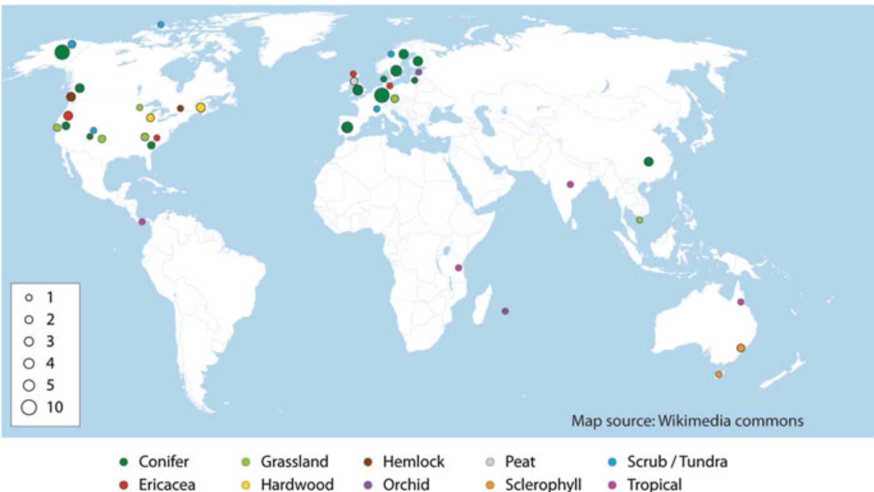


Fig. 14.1 Map of the world illustrating location and ecosystem where Archaeorhizomycetes has been detected using environmental sequencing. Size of *dots* corresponds to the number of sampling occasions (i.e., different sites or different studies from the same site) in which sequences of Archaeorhizomycetes have been detected. Data are compiled using sequences of the ITS, LSU, and SSU rRNA region available in GenBank with associated publications as well as additional sequences from three studies from the North American Boreal Forest and Arctic (Taylor unpublished data)

and Cairney 2002); wet sclerophyll forests in Tasmania (Tedersoo et al. 2009); subtropical pine forests in south central China (Huang et al. 2012); and in roots of the terrestrial orchid *Phaius pulchelus* collected on La Reunion, in the Pacific Ocean (Martos et al. 2012). Recent samples from unpublished studies in tropical regions add four more locations for Archaeorhizomycetes to the world map. These include samples collected from bulk soil associated with unhealthy *Axonopus compressus* (Blanket grass) in Singapore (HQ436085), root tips of *Allanblackia stuhlmannii* (a flowering tree indigenous to Tanzania) in the East Usambara Mountains in North Eastern Tanzania (unpublished data, Helena Ström, SLU Sweden), and brinjal (eggplant) rhizosphere soil in India (JQ989336) as well as one more tropical pine forest in Zhenjiang, China (HE814241) (Fig. 14.1). We expect that increased sampling and molecular identification of soil fungi in the Southern Hemisphere will increase the number of observations of Archaeorhizomycetes in tropical and subtropical ecosystems. The significant association between geographic and phylogenetic distance is notable in the global phylogeny of Archaeorhizomycetes where all Alaska sequences are found within the upper 2/3 of the tree among sequences derived mainly from boreal and coniferous ecosystems [Fig. 3 in Rosling et al. (2011)]. We thus expect new lineages, at the level of genus and families, to emerge in the phylogeny of Archaeorhizomycetes as sampling of the Southern Hemisphere proceeds.

Intensified studies of fungi in tropical ecosystems have generally resulted in the recognition of many previously unknown species (Hawksworth 2012). This pattern may become apparent for Archaeorhizomycetes as well, as more sequences are made publicly available from studies in tropical ecosystems. In a comparison of ectomycorrhizal-dominated boreal and tropical forests, McGuire and co-workers studied soil fungal communities by sequencing the ITS and LSU rRNA. The study is still unpublished, but sequences from the study are available in GenBank. While 13 % of the sequences from Delta Junction in Alaska belonged to Archaeorhizomycetes, none of the sequences from their tropical forest sites belonged to this class. This result, as well as the existing global patterns (Fig. 14.1), suggests that fungi in the Archaeorhizomycetes may be more abundant in boreal compared to tropical forest ecosystems.

14.1.2 Abundance in Soil Fungal Communities

Archaeorhizomycetes are also a major component of soil fungal communities from several studies. They were first detected as the novel fungal lineage Cluster 1 in alpine tundra soils (Schadt et al. 2003) at an average abundance of 15.2 % [19 out of 125 clones, see Supplementary material in Porter et al. (2008)]. In this study temporal dynamics of soil fungal communities were studied by sampling soils from below snow cover in winter and into the summer. Schadt and co-workers found that soil fungal community composition was stable from winter to spring but shifted significantly into summer, largely because of the dominance of Archaeorhizomycetes which made up 62 % of the clones sequenced from summer samples (Schadt et al. 2003). A cluster of Archaeorhizomycetes was identified accounting for 7 % of the winter samples, while none were identified in spring samples. Later Porter et al. (2008) examined four ecosystems: two different forests from within the Niwot Ridge Long-Term Ecological Research Site in Colorado (a tree line forest dominated by *Picea engelmannii* and *Pseudotsuga menziesii* and a montane forest with *Pinus contorta*, *Abies lasiocarpa,* and *Picea engelmannii*), one Costa Rican tropical forest on highly weathered P limited soil, and a temperate coniferous forest dominated by *Tsuga canadensis* in eastern Canada. They identified Archaeorhizomycetes, then Soil Clone Group 1, in 6.9–27 % of LSU clones derived from total soil DNA extracts from these ecosystems. Nevertheless, the highest abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes, 73–95 % of clones derived from soil DNA extracts, was detected by Castro et al. (2010) in a study of climate change effects on soil microbial communities associated with a reconstructed old-field plant community. The highest abundance was recorded in the wet treatment, which received 25 mm rain per week, and the lowest in the dry treatment, which received 2 mm per week. Apart from its exceptionally high abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes clones, the study by Castro et al. (2010) stands out in that sampling occurred late in the season (October 2006) which is close to the end of the growing season for Oak Ridge, TN. In addition to previously documented seasonal dynamics associated with plant

growth (Schadt et al. 2003), temporal dynamics of aboveground senescence, decreased carbon allocation to roots, and associated mycorrhizal fungi as well as root decomposition may be major drivers of relative abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes in soil fungal communities.

Assuming that abundance in soil DNA clone libraries reflects actual species abundance in terms of biomass or activity in soil, these studies demonstrate that members of Archaeorhizomycetes are major components of many soil fungal communities. While the internal transcribed spacer region (ITS) is the designated gene to describe fungal communities (Schoch et al. 2012), it has to be noted that Archaeorhizomycetes abundance estimates from studies targeting the ITS region are obscured by two specific mismatches in the binding site of the widely used reverse primer ITS4 (White et al. 1990). This can lead to great underestimation of Archaeorhizomycetes in soils. The three studies discussed above (Schadt et al. 2003; Porter et al. 2008; Castro et al. 2010) targeted the LSU region for amplification and sequencing of fungi from environmental samples by using reverse primers in the LSU region, such as nLSU1221R (Schadt et al. 2003) and TW13 (White et al. 1990), which do not appear to be biased against Archaeorhizomycetes. Therefore, the detected abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes in these studies might reflect their true abundance better than in studies using ITS4.

14.2 Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska

The Alaskan boreal forest ecosystem is the best-documented ecosystem with respect to soil fungal communities (Taylor et al. 2010). After removing all singletons, 1,578 OTUs were identified in a dataset of over 52,000 sequenced clones. Among the 30 most common OTUs, only five were non-mycorrhizal and two of these can now be identified as Archaeorhizomycetes (labeled *Candida tepae* because no closer relatives were described at the time) (Taylor et al. 2010). Both these OTUs were found predominantly in the black spruce (*Picea mariana*) habitat. In an earlier study by Taylor et al. (2007), a putative Archaeorhizomycetes sp. (labeled OTU 76) was detected as the most abundant OTU, comprising approximately 25 % of the clones from a pooled DNA extract from humic black spruce soil. Two other OTUs (73 and 78) later identified as belonging to Archaeorhizomycetes were also identified in the study (Taylor et al. 2007). In Alaska, sequences belonging to Archaeorhizomycetes have been identified in ten studies targeting the ITS and LSU region (Table 14.1) as well as in two studies targeting the SSU region (Allison et al. 2008; Allison and Treseder 2008).

Table 14.1 Ten studies identify ITS and LSU sequences belonging to the Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska

Study	Site	Rel. ab. (%)	# A-OTU	Tot# seq (OTUs)
Allison et al. (2010a)	Delta Junction	1	2	433 (113)
Allison et al. (2010b)	Delta Junction	2	6	327 (110)
Bent et al. (2011)	Bonanza Creek LTER	1[a]	2	152 (71)
Deslippe et al. (2012)	Toolik Lake	1	5	2,293 (777)
McGuire et al. (unpub.)	Delta Junction	13	7	156 (UK)
Taylor et al. (2007)	Bonanza Creek LTER	12	6	588 (148)
Taylor et al. (2008)	Fairbanks	8	6	456 (117)
TK	12 sites[b]	11	31	28,903 (2,537)
UP	9 sites	29	24	23,103 (3,093)
NAAT[c]	7 sites[b]	1	5	7,834 (1,834)

Sites from Interior and northern Alaska are represented. Relative abundance (Rel. ab.) is given as % sequences belonging to Archaeorhizomycetes out of all sequences from the study. Number of OTUs (#OTUs) calculated as described above. The total number of sequences available from each study is given under #sequences with total

[a]Bent et al. (2011) studied roots of spruce and birch. All the other sequences are obtained by cloning from total soil DNA extracts

[b]Archaeorhizomycetes sequences were detected at seven sites in the TKN study and in three sites in the UP study. See Fig. 14.2 for approximate locations of these sites

[c]In the NAAT study, sequence of Archaeorhizomycetes was detected at three sites along the North American Arctic Transect. Two of these are in Alaska (Fig. 14.2), and the third is on Prince Patrick Island in the Canadian High Arctic (Fig. 14.1)

14.2.1 Sequence and Statistical Analysis

One sequence representing each Archaeorhizomycetes OTU found in the ten studies (Table 14.1) was added to an alignment spanning the ITS and LSU rRNA followed by manual editing in Geneious Pro 5.5.5 (Biomatters Ltd.). Reference sequences of *Archaeorhizomyces finlayi* and Archaeorhizomycetes sp. FG15P2b were included in the alignment and AFTOL reference sequences for *Schizosaccharomyces pombe*, *Protomyces inouyei*, *Taphrina wiesneri*, *Taphrina deformans*, and *Saitoella complicate* were included as an out-group in the analysis. A maximum likelihood tree was derived from the alignment using RAxML-HPC2 on XSEDE, Cipres (Miller et al. 2010). Bootstrap support values were calculated from 1,000 iterations. Branches were collapsed to represent OTUs clustered in CAP3 at a 97 % similarity across the ITS. Most OTUs represented distinct and well-supported clades in the tree (Fig. 14.2). The exceptions include five cases where additional sequences were clustered within the OTU; these are indicated by + after the OTU number in the tree and one case when two OTUs could not be separated in the tree labeled OTU 7 and 8. Sequences from Allison et al. (2010a, b) comprised the LSU region only and were assigned to OTUs based on clustering within the tree. OTU5+, OTU11+, OTU12+, and OTU18+ all include one or two additional sequences with close to 97 % similarity across the ITS region to the other sequences in the OTU. In these cases sequence dissimilarity is mostly due to ambiguous base calls, i.e., N.

Fig. 14.2 Phylogeny of Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska illustrated in a maximum likelihood tree derived from an ITS-LSU alignment. Reference sequences of *A. finlayi* and Archaeorhizomycetes sp. FG15P2b were included in the alignment and AFTOL reference sequences for *Schizosaccharomyces pombe, Protomyces inouyei, Taphrina wiesneri*, *Taphrina deformans,* and *Saitoella complicate* were included as an out-group in the analysis. Boot strap support values above 50 are shown in the figure. Putative species containing sequences from the Arctic NAAT study are indicated with *asterisk*. Five well-supported clades containing more than two putative species (I–V) are identified in the tree. Lineage-specific associations at the clade level with ecosystems are indicated with *asterisk* at the highest node, *orange* for mixed upland, and *green* for *black spruce*, and clades associated with soil horizons are indicated with a *filled box* at the highest node, *brown* for organic soil, and *gray* for mineral soil. Within clades significant lineages are shaded, and putative species with significant associations to soil horizon are marked with a *colored box* following the branch name. Indicator species are marked in the tree, for upland (I-Up), *black spruce* (I-BS), mineral soil (I-M), and organic soil (I-O)

Archaeorhizomycetes relative abundances, both as fraction of total sequences and as fraction of total OTUs, were derived from the Alaskan studies (Table 14.1) and analyzed by regression against latitude. Three studies were excluded from this analysis because they used the reverse primer ITS4 that has two mismatches for Archaeorhizomycetes, which may have resulted in an underestimation of abundance in these studies (Bent et al. 2011; Deslippe et al. 2012) and the unpublished study by McGuire and co-workers since we did not have data on total numbers of identified OTUs for this study.

To investigate species-environment relationships for Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska, we carried out a variety of statistical analyses in PC-ORD 5 (McCune and Mefford 2006) with a combined species X site matrix from the TKN, UP, and NAAT datasets, utilizing abundance-based Bray-Curtis distances after applying a "general relativization" as recommended by McCune et al. (2002) when sample sizes differ among sites. In our first analysis, we tested whether communities differ according to major categorical habitat variables using multiple response permutation procedures (MRPP). We performed ordination of the sites using nonmetric multidimensional scaling (NMS). After 50 randomizations, a 3-dimensional solution was selected by PC-ORD using automatic mode. The best solution had a final stress of 18.86459 and a final instability of 0.00002 after 500 iterations. The relatively high stress indicates that the relationships among the sites were fairly weak, in agreement with the relatively small effect sizes (A) in the MRPP analysis (Table 14.2). Lastly, we carried out indicator species analyses to ascertain whether particular Archaeorhizomycetes taxa have a statistically significant preference for particular site categories. We analyzed only habitat, soil pH, and soil horizon, since those factors had the strongest correlations in the MRPP analyses. Furthermore, the phylogenetic distance of the Archaeorhizomycetes communities associated with (1) soil horizons O and E and (2) with habitats blacks spruce and mixed upland was analyzed separately using UniFrac (Lozupone et al. 2006). Samples from tundra, i.e., the NAAT study, were excluded from the UniFrac analysis because they represented only 20 sequences. Environments were clustered by jackknife analysis with 100 permutations, and lineage-specific analyses were performed to identify lineages with significant affiliation for certain environments. The analyses were performed using sequence abundance data excluding lineages with less than ten descendants and using presence–absences counts excluding lineages with less than four descendants. Using presence–absence data provides a more conservative measurement than abundance data that can be strongly driven by the more abundant species.

14.2.2 Diversity and Distribution of Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska

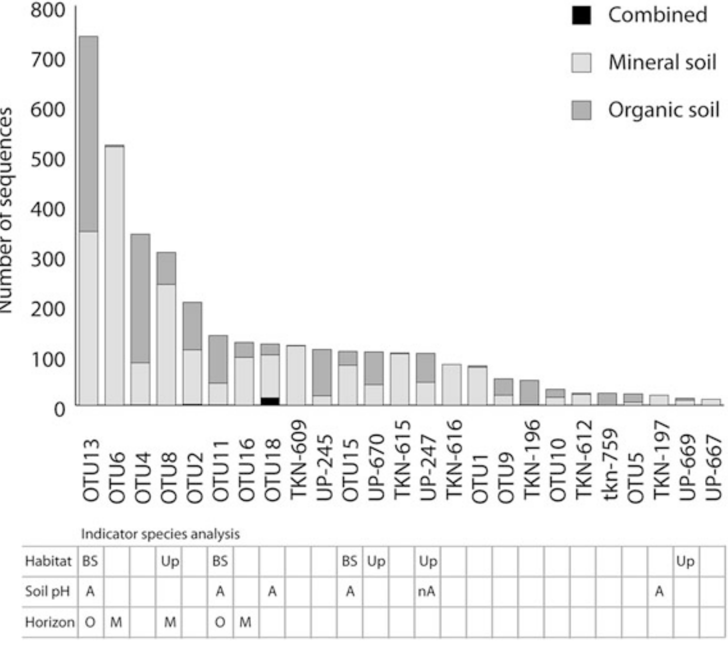
Earlier global estimates of Archaeorhizomycetes diversity encompassed ten putative species from Alaska (Rosling et al. 2011). In contrast, the current expanded phylogenetic analysis provides an estimate of 53 putative species of

Table 14.2 Multiple response permutation procedure results

Factor	Chance corrected within-group agreement, *A*	Probability of a smaller or equal delta, *p*
Habitat	0.09521448	0.00000000
Mineral soil pH	0.03604479	0.00000002
Soil horizon	0.03910208	0.00000041
Site moisture	0.03111664	0.00001152
Successional stage	0.02859186	0.00001808
Biome	0.01363238	0.00306595

Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska. Eighteen of these putative species were detected in more than one study. Forty-six of these putative species were identified among 3,666 Archaeorhizomycetes sequences from the TKN, NAAT, and UP studies. Putative species identified as OTUs, i.e., in more than one study, as well as those represented by more than ten sequences, are named in the tree (Fig. 14.2). A rank abundance curve of the 25 most common Archaeorhizomycetes OTUs detected among the three studies (TKN, UP, and NAAT) demonstrates a classical pattern with a few very common species and numerous rare species (Fig. 14.3). The OTU TKN-615 is among species of average abundance (Fig. 14.3) and was identified as the type species *A. finlayi* (Fig. 14.2). This expands the known distribution of *A. finlayi* beyond its previous identification from Finland, Sweden, and New Hampshire (Rosling et al. 2011). Five well-supported major clades with more than two putative species (I–V) are identified in the tree (Fig. 14.2). The reference sequence of Archaeorhizomycetes sp. FG15P2b did not cluster with any Alaska sequence, supporting earlier indications that this species might be geographically limited to Europe (Rosling et al. 2011).

Across the ten field studies, relative abundance of the Archaeorhizomycetes ranged from 1 % to 29 % of the total fungal community identified by environmental sequencing (Table 14.1). Putative species in the Archaeorhizomycetes were detected from 18 sites in Interior and northern Alaska (Fig. 14.4). In Interior Alaska 9–25 OTUs per site were identified in the TKN study and 7–16 OTUs in the UP study. For the other published studies conducted in Interior Alaska, two to seven OTUs were identified per site (Table 14.1, Fig. 14.4). In the two studies conducted in northern Alaska, two and five OTUs were identified per site. Sampling at Prince Patrick Island in the Canadian Arctic yielded one OTU. Abundance and diversity of Archaeorhizomycetes was found to decrease from boreal to arctic ecosystems as demonstrated by a significant ($P < 0.002$) exponential decrease in relative number of OTUs and in relative abundance with increasing latitude. It is interesting to note that the single OTU from the Canadian Archipelago was identified as OTU4, which is the third most common putative species in Alaska (Fig. 14.3). This putative species also included sequences from the TKN study, a sequence representing the most common OTU (76) detected in Taylor et al. (2007) as well as sequences from Deslippe et al. (2012) and Taylor et al. (2008). Among all the putative



	OTU13	OTU6	OTU4	OTU8	OTU2	OTU11	OTU16	OTU18	TKN-609	UP-245	OTU15	UP-670	TKN-615	UP-247	TKN-616	OTU1	OTU9	TKN-196	OTU10	TKN-612	tkn-759	OTU5	TKN-197	UP-669	UP-667
Habitat	BS			Up		BS					BS	Up		Up										Up	
Soil pH	A					A		A			A			nA									A		
Horizon	O	M		M		O	M																		

Fig. 14.3 Rank abundance of putative Archaeorhizomycetes species in Alaska, measured as number of sequences assigned to each OTU from the three studies NAAT, UP, and TKN. Sequence origin with respect to soil horizon is illustrated in *dark gray* for organic soil, *light grey* for mineral soil, and *black* for combined samples. Below each OTU results from the indicator species analysis are listed for habitats [*black spruce* (BS) or mixed upland (Up)], soil pH [acid (A) or nonacid (nA)], and soil horizon [organic (O) or mineral (M)]. TKN-207 is identified as an indicator species for acidic soil but does not appear in the figure because it is only represented by ten sequences among all studies

Archaeorhizomycetes species identified here, only one common generalist (OTU4) is detected in among the arctic samples analyzed.

14.2.3 Habitat Specificity

Using MRPP, we found that the composition of the Archaeorhizomycetes community was correlated with several habitat-related environmental variables (Table 14.2). The strongest correlation was with our variable "habitat," by which we distinguished black spruce boreal forest, upland boreal forest, and tundra. We also found highly significant correlations with pH of the mineral soil at these sites (acidic, nonacidic), as well as site moisture (wet, mesic, dry), successional stage (early, middle, late), and biome (boreal forest vs. arctic). These patterns are in accordance with previous observations from these sites where total fungal

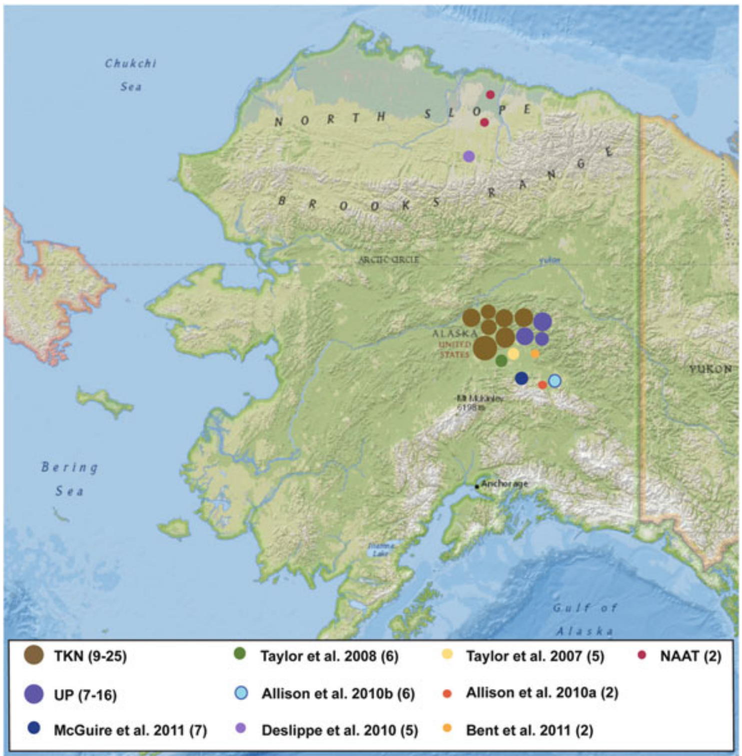


Fig. 14.4 Schematic overview of study sites for ten studies that have identified sequences belonging to the Archaeorhizomycetes in Alaska. Size of *dots* illustrates the number of putative Archaeorhizomycetes species, i.e., OTUs defined at 97 % sequence similarity across the ITS region. Numbers of species per study are also given as values in parenthesis after the study name in the legend

communities were also found to be different among these habitats as well as between the two soil horizons (Taylor et al. 2010). However, it should be noted that these categories are confounded in the dataset. For example, most of the acidic sites are also black spruce forest, and the only early successional sites were in upland boreal forest. Thus, it is most parsimonious to consider habitat (forest type) as the overriding factor, with a set of intercorrelated environmental factors that are associated with habitat. However, because horizon was analyzed independently in both black spruce and upland datasets, the significant correlation with this factor can be interpreted more directly: the composition of the Archaeorhizomycetes community differed between the organic and mineral horizons. In concordance with the MRPP analyses, NMS demonstrated that the environmental factor that best coincided with fungal community variation across the sites was habitat (Fig. 14.5).

The indicator species analyses (Table 14.3, Figs. 14.2, and 14.3) suggest that 12 taxa are specialists. For example, TKN204 in OTU13 is an indicator of acidic

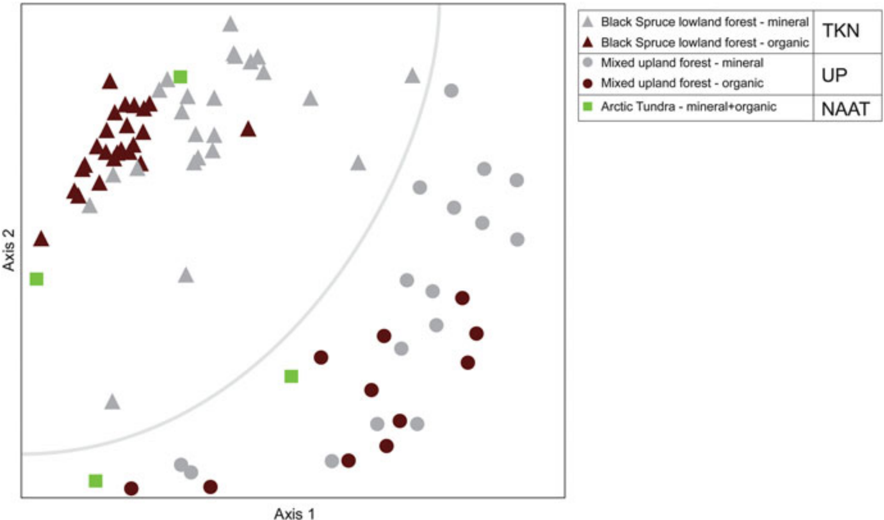


Fig. 14.5 NMS ordination of Archaeorhizomycetes communities from three studies in Alaska (TKN, UP, and NAAT). *Triangles* indicate *black spruce* forest sites, *circles* indicate upland boreal forest sites, and *squares* indicate tundra sites. *Brown symbols* specify organic horizon, and *gray symbols* designate mineral horizons. Notice the strong grouping of *black spruce* vs. upland boreal forest sites

soil in black spruce forests and prefers the organic horizon. In contrast, UP247 is an indicator of nonacidic soils and upland forests, but did not reveal a horizon preference. As with the MRPP analyses, it should be noted that many of these environmental factors covary across sites, meaning that it is impossible to infer which factor drives the observed correlation. For example, it may be that UP247 has a preference for particular tree species and that the apparent preference for non-acidic soils is simply due to the fact that most of the nonacidic sites are also upland forest, where these tree species occur.

Jackknife analysis in UniFrac demonstrates that the environment soil horizons O vs. E as well as ecosystems black spruce vs. mixed upland harbor phylogenetically distinct communities of Archaeorhizomycetes (100 % node support for both presence–absence and sequence abundance data). Lineage specificity towards ecosystems, which were based on presences–absences, is highlighted in green for black spruce and orange for mixed upland (Fig. 14.2). Highlighted clusters are not only significantly associated ($P < 0.01$) but exclusively associated with their ecosystem. Taking sequence abundance into account, significant lineages are identified at higher order as illustrated by colored asterisks at the highest significant node (Fig. 14.2). Based on the latter, Clade III and IV are significantly associated with the black spruce ecosystem, while Clade V and a clade with the two putative species OTU 9 and TKN-612 are significantly associated with the mixed upland ecosystem. Ecosystem specificity among lineages is a strong driver for the observed differences in Archaeorhizomycetes

Table 14.3 Results of indicator species analysis for the three categories: habitat, soil pH, and soil horizon

Taxon	Observed indicator value (IV)	Mean	Standard deviation	p	Factor	Preference
OTU 13 TKN204	72.9	23.9	7.45	0.0002	Habitat	Black spruce
UP247	55.2	15.2	6.85	0.0008	Habitat	Upland
OTU 11 TKN198	47.9	18.4	7.36	0.0064	Habitat	Black spruce
OTU 7 and 8 TKN206-UP242-UP244	37.7	20.9	7.67	0.0378	Habitat	Upland
OTU 15 TKN202	31.2	14.6	7.17	0.0396	Habitat	Black spruce
UP669	20.7	8.7	5.21	0.0402	Habitat	Upland
UP670	24.1	9.7	5.78	0.0446	Habitat	Upland
TKN203	41.6	16.5	4.67	0.0002	Soil pH	Acidic
OTU13 TKN204	52.9	26.6	4.53	0.0006	Soil pH	Acidic
OTU15 TKN202	33.7	13.7	3.89	0.0008	Soil pH	Acidic
UP247	28.6	14.4	4.09	0.007	Soil pH	Nonacidic
OTU 11 TKN198	31.8	18.9	4.17	0.0116	Soil pH	Acidic
TKN207	11.1	4.5	1.94	0.029	Soil pH	Acidic
TKN197	11.1	4.4	1.99	0.0332	Soil pH	Acidic
TKN205-UP979	37.5	16.2	7.37	0.0188	Soil horizon	Mineral
TKN204	44.5	23.8	7.39	0.022	Soil horizon	Organic
TKN198	37.6	18.3	7.34	0.0278	Soil horizon	Organic
TKN206-2	38.9	20.8	7.81	0.0352	Soil horizon	Mineral
TKN200-U	32.4	16.7	7.18	0.0442	Soil horizon	Mineral

community composition that we observe in the Alaska dataset. This pattern is most likely driven by host specificity as previously demonstrated for several putative species in the class (Rosling et al. 2011). OTU13 is significantly associated with the black spruce ecosystem (Fig. 14.2), and this putative species shared reference sequences with the previously listed OTU3 specifically associated with spruce root (Rosling et al. 2011). The same is true for OTU2 that was previously listed as the spruce-specific OTU13 (Rosling et al. 2011). The tundra habitat is only represented by four putative species, OTU2, 4, 15, and 18+, which are all associated with the black spruce habitat.

For the environmental variable soil horizon, lineage-specific analysis, based on presence–absence, identified Clade V as significantly associated with mineral soil ($P = 0.0094$) and Clade I as significantly associated with organic soil ($P = 0.0064$). However, the association with soil horizon is not exclusive to the same extent as the association with ecosystems discussed above. Taxa and lineages with significant associations with organic horizons are also identified in mineral soils, while at least eight putative species appear to be restricted to mineral horizons (Fig. 14.3). Thus, sequence abundance data, as opposed

to presence–absence, provide a more informative image of lineage significance towards soil horizon. Significant lineages are highlighted in gray for mineral soil and brown for organic soil (Fig. 14.2). Putative species with significant associated with a soil horizon that is found within a clade without significant associated to the same horizon are indicated by a colored box following the taxa name (Fig. 14.2). Three identified indicator species for mineral soil (I-M), OTU6, OTU8, and OTU16, were all found in lineages with a significant association with mineral soil (Fig. 14.2). The same is true for OTU 11+ and OTU13 which were identified as indicator species for organic soil (I-O) and found in lineages with significant association with organic soil.

Clade IV was significantly associated with the black spruce ecosystem when considering sequence abundance data but not when using the presence counts. The two sequences in this clade were derived from the mixed upland ecosystem, dominated by white spruce (*Picea glauca*), indicating a strong association with spruce for this clade. Clade IV is split into two well-supported clades with contrasting soil horizon preferences. OTU13 is the most abundant taxon in the current dataset. It is an indicator species for organic soil in the black spruce ecosystem, and the lineage is significantly associated with organic soil (Fig. 14.2). Yet OTU13 is still frequently detected in mineral soil (Fig. 14.3). The sister clade which encompasses *A. finlayi*, on the other hand, is significantly associated with mineral soil, and 94 % of all sequences in this clade were derived from mineral soil. This observation is supported by the initial isolation of the *A. finlayi*-type culture from a coniferous root collected in mineral soil at the interface between illuvial and eluvial soil horizons in a podzol soil profile (Rosling et al. 2003).

Clade I was significantly associated with organic soil. Within this clade, contrasting soil horizon specificity was detected among sister species, i.e., TKN-197 and TKN-196 associated with organic soil vs. TKN-759 associated with mineral soil (Fig. 14.2). Similar to patterns of vertical partitioning observed for sister species of Rhizopogon (Beiler et al. 2012), patterns of differential distribution between soil horizon may well be the result of ongoing substrate competition among closely related species.

Overall, the relative abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes was higher in mineral soils, close to 9 % of all clones, compared to roughly 6 % in organic soil across the three studies from Alaska discussed here. Higher relative abundance in mineral soil may reflect lower abundance of other taxa rather than an absolute increase in Archaeorhizomycetes in mineral soil. However, lineage specificity towards mineral soil was common within clades II, IV, and V, suggesting that a large proportion of the diverse class is well adapted to conditions in mineral soil. This observation is supported by previous findings from Lindahl et al. (2007) where fine separation of horizons from a boreal forest floor followed by fungal community characterization using T-RFLP identified six putative Archaeorhizomycetes (then Ascomycete group G) occuring in all soil layers except for the layer of new litter. Putative Archaeorhizomycetes species had different but overlapping patterns of occurrence with most taxa being identified in the upper humus layer. Two putative species,

C2y_8.2 (JN032481) and A2z_5.11 (JN032482) became increasingly common in mineral soil horizons. The latter formed part of OTU9 (Rosling et al. 2011), which represents the putative species OTU18+ in the current analysis.

14.3 Life Strategies in Archaeorhizomycetes

A shift in community composition towards dominance by Archaeorhizomycetes in summer samples was interpreted as an indication that the class depends on carbon derived from root exudation (Schadt et al. 2003). Furthermore, the two cultured representatives of Archaeorhizomycetes, *A. finlayi* and Archaeorhizomycetes sp. FG15P2b, were both isolated from surface-sterilized root tips, further suggesting that species in the class are intimately associated with roots. There are, however, indications that the class is not dependent on living roots for their carbon supply. Five and 14 days after severing of roots in a pine forest, the relative abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes (then Clone Group 1) remained close to that in the control samples with an average abundance of 14 % of total fluorescence as quantified by T-RFLP (Lindahl et al. 2010). That study analyzed abundance in soil DNA extracts, and targeting the active community might give a different representation of Archaeorhizomycetes. Furthermore, the study by Castro et al. (2010) stands out with its exceptionally high relative abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes clones (up to 95 %) of the soil fungal community at the end of the growing season. Possible temporal dynamics of Archaeorhizomycetes associated with aboveground senescence decreased carbon allocation to roots, and associated mycorrhizal fungi as well as root decomposition may be well worth studying in the future.

Species in Archaeorhizomycetes have the ability to grow inside roots as well as on pure carbon sources of varying complexity (Rosling et al. 2011). Sequences of Archaeorhizomycetes have also been detected in decaying wood. Rajala et al. (2011) studied the active fungal community of decaying spruce logs using a combination of DGGE and sequencing from environmental rDNA and rRNA extracts. A sequence representing Archaeorhizomycetes was obtained from strongly decayed spruce logs. These observations in combination with the shear abundance of Archaeorhizomycetes in many soils suggest that these fungi play an important role in the cycling of carbon derived from living or dead roots in soil. Neither mycorrhizal nor pathogenic interactions have yet been documented for the type species *A. finlayi*. Whether Archaeorhizomycetes are directly associated with roots along a trophic continuum from symbiotic–endophytic–saphrotrophic–pathogenic interactions or are secondarily associated through interactions with other root-associated fungi remains unknown. Taking into account that Archaeorhizomycetes is an ancient class of fungi, there is good reason to acknowledge that different life strategies may be represented among species in the class and that no single ecological role may be assigned to the class.

References

Allison SD, Treseder KK (2008) Warming and drying suppress microbial activity and carbon cycling in boreal forest soils. Glob Chang Biol 14:2898–2909

Allison SD, Czimczik CI, Treseder KK (2008) Microbial activity and soil respiration under nitrogen addition in Alaskan boreal forest. Glob Chang Biol 14:1–13

Allison SD, Gartner TB, Mack MC, McGuire K, Treseder KK (2010a) Nitrogen alter carbon dynamics during early succession in boreal forest. Soil Biol Biochem 42:1157–1164

Allison SD, McGuire KL, Treseder KK (2010b) Resistance of microbial and soil properties to warming treatment seven years after boreal fire. Soil Biol Biochem 42:1872–1878

Bärlocher F, Seena S, Wilson KP, Williams DD (2008) Raised water temperature lowers diversity of hyporheic aquatic Hyphomycetes. Freshw Biol 53:368–379

Beiler KJ, Simard SW, Lemay V, Durall DM (2012) Vertical partitioning between sister species of Rhizopogon fungi on mesic and xeric sites in an interior Douglas-fir forest. Mol Ecol 21:6163–6174

Bent E, Kiekel P, Brenton R, Taylor DL (2011) Root-associated ectomycorrhizal fungi shared by various Boreal forest seedlings naturally regenerating after a fire in interior Alaska and correlation of different fungi with host growth responses. Appl Environ Microbiol 77:3351–3359

Bjorbaekmo MFM, Carlsen T, Brysting A, Vrålstad T, Hoiland K, Ugland KI, Geml J, Schumacher T, Kauserud H (2010) High diversity of root associated fungi in both alpine and arctic Dryas octopetala. BMC Plant Biol 10:244

Bougoure DS, Parkin PI, Cairney JWG, Alexander IJ, Anderson IA (2007) Diversity of fungi in hair roots of Ericaceae varies along a vegetation gradient. Mol Ecol 16:4626–4636

Buscardo E, Rodriquez-Echeverria S, Martin MP, de Anfelis P, Pereira JS, Freitas H (2010) Impact of wildfire return interval on ectomycorrhizal resistant propagules communities of a Mediterranean open forest. Fungal Biol 114:628–636

Castro HF, Classen AT, Austin EE, Norby RJ, Schadt CW (2010) Soil microbial community responses to multiple experimental climate change drivers. Appl Environ Microbiol 76:999–1007

Chen DM, Cairney JWG (2002) Investigation of the influence of prescribed burning on ITS profiles of ectomycorrhizal and other soil fungi at three Australian sclerophyll forest sites. Mycol Res 106:532–540

Cox F, Barsoum N, Lilleskov EA, Bidartondo MI (2010) Nitrogen availability is a primary determinant of conifer mycorrhizas across complex environmental gradients. Ecol Lett 13:1103–1113

Curlevski NJA, Xu ZH, Anderson IC, Cairney JWG (2010) Diversity of soil and rhizosphere fungi under Araucaria bidwillii (Bunya pine) at an Australian tropical montane rainforest site. Fungal Divers 40:12–22

Deslippe JR, Hartmann M, Simard SW, Mohn WW (2012) Long-term warming alters the composition of Arctic soil microbial communities. FEMS Microbiol Ecol 82:30–315

Edwards IP, Zak DR (2011) Fungal community composition and function after long- term exposure of northern forests to elevated atmospheric CO_2 and tropospheric O_3. Glob Chang Biol 17:2184–2195

Hawksworth DL (2012) Global species number of fungi: are tropical studies and molecular approaches contributing to a more robust estimate? Biodivers Conserv 21:2425–2433

Huang J, Nara K, Lian C, Zong K, Peng K, Xue S, Shen Z (2012) Ectomycorrhizal fungal communities associated with Masson pine (*Pinus massoniana* Lamb.) in Pb–Zn mine sites of central south China. Mycorrhiza 22:589–602

Lindahl BD, Ihrmark K, Boberg J, Trumbore SE, Högberg P, Stenlid J, Finlay RD (2007) Spatial separation of litter decomposition and mycorrhizal nitrogen uptake in a boreal forest. New Phytol 173:611–620

Lindahl BD, de Boer W, Finlay RD (2010) Disruption of root carbon transport into forest humus stimulates fungal opportunists at the expense of mycorrhizal fungi. ISME J 4:872–881

Lozupone C, Hamady M, Knight R (2006) UniFrac - an online tool for comparing microbial community diversity in a phylogenetic context. BMC Bioinformatics 7:371

Martos F, Munoz F, Pailler T, Kottke I, Gonneau C, Selosse MA (2012) The role of epiphytism in architecture and evolutionary constraint within mycorrhizal networks of tropical orchids. Mol Ecol 21:5098–5109

McCune B, Mefford MJ (2006) PC-ORD. Multivariate analysis of ecological data. Version 5. MjM Software, Gleneden Beach, OR

McCune B, Grace JB, Urban DL (2002) Analysis of ecological communities. MjM Software Design, Gleneden Beach, OR

Miller MA, Pfeiffer W, Schwartz T (2010) Creating the CIPRES science gateway for inference of large phylogenetic trees. In: Proceedings of the gateway computing environments workshop (GCE), New Orleans, LA, pp 1–8, 14 Nov 2010

Parrent JL, Vilgalys R (2007) Biomass and compositional responses of ectomycorrhizal fungal hyphae to elevated CO_2 and nitrogen fertilization. New Phytol 176:164–174

Porter TM, Schadt CW, Rizvi L, Martin AP, Schmidt SK, Scott-Senton L, Vilgalys R, Moncalvo JM (2008) Widespread occurrence and phylogenetic placement of a soil clone group adds a prominent new branch to the fungal tree of life. Mol Phylogenet Evol 46:635–644

Rajala T, Peltoniemi M, Hantula J, Mäkipää R, Pennanen T (2011) RNA reveals a succession of active fungi during the decay of Norway spruce logs. Fungal Ecol 4:437–448

Rincon A, Pueyo JJ (2010) Effect of fire severity and site slope on diversity and structure of the ectomycorrhizal fungal community associated with post-fire regenerated *Pinus pinaster* Ait. Seedlings. For Ecol Manage 260:361–369

Rosling A, Landeweert R, Lindahl BD, Larsson K-H, Kuyper TW, Taylor AFS, Finlay RD (2003) Vertical distribution of ectomycorrhizal fungi in a podzol profile. New Phytol 159:775–783

Rosling A, Cox F, Cruz-Martinez K, Ihrmark K, Grelet G-A, Lindahl BD, Menkis A, James TY (2011) Archaeorhizomycetes - a new class of ancient, widespread soil fungi. Science 333:876–879

Schadt CW, Martin AP, Lipson DA, Schmidt SK (2003) Seasonal dynamics of previously unknown fungal lineages in tundra soils. Science 301:1359–1361

Schoch CL, Seifert KA, Hubndorf S, Robert V, Spouge JL, Levesque A, Chen W, Fungal barcoding consortium (2012) Nuclear ribosomal internal transcribed spacer (ITS) region as a universal DNA barcode marker for *Fungi*. Proc Natl Acad Sci USA 109:6241–6246

Stefani FOP, Moncalvo J-M, Séguin A, Bérubé FA, Hamelin RC (2009) Impact of an 8-year-old transgenic poplar plantation on the ectomycorrhizal fungal community. Appl Environ Microbiol 75:7527–7536

Taylor DL, Herriott IC, Long J, O'Neill K (2007) TOPO TA is A-OK: a test of phylogenetic bias in fungal environmental clone library construction. Environ Microbiol 9:1329–1334

Taylor DL, Booth MG, McFarland JW, Herriott IC, Lennon NJ, Nusbaum C, Marr TG (2008) Increasing ecological inference from high throughput sequencing of fungi in the environment through a tagging approach. Mol Ecol Res 8:742–752

Taylor DL, Herriott IC, Stone KE, McFarland JW, Booth MG, Leigh MB (2010) Structure and resilience of fungal communities in Alaskan boreal forest soils. Can J Forest Res 40:1288–1301

Tedersoo L, Pärtel K, Jairus T, Gates G, Poldmaa K, Tamm H (2009) Ascomycetes associated with ectomycorrhizas: molecular diversity and ecology with particular reference to the *Helotiales*. Environ Microbiol 11:3166–3178

Urban A, Puschenreiter M, Strauss J, Gorfer M (2008) Diversity and structure of ectomycorrhizal and co-associated fungal communities in a serpentine soil. Mycorrhiza 18:339–354

White TJ, Bruns T, Lee S, Taylor J (1990) Amplification and direct sequencing of fungal ribosomal RNA genes for phylogenetics. In: Innis MA, Gelfland DH, Sninsky JJ, White TJ (eds) PCR protocols: a guide to methods and applications. Academic, San Diego, CA, pp 315–322

Chapter 15
Methods in Fungal Genetics

Kevin McCluskey and Aric Wiest

15.1 Introduction

15.1.1 Evolution of Modern Gene Manipulations

Whether in saving starter for sourdough bread or making koji mold for Sake fermentation, humans have been manipulating fungi for their own purposes for millennia. The Tyrolean iceman, Ötzi, had fungi among his personal items although whether for medicinal or practical use is still debated (Rollo et al. 1995). With the development of modern germ theory and the exposition of Koch's postulates, practical microbiology included saving and characterizing pure cultures of microorganisms. Even before Fleming discovered his *Penicillium* strain (Bennett and Chung 2001) that led to modern pharmaceutics, culinary strains were selected for high spore production, lack of toxic metabolites, flavor profiles, purity, and stability (Machida et al. 2008). It can be argued that once strain improvement for higher antibiotic production began, modern biotechnological manipulation was on a natural continuum, and while the specific techniques have changed, the general aims remain the same. These aims include high productivity, lack of contaminating side products, purity, and stability.

15.1.2 Research Versus Commercial Applications

As biological sciences went from being purely descriptive, and experimental biology became practical, fungi were brought into the laboratory for characterization and as model systems for larger biological inquiry. Among the foundational

K. McCluskey • A. Wiest (✉)
Fungal Genetics Stock Center, University of Missouri, Kansas City, MO, USA
e-mail: wiesta@umkc.edu

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6_15,
© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

discoveries made using model fungal organisms are the one gene-one enzyme hypothesis (Beadle and Tatum 1941), the existence of suppressor mutations (Tatum and Perkins 1950), multifunctional gene clusters, and regulatory mutations (Horowitz et al. 1961). In recent years, fungi continue to be valuable models for population genetics, genome organization, epigenetic gene modification, circadian rhythms, and host-pathogen interactions.

Commercial use of characterized and improved fungal material touches on many aspects of agriculture, medicine, food and fiber processing, and increasingly in the day-to-day activities of a modern lifestyle (Bohlin et al. 2010). Whether it be biocontrol of insect pests or invasive non-crop plants, the manipulation of field populations of toxin-producing or pathogenic organisms, the production of industrial chemicals, bio-processing, or the production of enzymes or pharmaceuticals, genetically characterized and manipulated strains represent the foundation and reference against which all progress is measured (OECD 2001).

Many of the research uses of fungi are removed from practical applications, although both approaches increasingly rely on the use of genetically manipulated strains. It is important in this context to emphasize that genetically manipulated strains may be generated by meiotic genetics, mitotic recombination, and by DNA-based genetic transformation using genetic constructs produced in vitro.

15.1.3 GMO Organisms and Regulatory Status

Materials collected in the environment, whether from intact wilderness, from agricultural, or even urban settings, are considered to be genetically wild type, and strains that have been derived from them by classical mutagenesis or by Mendelian or even mitotic recombination are evaluated and regulated according to the same criteria. Materials that have been generated by genetic manipulation using engineered or synthetic molecules are subject to regulation as hazardous biological materials. Moreover, shipment of GMO materials is governed by the same guidelines as dangerous goods. At the time of the writing of this review, this circumstance is in a state of flu15. The Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety to the Convention on Biological Diversity (http://bch.cbd.int/protocol/) is an international treaty negotiation with purview over the safe handling, transport, and use of GMO organisms, which they describe as “living modified organisms.” This protocol further describes its purpose as the protection of biodiversity from the potential risks of living modified organisms. It entered into force in September 2003, having been ratified by 50 countries. Regardless of the purpose, this protocol will have implications for the use of modified organisms in research, agriculture, and in the areas of pharmaceutical and industrial research and production.

15.1.4 Scope

The present chapter will describe the development of tools for manipulation of filamentous fungi with emphasis on tools for research application. It will describe the evolution of modern molecular genetic tools and include circumspection on their characteristics. Emphasis will be placed on the use of materials in the collection of the Fungal Genetics Stock Center, and description of these materials will be elaborated, to the extent that it provides insight into directions of research over many years.

15.2 Classical Genetic Manipulation

Once fungi had been domesticated and put to practical uses, and simultaneous with the rediscovery and validation of Mendel's work on pea genetics by de Vries and others in the late nineteenth century (Hurst 2009), fungi were subject to investigations of their genetics both to explore the nature of genes and as a practical means of strain improvement. While some organisms were studied just to identify principles of genetics (Shear and Dodge 1927; Blakeslee 1904), others were studied primarily because of their practical application or impact (Takamine 1914; deBary 1853).

15.2.1 Mendelian Genetics

The development of model systems for filamentous fungi was based on the ability to conduct Mendelian genetics. The demonstration of segregation of mating type was made in a number of fungal systems including *Neurospora* (Lindegren 1932), *Schizophyllum*, *Ustilago*, *Sordaria*, and yeast (Kronstad and Staben 1997). Similarly, mating type was characterized in a number of water molds, some of which are no longer considered fungi. These included *Allomyces* (Emerson and Wilson 1949), *Achlya* (Raper 1939), and *Phytophthora* (Judelson et al. 1995). In parallel, mating and other characteristics were described for slime molds, and these had significant parallels to fungal systems (Bonner 1944). Classical genetics has been foundational for the understanding of fungal biology and for many years was the best way to characterize interesting traits. This also included extensive study of the mechanisms of genetics, the nature of intra- and intergenic recombination, as well as population and quantitative genetics. In the most well-characterized systems, such as *Neurospora*, *Aspergillus*, yeast, and numerous plant-pathogenic fungi, genetic maps were constructed demonstrating the number of linkage groups and the relationship of markers on these linkage groups. This was corroborated by cytogenetic analysis of stained chromosomes, (McClintock 1945) although for many fungi, the number

of chromosomes is underestimated because most of the chromosomes are too small for classical microscopic analysis as demonstrated by electrophoretic karyotype analysis (Mills and McCluskey 1990). For example, *Neurospora* has seven linkage groups and also seven microscopically visible chromosomes, while *Ustilago* has as many as 20 electrophoretically resolvable chromosomes (Kinscherf and Leong 1988) but only 4 that are visible in cytological preparations (Lindegren 1948). Moreover, while many years of mutagenesis and characterization have yielded as many as 1,200 markers on the *Neurospora* genetic map (Galagan et al. 2003), whole-genome sequence has identified closer to 10,000 genes in this fungus. The systematic gene deletion program for *N. crassa* (Colot et al. 2006) has produced gene deletion mutants for over 8,000 unique ORFs, and of these, 1,500 are only available as heterodikaryons, suggesting that these ORFs are essential. This suggests that the saturation mutagenesis of many years was successful in mutating most ORFs for which a phenotype could be recovered. Moreover, these KO strains effectively carry an antibiotic resistance marker at every locus, and this can be used for fine structure mapping (Hammond et al. 2012).

15.2.2 Non-Mendelian Genetics

Because the demonstration of Mendelian genetics requires appropriate mating pairs or specific conditions to produce a teleomorph, some fungi were considered to be asexual, although mating-type alleles and even sexual reproduction have been identified for some species (Arie et al. 1997; O'Gorman et al. 2008). For these, the ability to carry out mitotic recombination was a valuable tool for pseudo-genetic manipulation. For example, the first markers mapped in *Aspergillus nidulans* were characterized by mitotic mapping (Pontecorvo 1956). Other approaches to non-Mendelian genetics included protoplast fusion between noncompatible strains and species. This leads to the production of potentially aneuploid strains, and the reduction of this aneuploidy can generate stable strains with traits not available through natural processes (Peberdy 1979). In a similar vein, interspecies crosses can be carried out for some organisms. The spore-killer element from *Neurospora intermedia* was introgressed into *N. crassa* (Turner and Perkins 1979) to allow better characterization. This element is carried on a 1.9 Mb region on the left arm of contig 3 presumably including the entire meiotic drive element along with other sequences (McCluskey et al. 2011).

Similarly, the characterization of strains carrying aneuploid or rearranged chromosomes has been useful both with regard to the insight it provides into fungal chromosome biology and also as a tool for characterization of gene location and epigenetics (Perkins 1997). Supernumerary chromosomes, sometimes referred to as B chromosomes (Hurst and Werren 2001) or, more recently, lineage-specific chromosomes (Ma et al. 2010), have been characterized in a number of fungi (Covert 1998). These chromosomes do not follow typical Mendelian genetics and are historically considered to be segregation distorters (Jones et al. 2008). The

distribution of these elements is not uniform, and while some fungi, such as *Neurospora*, do not tolerate foreign DNA (Windhofer et al. 2000), others, such as *Nectria haematococca* (Coleman et al. 2009) or *Fusarium oxysporum* (Ma et al. 2010), have a significant portion of their genomes on these dispensable chromosomes (Croll and McDonald 2012).

Now characterized in many organisms, epigenetic phenomena were characterized in filamentous fungi beginning with the demonstration of the mutagenic phenomenon induced by duplicated genes and known as RIP (Cambareri et al. 1989). Similarly, vegetative silencing in fungi was demonstrated by silencing of genes for carotenoid biosynthesis (Cogoni et al. 1996). Epigenetic phenomena are now known to be present in myriad fungi (Selker 1997).

15.2.3 Mutagenesis

Early research with fungi leading to such hallmark discoveries as the one gene–one enzyme hypothesis and intragenic recombination was carried out with filamentous fungi. Among these were the demonstration of spore color mutants in the homothallic species *Sordaria* (Sang and Whitehouse 1983), light sensing in *Phycomyces* (Delbruck and Meissner 1968), and auxotrophy and morphological anomalies in *Neurospora* (Beadle and Tatum 1941). For many fungi, mating type was the most reliable character subject to Mendelian analysis in fungi, and this one area was disturbingly not amenable to mutational analysis.

In *Neurospora*, and other fungi, filtration enrichment was developed as a technique to increase the likelihood of identifying appropriate mutant strains (Woodward et al. 1954). In this ingenious approach, heavily mutagenized spores are allowed to germinate in liquid culture and then subject to multiple cycles of filtration over loosely woven cotton cloth or other coarse matrix. Conidia that germinated either in minimal medium, or in special cases under selective pressure such as elevated temperature, were trapped in the filter, and conidia with a nutritional or other requirement passed through the filter. Subsequent culture of these defective conidia in complete medium or at reduced selection pressure identified mutants with a frequency that is much higher than simple mutagenesis.

Because of the frequency of inducing secondary mutations, it has always been best practiced to backcross mutants to a well-known wild type. Estimates on the number of crosses suggest that as many as ten backcrosses may be necessary to purify a unique mutation (Leslie 1981), although in practice this large number of backcrosses was associated with a 20-map unit recombination block around mating type.

Whole-genome analysis of classical mutant strains of *N. crassa* has shown the impact of backcrossing into the reference genome (Table 15.1). Where the number of backcrosses was known for classical mutant strains, the lowest divergence from the reference genotype was seen in strains that had been backcrossed multiple times into the reference genotype. This analysis rests on the fact that most SNPs were not

Table 15.1 Impact of backcrossing on frequency of polymorphisms detected in whole genome sequence from classical mutant strains of *N. crassa*

Strain	Marker	Mutagen	Backcrosses	Total SNPs	% max SNPs	# nonsense mutations	Reference
106	*com*	UV	3	23,579	12.5	18	Perkins and Ishitani (1959)
305	*amyc*	–	3	90,195	47.9	67	Atwood and Mukai (1954)
309	*ti*	X-rays	3	13,274	7.0	11	Perkins (1959)
322	*ty-1*	Spontaneous	–	142,489	75.7	95	Horowitz et al. (1961)
821	*ts*	Spontaneous	–	188,346	100.0	122	Nakamura and Egashira (1961)
1211	*dot*	Spontaneous	3	20,493	10.9	19	Perkins et al. (1962)
1303	*fi*	Spontaneous	–	59,356	31.5	35	Perkins et al. (1962)
1363	*smco-1*	Mustard	–	146,641	77.9	137	Garnjobst and Tatum (1967)
2261	*do*	UV	3	44,839	23.8	37	Perkins et al. (1962)
3114	*Sk-2*	Introgression	1	41,085	21.8	31	Turner and Perkins (1979)
3246	*fs-n*	Spontaneous	–	21,533	11.4	14	Mylyk and Threlkeld (1974)
3562	*mb-1*	UV	–	106,533	56.6	78	Weijer and Vigfusson (1972)
3564	*mb-2*	UV	–	47,981	25.5	36	Weijer and Vigfusson (1972)
3566	*mb-3*	UV	–	37,516	19.9	27	Weijer and Vigfusson (1972)
3831	*ff-1*	Spontaneous	–	22,961	12.2	15	Tan and Ho (1970)
3921	*tng*	Spontaneous	2	80,311	42.6	84	Springer and Yanofsky (1989), Howe and Benson (1974)
7022	*fld*	Spontaneous	–	78,991	41.9	45	Perkins et al. (1962)
7035	*per-1*	UV	3	18,487	9.8	13	Howe and Benson (1974)

unique and the result of the particular mutagenesis. Rather, they were found in multiple strains and seem to be associated with the multiple lineages used in the *Neurospora* research community. Many of the same polymorphisms seen in these classical mutant strains were also found in an independent analysis of a separate classical mutant strain (Pomraning et al. 2011).

Interestingly, nonsense mutations were common in classic mutant strains. The distribution of nonsense mutations was correlated with the lineage of the strain and inversely related to the number of backcrosses. The strains with the fewest numbers of nonsense mutations had all been backcrossed three times, while the strains with the most polymorphisms had not been backcrossed into the reference genome lineage (Table 15.1), emphasizing the importance of multiple generations of backcrossing in strain construction.

For many years, strain improvement included mutagenesis. Penicillin-producing strains were a key example of the impact of strain improvement (Sermonti 1959). Useful yields of antibiotic increased by several orders of magnitude during classical strain improvement. Subsequently, whole-genome analysis of *A. niger* strains subject to classical strain improvement showed the impact of strain improvement on the genome (Andersen et al. 2011). This study revealed many differences between the improved and reference genome strains including a high level of nucleotide polymorphisms, significant genome rearrangements, deletions, and even sequence unrelated to the reference genome. Transcriptome analysis also indicated that significant changes in regulation of gene expression had occurred.

Numerous recent efforts have characterized classical mutant strains and among them are the studies of nine *Neurospora* strains carrying classical mutations in genes responsible for pigment biosynthesis. These strains were characterized by direct sequence analysis of the *albino-2* gene (Diaz-Sanchez et al. 2011). One of the strains produced an aberrant pigment while others were albino. The red pigment-producing strain had multiple non-synonymous mutations as well as other synonymous ones. Several of the mutants produced truncated or shortened polypeptides and these mutants were variously completely albino or leaky. Only some polymorphisms at *al-2* were shared among multiple strains suggesting that these mutant strains were not all generated in the identical genetic background, similarly to that which was seen among the classical mutant strains subject to whole-genome analysis. Similarly, well-mapped mutations at the *ad-8* locus in *Neurospora* were used to establish that intragenic recombination was responsible for some instances of allele complementation (Ishikawa 1962). A subset of these mutations were characterized by targeted sequence analysis (Wiest et al. 2012a), and unlike the mutants at *al-2*, the *ad-8* mutants did not contain multiple changes, nor did they show any influence of founder effects.

15.3 Transformation

Originally demonstrated in *Streptococcus* in response to fundamental questions of the nature of the material of inheritance (Alloway 1932), the ability to transfer traits by introducing foreign DNA, either natural or from synthetic origins, among strains is foundational to every modern research system. While the techniques for accomplishing this transformation vary, all rely on the ability to introduce foreign DNA into a strain and have that strain express that DNA as though it were part of the natural genome. For some organisms, this is relatively straightforward, and the introduced DNA can become part of the nuclear genome. For other organisms, gene silencing and even mutation can limit the ability to mobilize and express foreign genes at high levels. Also, and in a manner similar to the requirement for backcrossing strains arising from explicit mutagenesis, transformants often need to be purified. This is especially important for organisms where the transforming cells are multinucleate, and nuclei that are not transformed can persist in hyphae

that are shared with a nucleus expressing the selectable marker gene. Moreover, transformation itself is mutagenic, and this has been shown both for insertion-associated mutations (Perkins et al. 1993) and also for second-site mutations (Keller et al. 1990).

15.3.1 Protoplast/Polyethylene Glycol

Protoplast fusion, whether in the presence of synthetic DNA or between cells carrying unique traits, has been used for strain manipulation and improvement for many years (Turgeon et al. 2010). The best results are available when high-quality protoplasts are available (Daboussi et al. 1989). The distinction between spheroplasts and regenerable protoplasts lies in the fact that protoplasts contain all the requirements to form a new colony while spheroplasts are merely osmotically sensitive liquid-filled micelles (Peberdy 1987).

The production of protoplasts requires enzyme cocktails to remove the cell wall polysaccharides and to make the cell permeable to DNA in the presence of polyethylene glycol (PEG) or similar polymer (Peberdy 1987). While generic enzyme cocktails may work for some species, other species require custom enzymes or other pretreatment. *Neurospora*, *Saccharomyces*, *Ustilago maydis*, and *A. nidulans* are generally amenable to protoplasting with generic enzyme cocktails, although even these amenable species are vulnerable to inconsistencies in enzyme specificity (de Bekker et al. 2009). Some organisms, such as *U. hordei*, *A. fumigatus*, or *Schizophyllum*, require specific enzyme cocktails. While this is sometimes accomplished by the addition of specific purified enzymes, the best protoplasting cocktails are generated by growing the enzyme-producing fungus, typically *Trichoderma* or *Aspergillus niger*, on purified cell walls from the target organism (Peberdy 1987). For example, to produce cell wall-degrading enzymes to make protoplasts from *S. commune*, one would first grow a large batch of *S. commune* mycelia and then use the purified cell walls of the *S. commune* strain as substrate to culture the *Trichoderma* or *A. niger* strain from which the cell wall-degrading enzymes are to be extracted.

Another approach is to use a strain that either constitutively or conditionally fails to produce a cell wall. In *N. crassa*, a strain known as slime contains three genetic lesions that combine to produce a wall-less strain (Selitrennikoff 1979). Regardless of how the protoplasts are produced, all transformation techniques rely on the use of PEG. The role played by the PEG in transformation was analyzed and compared to other molecules, and it was considered that the PEG functioned in concentrating the DNA and that it does not directly cause protoplast fusion (Kuwano et al. 2008).

15.3.2 Electroporation

This technique takes advantage of the ability of a pulse of electrical energy to create pores in biological membranes which allows DNA to enter a cell (Dower et al. 1988). While the exact mechanism by which electroporation facilitates DNA uptake and entry into the nucleus is unknown, alternate theories include the passage of DNA through pores (Levine and Vernier 2010), the formation and uptake of vesicles (Kawai et al. 2010), or even the electrophoretic acceleration of DNA in an electric field.

While the characteristics of the electrical discharge are subject to discussion (Weaver 1995) and the ideal system for electroporation should have a square discharge wave, practical issues mean that a logarithmic discharge is more readily achieved and produces adequate transformation efficiencies (Chen et al. 2006).

15.3.3 Chemical

Typically involving lithium acetate and modeled after bacterial transformation (Chung et al. 1989), some species can be readily transformed by preparation of competent cells using salt treatment. This has been shown not only for yeast-like fungi including Saccharomyces but also in *Microbotryum violaceum* (as *U. violacea*) (Bej and Perlin 1989). The role of lithium, the preference for different lithium salts, and the ability of different cations to replace lithium have been exhaustively studied (Kawai et al. 2010).

15.3.4 Biolistic

In some cases, DNA can be directly introduced to cells using microscopic pellets coated with the DNA one wishes to introduce. Because of the complexity of this protocol and because of the relatively low yield, it is preferential to use another approach where available. In some cases, biolistic transformation is the only option, and in these cases, it can be extremely useful (Olmedo-Monfil et al. 2004).

15.3.5 Agrobacterium

Many species of fungi, even filamentous fungi, can be transformed by conjugation of special plasmids. This is accomplished by co-culturing the target organism with *A. tumefaciens* cells carrying a plasmid mobilized by the presence of so-called T-DNA regions (Betts et al. 2007). The DNA that is transferred into the fungal cell

integrates randomly into the genome and generates a tagged integrant where the presence of the T-DNA marks the insertion (de Groot et al. 1998). Strains transformed with this method require careful evaluation to assure the presence of a unique insertion. Moreover, the stability of the inserted DNA has not been evaluated in all target species. This may be especially relevant for species where meiotic gene silencing or mutation depends on the presence of repeated DNA. The ability to transfer DNA via Agrobacterium was exploited in the generation of tagged-integrant mutants of *Magnaporthe grisea*, and 48,000 such strains were generated and phenotyped (Tucker and Orbach 2007; Soderlund et al. 2006).

15.4 Selectable Markers

Transformation by foreign DNA is relatively inefficient (Fincham 1989) with 1–100 transformants per microgram of transforming DNA and per 10^7 recipient cells being not uncommon. Because of this, it is not practical to screen for cells that have foreign DNA, and rather selectable markers, which allow only the cells carrying and expressing foreign DNA to grow, are employed. These markers vary in their characteristics, but all allow the growth of only cells expressing the marker gene. In addition to a robust selectable marker, appropriate fungal promoters and terminators are required for stable transformation. For many markers, the *Aspergillus nidulans* TrpC promoter and terminator were used (Yelton et al. 1984).

15.4.1 Auxotrophic Complementation

The first demonstration of transformation by complementation of auxotrophy was made by culturing cells of a Neurospora strain that required inositol with DNA from an inositol prototrophic strain (Mishra and Tatum 1973). Practical use of auxotrophic markers, however, awaited the demonstration of transformation of protoplasts of a leucine-requiring Saccharomyces strain with the DNA from a leucine prototroph (Hinnen et al. 1978) and soon thereafter with the LEU2 gene on an autonomously replicating shuttle plasmid (Beggs 1978). Among the most commonly used selectable markers are complementation of nutrient requirements, such as histidine (Case et al. 1979) and pyrimidines (Ballance et al. 1983). Other auxotrophies have been employed, such as tryptophan (Yelton et al. 1984), adenine (Kurtz et al. 1986), quinic acid (Case 1982), and nitrate reductase (Campbell et al. 1989).

15.4.2 Drug Resistance

Because complementation of auxotrophic strains has specific problems, the use of dominant markers such as drug resistance is highly desirable. For fungi this is complicated by the relatively few drugs available as drug/selectable marker systems. The most commonly used drug for selection in filamentous fungi is hygromycin, and many vectors are derived from the pAN7-1 plasmid first used to confer hygromycin resistance in *Aspergillus* (Punt et al. 1987). Other markers include bialaphos resistance (Avalos et al. 1989) and then less commonly used markers like sulfonylurea (Sweigard et al. 1997), phleomycin (Mattern et al. 1988), and nourseothricin (Kück and Hoff 2006).

15.4.3 Recyclable Markers

By careful expression of splicing sequences and the genes for their recognition, some markers can be evicted once transformation has been accomplished. These commonly use the cre-lox system and require induction of the genes for splicing. The end product is a transformed strain that no longer carries the selectable marker. These strains can then be transformed with the same marker increasing the value of such systems (Krappmann et al. 2005). In a similar vein, the FLP/FRT technique has also been adapted from *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* to recycle markers in *P. chrysogenum*, and other filamentous fungi, by codon optimization of the recombinase gene (KOPKE et al. 2010).

While not in the same category as markers that integrate into the genome and require subsequent excision, autonomously replicating plasmids are important for manipulation of some species. The AMA series of plasmids (Osherov et al. 2000) offer the benefit of autonomous replication for *Aspergillus* and have been widely used both as a genome library and as individual vectors for other uses. While there was some suggestion that autonomous replication could be observed in *Neurospora* (Grant et al. 1984), this has never been used to develop vectors for gene manipulation.

15.4.4 Novel Methods

Complementation of temperature-sensitive (TS) mutations was used as a means to identify the gene carrying the TS lesion. It was not until identification of the ribosomal S9 protein that this was proposed as a deliberate selectable marker. Subsequently this has been used to disrupt the *albino-1* gene in Neurospora in a strain carrying the TS allele. Complementation by the *Magnaporthe* ribosomal S9

gene allowed targeting without interference by homology with the native *Neurospora* locus (Wiest et al. 2012c).

Plasmids are naturally found in mitochondria of several fungi (Griffiths 1995), and while these suggest that it should offer a route for manipulation of fungal physiology, this has not proven to be useful in practice.

15.5 Plasmids/Strains

For fungi where dominant selectable markers are available, they are widely used, and a series of vectors based on the same genes are often available for use across multiple target species. With the demonstration that targeting was enhanced in strains deficient in nonhomologous end joining, many such strains were developed to allow modern gene targeting. Among these strains are representatives from most of the commonly used model species (Table 15.2).

15.5.1 Neurospora

Most strains of *Neurospora* are sensitive to hygromycin and so are readily transformed with the most commonly available vectors. Additional strains are used for special purpose transformation including auxotrophic strains, temperature-sensitive strains, and strains defective in nonhomologous end joining (Table 15.2). Among the auxotrophic complementation systems, the most widely used was the *his-3* complementation which allowed targeting to the *his-3* locus in *Neurospora*. This robust system generated significant numbers of homologous integrants, but because of the variability at *his-3* among laboratory strains (Yeadon et al. 1998), most researchers use strains carrying the 1-234-723 allele of *his-3* (Margolin et al. 1997).

15.5.2 Aspergillus

Some species of *Aspergillus* are naturally resistant to hygromycin, and so complementation of auxotrophies is the most common method for selecting for transformants. The most commonly used marker is pyrG (Oakley et al. 1987a), and several vectors exist for selecting transformants in the most commonly studied species of Aspergillus (Table 15.3). Similarly, complementation of mutations at the riboB locus (Oakley et al. 1987b) has been used for selecting transformants in *A. nidulans* and *A. fumigatus* (Nayak et al. 2006). One of the commonly used transformation systems for *Aspergillus* uses the *amdS* gene on the plasmid p3SR2 (Tilburn et al. 1983) to confer the ability to grow on acetamide as the sole nitrogen

Table 15.2 Strains engineered for targeted gene disruption

FGSC #	Species	Characteristics	Reference
8071	*N. crassa*	am target strain TEC39	Cambareri and Kinsey (1994)
8072	*N. crassa*	am target strain TEC41	Cambareri and Kinsey (1994)
9538	*N. crassa*	mus-51 delta::Bar; his-3	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9539	*N. crassa*	mus-52 delta::Bar; his-3	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9567	*N. crassa*	mus-52::Hyg^r	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9568	*N. crassa*	mus-52::Hyg^r	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9595	*N. crassa*	mus-51::Hyg^r	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9717	*N. crassa*	delta mus-51::bar+; his-3	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9719	*N. crassa*	delta mus-52::bar+	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9720	*N. crassa*	delta mus-52::bar+; his-3	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
9718	*N. crassa*	delta mus-51::bar+	Ishibashi et al. (2006)
20277	*N. crassa*	NCU08290.2 (mus-51)	Colot et al. (2006)
20278	*N. crassa*	NCU08290.2 (mus-51)	Colot et al. (2006)
10216	*N. crassa*	un-16, mus-52	McCluskey et al. (2007)
10217	*N. crassa*	un-16, mus-52	McCluskey et al. (2007)
10218	*N. crassa*	un-16, mus-51	McCluskey et al. (2007)
10219	*N. crassa*	un-16, mus-51	McCluskey et al. (2007)
A1421	*A. flavus*	CA14 deltaKu70 delta PyrG	Chang et al. (2009)
A1181	*A. niger*	Δ kusA pyrG-	Meyer et al. (2007)
A1279	*A. niger*	KusA::amdS; pyrG	Carvalho et al. (2010)
A1180	*A. niger*	Delta kusA	Meyer et al. (2007)
A1515	*A. niger*	pyrG-, KusA::AfpyrG	Chiang et al. (2011)
A1182	*A. niger*	Delta kusA::AmdS	Meyer et al. (2007)
A1179	*A. niger*	Delta kusA pyrG-	Meyer et al. (2007)
A1421	*A. flavus*	CA14 deltaKu70 delta PyrG	Chang et al. (2009)
A1280	*A. fumigatus*	akuA::loxP	Hartmann et al. (2010)
A1160	*A. fumigatus*	DeltaKU80 pyrG-	Krappmann et al. (2006), Krappmann (2006)
A1159	*A. fumigatus*	akuA::loxP	Krappmann et al. (2006), Krappmann (2006)
A1158	*A. fumigatus*	akuA::loxP-hygro^R/tk	Krappmann et al. (2006), Krappmann (2006)
A1157	*A. fumigatus*	akuA::ptrA	Krappmann et al. (2006), Krappmann (2006)
A1151	*A. fumigatus*	pyrG^AF::Delta KU80	Krappmann et al. (2006), Krappmann (2006)
10386	*M. grisea*	P1.2-deltaKU80	Villalba et al. (2008)
10385	*M. grisea*	Guy11-deltaKU80	Villalba et al. (2008)
A1190	*A. parasiticus*	ordA, Ku70	Chang (2008)
A1243	*A. parasiticus*	Delta ku70	Ehrlich et al. (2008)
A1244	*A. parasiticus*	Delta ku70 Delta pyrG	Chang et al. (2009)

Table 15.3 Selectable markers and plasmids for transforming filamentous fungi

Selection	Marker	Plasmids	Reference
Dominant selection			
Benomyl	BmlR/ben	pBT6, pBenA3	Orbach et al. (1986), Jung et al. (1992)
Hygromycin	Hph/ HygR	pES20, etc.	Staben et al. (1989)
Bialaphos	bar	pBARKS1, etc.	Pall and Brunelli (1993)
Phleomycin	phleo	pBC-phleo	Silar (1995)
Sulfonylurea	sur	pCB1528, etc.	Sweigard et al. (1997)
Nourseothricin	nat1	pD-Nat1	Kuck and Hoff (2006)
Recessive selection			
Histidine	*his-3*	pNH60, pRAUW122, pJHAM002	Legerton and Yanofsky (1985), Aramayo and Metzenberg (1996), Lee et al. (2003)
Acetamide	*amd-S*	p2SR2	Wernars et al. (1985)
Purine	*pyrG*	ppyrG, pPL6, Anep2, etc.	Oakley et al. (1987a), Storms et al. (2005)
Pyridoxine	*pyroA*	pTN1, pFB6	Nayak et al. (2006)
Inositol	*inl*	pINL, pOKE01, pRATT19	Akins and Lambowitz (1985)
Riboflavin	*riboB*	pLO1, pPL1	Oakley et al. (1987b)
TS lethal	*un-16*	pUN16-6	McCluskey et al. (2007)

source. This plasmid is one of the most highly distributed (Table 15.4) and has been used for the transformation of a variety of fungi including *A. niger* (Kelly and Hynes 1985), *Cochliobolus* (Turgeon et al. 1985), *Penicillium* (Beri and Turner 1987), and *Trichoderma* (Rahman et al. 2009, p. 6942.

15.5.3 Other Fungi

While not all of the tools developed for use in *Neurospora* or *Aspergillus* are directly applicable to use in other research systems, many of the vectors used in these systems can be engineered to function in unrelated systems (Meyer 2008). Similarly, many of the approaches used in *Neurospora* and *Aspergillus* are employed to generate specific characteristics, such as chlorate resistance which is useful for forcing anastomosis (Bowden and Leslie 1992) or for transformation directly (Daboussi et al. 1989).

Finally, interspecific transfer of genes is especially useful when one is doing gene targeting. For example, the *Aspergillus nidulans riboB* gene is useful for targeting in *A. fumigatus* (Nayak et al. 2006), and the *Magnaporthe* ribosomal S9 gene can be used to transform *un-16* TS-lethal mutant strains of *Neurospora* without interfering with targeting [e.g., to the *al-1* locus (Wiest et al. 2012c)].

Table 15.4 Most commonly requested plasmids from the FGSC collection from January 2000 to September 2012

Plasmid name	Number of distributions	Reference
pSilent-1	114	Nakayashiki et al. (2005)
pBC-phleo	86	Silar (1995)
pCSN44	78	Staben et al. (1989)
pBARGPE1	71	Pall and Brunelli (1993)
pMF272	67	Freitag et al. (2004)
pRS426	63	Christianson et al. (1992)
gGFP	56	Maor et al. (1998)
pCB1003	56	Caroll et al. (1994)
pCB1004	52	Caroll et al. (1994)
pPK2	48	Covert et al. (2001)
pCSN43	46	Staben et al. (1989)
pBARMTE1	42	Pall and Brunelli (1993)
p3SR2	42	Wernars et al. (1985)
pBC-hygro	41	Silar (1995)
pMYX10	37	Campbell et al. (1994)
pMYX2	35	Campbell et al. (1994)
pMT-mRFP1	35	Toews et al. (2004)
pBARKS1	34	Pall and Brunelli (1993)
ppyrG	34	Oakley et al. (1987a)
pMT-BFP	34	Toews et al. (2004)
pMF280	32	Freitag et al. (2004)
pFNO3	32	Yang et al. (2004)
pAO81	30	Yang et al. (2004)
pRG3-AMA1-NotI	29	Liu et al. (2004)
pMF334	29	Freitag and Selker (2005)
pXDRFP4	28	Yang et al. (2004)
pMF309	28	Freitag et al. (2004)
cosmid An26	28	Taylor and Borgmann (1996)
pMT-sGFP	27	Toews et al. (2004)
pSD1	26	Nguyen et al. (2008)
pD-Nat1	25	Kuck and Hoff (2006)
pCB1532	24	Sweigard et al. (1997)
pMOcosX	24	Orbach (1994)
pMF332	24	Freitag and Selker (2005)
pME2891	22	Krappmann et al. (2005)
pMF331	22	Freitag and Selker (2005)
p500	22	Vogt et al. (2005)
pMG2254	22	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2009)
pCCG::N-GFP	21	Honda and Selker (2009)
pA-HYG OSCAR	21	Paz et al. (2011)
pBARGEM7-2	21	Pall and Brunelli (1993)
pCCG::C-Gly::HAT::FLAG	21	Honda and Selker (2009)
pBT6	21	Orbach et al. (1986)
pYFP	20	Bardiya et al. (2008)
pOSCAR	20	Paz et al. (2011)

15.6 Fluorescent Proteins

15.6.1 Neurospora

GFP constructs were available for other organisms (Niedenthal et al. 1996; Zeilinger 1999, p. 68) before Freitag developed a codon-optimized version of GFP for *Neurospora* (Freitag et al. 2004). After this marker was introduced into the research community, numerous related fluorescent-tagged proteins were developed for use in *Neurospora* (Table 15.5). These include a split yellow fluorescent protein marker useful for the study of protein interactions (Hammond et al. 2011), as well as many fluorescent proteins targeted for specific organelles (Bowman et al. 2009). In addition to the fluorescent proteins described above, several vectors are available which will allow visualization of protein levels or location. The *lux* gene, derived from the firefly luciferase gene, has been engineered for use in *Neurospora* (Morgan et al. 2003) and ultimately employed as a signal of the levels of expression of the product of the *frq* locus (Gooch et al. 2008).

15.6.2 Aspergillus

With myriad fluorescent-tagged proteins available on convenient plasmids (Table 15.5), the growth in distribution of these plasmids reflects their value to the community (Table 15.4). The series developed in the laboratory of R. Fischer (Toews et al. 2004) includes green, red, and blue fluorescent proteins; these are all available from the FGSC and have been widely used in developing tools within the genus *Aspergillus* (Lubertozzi and Keasling 2009), as well as for cell biology studies in *Aspergillus* (Arratia-Quijada et al. 2012) and in unrelated fungi (Helber and Requena 2008). This reiterates the situation with selectable markers and tags; many of the tools developed for *Aspergillus* find direct utility in other systems underscoring the value of tool development in model systems.

15.6.3 Other Fungi

The most commonly used fluorescent protein used in a variety of systems is encoded by the gGFP vector developed by A. Sharon (Maor et al. 1998). This vector includes a hygromycin resistance cassette driven by the *A. nidulans* glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase promoter and the terminator from the *A. nidulans trpC* gene. The GFP gene is also driven by the *gpd* promoter and uses the GFP gene and terminator from the plasmid pHSP70-SG (Spellig et al. 1996) which was originally generated for use in *U. maydis*. The gGFP plasmid was optimized for use in *Cochliobolus*, but has been requested for use in a broad variety of fungal systems including *Colletotrichum* (Horowitz 2002), *Verticillium* (Eynck et al. 2007), and others (Lorang et al. 2001).

Table 15.5 Plasmids carrying visualization tags

Name	Tag	Organism	Reference
pFNO3	GFP	Aspergillus	Yang et al. (2004)
pHL86	GA5-chRFP, riboB	Aspergillus	Liu et al. (2009)
pHL85	chRFP, pyroA	Aspergillus	Liu et al. (2009)
pHL84	GA5-GFP, pyroA	Aspergillus	Liu et al. (2009)
pHL83	GA5-GFP, loxP, pyrG	Aspergillus	Liu et al. (2009)
pHL82	GA5-GFP, riboB	Aspergillus	Liu et al. (2009)
pXDRFP4	RFP	Aspergillus	Yang et al. (2004)
pSK800	mRFP1	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pSK494	GFP2-5	Aspergillus	Szewczyk and Krappmann (2010)
pSK495	yfp	Aspergillus	Szewczyk and Krappmann (2010)
pSK496	mCherry	Aspergillus	Szewczyk and Krappmann (2010)
pJH19	DsRedT4	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pRF281	GFP	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pDV2	sGFP	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pRS54	GFP	Aspergillus	Suelmann and Fischer (2000)
pSK700	DsRedT4	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pMT-sGFP	sGFP	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pMT-BFP	BFP	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pMT-mRFP1	mRFP1	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pPND1	mRFP1	Aspergillus	Rischitor et al. (2004)
pRF280	GFP	Aspergillus	Toews et al. (2004)
pOT-eGFP	eGFP	Botrytis	Patel et al. (2008)
pOT-LUC	Luc	Botrytis	Patel et al. (2008)
pMG2082	GFP-URA3-GFP	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2009)
pMG1958	Ppck1-GFP	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2004)
pMG1892	pgal-GFP	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2004)
pMG1886	pmet3-GFP	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2004)
pMG1726	CFP-URA3	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pMG1648	YFP-URA3	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pMG1602	GFP-URA3	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pMG1801	CFP-His1	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pMG2169	RFP-URA3	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2009)
pMG1646	GFP-His1	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pMG2254	M-cherry-TADH-URA3	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2009)
pMG1656	YFP-His1	Candida	Gerami-Nejad et al. (2001)
pCAMDsRED	DsRed-Express	Leptosphaeria	Eckert et al. (2005)
gGFP	GFP	Many	Maor et al. (1998)
pVG101	ccg2p-o-luc-I	Neurospora	Gooch et al. (2008)
pHAN1	sgfp, HA	Neurospora	Kawabata and Inoue (2007)
pMF334	RFP	Neurospora	Freitag and Selker (2005)
pMF332	RFP	Neurospora	Freitag and Selker (2005)
pMF331	RFP	Neurospora	Freitag and Selker (2005)

(continued)

Table 15.5 (continued)

Name	Tag	Organism	Reference
pAL3-Lifeact	TagRFP	Neurospora	Berepiki et al. (2010)
pAL4-Lifeact	nat1 TagRFP	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pAL5-Lifeact	TagRFP-T	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pAL6-Lifeact	TagRFP	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pAL12-Lifeact	TagRFP	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pYFPN	YFP	Neurospora	Bardiya et al. (2008)
pTH1124.1	YFPC-	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pTH1123.1	YFPN-	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pTH1117.12	GFP-	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pTH1112.8	-YFPN	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pTH1111.1	-RFP	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pTH1108.2	-YFPC	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pMF309	Bml-GFP	Neurospora	Freitag et al. (2004)
pMF280	hH1-GFP	Neurospora	Freitag et al. (2004)
pMF272	GFP	Neurospora	Freitag et al. (2004)
pLUC6 delta BS	lux	Neurospora	Morgan et al. (2003)
pAL10-Lifeact	TagRFP	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pRFP-vps-52	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pRFP-cax	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pRFP-nca-1	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pnca-2-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pRFP-nca-2	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pnca-3-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pgrp-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pTH1067.9	GFP	Neurospora	Hammond et al. (2011)
pRFP-grp	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pdpm-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pVG110	frqp-o-luc-I	Neurospora	Gooch et al. (2008)
pvps-52-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pYFP	YFP	Neurospora	Bardiya et al. (2008)
pRFP-vam-3	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pRFP-vma-1	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
parg-4-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pAL1	sGFP	Neurospora	Berepiki et al. (2010)
pAL2-Lifeact	tdTomato	Neurospora	Lichius and Read (2010)
pGFP::hph::loxP	GFP	Neurospora	Honda and Selker (2009)
pCCG::N-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Honda and Selker (2009)
pCCG::C-Gly::GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Honda and Selker (2009)
pYFPC	YFP	Neurospora	Bardiya et al. (2008)
pnca-1-GFP	GFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)
pRFP-dpm	RFP	Neurospora	Bowman et al. (2009)

15.7 Tags

15.7.1 Visualization

Several proteins have been used as target for antibodies when linked to a polypeptide under study. Among them, the GFP protein was localized by immunological reaction using a rabbit anti-GFP antibody (Gordon et al. 2000).

15.7.2 Purification

Numerous protein tags have been developed to facilitate protein purification, and many of these are available in public collections. For example, the FLAG (Honda and Selker 2009), S-TAG (Yang et al. 2004), and HA (Toews et al. 2004) tags are present among many of the most often distributed plasmids from the FGSC collection (Table 15.4). The application of these tags allows rapid protein purification and is having an impact on fungal proteomics (Liu et al. 2009) and on understanding of the fungal protein interactome (Wang et al. 2011). If the distribution of these plasmids (Table 15.4) is a predictor of the impact that they may have, we can expect additional examples of their application to understanding the role of specific proteins in numerous important questions of fungal development, ultrastructure, and environmental interactions.

15.8 Conclusion

15.8.1 Impact

Since 2000, the FGSC has distributed over 3,545 individual plasmid samples. Among these, the most popular plasmids are those for transformation and manipulation of model filamentous fungi (Table 15.4). Similarly, strains for targeted transformation have had a huge impact, and the combined availability of these strains and the plasmids for targeted transformation have allowed the development of a number of systematic and targeted gene deletion programs. This is arguably the biggest advancement in research in filamentous fungi for many decades, and it allows evaluation of the 80–90 % of genes that are not discoverable in traditional mutagenesis programs. In *N. crassa*, a set of mutant strains was generated where nearly every gene has been deleted in a strain engineered to be defective in nonhomologous end joining (Colot et al. 2006). This set was arrayed at the FGSC and has been distributed as arrayed strains to laboratories in the USA, Europe, Asia, and South America (Wiest et al. 2012b). Similar sets have been prepared, although

not in a systematic manner, for *Candida albicans*, *Cryptococcus neoformans*, and, of course, for yeast. There is significant interest in generating similar resources for plant-pathogenic fungi, and a set of 48,000 tagged-integrant strains of *Magnaporthe grisea* were developed and deposited at the FGSC (Betts et al. 2007). Regrettably, the requirement is that every lab that wants to work with these strains receives a permit from the USDA Biotechnology Regulatory Service, which has limited the impact of these materials. Similar permits would be required for genetically engineered strains of any plant pathogen, and until this is resolved, it is unlikely that a systematic gene deletion resource will be made available for these important organisms.

15.8.2 Future Prospects

Most of the molecular tools used for manipulation of filamentous fungi are available from the Fungal Genetics Stock Center. In 2012, the FGSC entered into negotiations with Addgene (http://www.addgene.com), a nonprofit plasmid repository, to deposit many of the most highly requested plasmids. This is both good practice for an active collection (second-site backup is part of the best practice guidelines for microbial germplasm repositories) and increases the impact of each plasmid, by increasing their visibility to potentially new customers.

Additionally, the development of novel organism systems for applications such as biomass deconstruction, pharmaceutical production, biocontrol, or the production of food and fiber will mean that new tools for manipulation and engineering of these fungi will be developed. The sharing of these materials via active well-curated collections assures that these materials will have the greatest impact (Furman and Stern 2011) and that they will be available long after their primary use has been accomplished.

References

Akins RA, Lambowitz AM (1985) General method for cloning Neurospora crassa nuclear genes by complementation of mutants. Mol Cell Biol 5(9):2272–2278

Alloway JL (1932) The transformation in vitro of R pneumococci into S forms of different specific types by the use of filtered pneumococcus extracts. J Exp Med 55(1):91–99

Andersen MR, Salazar MP, Schaap PJ, van de Vondervoort PJ, Culley D, Thykaer J, Frisvad JC, Nielsen KF, Albang R, Albermann K, Berka RM, Braus GH, Braus-Stromeyer SA, Corrochano LM, Dai Z, van Dijck PW, Hofmann G, Lasure LL, Magnuson JK, Menke H, Meijer M, Meijer SL, Nielsen JB, Nielsen ML, van Ooyen AJ, Pel HJ, Poulsen L, Samson RA, Stam H, Tsang A, van den Brink JM, Atkins A, Aerts A, Shapiro H, Pangilinan J, Salamov A, Lou Y, Lindquist E, Lucas S, Grimwood J, Grigoriev IV, Kubicek CP, Martinez D, van Peij NN, Roubos JA, Nielsen J, Baker SE (2011) Comparative genomics of citric-acid-producing Aspergillus niger ATCC 1015 versus enzyme-producing CBS 513.88. Genome Res 21(6):885–897. doi:10.1101/gr.112169.110

Aramayo R, Metzenberg R (1996) Gene replacements at the his-3 locus of Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Newsl 43:9–13

Arie T, Christiansen S, Yoder O, Turgeon B (1997) Efficient cloning of ascomycete mating type genes by PCR amplification of the conserved *MAT* HMG box. Fungal Genet Biol 21 (1):118–130

Arratia-Quijada J, Sanchez O, Scazzocchio C, Aguirre J (2012) FlbD, a Myb Transcription factor of Aspergillus nidulans, is uniquely involved in both asexual and sexual differentiation. Eukaryot Cell 11(9):1132–1142. doi:10.1128/EC.00101-12

Atwood KC, Mukai F (1954) Survival and mutation in Neurospora exposed at nuclear detonations. Am Nat 88:295–314

Avalos J, Geever RF, Case ME (1989) Bialaphos resistance as a dominant selectable marker in Neurospora crassa. Curr Genet 16(5–6):369–372

Ballance DJ, Buxton FP, Turner G (1983) Transformation of Aspergillus nidulans by the orotidine-5′-phosphate decarboxylase gene of Neurospora crassa. Biochem Biophys Res Commun 112(1):284–289, doi:0006-291X(83)91828-4

Bardiya N, Alexander WG, Perdue TD, Barry EG, Metzenberg RL, Pukkila PJ, Shiu PK (2008) Characterization of interactions between and among components of the meiotic silencing by unpaired DNA machinery in Neurospora crassa using bimolecular fluorescence complementation. Genetics 178(1):593–596. doi:10.1534/genetics.107.079384

Beadle GW, Tatum EL (1941) Genetic control of biochemical reactions in Neurospora. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 27(11):499–506

Beggs JD (1978) Transformation of yeast by a replicating hybrid plasmid. Nature 275 (5676):104–109

Bej AK, Perlin MH (1989) A high efficiency transformation system for the basidiomycete Ustilago violacea employing hygromycin resistance and lithium-acetate treatment. Gene 80 (1):171–176, doi:0378-1119(89)90263-1

Bennett JW, Chung KT (2001) Alexander Fleming and the discovery of penicillin. Adv Appl Microbiol 49:163–184

Berepiki A, Lichius A, Shoji JY, Tilsner J, Read ND (2010) F-actin dynamics in Neurospora crassa. Eukaryot Cell 9(4):547–557. doi:10.1128/EC.00253-09

Beri RK, Turner G (1987) Transformation of Penicillium chrysogenum using the Aspergillus nidulans amdS gene as a dominant selective marker. Curr Genet 11(8):639–641

Betts MF, Tucker SL, Galadima N, Meng Y, Patel G, Li L, Donofrio N, Floyd A, Nolin S, Brown D, Mandel MA, Mitchell TK, Xu JR, Dean RA, Farman ML, Orbach MJ (2007) Development of a high throughput transformation system for insertional mutagenesis in Magnaporthe oryzae. Fungal Genet Biol 44(10):1035–1049. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2007.05.001

Blakeslee AF (1904) Zygospore formation a sexual process. Science 19(492):864–866. doi:10.1126/science.19.492.864

Bohlin L, Goransson U, Alsmark C, Weden C, Backlund A (2010) Natural products in modern life science. Phytochem Rev 9(2):279–301. doi:10.1007/s11101-009-9160-6

Bonner JT (1944) A descriptive study of the development of the slime mold Dictyostelium discoideum. Am J Bot 31(3):175–182

Bowden RL, Leslie JF (1992) Nitrate-nonutilizing mutants of Gibberella zeae (Fusarium graminearum) and their use in determining vegetative compatibility. Exp Mycol 16 (4):308–315

Bowman BJ, Draskovic M, Freitag M, Bowman EJ (2009) Structure and distribution of organelles and cellular location of calcium transporters in Neurospora crassa. Eukaryot Cell 8 (12):1845–1855. doi:10.1128/EC.00174-09

Cambareri EB, Kinsey JA (1994) A simple and efficient system for targeting DNA to the am locus of Neurospora crassa. Gene 142(2):219–224

Cambareri EB, Jensen BC, Schabtach E, Selker EU (1989) Repeat-induced G-C to A-T mutations in Neurospora. Science 244(4912):1571–1575

Campbell EI, Unkles SE, Macro JA, van den Hondel C, Contreras R, Kinghorn JR (1989) Improved transformation efficiency of Aspergillus niger using the homologous niaD gene for nitrate reductase. Curr Genet 16(1):53–56

Campbell JW, Enderlin CS, Selitrennikoff CP (1994) Vectors for expression and modification of cDNA sequences in Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Newsl 41:20–21

Caroll AM, Sweigard J, Valent B (1994) Improved vectors for selecting resistance to hygromycin. Fungal Genet Newsl 41:22

Carvalho ND, Arentshorst M, Jin Kwon M, Meyer V, Ram AF (2010) Expanding the ku70 toolbox for filamentous fungi: establishment of complementation vectors and recipient strains for advanced gene analyses. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 87(4):1463–1473. doi:10.1007/s00253-010-2588-1

Case ME (1982) Transformation of Neurospora crassa utilizing recombinant plasmid DNA. Basic Life Sci 19:87–100

Case ME, Schweizer M, Kushner SR, Giles NH (1979) Efficient transformation of Neurospora crassa by utilizing hybrid plasmid DNA. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 76(10):5259–5263

Chang PK (2008) A highly efficient gene-targeting system for Aspergillus parasiticus. Lett Appl Microbiol 46(5):587–592. doi:10.1111/j.1472-765X.2008.02345.x

Chang PK, Horn BW, Dorner JW (2009) Clustered genes involved in cyclopiazonic acid production are next to the aflatoxin biosynthesis gene cluster in Aspergillus flavus. Fungal Genet Biol 46(2):176–182. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2008.11.002

Chen C, Smye SW, Robinson MP, Evans JA (2006) Membrane electroporation theories: a review. Med Biol Eng Comput 44(1–2):5–14. doi:10.1007/s11517-005-0020-2

Chiang YM, Meyer KM, Praseuth M, Baker SE, Bruno KS, Wang CC (2011) Characterization of a polyketide synthase in Aspergillus niger whose product is a precursor for both dihydroxynaphthalene (DHN) melanin and naphtho-gamma-pyrone. Fungal Genet Biol 48(4):430–437. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2010.12.001

Christianson TW, Sikorski RS, Dante M, Shero JH, Hieter P (1992) Multifunctional yeast high-copy-number shuttle vectors. Gene 110(1):119–122, doi:0378-1119(92)90454-W

Chung CT, Niemela SL, Miller RH (1989) One-step preparation of competent Escherichia coli: transformation and storage of bacterial cells in the same solution. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 86 (7):2172–2175

Cogoni C, Irelan JT, Schumacher M, Schmidhauser TJ, Selker EU, Macino G (1996) Transgene silencing of the al-1 gene in vegetative cells of Neurospora is mediated by a cytoplasmic effector and does not depend on DNA-DNA interactions or DNA methylation. EMBO J 15 (12):3153–3163

Coleman JJ, Rounsley SD, Rodriguez-Carres M, Kuo A, Wasmann CC, Grimwood J, Schmutz J, Taga M, White GJ, Zhou S, Schwartz DC, Freitag M, Ma LJ, Danchin EG, Henrissat B, Coutinho PM, Nelson DR, Straney D, Napoli CA, Barker BM, Gribskov M, Rep M, Kroken S, Molnar I, Rensing C, Kennell JC, Zamora J, Farman ML, Selker EU, Salamov A, Shapiro H, Pangilinan J, Lindquist E, Lamers C, Grigoriev IV, Geiser DM, Covert SF, Temporini E, Vanetten HD (2009) The genome of Nectria haematococca: contribution of supernumerary chromosomes to gene expansion. PLoS Genet 5(8):e1000618. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.1000618

Colot HV, Park G, Turner GE, Ringelberg C, Crew CM, Litvinkova L, Weiss RL, Borkovich KA, Dunlap JC (2006) A high-throughput gene knockout procedure for Neurospora reveals functions for multiple transcription factors. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103 (27):10352–10357. doi:10.1073/pnas.0601456103

Covert SF (1998) Supernumerary chromosomes in filamentous fungi. Curr Genet 33(5):311–319

Covert SF, Kapoor P, Lee M, Briley A, Nairn J (2001) Agrobacterium tumefaciens-mediated transformation of Fusarium circinatum. Mycol Res 105(3):259–264

Croll D, McDonald BA (2012) The accessory genome as a cradle for adaptive evolution in pathogens. PLoS Pathog 8(4):e1002608. doi:10.1371/journal.ppat.1002608

Daboussi MJ, Djeballi A, Gerlinger C, Blaiseau PL, Bouvier I, Cassan M, Lebrun MH, Parisot D, Brygoo Y (1989) Transformation of seven species of filamentous fungi using the nitrate reductase gene of Aspergillus nidulans. Curr Genet 15(6):453–456

de Bekker C, Wiebenga A, Aguilar G, Wosten HA (2009) An enzyme cocktail for efficient protoplast formation in Aspergillus niger. J Microbiol Methods 76(3):305–306. doi:10.1016/j.mimet.2008.11.001

de Groot MJ, Bundock P, Hooykaas PJ, Beijersbergen AG (1998) Agrobacterium tumefaciens-mediated transformation of filamentous fungi. Nat Biotechnol 16(9):839–842. doi:10.1038/nbt0998-839

deBary A (1853) Untersuchungen uber die Brandpilze und die durch sie verursachten Krankheiten der pflanzen mit Rucksicht auf das Getreide und andere Nutzpflanzen. Paul Parey, Berlin

Delbruck M, Meissner G (1968) Note on the availability of phycomyces mutants deficient in beta-carotene biosynthesis. Lipids 3(6):562. doi:10.1007/BF02530904

Diaz-Sanchez V, Estrada AF, Trautmann D, Limon MC, Al-Babili S, Avalos J (2011) Analysis of al-2 mutations in Neurospora. PLoS One 6(7):e21948. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0021948

Dower WJ, Miller JF, Ragsdale CW (1988) High efficiency transformation of E. coli by high voltage electroporation. Nucleic Acids Res 16(13):6127–6145

Eckert M, Maguire K, Urban M, Foster S, Fitt B, Lucas J, Hammond-Kosack K (2005) Agrobacterium tumefaciens-mediated transformation of Leptosphaeria spp. and Oculimacula spp. with the reef coral gene DsRed and the jellyfish gene gfp. FEMS Microbiol Lett 253 (1):67–74. doi:10.1016/j.femsle.2005.09.041

Ehrlich KC, Scharfenstein LL Jr, Montalbano BG, Chang PK (2008) Are the genes nadA and norB involved in formation of aflatoxin G(1)? Int J Mol Sci 9(9):1717–1729. doi:10.3390/ijms9091717

Emerson R, Wilson CM (1949) The significance of meiosis in allomyces. Science 110 (2847):86–88. doi:10.1126/science.110.2847.86

Eynck C, Koopmann B, Grunewaldt-Stoecker G, Karlovsky P, von Tiedemann A (2007) Differential interactions of Verticillium longisporum and V. dahliae with Brassica napus detected with molecular and histological techniques. Eur J Plant Pathol 118(3):259–274

Fincham JR (1989) Transformation in fungi. Microbiol Rev 53(1):148–170

Freitag M, Selker E (2005) Expression and visualization of red fluorescent protein (RFP) in Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Newsl 52:14–17

Freitag M, Hickey PC, Raju NB, Selker EU, Read ND (2004) GFP as a tool to analyze the organization, dynamics and function of nuclei and microtubules in Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Biol 41(10):897–910. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2004.06.008

Furman JL, Stern S (2011) Climbing atop the shoulders of giants: the impact of institutions on cumulative research. Am Econ Rev 101(5):1933–1963

Galagan JE, Calvo SE, Borkovich KA, Selker EU, Read ND, Jaffe D, FitzHugh W, Ma LJ, Smirnov S, Purcell S, Rehman B, Elkins T, Engels R, Wang S, Nielsen CB, Butler J, Endrizzi M, Qui D, Ianakiev P, Bell-Pedersen D, Nelson MA, Werner-Washburne M, Selitrennikoff CP, Kinsey JA, Braun EL, Zelter A, Schulte U, Kothe GO, Jedd G, Mewes W, Staben C, Marcotte E, Greenberg D, Roy A, Foley K, Naylor J, Stange-Thomann N, Barrett R, Gnerre S, Kamal M, Kamvysselis M, Mauceli E, Bielke C, Rudd S, Frishman D, Krystofova S, Rasmussen C, Metzenberg RL, Perkins DD, Kroken S, Cogoni C, Macino G, Catcheside D, Li W, Pratt RJ, Osmani SA, DeSouza CP, Glass L, Orbach MJ, Berglund JA, Voelker R, Yarden O, Plamann M, Seiler S, Dunlap J, Radford A, Aramayo R, Natvig DO, Alex LA, Mannhaupt G, Ebbole DJ, Freitag M, Paulsen I, Sachs MS, Lander ES, Nusbaum C, Birren B (2003) The genome sequence of the filamentous fungus *Neurospora crassa*. Nature 422 (6934):859–868. doi:10.1038/nature01554

Garnjobst L, Tatum EL (1967) A survey of new morphological mutants in Neurospora crassa. Genetics 57(3):579–604

Gerami-Nejad M, Berman J, Gale CA (2001) Cassettes for PCR-mediated construction of green, yellow, and cyan fluorescent protein fusions in Candida albicans. Yeast 18(9):859–864. doi:10.1002/yea.738

Gerami-Nejad M, Hausauer D, McClellan M, Berman J, Gale C (2004) Cassettes for the PCR-mediated construction of regulatable alleles in Candida albicans. Yeast 21(5):429–436. doi:10.1002/yea.1080

Gerami-Nejad M, Dulmage K, Berman J (2009) Additional cassettes for epitope and fluorescent fusion proteins in Candida albicans. Yeast 26(7):399–406. doi:10.1002/yea.1674

Gooch VD, Mehra A, Larrondo LF, Fox J, Touroutoutoudis M, Loros JJ, Dunlap JC (2008) Fully codon-optimized luciferase uncovers novel temperature characteristics of the Neurospora clock. Eukaryot Cell 7(1):28–37. doi:10.1128/EC.00257-07

Gordon CL, Archer DB, Jeenes DJ, Doonan JH, Wells B, Trinci AP, Robson GD (2000) A glucoamylase::GFP gene fusion to study protein secretion by individual hyphae of Aspergillus niger. J Microbiol Methods 42(1):39–48, doi:S0167-7012(00)00170-6

Grant DM, Lambowitz AM, Rambosek JA, Kinsey JA (1984) Transformation of Neurospora crassa with recombinant plasmids containing the cloned glutamate dehydrogenase (am) gene: evidence for autonomous replication of the transforming plasmid. Mol Cell Biol 4 (10):2041–2051

Griffiths AJ (1995) Natural plasmids of filamentous fungi. Microbiol Rev 59(4):673–685

Hammond TM, Xiao H, Rehard DG, Boone EC, Perdue TD, Pukkila PJ, Shiu PK (2011) Fluorescent and bimolecular-fluorescent protein tagging of genes at their native loci in Neurospora crassa using specialized double-joint PCR plasmids. Fungal Genet Biol 48 (9):866–873. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2011.05.002

Hammond TM, Rehard DG, Harris BC, Shiu PK (2012) Fine-scale mapping in Neurospora crassa by using genome-wide knockout strains. Mycologia 104(1):321–323. doi:10.3852/11-062

Hartmann T, Dumig M, Jaber BM, Szewczyk E, Olbermann P, Morschhauser J, Krappmann S (2010) Validation of a self-excising marker in the human pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus by employing the beta-rec/six site-specific recombination system. Appl Environ Microbiol 76 (18):6313–6317. doi:10.1128/AEM.00882-10

Helber N, Requena N (2008) Expression of the fluorescence markers DsRed and GFP fused to a nuclear localization signal in the arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus Glomus intraradices. New Phytol 177(2):537–548. doi:10.1111/j.1469-8137.2007.02257.x

Hinnen A, Hicks JB, Fink GR (1978) Transformation of yeast. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 75 (4):1929–1933

Honda S, Selker EU (2009) Tools for fungal proteomics: multifunctional neurospora vectors for gene replacement, protein expression and protein purification. Genetics 182(1):11–23. doi:10.1534/genetics.108.098707

Horowitz S (2002) Use of green fluorescent protein-transgenic strains to study pathogenic and nonpathogenic lifestyles in Colletotrichum acutatum. Phytopathology 92:743–749

Horowitz NH, Fling M, Macleod H, Sueoka N (1961) A genetic study of two new structural forms of tyrosinase in Neurospora. Genetics 46:1015–1024

Howe HB Jr, Benson EW (1974) A perithecial color mutant of Neurospora crassa. Mol Gen Genet 131(1):79–83

Hurst LD (2009) Genetics and the understanding of selection. Nat Rev Genet 10(2):83–93

Hurst GD, Werren JH (2001) The role of selfish genetic elements in eukaryotic evolution. Nat Rev Genet 2(8):597–606. doi:10.1038/35084545

Ishibashi K, Suzuki K, Ando Y, Takakura C, Inoue H (2006) Nonhomologous chromosomal integration of foreign DNA is completely dependent on MUS-53 (human Lig4 homolog) in Neurospora. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 103(40):14871–14876. doi:10.1073/pnas.0604477103

Ishikawa T (1962) Genetic studies of *ad-8* mutants in *Neurospora crassa*. II. Interallelic complementation at the *ad-8* locus. Genetics 47:1755–1770

Jones RN, Gonzalez-Sanchez M, Gonzalez-Garcia M, Vega JM, Puertas MJ (2008) Chromosomes with a life of their own. Cytogenet Genome Res 120(3–4):265–280. doi:10.1159/000121076

Judelson HS, Spielman LJ, Shattock RC (1995) Genetic mapping and non-Mendelian segregation of mating type loci in the oomycete, Phytophthora infestans. Genetics 141(2):503–512

Jung MK, Wilder IB, Oakley BR (1992) Amino acid alterations in the benA (beta-tubulin) gene of Aspergillus nidulans that confer benomyl resistance. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton 22(3):170–174. doi:10.1002/cm.970220304

Kawabata T, Inoue H (2007) Detection of physical interactions by immunoprecipitation of FLAG- and HA-tagged proteins expressed at the his-3 locus in Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Newsl 54:5–8

Kawai S, Hashimoto W, Murata K (2010) Transformation of Saccharomyces cerevisiae and other fungi: methods and possible underlying mechanism. Bioeng Bugs 1(6):395–403. doi:10.4161/bbug.1.6.13257

Keller N, Bergstrom G, Yoder O (1990) Effects of genetic transformation on fitness of Cochliobolus heterostrophus. Phytopathology 80(11):1166–1173

Kelly JM, Hynes MJ (1985) Transformation of Aspergillus niger by the amdS gene of Aspergillus nidulans. EMBO J 4(2):475–479

Kinscherf TG, Leong SA (1988) Molecular analysis of the karyotype of Ustilago maydis. Chromosoma 96(6):427–433

Kopke K, Hoff B, Kuck U (2010) Application of the Saccharomyces cerevisiae FLP/FRT recombination system in filamentous fungi for marker recycling and construction of knockout strains devoid of heterologous genes. Appl Environ Microbiol 76(14):4664–4674. doi:10.1128/aem.00670-10

Krappmann S (2006) Tools to study molecular mechanisms of Aspergillus pathogenicity. Trends Microbiol 14(8):356–364. doi:10.1016/j.tim.2006.06.005

Krappmann S, Bayram O, Braus GH (2005) Deletion and allelic exchange of the Aspergillus fumigatus veA locus via a novel recyclable marker module. Eukaryot Cell 4(7):1298–1307. doi:10.1128/EC.4.7.1298-1307.2005

Krappmann S, Sasse C, Braus GH (2006) Gene targeting in Aspergillus fumigatus by homologous recombination is facilitated in a nonhomologous end-joining-deficient genetic background. Eukaryot Cell 5(1):212–215. doi:10.1128/EC.5.1.212-215.2006

Kronstad JW, Staben C (1997) Mating type in filamentous fungi. Annu Rev Genet 31:245–276. doi:10.1146/annurev.genet.31.1.245

Kuck U, Hoff B (2006) Application of the nourseothricin acetyltransferase gene (nat1) as dominant marker for the transformation of filamentous fungi. Fungal Genet Newsl 53:9–11

Kück U, Hoff B (2006) Application of the nourseothricin acetyltransferase gene (nat1) as dominant marker for the transformation of filamentous fungi. Fungal Genet Newsl 53:9–11

Kurtz MB, Cortelyou MW, Kirsch DR (1986) Integrative transformation of Candida albicans, using a cloned Candida ADE2 gene. Mol Cell Biol 6(1):142–149

Kuwano T, Shirataki C, Itoh Y (2008) Comparison between polyethylene glycol- and polyethylenimine-mediated transformation of Aspergillus nidulans. Curr Genet 54(2):95–103. doi:10.1007/s00294-008-0204-z

Lee DW, Haag JR, Aramayo R (2003) Construction of strains for rapid homokaryon purification after integration of constructs at the histidine-3 (his-3) locus of Neurospora crassa. Curr Genet 43(1):17–23. doi:10.1007/s00294-002-0366-z

Legerton TL, Yanofsky C (1985) Cloning and characterization of the multifunctional his-3 gene of Neurospora crassa. Gene 39(2–3):129–140, doi:0378-1119(85)90306-3

Leslie JF (1981) Inbreeding for isogeneity by backcrossing to a fixed parent in haploid and diploid eukaryotes. Genet Res 37(3):239–252

Levine ZA, Vernier PT (2010) Life cycle of an electropore: field-dependent and field-independent steps in pore creation and annihilation. J Membr Biol 236(1):27–36. doi:10.1007/s00232-010-9277-y

Lichius A, Read ND (2010) A versatile set of Lifeact-RFP expression plasmids for live-cell imaging of F-actin in filamentous fungi. Fungal Genet Reports 57:8–14

Lindegren CC (1932) The genetics of Neurospora. II. Segregation of the sex factors in asci of N. crassa, N. sitophila, and N. tetrasperma. Bull Torrey Bot Club 59:119–138

Lindegren CC (1948) Genetics of the fungi. Annu Rev Microbiol 2(1):47–70. doi:10.1146/annurev.mi.02.100148.000403

Liu W, May GS, Lionakis MS, Lewis RE, Kontoyiannis DP (2004) Extra copies of the Aspergillus fumigatus squalene epoxidase gene confer resistance to terbinafine: genetic approach to studying gene dose-dependent resistance to antifungals in A. fumigatus. Antimicrob Agents Chemother 48(7):2490–2496. doi:10.1128/AAC.48.7.2490-2496.2004

Liu HL, De Souza CP, Osmani AH, Osmani SA (2009) The three fungal transmembrane nuclear pore complex proteins of Aspergillus nidulans are dispensable in the presence of an intact An-Nup84-120 complex. Mol Biol Cell 20(2):616–630. doi:10.1091/mbc.E08-06-0628

Lorang JM, Tuori RP, Martinez JP, Sawyer TL, Redman RS, Rollins JA, Wolpert TJ, Johnson KB, Rodriguez RJ, Dickman MB, Ciuffetti LM (2001) Green fluorescent protein is lighting up fungal biology. Appl Environ Microbiol 67(5):1987–1994. doi:10.1128/AEM.67.5.1987-1994.2001

Lubertozzi D, Keasling JD (2009) Developing Aspergillus as a host for heterologous expression. Biotechnol Adv 27(1):53–75. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2008.09.001

Ma LJ, van der Does HC, Borkovich KA, Coleman JJ, Daboussi MJ, Di Pietro A, Dufresne M, Freitag M, Grabherr M, Henrissat B, Houterman PM, Kang S, Shim WB, Woloshuk C, Xie X, Xu JR, Antoniw J, Baker SE, Bluhm BH, Breakspear A, Brown DW, Butchko RA, Chapman S, Coulson R, Coutinho PM, Danchin EG, Diener A, Gale LR, Gardiner DM, Goff S, Hammond-Kosack KE, Hilburn K, Hua-Van A, Jonkers W, Kazan K, Kodira CD, Koehrsen M, Kumar L, Lee YH, Li L, Manners JM, Miranda-Saavedra D, Mukherjee M, Park G, Park J, Park SY, Proctor RH, Regev A, Ruiz-Roldan MC, Sain D, Sakthikumar S, Sykes S, Schwartz DC, Turgeon BG, Wapinski I, Yoder O, Young S, Zeng Q, Zhou S, Galagan J, Cuomo CA, Kistler HC, Rep M (2010) Comparative genomics reveals mobile pathogenicity chromosomes in Fusarium. Nature 464(7287):367–373. doi:10.1038/nature08850

Machida M, Yamada O, Gomi K (2008) Genomics of Aspergillus oryzae: learning from the history of Koji mold and exploration of its future. DNA Res 15(4):173–183. doi:10.1093/dnares/dsn020

Maor R, Puyesky M, Horowitz BA, Sharon A (1998) Use of green fluorescent protein (GFP) for studying development and fungal-plant interaction in Cochliobolus heterostrophus. Mycol Res 102(4):491–496

Margolin BS, Freitag M, Selker E (1997) Improved plasmids for gene targeting at the his-3 locus of Neurospora crassa by electroporation. Fungal Genet Rep 44:34–36

Mattern IE, Punt PJ, van den Hondel CA (1988) A vector for Aspergillus transformation conferring phleomycin resistance. Fungal Genet Newsl 35:25

McClintock B (1945) Neurospora. I. Preliminary observations of the chromosomes of Neurospora crassa. Am J Bot 32(10):671–678

McCluskey K, Walker SA, Yedlin RL, Madole D, Plamann M (2007) Complementation of un-16 and the development of a selectable marker for transformation of Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Newsl 54:9–11

McCluskey K, Wiest A, Grigoriev IV, Lipzen A, Martin J, Schackwitz W, Baker SE (2011) Rediscovery by whole genome sequencing: classical mutations and genome polymorphisms in Neurospora crassa. G3 Genes Genomes Genet 1(4):303–316. doi:10.1534/g3.111.000307

Meyer V (2008) Genetic engineering of filamentous fungi–progress, obstacles and future trends. Biotechnol Adv 26(2):177–185. doi:10.1016/j.biotechadv.2007.12.001

Meyer V, Arentshorst M, El-Ghezal A, Drews AC, Kooistra R, van den Hondel CA, Ram AF (2007) Highly efficient gene targeting in the Aspergillus niger kusA mutant. J Biotechnol 128(4):770–775. doi:10.1016/j.jbiotec.2006.12.021

Mills DI, McCluskey K (1990) Electrophoretic karyotypes of fungi: the new cytology. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 3(6):351–357

Mishra NC, Tatum EL (1973) Non-Mendelian inheritance of DNA-induced inositol independence in Neurospora. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 70(12):3875–3879

Morgan LW, Greene AV, Bell-Pedersen D (2003) Circadian and light-induced expression of luciferase in Neurospora crassa. Fungal Genet Biol 38(3):327–332, doi:S1087184502005625

Mylyk OM, Threlkeld SF (1974) A genetic study of female sterility in Neurospora crassa. Genet Res 24(1):91–102

Nakamura K, Egashira T (1961) Genetically mixed perithecia in Neurospora. Nature 190:1129–1130

Nakayashiki H, Hanada S, Nguyen BQ, Kadotani N, Tosa Y, Mayama S (2005) RNA silencing as a tool for exploring gene function in ascomycete fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 42(4):275–283. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2005.01.002

Nayak T, Szewczyk E, Oakley CE, Osmani A, Ukil L, Murray SL, Hynes MJ, Osmani SA, Oakley BR (2006) A versatile and efficient gene-targeting system for Aspergillus nidulans. Genetics 172(3):1557–1566. doi:10.1534/genetics.105.052563

Nguyen QB, Kadotani N, Kasahara S, Tosa Y, Mayama S, Nakayashiki H (2008) Systematic functional analysis of calcium-signalling proteins in the genome of the rice-blast fungus, Magnaporthe oryzae, using a high-throughput RNA-silencing system. Mol Microbiol 68 (6):1348–1365. doi:10.1111/j.1365-2958.2008.06242.x

Niedenthal RK, Riles L, Johnston M, Hegemann JH (1996) Green fluorescent protein as a marker for gene expression and subcellular localization in budding yeast. Yeast 12(8):773–786. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0061(19960630)12:8<773::AID-YEA972>3.0.CO;2-L

O'Gorman CM, Fuller HT, Dyer PS (2008) Discovery of a sexual cycle in the opportunistic fungal pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. Nature 457(7228):471–474

Oakley BR, Rinehart JE, Mitchell BL, Oakley CE, Carmona C, Gray GL, May GS (1987a) Cloning, mapping and molecular analysis of the pyrG (orotidine-5′-phosphate decarboxylase) gene of Aspergillus nidulans. Gene 61(3):385–399

Oakley CE, Weil CF, Kretz PL, Oakley BR (1987b) Cloning of the riboB locus of Aspergillus nidulans. Gene 53(2–3):293–298

OECD (2001) Biological resource centres underpinning the future of life sciences and biotechnology. OECD, Paris

Olmedo-Monfil V, Cortes-Penagos C, Herrera-Estrella A (2004) Three decades of fungal transformation: key concepts and applications. Methods Mol Biol 267:297–313. doi:10.1385/1-59259-774-2:297

Orbach MJ (1994) A cosmid with a HyR marker for fungal library construction and screening. Gene 150(1):159–162

Orbach MJ, Porro EB, Yanofsky C (1986) Cloning and characterization of the gene for beta-tubulin from a benomyl-resistant mutant of Neurospora crassa and its use as a dominant selectable marker. Mol Cell Biol 6(7):2452–2461

Osherov N, Mathew J, May GS (2000) Polarity-defective mutants of Aspergillus nidulans. Fungal Genet Biol 31(3):181–188. doi:10.1006/fgbi.2000.1236

Pall ML, Brunelli JP (1993) A series of six compact fungal transformation vectors containing polylinkers with multiple unique restriction sites. Fungal Genet Newsl 40:59–62

Patel RM, Heneghan MN, van Kan JA, Bailey AM, Foster GD (2008) The pOT and pLOB vector systems: improving ease of transgene expression in Botrytis cinerea. J Gen Appl Microbiol 54 (6):367–376, doi:JST.JSTAGE/jgam/54.367

Paz Z, Garcia-Pedrajas MD, Andrews DL, Klosterman SJ, Baeza-Montanez L, Gold SE (2011) One step construction of Agrobacterium-Recombination-ready-plasmids (OSCAR), an efficient and robust tool for ATMT based gene deletion construction in fungi. Fungal Genet Biol 48(7):677–684. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2011.02.003

Peberdy JF (1979) Fungal protoplasts: isolation, reversion, and fusion. Annu Rev Microbiol 33:21–39. doi:10.1146/annurev.mi.33.100179.000321

Peberdy JF (1987) Developments in protoplast fusion in fungi. Microbiol Sci 4(4):108–114

Perkins DD (1959) New markers and multiple point linkage data in Neurospora. Genetics 44 (6):1185–1208

Perkins DD (1997) Chromosome rearrangements in Neurospora and other filamentous fungi. Adv Genet 36:239–398

Perkins DD, Ishitani C (1959) Linkage data for group III markers in Neurospora. Genetics 44 (6):1209–1213

Perkins DD, Glassey M, Bloom BA (1962) New data on markers and rearrangements in Neurospora. Can J Genet Cytol 4:187–205

Perkins DD, Kinsey JA, Asch DK, Frederick GD (1993) Chromosome rearrangements recovered following transformation of Neurospora crassa. Genetics 134(3):729–736

Pomraning KR, Smith KM, Freitag M (2011) Bulk segregant analysis followed by high-throughput sequencing reveals the Neurospora cell cycle gene, ndc-1, to be allelic with the gene for ornithine decarboxylase, spe-1. Eukaryot Cell 10:724–733. doi:10.1128/EC.00016-11

Pontecorvo G (1956) The parasexual cycle in fungi. Annu Rev Microbiol 10:393–400. doi:10.1146/annurev.mi.10.100156.002141

Punt PJ, Oliver RP, Dingemanse MA, Pouwels PH, van den Hondel CA (1987) Transformation of Aspergillus based on the hygromycin B resistance marker from Escherichia coli. Gene 56 (1):117–124, doi:0378-1119(87)90164-8

Rahman Z, Shida Y, Furukawa T, Suzuki Y, Okada H, Ogasawara W, Morikawa Y (2009) Application of Trichoderma reesei cellulase and xylanase promoters through homologous recombination for enhanced production of extracellular beta-glucosidase I. Biosci Biotechnol Biochem 73(5):1083–1089

Raper JR (1939) role of hormones in the sexual reaction of heterothallic achlyas. Science 89 (2310):321–322. doi:10.1126/science.89.2310.321

Rischitor PE, Konzack S, Fischer R (2004) The Kip3-like kinesin KipB moves along microtubules and determines spindle position during synchronized mitoses in Aspergillus nidulans hyphae. Eukaryot Cell 3(3):632–645. doi:10.1128/EC.3.3.632-645.2004

Rollo F, Sassaroli S, Ubaldi M (1995) Molecular phylogeny of the fungi of the Iceman's grass clothing. Curr Genet 28(3):289–297

Sang H, Whitehouse HL (1983) Genetic recombination at the buff spore color locus in SORDARIA BREVICOLLIS. II. Analysis of flanking marker behavior in crosses between buff mutants. Genetics 103(2):161–178

Selitrennikoff CP (1979) Chitin synthase activity from the slime variant of Neurospora crassa. Biochim Biophys Acta 571(2):224–232

Selker EU (1997) Epigenetic phenomena in filamentous fungi: useful paradigms or repeat-induced confusion? Trends Genet 13(8):296–301, doi:S0168-9525(97)01201-8

Sermonti G (1959) Genetics of penicillin production. Ann N Y Acad Sci 81:950–973

Shear CL, Dodge BO (1927) Life Histories and heterothallism of the red bread-mold fungi of the Monilia sitophila group. J Agric Res 34(11):1019–1042

Silar P (1995) Two new easy to use vectors for transformations. Fungal Genet Newsl 42:73

Soderlund C, Haller K, Pampanwar V, Ebbole D, Farman M, Orbach MJ, Wang GL, Wing R, Xu JR, Brown D, Mitchell T, Dean R (2006) MGOS: a resource for studying Magnaporthe grisea and Oryza sativa interactions. Mol Plant Microbe Interact 19(10):1055–1061. doi:10.1094/MPMI-19-1055

Spellig T, Bottin A, Kahmann R (1996) Green fluorescent protein (GFP) as a new vital marker in the phytopathogenic fungus Ustilago maydis. Mol Gen Genet 252(5):503–509

Springer ML, Yanofsky C (1989) A morphological and genetic analysis of conidiophore development in Neurospora crassa. Genes Dev 3(4):559–571

Staben C, Jensen BC, Singer M, Pollock J, Schectman M, Kinsey JA, Selker E (1989) Use of a bacterial hygromycin B resistance gene as a dominant selectable marker in Neurospora crassa transformation. Fungal Genet Newsl 36:79–81

Storms R, Zheng Y, Li H, Sillaots S, Martinez-Perez A, Tsang A (2005) Plasmid vectors for protein production, gene expression and molecular manipulations in Aspergillus niger. Plasmid 53(3):191–204. doi:10.1016/j.plasmid.2004.10.001

Suelmann R, Fischer R (2000) Mitochondrial movement and morphology depend on an intact actin cytoskeleton in Aspergillus nidulans. Cell Motil Cytoskeleton 45(1):42–50. doi:10.1002/(SICI)1097-0169(200001)45:1<42::AID-CM4>3.0.CO;2-C

Sweigard J, Chumley FG, Carroll A, Farrall L, Valent B (1997) A series of vectors for fungal transformation. Fungal Genet Newsl 44:52–53

Szewczyk E, Krappmann S (2010) Conserved regulators of mating are essential for Aspergillus fumigatus cleistothecium formation. Eukaryot Cell 9(5):774–783. doi:10.1128/EC.00375-09

Takamine J (1914) Enzymes of Aspergillus oryzae and the application of its amyloclastic enzyme to the fermentation industry. Ind Eng Chem 6(10):824–828. doi:10.1021/ie50070a015

Tan ST, Ho CC (1970) A gene controlling the early development of protoperithecium in Neurospora crassa. Mol Gen Genet 107:158–161

Tatum EL, Perkins DD (1950) Genetics of microorganisms. Annu Rev Microbiol 4:129–150. doi:10.1146/annurev.mi.04.100150.001021

Taylor JL, Borgmann IE (1996) A deluxe cosmid vector for transformation of filamentous fungi. Fungal Genet Newsl 43:52–53

Tilburn J, Scazzocchio C, Taylor GG, Zabicky-Zissman JH, Lockington RA, Davies RW (1983) Transformation by integration in Aspergillus nidulans. Gene 26(2–3):205–221

Toews MW, Warmbold J, Konzack S, Rischitor P, Veith D, Vienken K, Vinuesa C, Wei H, Fischer R (2004) Establishment of mRFP1 as a fluorescent marker in Aspergillus nidulans and construction of expression vectors for high-throughput protein tagging using recombination in vitro (GATEWAY). Curr Genet 45(6):383–389. doi:10.1007/s00294-004-0495-7

Tucker SL, Orbach MJ (2007) Agrobacterium-mediated transformation to create an insertion library in Magnaporthe grisea. Methods Mol Biol 354:57–68. doi:10.1385/1-59259-966-4:57

Turgeon BG, Garber RC, Yoder OC (1985) Transformation of the fungal maize pathogen Cochliobolus heterostrophus using the Aspergillus nidulans amdS gene. Mol Gen Genet 201 (3):450–453

Turgeon BG, Condon B, Liu J, Zhang N (2010) Protoplast transformation of filamentous fungi. Methods Mol Biol 638:3–19. doi:10.1007/978-1-60761-611-5_1

Turner BC, Perkins DD (1979) Spore killer, a chromosomal factor in neurospora that kills meiotic products not containing it. Genetics 93(3):587–606

Villalba F, Collemare J, Landraud P, Lambou K, Brozek V, Cirer B, Morin D, Bruel C, Beffa R, Lebrun MH (2008) Improved gene targeting in Magnaporthe grisea by inactivation of MgKU80 required for non-homologous end joining. Fungal Genet Biol 45(1):68–75. doi:10.1016/j.fgb.2007.06.006

Vogt K, Bhabhra R, Rhodes JC, Askew DS (2005) Doxycycline-regulated gene expression in the opportunistic fungal pathogen Aspergillus fumigatus. BMC Microbiol 5:1. doi:10.1186/1471-2180-5-1

Wang TY, He F, Hu QW, Zhang Z (2011) A predicted protein-protein interaction network of the filamentous fungus Neurospora crassa. Mol Biosyst 7(7):2278–2285. doi:10.1039/c1mb05028a

Weaver JC (1995) Electroporation theory. Concepts and mechanisms. Methods Mol Biol 55:3–28. doi:10.1385/0-89603-328-7:3

Weijer J, Vigfusson NV (1972) Sexuality in Neurospora crassa. I. Mutations to male sterility. Genet Res 19(3):191–204

Wernars K, Goosen T, Wennekes LM, Visser J, Bos CJ, van den Broek HW, van Gorcom RF, van den Hondel CA, Pouwels PH (1985) Gene amplification in Aspergillus nidulans by transformation with vectors containing the amdS gene. Curr Genet 9(5):361–368

Wiest A, McCarthy AJ, Schnittker R, McCluskey K (2012a) Molecular analysis of mutants of the Neurospora adenylosuccinate synthetase locus. J Genet 91(2):199–204

Wiest A, Schnittker R, Plamann M, McCluskey K (2012b) Best practices for fungal germplasm repositories and perspectives on their implementation. Appl Microbiol Biotechnol 93 (3):975–982. doi:10.1007/s00253-011-3786-1

Wiest AE, Baker SE, McCluskey K (2012c) Neurospora gene and genome analysis: past through future. In: Kasbekar DP, McCluskey K (eds) Neurospora: genomics and molecular biology. Caister Academic, Norfolk, pp 273–291

Windhofer F, Catcheside DE, Kempken F (2000) Methylation of the foreign transposon Restless in vegetative mycelia of Neurospora crassa. Curr Genet 37(3):194–199

Woodward VW, De Zeeuw JR, Srb AM (1954) The separation and isolation of particular biochemical mutants of neurospora by differential germination of conidia, followed by filtration and selective plating. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 40(3):192–200

Yang L, Ukil L, Osmani A, Nahm F, Davies J, De Souza CP, Dou X, Perez-Balaguer A, Osmani SA (2004) Rapid production of gene replacement constructs and generation of a green fluorescent protein-tagged centromeric marker in Aspergillus nidulans. Eukaryot Cell 3 (5):1359–1362. doi:10.1128/EC.3.5.1359-1362.2004

Yeadon J, Petersen A, Catcheside DEA (1998) DNA sequence of histidine-3 from two Neurospora wild-types. Fungal Genet Newsl 45:44

Yelton MM, Hamer JE, Timberlake WE (1984) Transformation of Aspergillus nidulans by using a trpC plasmid. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A 81(5):1470–1474

Zeilinger S, Galhaup C, Payer K, Woo SL, Mach RL, Fekete C, Lorito M, Kubicek CP (1999) Chitinase gene expression during mycoparasitic interaction of Trichoderma harzianum with its host. Fungal Genet Biol 26(2):131–140. doi:10.1006/fgbi.1998.1111

Index

A

α-aminoadipic acid (AAA), 239
ABC. *See* ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters
Acidulants, 264
Adenylate cyclase, 102, 104
Aflatoxin, 36, 89, 91, 92, 112
Agaricomycetes
  extracellular peroxide generation (*see* Extracellular peroxide generation)
  Fenton-based brown rot, 324
  hypothetical and uncharacterized proteins, 322–323
  laccases, 322
  metaproteomics, 324
  peroxidases (*see* Peroxidases)
Agaricomycotina wood decayers, 193
Agaricus bisporus, 2, 16, 192–193, 313, 315
Agrobacterium tumefaciens, 276–277, 359–360
Alaskan boreal forest ecosystem
  acidic sites, 343
  black spruce ecosystem, 346
  Clade I, 346
  diversity and distribution, 340–343
  habitat-related environmental variables, 341, 342
  indicator species analyses, 339, 342, 343, 345
  ITS and LSU sequences, 337, 338
  Jackknife analysis, 344
  lineage-specific analysis, 345
  mineral soils, 346
  MRPP, 342
  NMS, 343, 344
  OTU13, 345
  OTUs, 337
  sequence and statistical analysis, 338–340
  soil fungal communities, 337
  soil horizon, 342, 345, 346
  UP247, 344
Alternaria alternata, 178–180
Amplified-Fragment Length Polymorphism (AFLP), 258
Appressorium
  ACE1 expression, 68
  Δpmk1 mutants, 61
  CFEM protein members and PTH11, 54
  dome-shaped penetration structure, 57
  Magnaporthe, 2
  MAPK, 61
  penetration peg, 62
Arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis, 74–75
Archaeorhizomycetes
  Alaska (*see* Alaskan boreal forest ecosystem)
  biogeographic patterns, 334
  free-living saprophytic life strategies, 333
  global distribution, 334–336
  ITS and LSU sequences, 334
  life strategies, 347
  mycoparasitic, 333
  soil fungal communities, 336–337
  Taphrinomycotina, 333
Aryl-alcohol oxidase (AAO), 321
Ascomycete, 3, 18, 20, 35, 112, 113, 220, 300
Aspergillus fumigatus, 89, 91–94, 98, 99, 101–106, 108–111
Aspergillus Genome Database (AspGD), 93, 105
Assemblers, 12, 13
ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters, 66–69, 175, 241, 245

B.A. Horwitz et al. (eds.), *Genomics of Soil- and Plant-Associated Fungi*, Soil Biology 36, DOI 10.1007/978-3-642-39339-6,

© Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg 2013

B
Bipolar heterothallism, 129
BLASTn algorithm, 257
Boreal forests saprotrophic fungi, 192
Broad Institute, 51, 54, 92, 93, 158, 269, 291

C
CADRE, 93
cAMP-PKA, 103
Carbohydrate active enzymes (CAZymes), 15–16, 36–37, 96, 99, 136, 139, 176, 200, 298–300
Carbon catabolite repression (CCR), 65, 66
Catalytic subunits of PKA, 103, 104
CAZymes. *See* Carbohydrate active enzymes (CAZymes)
Cellobiose dehydrogenase (CDH), 316, 321
Cellulose, 35–37, 50, 95–97, 139, 192, 199, 200, 311–312
Cell wall integrity (CWI), 105, 106, 167
Cleistothecia, 101, 107, 262
Cochliobolus heterostrophus
  asexual and sexual sporulation, 215–217
  conidia germination, 217–219
  Dothideomycete soil biology, 223–225
  filamentous ascomycete plant pathogen, 215
  invasion and virulence, 216, 217, 219–220
  leaf penetration, 219
  Pleosporales, 213
  and SCLB, 213–215
  secondary metabolites (*see* Secondary metabolites)
  statistics and SNPs, 220–221
  T-cytoplasm maize, 215
  Texas male-sterile maize, 214–215
Conidiation-defective genes, 70
Conidiophores, 69–70
Coprinus cinereus peroxidase (CiP), 315, 317
Cultivation-independent methods, 196
Cutinases, 59
cyclic AMP (cAMP), 102, 103, 161

D
Dothideomycete genomes, 213, 214
Dothideomycetes, 17. *See also Cochliobolus heterostrophus*
Dye-decolorizing peroxidases (DyPs), 318–319

E
Ectomycorrhizae (EM), 3, 16, 194–195
Ectomycorrhizal fungi (ECM)
  carbon and nitrogen, 201–203
  development of novel biomarkers, 206–207
  extrametrical mycelium (*see* Extrametrical mycelium)
  fungal hyphae-SOM-mineral assemblies, 192
  iron-reducing compounds, 197
  litter decomposition, 193
  novel spectroscopic methods, 204–205
  organic N compounds, 191
  organic nitrogen theory, 192
  protein degradation pathways, 203–204
  SOM degradation reaction, 192
  spectroscopic techniques, 196–198
  trancriptome profiling, 198–200
  trimmed saprophytic activity, 200–201
Effector proteins, *Fusarium oxysporum*
  bioinformatic analysis, 172
  Fo5176-SIX4 gene, 172
  Fov-SIX6 and *Fol*-SIX6 protein, 171–172
  non-host cells, 171
  PEP1 and PEP2 encodes, 172–173
  SIX3/Avr2 proteins, 171
  SIX proteins, 170–171
  VCGs, 171
Effector-triggered immunity (ETI), 67
Electroporation, 359
Encyclopedia of DNA elements (ENCODE), 11–12, 20
Enzyme cocktail, 99, 358
12,13-epoxytrichothec-9-ene (EPT), 143
Exportin-5/Msn5p (EXP5), 72
Expressed sequence tags (ESTs), 37
Extracellular matrix (ECM), 58–59
Extracellular peroxide generation
  copper radical oxidases, 319–320
  GMC oxidoreductases, 320–321
  lignocellulose biotransformation, 319
Extracellular proteome, 97
Extrametrical mycelium
  enzyme activity profiling, 196
  humic soil layer, 196
  hydrolytic and oxidative enzymes, 195
  isotope analyses, 195
  nutrient-mobilizing enzymes, 195–196
  Pinus contorta, 195
  plant root system, 194
  saprotrophic fungi, 196
  soil microcosms, 195

F
Fenton-based biodegradation system, 198
Fluffy autolytic dominant phenotype, 101
fos-1, 110
Fow1, 75
fphA, 109, 111
Fumaric and malic acid (FMA), 258, 264
Fumonisin, 113, 169
Functional genomics, 17, 19–20.
    See also Neurospora
Fungal blast, 51
Fungal genetics
  agrobacterium, 359–360
  Aspergillus, 362–364
  auxotrophic complementation, 360
  biolistic, 359
  chemical transformation, 359
  chlorate resistance, 364
  drug resistance, 361
  electroporation, 359
  emphasis, 353
  FGSC collection, 365
  fluorescent protein (*see* Green fluorescent
    protein (GFP))
  gene manipulations, 351
  GMO organisms, 352
  impact of, 369–370
  interspecific transfer, 364
  mendelian genetics, 353–354
  mutagenesis (*see* Mutagenesis)
  Neurospora, 362
  non-mendelian genetics, 354–355
  novel methods, 361–362
  polyethylene glycol, 358
  protoplast fusion, 358
  purification, 369
  recyclable markers, 361
  research *vs*. commercial, 351–352
  visualization, 369
1000 fungal genomes project, 18
Fusarium oxysporum
  A. nidulans, 166
  AreA transcription, 164
  cAMP level, 161
  chitin synthase, 166
  CWDE genes, 165, 166
  deletion mutant, 167
  effector proteins (*see* Effector proteins,
    Fusarium oxysporum)
  environmental condition, 160–161
  FGA1/*FGA2* mutants, 161–162
  Fnr1/AreA, 164
  forma specialis, 158
  G-proteins, 161
  HapX, 174–175
  histidine kinase, 163
  LS regions (*see* Lineage-specific
    (LS) regions, *Fusarium oxysporum*)
  MAPK pathway, 162–163
  MeaB protein, 164
  M. oryzae, 165
  pathogenicity, 163
  plant defence compounds, 168–169
  plant infection, 159–160
  role of GAS1, 167
  SCF complex, 166
  SGE1 gene encodes, 173–174
  SNF1 gene, 165–166
  Ste12 functions, 163
  supernumerary chromosomes, 179
  TOR, 164–165
  toxin production, 169–170
  U. maydis, 165
  VCGs, 158–159
  xylanase encoding, 165
  Zn2Cys6 transcription factor, 173

G
Gaeumannomyces graminis, 48–50
Gα-Gβ-Gχ, 101
Gene prediction, 13, 14, 53
Genetic models, 2, 215, 291
Genetics and molecular biology,
    Rhizopus oryzae
  Agrobacterium tumefaciens, 276–277
  filamentous mold, 272
  gene disruption, 277–278
  homologous integration, 273
  human fungal pathogens, 272
  markers, reporters, and inducible
    promoters, 275–276
  mutagenesis, 274–275
  transformation, 273–274
Genome annotation, 94, 270
Genome finishing, 12
Genome sequence, *Rhizopus oryzae*
  duplicated protein complexes, 270–271
  fungal phylogenetic tree, 269
  gene families, 272
  genome annotation, 270
Genomic Encyclopedia of Fungi, 16
Genoscope, 291–292
Global distribution, 91, 334–336
Glyoxal oxidase (GLX), 319–320
G-protein coupled receptors (GPCR),
    101–104, 107
Green fluorescent protein (GFP)

Green fluorescent protein (GFP) (*cont.*)
Aspergillus, 366
gGFP plasmid, 366
Neurospora, 366
visualization tags, 366–368

H
Heme-thiolate peroxidases (HtPs), 317–318
Hemicellulose, 37, 95, 96, 139, 312
Heterokaryon incompatibility (HET), 133–134, 286
Histidine-containing phosphotransfer (HPt) protein, 108–110
Histidine kinase, 105, 107–111
Human Genome Project, 11, 15
Human mucormycosis, 255
Hydrophilic polystyrene (PHIL-PS), 72
Hyphal fusion, 162, 163, 180
Hyphal Interference, 288, 298, 301

I
Induced systemic resistance (ISR), 130, 142, 234
Industrial applications, 89, 236
Internal transcribed sequences (ITS), 18–19
Intracellular proteome, 99
Isocitrate lyase enzyme *(ICL1)*, 62, 166
Isopenicillin N-acyltransferase (IAT), 239

J
Jackknife analysis, 340, 344
Joint Genome Institute (JGI), 3, 14, 92–94, 213, 220

K
Krebs cycle, 264

L
Laccaria bicolor, 3, 15
Leaf infection process
ABC transporters, 69
ACE1 gene, 67–68
appressorium differentiation, 57, 59–60
AVR effector function, 67
biotrophy-associated secreted, 68
conidiation and light regulation, 60, 69–71
ECM, 58–59
ETI, 67
fungal effectors, 67
fungal metabolism and plant infection, 64–66
fungal plant penetration, 62–63
invasive hyphae (IH), 63–64
Mag-toxin, 69
orchestrated cellular processes, 60–62
plants secrete toxic compounds, 69
PTI, 67
PWL gene, 68
pyrichalasin H, 68
secreted proteins, 67
Slp1, 67
wind-dispersed/water-splashed conidium lands, 57
Leucine auxotrophy, 291
Light-dependent disease suppression, 70
Lignin, 2, 5, 16, 17, 95–96, 169, 192, 198, 312, 321
Lignin decay mechanisms, 192
Lignin peroxidase (LiP), 314–316
Lignocellulose degradation, 15, 16, 33, 34, 311, 316, 320
Lignocellulose metabolism
Aspergillus, 36
biofuel feedstock, 33
brown rot fungi, 37
CAZy family, 36–37
cbhI cluster, 35
cDNA and rRNA tags, 37
C. subvermispora, 36
decomposition, 34, 38
enzyme expressions, 36
FTIR-ATR, 34
fungal–fungal interactions, 38
industrial fermentation, 33
natural ecosystems, 35
Neurospora, 33–34
P. chrysosporium, 36
saprotrophic species, 35
soil component, 35
soil processes, 37
Trichoderma, 37
VOC production, 38
Lineage-specific (LS) regions, *Fusarium oxysporum*
ABC transporters, 175
Alternaria alternata, 180
ascomycetes, 175
CAZYs, 176–177
C. lindemuthianum, 180–181
conidial and hyphal fusions, 180
F. graminearum, 176

F. verticillioides, 176
mobile chromosome, 181
non-orthologous chromosomes, 177–178
pathogenecity chromosome, 177
SIX proteins, 176
supernumerary chromosomes, 178
transcription factors, 175
VCGs, 178
Lovastatin, 91, 113

M
Macroconidia, 69
Magnaporthaceae
fungal databases, 76
Gaeumannomyces graminis, 48–50
genome sequences, 53–55
pathogens (*see* Root-infecting pathogens)
rice blast disease, 51–53
root-infecting fungus, turfgrasses, 49, 51
taxonomy, 45–48
Magnaporthe oryzae. *See also* Magnaporthaceae
leaf infection process (*see* Leaf infection process)
reproduction, 55–56
Magnaporthe poae, 51
Manganese peroxidase (MnP), 314–316
Markov cluster algorithm (MCL), 133
MC69, 67
Melampsora laricis-populina, 15
Melanin-deficient mutants, 49–50
Mesosynteny, 17
Metagenomics, 18, 20
Metatranscriptomics, 19, 323
MgFow1, 75
Microplate enzymatic tests, 195–196
Mitochondrial respiratory activity, 75
Mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), 2, 61, 104–107, 162–163, 217
mpkA, mpkB, sakA/HogA, 105
mpkC, 105, 106
Mucor circinelloides, 261
Mucormycosis, 255
Mutagenesis
classic mutant strains, 356
genome lineage, 356
mating type, 355
N. crassa, 355–356
penicillin-producing strains, 357
polymorphisms, 357
transcriptome analysis, 357
MycoCosm, 14, 92, 94, 132, 133
Mycoparasitism. *See Trichoderma*
Mycorrhizal fungi, 3, 17, 131, 192, 203, 206, 337
Mycotoxins, 91, 107, 111, 113, 128, 169

N
Neurospora
functional genomics, 29–30
lignocellulosic biomass (*see* Lignocellulose metabolism)
N. crassa, 12–13, 20
sensing light, 30–32
Next-generation sequencing (NGS), 11–13, 19, 30, 289, 296
nikA, tcsA, tcsB, 109
Nitrogen metabolite repression (NMR), 65, 66
Nonribosomal peptide synthases, 221–222
Non-ribosomal peptide synthetase (NRPS), 113, 114, 140–142, 222, 239, 300
Novel methods, 361–362

O
Ochratoxin, 89, 91, 92, 112–113
Oidiodendron maius, 3
Opportunistic pathogens, 5, 89, 91, 109, 128, 131
Organic matter, ectomycorrhizal fungi (ECM)
iron-reducing compounds, 197
spectroscopic techniques, 196–198
trancriptome profiling, 198–200
trimmed saprophytic activity, 200–201
Organic nitrogen theory, 192
Osmotic stress, 105, 110, 111
Oxidative stress, 104, 106, 111, 168, 177, 219, 220

P
PACC gene, 160–161
PAMP-triggered immunity (PTI), 67
Pathogens, 11, 12, 15–17, 19, 20
Paxillus involutus, 3, 195–198, 313
Penicillin biosynthesis
α-aminoadipic acid (AAA), 239
β-lactam molecule, 239
compartmentalization, 238–240
genome insights, 243–244
IAT, 239
penicillin gene cluster, 241–243
Penicillium chrysogenum
antimicrobial compounds, 234–236

Penicillium chrysogenum (cont.)
biochemical arsenal, 236
β-lactam molecules, 246–247
classical strain improvement, 244–245
evolutionary path, 229, 237–238
genomics-based strain improvement, 245–246
gram-positive bacteria, 229
metabolites, 229–231
natural habitats, 230, 234
penicillin biosynthesis (*see* Penicillin biosynthesis)
peptidoglycan polymers, 229
taxonomy, 237
Peroxidases
dye-decolorizing peroxidases (DyPs), 318–319
heme-thiolate peroxidases (HtPs), 317–318
high oxidation potential class II peroxidases, 314–316
low oxidation potential class II peroxidases, 315, 317
manganese peroxidase (MnP), 314–316
NC-IUBMB system of nomenclature, 313
Pezizomycotina, 132, 133, 135, 139, 283, 292, 293
Phanerochaete chrysosporium, 16, 36, 312, 315–322
Phycomyces blakesleeanus, 261
Phylogeny, *Rhizopus oryzae*
actin (act-1), 257
BLASTn algorithm, 257
medical mycology, 256, 257
molecular methods, 257
vs. Rhizopus delemar, 258–259
taxonomy, 257
translation elongation factor 1 alpha (EF1α) genes, 257
Pinus contorta, 195
Piriformospora indica, 4
PKA regulatory subunit, 103, 104
PKA regulatory subunit (pkaR), 104
Plant biomass, 33, 92, 95, 97, 99, 127, 236, 263, 283, 284, 300
Podospora anserina
agilent microarray, 296
ascospore ejection, 298
ascospore formation, 284
barrage phenomenon, 285
basidiomycetes, 300
biomass degradation, 299
BLAST analyses, 293
CAZy repertoire, 298
chromatograms, 293
coprophilous species, 284
cytosolic translation, 297
DNA banks, 294
ecology and life cycle, 287–288
gene-by-gene analysis, 292
genetic analysis, 288–290
genetic transformation, 290–291
green fluorescent protein (GFP), 296
Het-s protein, 297
hyphal fusion, 284
life cycle, 284, 286
microarray analysis, 292
mus51 coding sequence, 294, 296
popular fungal models, 284
pseudohomothallism, 284, 287
repeat-induced point mutations (RIP), 293
Saccharomyces cerevisiae genome sequence, 291–292
SAMtools package, 296
secondary metabolites, 300–301
split marker method, 294, 295
Polyethylene glycol (PEG), 358
Polyketide synthase, 112–114, 142, 221–223, 300
Polysaccharide hydrolyzing enzymes, 138–139
Postia placenta, 199
12,827 protein-coding genes, 53
Protein release, 98
Proteomics, 19, 20, 37, 94, 97–98
Pyranose 2-oxidase (P2O), 320
Pyrosequencing, 12, 19, 35, 37

Q

Quantitative trait loci (QTL), 2, 54
Quorum sensing mechanism, 129

R

Repeat-induced point mutation (RIP), 56, 132, 293, 355
Re-sequencing, 13
Response regulator, 107–108
Restriction-site-associated DNA (RAD), 30
Rhizopus delemar, 258–259
Rhizopus oryzae
clinical manifestations and infection sites, 266, 267
enzymes, 263
filamentous fungus, 255
genome sequence (*see* Genome sequence, *Rhizopus oryzae*)

growth and identification, 259–260
host status, 265–266
human mucormycosis, 255
Mucorales/Entomophthorales, 255
organic acids, 264–265
pathogenic zygomycetes, 256
phylogeny (*see* Phylogeny, *Rhizopus oryzae*)
sexual cycle, 261–262
tempe production, 262–263
treatment, 269
virulence factors, 267–269
zygomycotic infections, 255
Rice blast disease symptoms, 51–53
Root-infecting fungus of turfgrasses, 49, 51
Root-infecting pathogens
arbuscular mycorrhizal symbiosis, 74–75
Exp5, 72
G. graminis–Phialophora complex, 59, 71
hydrophilic polystyrene (PHIL-PS), 72
hyphopodia-mediated root penetration, 71
melanin-independent mechanism, 71
pre-invasive hyphae (pre-IH), 72
root specific infection-deficient phenotype, 72–74

S
Sanger sequencing, 12, 13, 19
Saprotrophic fungi, 192
Schizophyllum commune, 20, 325
Secondary metabolites
Aspergillus spp., 5, 111–114
chemical structures, 197
Fusarium species, 169–170
melanins, 49
M. oryzae, 68
non-penicillin-producing conditions, 235
NRPS, 221–222
penicillin production strains, 234
PKSs, 222–223
SSCPs, 223
Trichoderma spp (*see Trichoderma*)
wine yeasts, 38
Secreted in the xylem (SIX), 170–171
Secreted LysM Protein1 (Slp1), 67
Secretome, 97, 99. *See also Trichoderma*
Signal transduction
Aspergilli, 100
cAMP/PKA-signaling cascade and G-protein-coupled receptors, Aspergillus, 101–104
environmental signals, 100
filamentous fungi, 100
fungal cells, 100
histidine kinase (HK) phosphorelay system, 107–111
MAPK, 104–107
Single molecule sequencing, 12
Single-nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), 220–221
Skp1–Cullin–F-box protein (SCF) complex, 166
Small secreted cysteine-rich proteins (SSCPs), 136–137, 146, 147, 221, 223
Small secreted proteins, 1–4, 15
Soilborne fungi, 4, 158
Soil microcosms, 195
Southern Corn Leaf Blight (SCLB), 213
Sporangiophores, 259
sskA, 108, 110, 111
ssrA, 111
ssrB, 111
ssrC, 111
Sucrose non-fermenting *(SNF1)* gene, 165–166
Sustainable energy, 95
Symbionts, 3, 4, 11, 12, 15, 16, 20, 74, 192, 225

T
Taphrinomycotina, 333
Target of rapamycin (TOR), 64–65, 164–165
tcsC, 110–111
Teleomorph, 47–48, 127, 129, 132–133, 354
Transcriptome, 20, 33, 37, 70, 74, 99, 147, 197–199, 204, 221, 240, 302, 357
Transcriptomics, 3, 13, 19, 20, 36, 37, 54, 94, 99, 141, 147, 206
Trichoderma
cellulase and hemicellulase production, 146
developmental biology, 129
genomic features, 131–133
habitats, 130–131
high-frequency homologous transformation, 146
high-throughput techniques, 145
isoprenoid derivatives, 142–143
mycoparasitism, 133–134
NRPS, 140–142
opportunistic pathogens, 128
pezizomycotina, 135
polyketide synthases, 142
polysaccharide hydrolyzing enzymes, 138–139
proteolytic enzymes, 140
SSCPs, 136–137
T. atroviride, 147

Trichoderma (cont.)
  taxonomy and phylogeny, 128–129
  T. reesei wild-type, 144–145
  T. virens, 147
  volatile metabolites, 144
Trichoderma reesei, 20, 129, 131–134, 138–144, 147–145

U
Ubiquitin–proteasome pathway, 271
Uracil auxotrophy, 290
US DOE Joint Genome Institute (JGI), 14
Ustilago maydis, 2, 5, 20, 165, 223, 358

V
V-ATPase complex, 271
Vegetative compatibility group (VCG), 158–159, 171, 366
Versatile peroxidase (VP), 313
Verticillium, 3, 366
Volatile organic compounds (VOCs), 38, 129
Volatile secondary metabolites, 144

W
Wood decay, 15, 16, 312, 320, 321

Y
ypdA, 111

Z
Zygomycete fungi, 5